TO

THE REVEREND JOHN KEATE, D.D.

HEAD MASTER OF ETON COLLEGE,

This Accented Edition

OF

THE ETON LATIN GRAMMAR,

WITH NOTES,

IS MOST RESPECTFULLY INSCRIBED,

BY

HIS VERY OBEDIENT SERVANT,

T. W. C. EDWARDS.

PREFACE.

This Work consists of the common Eton Text, with very slight alterations in four or five places only; but with the addition of *accents* on all English words of more than one syllable; and of the *quantities* of the several syllables of all the Latin words; and also of the acute accent on the syllable to be accented in every Latin word of more than one syllable. The vast utility of this plan can never be so fairly appreciated as by comparing the pronunciation of boys in schools where this Grammar is used, with the pronunciation of boys in schools where it is not used: and by viewing at the same time the diminution of labour to persons engaged in tuition, and also the satisfaction they must feel, at the accuracy, and accelerated progress, of their pupils.

Independent of the improvements just named, the common Eton text is rendered clearer than heretofore, by the method of printing the Latin, and by the amplification of the English of several of the words.

The Notes, appended to the Text, are of the most useful description, being selections from the best authors of antiquity condensed into as few words as possible, yet always preserving a lucidity. The same plan of marking the *accents* and *quantities* is pursued in the Notes as in the Text.

Again, in the present Work, the Construing is entirely new,—the genitive case of the several nouns, and, when anomalous, sometimes even other cases, being given; with whatever else appeared to me to be calculated to render the Latin more intelligible, and the whole more profitable to learners, than the old mode of translating the Rules and Examples could render it.

After the Construing, I have given a short appendix, containing various necessary information on Punctuation and

the use of Capital Letters; and also the principal figures of Grammar and of Rhetoric.

Some persons, I am well aware, think that the quantity of the Latin syllables is really an object of very little importance, and that accentuation is a matter of no moment at all the meaning of words, and the construction of sentences, being the chief thing to be learnt: and, they say, that accent is so much at variance with quantity, and quantity with accent, that, in a greater or less degree, the one must always be sacrificed to the other:—moreover, they say, Latin being a dead language, it may be pronounced as we like, without error and without offence. But what can be more false than doctrine like this?

A strict observance of Quantity is not by any means incompatible with the strictest observance of Accent; nor can any language be properly an oral language without a strict observance of both, according to some acknowledged system, —*true* or *false.*

If, in the Latin language, we moderns agree to shorten many of the long syllables, in pronouncing them; and to lengthen many of the short syllables; and, also, to accentuate the words in a way in which they never were accented by the Romans, let us not say we are reading or speaking Latin.

My main object in the present performance being to induce and to establish a habit of correct enunciation in reading and in speaking Latin, (as respects Quantity and Accent), I shall here briefly state what is meant by each of those terms.

By QUANTITY, then, we are to understand the time *actually* and *practically* devoted, in the act of speaking, to the enunciation of a syllable: thus, a syllable uttered *quickly*, as to time, is said to be *short*,— but a syllable, uttered *slowly*, is said to be *long*. Take, for example, the two English words "oval" and "oven,"—and it will be found, that by every man and woman bred in England, the former is pronounced as two long syllables, and the latter as two short ones:—the "o" in "oval" and the "o" in "oven," it will be allowed, seem to the ear to be scarcely the same letter.

Just so in Latin; the "o" in the word "ŏvŭm, *an egg,*" and that in "ŏvĭs, *a sheep,*" are equally distinct from one

another:—nor less so, the " o " in " prōnŭs, *prone*," and that in " bŏnŭs, *good*."

In Latin, in Greek, and every other language, the length of a long syllable is not always owing to the length of the vowel in it; for, whenever a short vowel stands before a consonant, and the next syllable begins with a consonant, the time occupied between the consonants causes the first syllable to dwell on the ear longer than it otherwise would do, and hence its quantity is said to be long. Now where a long vowel or a diphthong is followed by a consonant in the same syllable, and the next syllable begins with a consonant, it follows that the first will be still longer, than one in which the vowel is short.

But, as every ear cannot discriminate, with so much nicety, the precise *time* and *parts of a time* which a correct speaker actually devotes to the enunciation of every individual syllable, Grammarians content themselves with the division of quantity into *long*, *short*, *doubtful*, and *common*.

Every long syllable ought, at least, to occupy double or twice the time of a short syllable; but syllables which are doubtful are uttered of a length betwixt long and short. Common syllables are such as are with equal propriety either long or short, at the option of the speaker or composer.

By ACCENT, we are to understand a peculiar inflexion and stress of voice laid upon some one syllable of a word.

Of accents there are three, namely, *the acute, the grave,* and *the circumflex:* but here we shall speak of the *acute* only, being that to which we moderns mostly confine ourselves, the limits of a preface not admitting of much detail.

In every word, then, of more than one syllable, some particular syllable of the word is always distinguished from the rest by a sort of émphasis, or greater stress, given to it by a stroke of the voice.

Without this, language would be monotonous, and often unintelligible to a hearer; for it would be next to impossible, in many instances, to know where one word terminates, and another begins.

In English, we have many words accented on the last syllable, as " aslánt, condescénd;" but in Latin very few or

no words have the accent on the last syllable.   In that language the accent falls either upon the penult or the antepenult of words.   Hence it follows, that *in all words of two syllables the stress must be on the first syllable.*   Again, the place of the accent in polysyllables is readily determined by the following simple Rule :—

If the penult, or last syllable but one, be long, the accent is on it, but if the penult be short, the accent is on the antepenult, or last syllable.

It would, no doubt, have been extremely amusing to the ancient Greeks and Romans, to hear a word *pronounced* with the accent on the fifth, or sixth, syllable from the end ; as it sometimes is in English ; when in their respective tongues the antepenult, or third syllable from the end, was the very farthest from the terminational syllable that the accent was ever removed.

But in Greek, as in English, many words were accented on the final syllable.

In speaking all this time of accent, I must be decidedly understood to mean nothing more than that weight, or stress of voice, which serves to distinguish some one syllable of every word, containing more than one, from the other syllables of the same word ; without alluding at all to the species of accent, or to the tone, or musical key, in which the ancients uttered certain syllables, conformably to the genius of their native tongues.

This subject, on which the elegant and forcible use of the Latin language so much depends, merits the greatest attention, let us, therefore, always lay the right stress of voice upon the right syllable,—equally regardless of the scorn of pedants, and of the sneer of fools.   Be truth our sole aim, and error our only fear.

T. W. C. EDWARDS.

☞ In Scanning the Hexameter Rules, every syllable long by position is marked long ; but in all other instances the true quantity of the syllables is given,—without reference to position.

ETON LATIN GRAMMAR.[1]

THE Látin Létters are thus wrítten

Cápitals.

A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V X Y Z.

Small, or Cómmon.

a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r s t u v x y z.[2]

Of these Létters six are námed Vówels, *a, e, i, o, u, y.*

---

[1] As Grámmar is that Scíence which has for its óbject corréctness of lánguage, both óral and wrítten, it fóllows then, that Látin Grámmar must mean the knówledge and art of speáking and of wríting the Látin lánguage corréctly ; that is, accórding to the estáblished Rules of the Róman tongue, and úsage of the Róman wríters. By the E'ton Látin Grámmar is implíed the abrídged Mánual of Mr. LILY, which has for mány years been succéssfully emplóyed at E'ton school, to inítiate boys in Látin.

In Grámmar there are four distínct depártments or divísions :—

I. *Orthógraphy,* which teáches us the shape, and sound, of the létters of a lánguage ; and the right méthod of combíning them in the formátion of sýllables and of words.

II. *Etymólogy,* which treats of the derivátion, significátion, and afféction, of the várious parts of speech.

III. *Sýntax,* which detérmines the Right Constrúction of words in a séntence, and points out their mútual connéxion, depéndence, and relátion.

IV. *Prósody,* which is the perféction of the óther divísions ; and which régulates the pronunciátion by fíxing the time or quántity of sýllables, the áccents of words, and the tone and émphasis, that ought to be obsérved, in the útterance of séntences. To this divísion of Grámmar belóngs the entíre art of *Versificátion.*

[2] These are cálled Róman cháracters, béing básed on and resémbling, in a consíderable degreé, those úsed by the Rómans or Látins. They are, howéver, not altogéther the same. It is a mistáke that the Róman cháracters have been retaíned since the times of the Rómans, as each succéssive age úsed a dífferent cháracter ; and a pérson accústomed to Látin mánuscripts, and skilled in reáding them, can detérmine the éra of each from the cháracter úsed in it. Our présent Róman cháracter was fórmed by the eárly prínters, by áltering those úsed in Látin mánuscripts. It is úsed by the Itálians, Spániards, Danes, Swedes, En'glish, French, and látterly by the Dutch. Várious attémpts have been made to intródúce its use in Gérman works ; but though mány Gérman publicátions, of great impórtance, have been prínted in the Róman cháracter, by much the greáter númber of the prínters of that coúntry retaín the Góthic,

The rest (*h* alóne excépted [3]) are cálled Cónsonants.

A vówel makes a full and pérfect sound of itsélf, as *e*.

A cónsonant cánnot be soúnded withoút a vówel, as *b*, pronoúnced *be*.

Cónsonants are divíded ínto mutes,—líquids,— and doúble létters.

The líquids are *l, m, n, r ;* [4] the doúble létters are *j, x, z :* [5] the remaíning lettérs are cálled mutes. [6]

K, Y, Z are found ónly in words oríginally Greek.

A sýllable [7] is a distínct sound of one or more létters pronoúnced in a breath.

---

or black létter. The stúdent who wíshes for informátion on the íntricate súbject of *Palæógraphy* (as it is térmed), will receíve full satisfáction in Mabíllon " De Re Diplomática," and Champóllion, " Paléographie des Classiques."

[3] The létter *h* is neíther a vówel nor a cónsonant, but a sort of breáthing or aspirátion. It is found both at the begínning and in the míddle of words, and líkewise at the end : but in Látin, few words términate in this létter.

[4] Grammárians have gíven the name of líquids or semivówels to these four létters, becaúse, though they cánnot be soúnded withoút a vówel, yet, like the impérfect mutes (see note 6), no one of the four impédes the voice entírely, as ány of the pérfect mutes impédes it ; and moreóver becaúse any one of the four can fóllow a mute in the same sýllable, and líquidly coalésce with it. Thus, in glīs, *a dórmouse*, the líquid *l* fóllows the mute *g*, and coalésces with it : so, in crūx, *a cross*, the líquid *r* fóllows the mute *c*. Of these four létters *l* and *r* occúr more fréquently áfter a mute in Látin words than eíther *m* or *n :* and of the four, perháps *m* is the least líquid, excépt at the end of a word fóllowed by a vówel or a díphthong, when the vówel befóre the *m* is in most ínstances elíded by the fígure Ecthlípsis.

[5] The létters *j, x,* and *z,* are térmed doúble, becaúse the sound of *j* is equívalent to that of *dg ;* and the sound of *x*, to that of *cs*, or *gs*, or *ks ;* and the sound of *z*, to that of *ds*, or of *ts*. But it may be obsérved that *j* is not a doúble létter áfter the vówel *i*, as in bĭ'jŭgĭs, *two-yóked*, nor when it begíns the látter part of a cómpound word, the fórmer part béing in itsélf a pérfect word, as jūrĕjūrăn'dŏ, *by sweáring an oath.*

[6] The mutes then are b, c, d, *f,* g, k, p, q, *s,* t, and *v ;* whereóf b, c, d, g, k, p, q, and t are pérfect, that is, tótally dumb in themsélves, and occásioning, whenéver they end a sýllable, an ínstant stop to the pássage of the voice :—but f, s, and v, are impérfect ; becaúse, althoúgh they are dumb in themsélves, yet áfter a vówel, they efféct not a compléte stóppage of the voice like the pérfect mutes. Of these three the létter *s* approáches by far the neárest to the cháracter of a líquid, for it can not ónly stand befóre a mute and líquid, as in strīx, *a groove or chánnel,* álso, *a screech-owl :* but it can fóllow a líquid and mute in the same sýllable, as in stirps, *a stem.*

[7] In évery sýllable there must be at least one vówel ; but the présence

A díphthong is the sound of two vówels in one sýllable.
Of próper díphthongs there are five, *au, eu, ei, ae, oe*.[8]
The two last of these díphthongs, námely *ae* and *oe*, are cómmonly pronoúnced as the vówel *e*, and are véry óften joined and wrítten thus : *Æ œ, Œ œ*.

THE PARTS OF SPEECH are Eight:

1. Noun, Prónoun, Verb, Párticiple, declíned.

---

of a cónsonant is not nécessary : for sómetimes we meet with a word of séveral sýllables in which there is not a cónsonant ; as *Æ.æ'.ă, an ísland on the coast of I'taly*. But although the présence of a cónsonant be not ábsolutely nécessary in a sýllable, yet there are mány sýllables that both begín and end with a cónsonant. Some sýllables, indeéd, begín with two, or éven three cónsonants, and some fínal sýllables términate with the like númber. Thus, in the monosyllábic word " scŏbs," *fílings or sáwdust*, a sýllable both begíns and ends with two cónsonants ; and in " scrŏbs," *a ditch*, a sýllable begíns with three cónsonants, and ends with two ; so, in " stĭrps," *a stem*, a sýllable begíns with two cónsonants, and ends with three.—A sýllable long by authórity or use is distínguished by a straight line óver the vówel, as in flōs, *a flówer*, or in ūrbs, *a cíty* · a short sýllable is, in like mánner, distínguished by a curve line over the vówel, as in ŏs, *a bone :* and a cómmon or doúbtful sýllable is distínguished by both of these marks, as Fāc, *do*. The length of a long sýllable depénds either upón the estáblished length of the vówel in it, else upón the check given to the voice by the concúrrence of cónsonants : and sómetimes the length is ówing to both these cáuses.

In the divísion of sýllables the fóllowing diréctions are to be obsérved :—

I. A cónsonant betweén two vówels in the same word is joíned to the látter vówel ; as bŏ'-nŭs, ă'-mŏ ; excépt the áccent falls on the last sýllable but two (antepénult), then this sýllable takes the fóllowing cónsonant, as tŭn'-ĭ-că, *a túnic ;* ŏp'-ĭ-fĕx, *a wórkman :* and the doúble létter *x*, which may more próperly be considered to belóng to the vówel befóre it ; as in flĕx'-ĭ-lĭs, *fléxile :* excépt, líkewise, ány particular cónsonant términating the first part of a cómpound word ; as *b* in ăb'-ĕst, *it is dístant*, or *n* in ĭn'-ŏ-dō-rŭs, *inódorous*.

II. Two cónsonants betweén two vówels, in the same word, are to be séparated, as in pēc'-tĕn, *a comb*, dĭph-thŏn'-gŭs, *a díphthong*, ĭn-tĕr'-prĕs, *an intérpreter ;* unléss the cónsonants can begín a sýllable : in which evént they are to be joíned to the vówel which fóllows them, províded ónly that the quántity of the vówel befóre the two cónsonants be not léngthened by posítion, that is, be not made long ówing to the séquence of those cónsonants. Thus in such words as cў'-enŭs, *a swan*, the próper divísion is cў'-cnŭs ; but if the first vówel be léngthened by posítion, then the right divísion becómes cўc'-nŭs. This excéption, howéver, applies not to cómpound words, éven where a short vówel is léngthened by posítion ; as in rē'-spŭ-ŏ, *I spit out agáin.*

* The impróper díphthongs are *ai, oi, ui,* and *yi*, whereóf the first two séldom occúr in words púrely Látin ; and *ui* is chíefly confíned to the two dátives *huïc* and *cui*.

2. Ad'verb, Conjúnction, Preposítion, Interjéction; únde-clined. [9]

Nouns are of two kinds—súbstantives and ádjectives.

A noun súbstantive decláres its own meáning, and requires not ány óther word to be joíned with it to show its significátion; as hŏ'mŏ, *a man;* ān'gĕlŭs, *an ángel;* lĭ'bĕr, *the book;* cōnstăn'tĭă, *cónstancy.* [10]

A noun ádjective [11] requíres to be joíned with a súbstantive, eíther expréssed or understoód; of which it shows the náture or quálity: as, bŏ'nŭs pŭ'ĕr, *a good boy;* mă'lŭs pŭ'ĕr, *a bad* or *a naúghty boy;* mūl'tĭ (*understánd* hŏ'mĭnēs) *mány men;* mūl'tă (*understánd* nĕgō'tĭă) *mány things.*

OF A NOUN.

A NOUN is the name of whatsoéver Thing, or Béing, we see, or discoúrse of.

OF THE NUMBERS OF NOUNS.

NOUNS have two númbers; námely, the síngular and the plúral.

The síngular speaks ónly of one; as pă'tĕr, *a fáther.*
The plúral speaks of more than one; as pă'trēs, *fáthers.*

---

[9] To these parts of speech may be ádded Inséparable Párticles, as the prepósitives ăm-, dĭ-, dĭs-, rĕ-, sē-, vē-, and the adjúnctives -mĕt, -tĕ, -cĕ, -ptĕ, -cĭnĕ, with some óthers of the same sort: álso, the enclítics -nĕ, -quĕ, -vĕ, which howéver are clássed with conjúnctions:—líkewise pronóminal terminátions, altogéther different from adjúnctive párticles; such as, -dĕm, -dăm, -quăm, -quĕ, -năm, -pĭăm, -cŭn'quĕ, and mány more.

[10] A noun súbstantive is eíther cómmon or próper:—cómmon, when the name or appellátion belóngs equally to all things of the same idéntical similitude or sort; as ă'quă, *wáter;* dŏ'mŭs, *a house;* ă'pĭs, *a bee;* paūpěr'tās, *póverty;*—próper, when the appellátion is confíned to one indivídual, notwithstánding there may amóng mány be séveral indivíduals of the same appellátion; as Pĕ'trŭs, *Péter;* Brĭtăn'nĭă, *Brítain;* Tă'mĕsĭs, *the Thames;* Lōndĭ'nŭm, *Lóndon.*

[11] Ad'jectives, líkewise, are eíther cómmon or próper:—cómmon, when they reláte to things in géneral; as, ăl'bŭs, *white;* trĭs'tĭs, *sad;* fĕ'lĭx, *háppy;*—próper, when they owe their derivátion to some próper name; as Plūtō'nĭŭs, *Plutónian,* that is, *of* or *belónging to Plúto;* Sĭ'cŭlŭs, *Sicilian,* or *belónging to Sicily;* Trōjā'nŭs, *Trójan;* Ăthĕnĭĕn'sĭs, *Athénian.*

OF THE CASES OF NOUNS.

NOUNS have six cáses[12] in each númber:

The nóminative, the génitive, the dátive, the accúsative, the vócative, and the áblative.

The nóminative case comes befóre the verb, and may be known by its ánswering to the quéstion *who?* or *what?* as, *who teáches?* măgĭs'tĕr dŏ'cĕt, *the máster teáches.*

The génitive case[13] is known by the sign *of*, in En'glish, and ánswers to the quéstion *whose?* or *whereóf?* as, *whose leárning?* dōctrĭ'năr măgĭs'trī, *the leárning of the máster*, or *the máster's leárning.*

The dátive case is known, in En'glish, by the signs *to* or *for*, and ánswers to the quéstion *únto whom?* or *to* or *for what?* as, *únto whom do I gíve the book?* dō lĭ'brŭm măgĭs'trō, *I gíve the book to the máster.*

The accúsative (or, as it is more cómmonly denóminated in En'glish, the objéctive) case fóllows the verb, and ánswereth to the quéstion *whom?* or *what?* as, *whom do you love?* ă'mō măgĭs'trŭm, *I love the máster.*

The vócative case is known by cálling, or speáking to; as, ō măgĭs'tĕr, *O máster.*

---

[12] The Stóïcs considered the relátion which, in discóurse, a noun hath to a verb, in the same mémber of a séntence with it, únder the fígure of a right line fálling upón a plane. If the line (as they thought) fell perpendícularly, the noun was said to be "*in récto cásu*," that is, in its *right* or *straight case;* by which they meant the *nóminative:*—but if the line swérved or declíned from the perpendícular, then the noun was said to be "*in oblíquo cásu*," that is, in a *crookéd* or an *oblíque* case; and its deviátion from the perpendícular, or, *right fall*, was térmed "*declinátio,*" that is, *declénsion.* Now it is évident, that the *right case* could be ónly *one*, while the *oblíque cáses* might be *few* or *mány* accórding to the degrée of declinátion, or declénsion. Howéver inapprópriate these terms may appeár, grammárians have, véry good-náturedly, conténted themsélves to retain them.

[13] The génitive, as its name indeéd implíes, is the case from which all the óther oblique cáses (with the excéption of the vócative síngular, which seems to be mérely a sort of écho of the nóminative, díffering from it in nóthing for the most part, and séldom díffering from it much; and with the excéption álso of the accúsative of neúter nouns, and some few anómalous ínstances not worth méntioning at présent) are génerated or fórmed by símply váryng the terminátion. It may be right to nótice that the nóminative case plúral of nouns is in this sense to be consídered as an oblíque case, ínasmuch as it owes its formátion (a few anómalies excépted) to the génitive case síngular.

The áblative case is known in En'glish by prepositions expréssed or understoód, sérving to the áblative case; as, dē măgĭs'trō, *of* or *concérning th. máster;* cō'răm măgĭs'trō, *befóre* or *in the présence of the máster.*

Al'so, the prepositions *in, with, from, by;* and the word *than,* áfter the compárative degreé, are signs of the áblative case.

GENDERS AND ARTICLES.

GEN'DERS of nouns are three; námely, the másculine, the féminine, and the neúter.

AR'TICLES[14] are úsed in Grámmar, to denóte the génder of nouns; and are thus declíned:—

SINGULAR.

	Másculine.	Féminine.	Neúter.
Nóminative	Hĭc	hăēc	hŏc
Génitive	Hū'jŭs,	*of all génders*	
Dátive	Huĭc,	*of all génders*	
Accúsative	Hŭnc	hānc	hŏc
Vócative	——	——	——
Ab'lative	Hōc	hāc	hōc

PLURAL.

	Másculine.	Féminine.	Neúter.
Nóminative	Hī	hǣ	hǣc
Génitive	Hō'rŭm	hā'rŭm	hō'rŭm
Dátive	Hīs,	*of all génders*	
Accúsative	Hōs	hās	hǣc
Vócative	——	——	——
Ab'lative	Hīs,	*of all génders.*	

---

[14] Though the Greeks emplóyed árticles in their lánguage, yet in the Látin tongue (stríctly speáking) árticles were néver úsed. The demónstrative prónoun *hĭc, hæc, hŏc,* by mány impróperly cálled an árticle, was sómetimes emplóyed, as it still is, to distínguish the génders of nouns. *Hĭc,* then, is the sign of the másculine génder; *hæc* of the féminine; and *hŏc,* of the neúter: so, *hĭc ĕt hæc* will signify the cómmon of two génders, that is, both the másculine and féminine génders únder one terminátion; *hĭc, hæc, hŏc,* the cómmon of three génders, as fĕ'lĭx, *háppy;* so likewise, *hĭc aŭt hæc,* the doúbtful génder, that is, a génder várying betwíxt másculine and féminine, as păm'pĭ-nŭs, *a vine-leaf,* indifferently féminine or másculine: again, *hĭc aŭt hŏc* will signify the doúbtfully másculine or neúter génder, as vŭl'gŭs, *the rábble;* and lástly, *hæc aŭt hŏc,* the doúbtfully féminine and neúter.

Nouns declíned with the two árticles *hĭc* and *hæc* are cálled cómmon, that is, are of the másculine and féminine génder: as, *hic ̀et hæc* pă'rēns, *a párent, fáther or móther.*

Nouns are cálled doúbtful, when declíned with the árticle *hĭc* or *hæc:* as, *hic aūt hæc* ān'guĭs, *a snake.*

Some nouns are álso cálled épicene; that is, when únder one árticle both séxes are sígnified; as *hĭc* pās'sĕr, *a spárrow ;* *hæc* ă'quĭlă, *an éagle:* both male and fémale.

DECLENSION OF NOUNS SUBSTANTIVE.

There are five declénsions of súbstantives, distínguished by the énding of the génitive case.

The first declénsion [15] makes the génitive and dátive cáses síngular to end in *ae* díphthong, (-æ); as,

		SINGULAR.	
N.	*hæc*	Mū'-să,	*a song,*
G.	*hújus*	Mū'-sæ,[16]	*of a song,*
D.	*huïc*	Mū'-sæ,	*to a song,*
A.	*hanc*	Mū'-săm,	*a song,*
V.	*O*	Mū'-să,	*O song,*
A.	*ab hắc*	Mū'-sā,	*from a song.*

[15] This declénsion has four terminátions, -ă, -ē, -ās, and -ēs, whereóf the first ónly is púrely Látin ; the remaíning three, Greek. Of nouns énding in -ă, likewise, mány are of Greek órigin. Látin nouns in -ă of the first declénsion are for the most part féminine : but some are másculine ; óthers are cómmon ; and óthers, doúbtful : one, pās'-chă, *the feast of the pássover,* is said to be neúter. Nouns in ē- of this declénsion are withoút excéption féminine ; and nouns in -ās, and in -ēs, másculine.

[16] The génitive case of the first declénsion in Látin ánciently énded in -ā'ĭ, and sómetimes in -ās; thus of the nóminative vī'tă, *life,* was fórmed the génitive vītā'ĭ, *of life:* and in like mánner the génitive of aū'ră, *a breeze or gale,* was eíther aūrā'ĭ or aū'rās, *of a breeze or a gale.* Whenéver the vówel *i,* or the líquid *r,* precéded the terminátional -ă, of the nóminative, then the génitive énded in -ās préferably to -ā'ĭ ; as, nóminative fī'lĭă, *a daúghter,* génitive fīlĭ'ās, ráther than fīlĭā'ĭ, *of a daúghter ;* but áfterwards, fī'lĭæ, préferably to the óther two. The noun fămĭ'lĭă, howéver, génerally retaíns -ās in the génitive case, when joíned to pă'tĕr, *a fáther,* or to mā'tĕr, *a móther ;* as păt'ĕr fămĭ'lĭās, *the fáther of the fámily or máster of the house ;* pă'trĭs fămĭ'lĭās, *of the fáther of the fámily or máster of the house.*

Most nouns in -ē, -ās, and -ēs of the first declénsion are próper names, and cónsequently séldom, or néver, admít of the plúral númber ; but some few are cómmon nouns :—as, for exámple, ŏ'dē, *an ode, or a lýric*

PLURAL.

N.	*kæ*	Mū-sæ,	*songs,*
G.	*hárum*	Mū-sā′rŭm,[17]	*of songs,*
D.	*his*	Mū′-sīs,[18]	*to songs,*
A.	*has*	Mū′-sās,	*songs,*
V.	*O*	Mū′-sæ,	*O songs,*
A.	*ab his*	Mū′-sīs,	*from songs.*

song; ĕpĭ′tŏmē, *an abrídgement;* tĭă′răs, *a túrban, or sash for the head;* zĭ′phĭas, *a sword-fish;* pўrĭ′tēs, *a fire-stone;* ăchā′tēs, *an ágate:* these, howéver, when plúral, differ in no respéct, as to their terminátions, from the fórmula of nouns púrely Látin.

In the síngular númber, nouns in ē-, -ās, and -ēs are declíned in the mánner fóllowing :—

Mū′sĭcē, *músic,*	Bŏ′rēas, *the north-wind,*	Trĭŏr′chēs, *a búzzard.*
N. mū′sĭ-cē	N. bŏ′rĕ-ās	N. trĭŏr′-chēs
G. mū′sĭ-cēs	G. bŏ′rĕ-ē	G. trĭŏr′-chē
D. mū′sĭ-cē	D. bŏ′rĕ-ē	D. trĭŏr′-chē
A. mū′sĭ-cēn	A. bŏ′rĕ-ān *vèl* ām	A. trĭŏr′-chēn
V. mū′sĭ-cē	V. bŏ′rĕ-ā	V. trĭŏr′-chē *vèl* -chā
A. mū′sĭ-cē	A. bŏ′rĕ-ā	A. trĭŏr′-chē *vèl* -chā.

Mány Greek names in -ē of the first declénsion, have álso the Látin terminátion -ă, and are inflécted accórdingly both ways: as Hē′lĕnē *vèl* Hĕ′lĕnă, *Hélen;* Pēnĕ′lŏpē *vèl* Pēnĕ′lŏpă, *Penélopë:* these make -ēs or -aē in the génitive, -ē or -aē in the dátive, -ēn vèl -ăm in the accúsative, and so forth.

All próper names in -ās of this declénsion, as Ǣnē′ās, Lў′cĭdās, Ă̄mўn′tās, are declíned like bŏ′rēas: but some cómmon nouns in -ās and ēs have álso the terminátion -ă, and are declíned like mū′să. To the terminátion -ēs belóng all patronýmic nouns in -dēs, as Pēlī′dēs, *son of Péleus,* Ǣă′cĭdēs, *descéndant of Æ′acus;* but these are sómetimes found, líkewise, of the third declénsion: álso to the first declénsion belóng séveral nouns, próper as well as cómmon, in -stēs and in -tēs: these have génerally -ă in the vócative, as Thўēs′tēs, *vócative* ō Thўēs′tă ; Thērsī′tēs, *vócative* ō Thērsī′tă. Greek names in -ă, excépt such as have ē- álso, óften form the accúsative in -ăn ráther than in -ăm: as Ĭphĭ-gĕnī′ă, *accúsative* Ĭphĭgĕnī′ăn, ráther than Ĭphĭgĕnī′ăm ; Ǣgī′nă, *accúsative* Ǣgī′năn, ráther than Ǣgī′năm.

[17] The terminátion -ā′rŭm of the génitive case plúral of the first declénsion, as well as that of ō′rŭm of the sécond, is not unfréquently contrácted ínto -ŭm, by sýncopë and crásis; thus we read tērrĭ′gĕnŭm, for tērrĭgĕnā′rŭm.

[18] The fóllowing nouns have -ā′bŭs ráther than -īs, in the dátive and áblative plúral, to distínguish them, in those cáses, from their másculines of the sécond declénsion :—

ă′nĭmă,	*the soul*	ĕ′quă,	*a mare*	mū′lă, *a she-mule*
ă′sĭnă,	*a she-ass*	fă′mŭlă,	*a maid-sérvant*	nā′tă, *a daúghter*
dĕ′ă,	*a góddess*	fī′lĭă,	*a daúghter*	sĕr′vă, *a fémale slave*
dŏ′mĭnă, *a lády*		lībĕr′tă,	*a freed-wóman*	sŏ′cĭă, *a she-compánion*

The sécond declénsion [19] makes the génitive case síngular to end in -*ī*; as,

N.	hic	Măgĭs'-tĕr,	a máster,
G.	hújus	Măgĭs'-trī,	of a máster,
D.	huic	Măgĭs'-trō,	to a máster,
A.	hunc	Măgĭs'-trŭm,	a máster,
V.	O	Măgĭs'-tĕr,	O máster,
A.	ab hóc	Măgĭs'-trō,	by a máster.

N.	hi	Măgĭs'-trī,	másters,
G.	hórum	Măgĭs'-tro'rŭm, [20]	of másters,
D.	his	Măgĭs'-trīs,	to másters,
A.	hos	Măgĭs'-trōs,	másters,
V.	O	Măgĭs'-trī,	O másters,
A.	ab his	Măgĭs'-trīs,	by másters.

[19] The sécond declénsion has séven (or more próperly speáking, ten) terminátions: viz. -*ĕr*, -*ēr*, -*ĭr*, -*ŭr*, -*ŭs*, -*ūs*, -*ŭm*, -*ŏs*, -*ōs*, -*ŏn*. Of these the last three, námely, -*ŏs*, -*ōs*, -*ŏn*, are Greek; as is likewise -*ūs*: and of the sécond (-*ēr*) and third (-*ir*) few exámples occúr beyónd Ĭ'bēr, *a Spániard, or nátive of Ibéria*; vir, *a man or húsband*; with their cómpounds, Cĕl'tĭbēr, *a Celtibérian*; dŭŭm'vĭr, *one of the duúmvirate*, trĭŭm'vĭr, *one of the triúmvirate*, and the plúral noun dĕcĕm'vĭrī, *the ten*, that is, *the ten men in authórity, or cónsular mágistrates*: in -*ŭr* there is ónly the másculine génder of the ádjective să'tŭr, să'tŭră, să'tŭrŭm, *full*, fórmed by apócopë from să'tŭrŭs. The Látin terminátions, thérefore, more fréquently met with, are these three, -*ĕr*, -*ŭs*, and -*ŭm*. Nouns énding in -*ĕr*, with véry few excéptions, drop the ĕ in the génitive case síngular, and in all cáses deríved from it: the excéptions to this, are gĕ'nĕr, *a son-in-law*; sŏ'cĕr, *a fáther-in-law*; pŭ'ĕr, *a boy*; prēs'bȳtĕr, *an élder*; ăr'mĭgĕr, *an ármour-beárer*; ădŭl'tĕr, *an adúlterer*; fūr'cĭfĕr, *a knave*, and the plúral noun lĭ'bĕrī, *children*: with the three próper names, Lĭ'bĕr, *Bácchus*; Mŭl'cĭbĕr, *Vúlcan*, and Lū'cĭfĕr, *the mórningstar*. Séveral ádjectives in -*ĕr*, howéver, retaín the ĕ, as tĕ'nĕr, *ténder*, lĭ'bĕr, *free*: but óthers rejéct it, as nĭ'gĕr, *black*, pŭl'chĕr, *fair*. The géntile noun Ĭ'bēr, and its cómpound Cĕl'tĭbēr, retaín the long ē, and make Ĭbē'rī and Cĕltĭbē'rī, in the génitive case. Mány Greek names énding in -*eūs*, and which ríghtly belóng to the third declénsion, are sómetimes transférred to the sécond with a resolútion of the terminátional díphthong ínto -*eŭs*: for exámple, Mŏr'pheūs (génitive, Mŏr'phĕŏs,) of the third declénsion, óften becómes Mŏr'phĕŭs (génitive, Mŏr'phĕī, and by contráction, Mŏr'pheī *vel* Mŏr'phī,) máking in the accúsative, Mŏr'phĕŭm or Mŏr'phĕŏn.

[20] The terminátion -*ōrŭm* of the génitive case plúral of this declénsion

Observátion 1st. The nóminative and vócative cáses of nouns are for the most part alíke in both númbers. But when the nóminative case síngular of the sécond declénsion ends in *-ŭs,* the vócative ends in *-ĕ :* as,

SINGULAR.

N.	*hic*	Dŏ'mĭ-nŭs,	*a lord,*
G.	*hújus*	Dŏ'mĭ-nī	*of a lord,*
D.	*huic*	Dŏ'mĭ-nō,	*to a lord,*
A.	*hunc*	Dŏ'mĭ-nŭm,	*a lord,*
V.	*O*	Dŏ'mĭ-nĕ,²¹	*O lord,*
A.	*ab hóc*	Dŏ'mĭ-nō,	*by a lord.*

PLURAL.

N.	*hi*	Dŏ'mĭ-nī,	*lords,*
G.	*hórum*	Dŏmĭ-nō'rŭm,	*of lords,*
D.	*his*	Dŏ'mĭ-nīs,	*to lords,*
A.	*hos*	Dŏ'mĭ-nōs,	*lords,*
V.	*O*	Dŏ'mĭ-nī,	*O lords,*
A.	*ab his*	Dŏ'mĭ-nīs,	*by lords.*

Observátion 2nd. Dĕ'ŭs, *God,* makes "O Dĕ'ŭs" in the vócative case síngular: ²² álso, the próper name of a man énding in *-ĭŭs* makes *-ī;* as, Gĕōr'gĭŭs, *George;* vócative, Gĕōr'gī. In like mánner, fī'lĭŭs, *a son,* makes fī'lī; and gĕ'nĭŭs, *a génius,* gĕ'nī.²³

---

is óften contrácted into *-ŭm* by sýncopë and crásis :—thus, for vĭrō'rŭm we fréquently find vĭ'rŭm ; and for dĭvō'rŭm, dĭ'vŭm.

²¹ The póets occásionally, and the próse wrīters more rárely, retáin *-ŭs* in the vócative case, áfter the At'tic mánner : as flū'vĭŭs, *O stream ;* pŏ'pŭlŭs, *O péople ;* ăg'nŭs, *O lamb.*

²² In the plúral númber, dĕ'ŭs is thus declíned :—

N.	dĕ'ī,	but, more cómmonly, dī'ī, and by crásis,	dî	*gods,*
G.	dĕō'rŭm, or by sýncopë and crásis,		dĕ'ûm	*of gods,*
D.	dĕ'īs,	but, more cómmonly, dī'īs, and by crásis,	dis	*to gods,*
A.	dĕ'ōs,			*gods,*
V.	dĕ'ī,	but, more cómmonly, dī'ī, and by crásis,	dî	*O gods,*
A.	dĕ'īs,	but, more cómmonly, dī'īs, and by crásis,	dis	*from gods.*

²³ Althoúgh fī'lĭŭs, *a son,* has ríghtly fī'lī in the vócative case, and gĕ'nĭŭs has ríghtly gĕ'nī, yet the vócative of both the one and the óther is sómetimes like the nóminative. O'ther nouns in *-ĭŭs,* whéther they be súbstantives or ádjectives. not éven excépting the ádjectives deríved from próper names, change *-ŭs* into *-ĕ* in the vócative ; as, cŭbĭcŭlā'rĭŭs, *a chámberlain,* vócative cŭbĭcŭlā'rĭĕ ; pī'ŭs, *gódly,* vócative pī'ĕ ;

Observátion 3rd. Nouns of the neúter génder are génerally of the sécond or third declénsion; and make the nóminative, the accúsative, and the vócative cáses alíke, in both númbers:—and in the plúral númber these cáses end all in -*ă*: as,

SINGULAR.

N.	*hoc*	Rēg'-nŭm,	*a kíngdom,*
G.	*hújus*	Rēg'-nī,	*of a kíngdom,*
D.	*huic*	Rēg'-nō,	*to a kíngdom,*
A.	*hoc*	Rēg'-nŭm,	*a kíngdom,*
V.	*O*	Rēg'-nŭm,	*O kíngdom,*
A.	*ab hóc*	Rēg'-nō,	*by a kíngdom,*

PLURAL.

N.	*hæc*	Rēg'-nă,	*kíngdoms,*
G.	*hórum*	Rēg-nō'rŭm,	*of kíngdoms,*
D.	*his*	Rēg'-nīs,	*to kíngdoms,*
A.	*hæc*	Rēg'-nă,	*kíngdoms,*
V.	*O*	Rēg'-nă,	*O kíngdoms,*
A.	*ab his*	Rēg'-nīs,	*by kíngdoms.*

Jūnō'nĭŭs, *pertaíning únto Júno,* vócative Jūnō'nĭĕ ; Dē'lĭŭs, *Délian,* vócative Dē'lĭĕ.

Nouns in -*ŭs*, -*ōs*, -*ūs*, and -*ŏn*, of the sécond declénsion, are inflécted, in the síngular númber, as fóllows :—

Āndrŏ'gĕŏs, *Andrógeus;* Pă'phŏs, *a cíty of Cýprus,* Pān'thŭs, *Pantheus.* I'lĭŏn, *Troy.*

N.	Āndrŏ'gĕŏs	Pă'phŏs	Pān'thŭs	I'lĭŏn
G.	Āndrŏ'gĕŏ *vĕl* -gĕī	Pă'phī	Pān'thī *vĕl* -thū	I'lĭī
D.	Āndrŏ'gĕŏ	Pă'phō	Pān'thō	I'lĭō
A.	Āndrŏ'gĕŏn *vĕl* -gĕō	Pă'phŏn	Pān'thŭm *vĕl* -thūn	I'lĭŏn
V.	Āndrŏ'gĕŏs *vĕl* -gĕō	Pă'phŏs *vĕl* -phĕ	Pān'thū	I'lĭŏn
A.	Āndrŏ'gĕŏ	Pă'phō	Pān'thō	I'lĭō

It should be nóticed that séveral names in -*ŭs* have líkewise the termination -*ŭs;* and cónsequently make the accúsative in -*ŭm*, as well as -*ŏn*. Mány names in -*ŏn*, have the termination -*ŭm;* and this they of course retaín in the accúsative and vócative síngular. The noun I'lĭŏn has, besídes the termination -*ŭm*, that of -*ŏs*, and is then féminine. Some few nouns, as, bār'bĭtŏn, *a harp,* neúter, have álso the termination -*ŏs,* másculine or féminine ; and -*ŭs,* másculine.

In the plúral númber, Greek nouns of the sécond declénsion are declíned áfter the mánner of Látin nouns; those in -*ōs* and -*ŏs*, like nouns in -*ŭs;* and those in -*ŏn*, like nouns in -*ŭm:* excépt that they have -*ōn*, ráther than -*ō'rŭm*, in the génitive plúral : thus, būcŏ'lĭcŏn, *a pástoral song,* has (génitive plúral) būcŏ'lĭcōn, ráther than būcŏlĭcō'rŭm,

The third declénsion [24] makes the génitive case síngular to end in -*is* : as,

N.	*hæc*	Nū´-bēs,	*a cloud,*
G.	*hújus*	Nū´-bĭs,	*of a cloud,*
D.	*huic*	Nū´-bī,	*to a cloud,*

of pástoral songs. A few Greek names of men in -*ēs* of the third de-clénsion, which have líkewise -*eūs* in the nóminative, take sómetimes the form of the Sécond Declénsion, like nouns of the third which have -*eūs* ónly : thus, Ăchīl'lēs, *vel* Ăchīl'leūs, *Achĭllĕs*, becómes Ăchīl'lĕŭs, géni-tive Ăchīl'lĕī *vel* Ăchīl'leī, and, by crásis, Ăchīl-'lī ; the ádjective is Ăchĭllē'ŭs, Ăchĭllē'ă, Ăchĭllē'ŭm. In like mánner, Ŭlȳs'sēs, *vel* Ŭlȳs'-seūs, or (as it is sómetimes wrítten), Ŭlīx'ēs *vel* Ŭlīx-eūs, *Ulýssĕs*, be-cómes Ŭlȳs'sĕŭs *vel* Ŭlīx'ĕŭs *vel* Ŭlīx'ŭs, génitive Ŭlȳs'sĕī *vel* Ŭlīx'ĕī *vel* Ŭlīx'ī.

Greek names of this declénsion in -*ūs* and -*pūs* have -ī in the génitive, and (more rárely) -*ŭ* ; but they are for the most part álso of the third declénsion, the fórmer terminátion becóming -*eūs*, with -*ĕŏs* in the géni-tive ; thus Pān'thūs becómes Pān'theūs, Pān'thĕŏs ; and the látter, máking the génitive in -*pŏdĭs*, as Pŏ'lȳpūs, Œ'dĭpūs, Mĕlām'pūs, génitive Pŏlỹ'pŏdĭs, Œ'dĭ'pŏdĭs, Mĕlām'pŏdĭs. These, when of the sécond de-clénsion, have sómetimes -*ŭs* in the nóminative, as though cóming from the Dóric díalect.

[24] of nouns súbstantive, considerably more than one half will be found to be of the third declénsion ; for its final sýllables amoúnt to úpwards of ninety ; and its final létters to thirteén : námely, *a, e, i, o, y, c, d, l, n, r, s, t, x*. Of these, *a, e, n, r, o*, and *s*, are cómmon to the third, and some of the óther declénsions :—that is, *a* and *e* are cómmon to it with the first ; *n* and *r*, with the sécond ; *o*, with the fourth ; and *s* with all the óther four. The séven final létters, then, *c, d, i, l, t, y*, and *x*, are pecúliar to this declénsion. All nouns of the third declénsion énding in *ă* are of Greek órigin and of the neúter génder ; the *ă*, álso, is inváriably precéded by the létter *m* ; as in stĕm'mă, stĕm'mătĭs, *a stem or pédigree*. Nouns in -*ĕ*, and in -*ĭ*, are neúter ; the látter, indeclínable in both númbers : plúrals in -*ē*, as cē'tĕ, *whales*, are líkewise neúter, and inde-clínable. Of nouns in *c* there are ónly two, lăc, *milk*, and ă'lēc, or hă'lēc, *an ánchovy*, also *a píckle*, or, as some say, *a hérring*. The nouns in *d* consist sólely of a few próper names of men, as Dă'vīd. Some óther Hébrew names of várious éndings, such as Jŏb, Ră'phăĕl, Să'ŭl, Bĕ'thlĕm, Sēth, Ăm'răm, belóng to this declénsion, but cánnot be pró-perly clássed with Látin words. The more cópious final létters of nouns púrely Látin are *o, n, r, s*, and *x* : the more cópious final sýllables are ĭŏ, -dŏ, -gŏ, -ĕn, [nouns in -ĕn are Greek,] -ĕr, [nouns in -ĕr are of Greek extráction,] -ŏr, -ās [all nouns in -ăs are Greek, and so are mány in -ăs,] -ēs and -ĕs, [nouns in -ĕs, máking -ĕ'tĭs in the génitive case, (excépt quī'ēs, *rest*, and its compóund rĕ'quĭēs,) are Greek, and of the másculine génder ; nouns in -ēs, not increásing, are líkewise Greek, but of the

A.	*hanc*	Nū'-bĕm,[25]	*a cloud,*
V.	*O*	Nū'-bēs,	*O cloud,*
A.	*ab hác*	Nū'-bĕ,[26]	*by a cloud.*

neúter génder,] -ĭs, and - īs ; -ŏs and -ōs ; -ŭs and ūs ; -ns, -ps, -rs, ĕx, and īx.

[25] A few Látin nouns in -ĭs have -ĭm in the accúsative case ; such as, sĭ'tĭs, *thirst* ; tūs'sĭs, *a cough* ; rā'vĭs, *hoárseness* ; cŭ'cŭmĭs, *a cúcumber* , bū'rĭs, *the beam of a plough* ; ămŭs'sĭs, *a máson's rule* ; mĕphī'tĭs, *foul air* : to which may be ádded, vīs, *strength* or *force* :—líkewise all próper names of pláces, and of rívers, ending in -ĭs ; but these sómetimes have -ĭn ráther than -ĭm in the accúsative case. And all Greek cómmon nouns in -ĭs, fórming the génitive in -ŏs pure, that is, in -ŏs precéded by a vówel, make the accúsative in -ĭm or -ĭn ; as hæ'rĕsĭs, génitive hærĕ'-scŏs, *héresy*, accúsative hæ'rĕsĭm *vel* hæ'rĕsĭn. In like mánner Greek nouns in -ȳs, whereóf the génitive ends in -ŏs pure, have -ȳm or -ȳn, in the accúsative. To those add all másculine Greek names in -ĭs, máking -dĭs or -dŏs in the génitive ; for these have more fréquently -ĭm or -ĭn (though sómetimes -dĕm, but néver -dă) in the accúsative : thus, Pă'rĭs, génitive Pă'rĭdĭs *vel* Pă'rĭdŏs, accúsative Pă'rĭm *vel* Pă'rĭn, ráther than Părī'dĕm ; but in no ínstance Pă'rĭdă.

Mány Látin nouns énding in -ĭs have éither -ĕm, or ĭm, in the accúsative case : such are, pĕl'vĭs, *a básin* ; clā'vĭs, *a key* ; nă'vĭs, *a ship* ; pŭp'pĭs, *the stern* or *poop* ; rēs'tĭs, *a cord* or *rope* ; tūr'rĭs, *a tówer* ; sĕcū'rĭs, *an axe* ; strĭ'gĭlĭs, *a cúrry-comb* ; ăquā'lĭs, *a wáter-éwer* ; cŭ'tĭs, *the skin* ; fĕ'brĭs, *a féver* ; aū'rĭs, *the ear* ; sēmĕn'tĭs, *seed-time* ; and a few óthers : to which may be ádded one noun in -ns, námely, lēns, *a léntil.*

[26] Nouns which have the accúsative in -ĭm or -ĭn have -ī (Greek nouns -ĭ) in the áblative : as, vīs, *strength* or *force*, áblative vī, *with strength* or *force* : and those which have -ĕm or -ĭm in the accúsative, have -ĕ or -ī in the áblative ; thus, nă'vĭs, *a ship*, accúsative nă'vĕm *vel* nă'vĭm, áblative nă'vĕ *vel* nă'vī :—but rēs'tĭs and cŭ'tĭs have -ĕ ónly ; strĭ'gĭlĭs and sĕcū'rĭs, óftener -ī than -ĕ. Cănā'lĭs, *a chánnel*, vēc'tĭs, *a léver*, and bĭpĕn'nĭs, *a hálbert* or *pole-axe*, make the áblative génerally in -ī : the fóllowing nouns have -ĕ or -ī indífferently ; *viz.* ăm'nĭs, *a river* ; ăn'guĭs, *a snake* ; ă'vĭs, *a bird* ; cī'vĭs, *a cítizen* ; clăs'sĭs, *a fleet* fī'nĭs, *an end* ; fūs'tĭs, *a rope* ; ĭg'nĭs, *fire* ; pōs'tĭs, *a door-post* ; un'guĭs, *a nail of the hand* or *foot* : to which may be ádded, ĭm'bĕr, *a shówer* ; ŏc'cĭpŭt, *the hínder part of the head* ; rūs, *the coúntry* ; sŭpĕl'lĕx, *hóuse-hold fúrniture* ; sōrs, *chance*, with a few óthers : álso, the names of some cíties, as Cārthā'gŏ, *Cárthage*, áblative Cārthā'gĭnĕ *vel* Cārthā'gĭnī. The names of months, though they have -ĕm in the accúsative, make the áblative álways in -ī. Neúters, too, in -ăl, -ăr, and -ār (see note 30, below) have, with véry few excéptions, -ī in the áblative : of séveral nouns, álso, in this declénsion, the dátive case is not unfréquently (by poétic lícence) usúrped for the áblative. Lástly, all nouns énding in -ĕ in the nóminative case (the names of towns excépted) have -ī in the áblative : as, mă'rĕ *the sea*, áblative mă'rī ; rĕ'tĕ, *a net*, áblative rĕ'tī.

PLURAL.

N.	*hæ*	Nŭ′-bēs,	*clouds,*
G.	*hárum*	Nŭ′-bĭŭm,²⁷	*of clouds,*
D.	*his*	Nŭ′-bĭbŭs,	*to clouds,*
A.	*has*	Nŭ′-bēs,²⁸	*clouds,*
V.	*O*	Nŭ′-bēs,	*O clouds,*
A.	*ab his*	Nŭ′-bĭbŭs,	*from clouds.*

Mány nouns of this declénsion ²⁹ increáse in the génitive case ; as in the fóllowing exámples.

SINGULAR.

N.	*hic*	Lă′-pĭs,	*a stone,*
G.	*hújus*	Lă′-pĭdĭs,	*of a stone,*
D.	*huic*	Lă′-pĭdĭ,	*to a stone,*
A.	*hunc*	Lă′-pĭdĕm,	*a stone,*
V.	*O*	Lă′-pĭs,	*O stone,*
A.	*ab hóc*	Lă′-pĭdĕ,	*from a stone.*

---

²⁷ Nouns in -*ēs* and in -*ĭs* not increásing in the génitive case síngular, and nouns énding in *s* if a cónsonant immédiately precédes the *s*, or in *x* with the same restríction, álso mónosyllables in -*ās*, and nouns in -*ĭs*, have génerally -*ĭŭm* in the génitive plúral : to which add că′rŏ, *flesh ;* cŏr, *the heart ;* cōs, *a whétstone ;* dōs, *a dówery ;* faūx, *the gorge or éntrance of the gúllet ;* lār, *a dwélling* or *fire-side ;* bēs, *eight oúnces ;* lïn′tĕr, *a bark ;* mūs, *a mouse ;* nïx, *snow ;* nōx, *night ;* ŏs, *a bone ;* ŭ′tĕr, *a bóttle* or *bládder ;* vēn′tĕr, *the bélly,* and most nouns which have -*ī,* or -*ĭ,* in the áblative case síngular : excépt ōc′cĭpŭt. But of nouns in -*ēs* and -*ĭs* the fóllowing are to be excépted, as háving -*ŭm* : vā′tēs, *a próphet* or *bard ;* jŭ′vĕnĭs, *a young pérson ;* pā′nĭs, *bread* or *a loaf ;* rŭ′dĭs, *a foil ;* vŏ′lŭcrĭs, *a bird ;* că′nĭs, *a dog* or *bitch :* also, ă′pĭs, *a bee,* and the plúral noun ŏ′pēs, *wealth.* And of nouns énding in *s* precéded by a cónsonant, must be excépted all nouns énding in -*ēbs,* -*ēps,* and -*ōps :* álso hy̆′ems, *wínter ;* and all words of Greek órigin ; as gry̆ps, *a gríffin ;* Ā′rābs, *an Arábian.* Here, too, it may be nóticed that -*ĭŭm,* of the génitive case plúral, of this declénsion, is fréquently contrácted ínto -*úm* by the fígure crásis ; as, ïnfăn′tūm, *of ínfants,* for ïnfăn′tĭŭm.

²⁸ When the génitive plúral ends in -*ĭŭm,* the accúsative óptionally ends in -*eīs* (and by contráction in -*ĭs*) ínstead of -*ēs :* thus we find pār′teīs, and pār′tïs, for pār′tēs ; and ŏm′neīs or ŏm′nïs for ŏm′nēs.

²⁹ Greek nouns of this declénsion, increásing in the génitive case, are mány, and of várious terminátions. Of these, we shall ónly nótice the chief ; díviding them ínto nouns cómmon, and nouns próper. Greek cómmon nouns, more fréquently occúrring, and in -*ēn,* -*īn,* -*ēr,* -*ăs,* -*ās,* -*ēs,* -*ĭs,* -*mă,* -*ōs,* and -*y̆s :* as, for exámple, rēn, rē′nŏs, *a kídney ;* dēl′phïn, dēlphī′nŏs, *a dólphin ;* crā′tēr, crātē′rŏs, *a bowl* or *góblet ;* lām′păs, lām′pădŏs, *a lamp ;* ă′dāmăs, ădămān′tŏs, *a díamond ;* lĕ′bēs, lĕbē′tŏs, *a caúldron ;* ĭas′pĭs, ĭas′pĭdŏs, *a jásper ;* bă′sĭs, bă′sĕŏs, *a base ;* pŏĕ′mă, pŏĕ′mătŏs, *a póem ;* hē′rōs, hērō′ŏs, *a héro ;* chlă′my̆s, chlă′my̆dŏs, *a*

PLURAL.

N.	*hi*	Lă'-pĭdēs.	*stones,*
G.	*hórum*	Lă-pĭdŭm,	*of stones,*
D.	*his*	Lă-pĭ'dĭbŭs,	*to stones,*
A.	*hos*	Lă'-pĭdēs,	*stones,*
V.	*O*	Lă'-pĭdēs,	*O stones,*
A.	*ab his*	Lă-pĭ'dĭbŭs,	*from stones.*

cloak or *mántle,* and chĕ'lȳs, chĕ'lȳŏs, *a harp* or *lute.* These we shall décline in the órder in which we have given them : and, as the Látins génerally preférred -*ĭs* to -*ŏs* in the énding of the génitive case, we snall (with the pérfect understánding that -*ŏs* is the true original) adópt the terminátion -*ĭs* in most ínstances.

Declénsion of Greek cómmon nouns.

	Síngular.	*Plúral.*		*Síngular.*	*Plúral.*
N.	rēn	rē'nĕs		dĕl'phĭn	dĕlphĭ'nĕs
G.	rē'nĭs	rē'nŭm		dĕlphĭ'nĭs	dĕlphĭ'nŭm
D.	rē'nĭ	rē'nĭbŭs		dĕlphĭ'nĭ	dĕlphĭ'nĭbŭs
A.	rē'nă	rē'năs		dĕlphĭ'nă	dĕlphĭ'năs
V.	rēn	rē'nĕs		dĕl'phĭn	dĕlphĭ'nĕs
A.	rē'nĕ	rē'nĭbŭs		dĕlphĭ'nĕ	dĕlphĭ'nĭbŭs

	Síngular.	*Plúral.*		*Síngular.*	*Plúral.*
N.	cra'tēr	cratē'rĕs		lăm'păs	lăm'pădĕs
G.	cratē'rĭs	cratē'rŭm		lăm'pădĭs	lăm'pădŭm
D.	cratē'rĭ	cratē'rĭbŭs		lăm'pădĭ	lămpă'dĭbŭs
A.	cratē'ră	cratē'răs		lăm'pădă	lăm'pădăs
V.	cra'tēr	cratē'rĕs		lăm'păs	lăm'pădĕs
A.	cratē'rĕ	cratē'rĭbŭs		lăm'pădĕ	lămpă'dĭbŭs

	Síngular.	*Plúral.*		*Síngular.*	*Plúral.*
N.	ă'dămăs	ădămăn'tĕs		lĕ'bēs	lĕbĕ'tĕs
G.	ădămăn'tĭs	ădămăn tŭm		lĕbĕ'tĭs	lĕbĕ'tŭm
D.	ădămăn'tĭ	ădămăn'tĭbŭs		lĕbĕ'tĭ	lĕbĕ'tĭbŭs
A.	ădămăn'tă	ădămăn'tĕs		lĕbĕ'tă	lĕbĕ'tăs
V.	ădămăs	ădămăn'tĕs		lĕ'bēs	lĕbĕ'tĕs
A.	ădămăn'tĕ	ădămăn'tĭbŭs		lĕbĕ'tĕ	lĕbĕ'tĭbŭs

	Síngular.	*Plúral.*		*Síngular.*	*Plúral.*
N.	ĭas'pĭs	ĭas'pĭdĕs		bă'sĭs	bă'sĕōs *vel* -sĭs
G.	ĭas'pĭdĭs	ĭas'pĭdŭm		bă'sĕōs *vel* -sĭs	bă'sĭum *vel* sĕōn
D.	ĭas'pĭdĭ	ĭaspĭ'dĭbŭs		bă'sĕĭ *vel* sĭ	bă'sĭbŭs
A.	ĭas'pĭdă	ĭas'pĭdăs		bă'sĭn *vel* ĭm	bă'sĕĕs *vel* -sēs
V.	ĭas'pĭs	ĭas'pĭdĕs		bă'sĭs	bă'sĕĕs *vel* -sēs
A.	ĭas'pĭdĕ	ĭaspĭ'dĭbŭs		bă'sĕĭ *vel* -sĭ	bă'sĭbŭs

SINGULAR.

N.	*hoc*	Ŏ'-pŭs,	*a work,*
G.	*hújus*	Ŏ'-pĕrĭs,	*of a work,*
D.	*huic*	Ŏ'-pĕrī,	*to a work,*

	Síngular.	*Plúral.*	*Síngular.*	*Plúral.*
N.	pŏĕ'mă	pŏĕ'mătă	hĕ'rōs	hĕrō'ĕs
G.	pŏĕ'mătĭs	pŏĕ'mătōn *vel*-tūm	hĕrō'ĭs	hĕrō'ūm
D.	pŏĕ'mătĭ	pŏĕ'mătĭs *vel*-tĭbŭs	hĕrō'ĭ	hĕrō'ĭsĭ *vel* -ĭbŭs
A.	pŏĕ'mă	pŏĕ'mătă	hĕrō'ă	hĕrō'ăs
V.	pŏĕ'mă	pŏĕ'mătă	hĕ'rōs	hĕrō'ĕs
A.	pŏĕ'mătĕ	pŏĕ'mătĭs *vel*-tĭbŭs	hĕrō'ĕ	hĕrō'ĭsĭ *vel* -ĭbŭs

	Síngular.	*Plúral.*	*Síngular.*	*Plúral.*
N.	chlă'mўs	chlă'mўdĕs	chĕ'lўs	chĕ'lўĕs
G.	chlă'mўdĭs	chlă'mўdŭm	chĕ'lўŏs	chĕ'lўōn *vel* -ūm
D.	chlă'mўdĭ	chlāmў'dĭbŭs	chĕ'lўĭ *vel* -ў̄	chĕ'lўsĭ
A.	chlă'mўdă	chlă'mўdăs	chĕ'lўn	chĕ'lўăs
V.	chlă'mў	chlă'mўdĕs	chĕ'lў	chĕ'lўĕs
A.	chlă'mўdĕ	chlāmў'dĭbŭs	chĕ'lўĕ *vel* -ĭ	chĕ'lўsĭ

Like crā'tēr are declíned ā'ēr, *the air*, and æ'thēr, *the sky*, except that they increáse short, máking ā'ĕrĭs, and æ'thĕrĭs, in the génitive case, and want the plúral númber. Nouns in -ŏn, as ī'cŏn, ī'cŏnĭs, *an image*, are declíned like rēn or dĕl'phīn, but with short penúlt in the génitive case. Greek neúters in -ăr differ in nóthing in declénsion from Látin nouns of the same terminátion, except that the fínal -ĭ of the dátive is short : in the áblative case they have -ĕ.

Greek nouns which have -dŏs or -dĭs in the génitive, have fréquently -dĕm instéad of -dă in the accúsative síngular, and -dēs instéad of -dăs in the accúsative plúral, as though they were púrely Látin. Some óther Greek nouns, but more rárely, take -ĕm for -ă in the accúsative síngular, and -ēs for -ăs in the plúral. Any dátive or áblative plúral in -sĭ becómes -sĭn befóre an inítial vówel or díphthong.

Greek próper names of this declénsion end, for the most part, in -ĭs, -ăs, -ās, ēs, -eūs, -ŏs, or -ān. Of names in -ĭs, some are másculine, as Pă'rĭs, Pă'rĭdŏs, *Páris ;* and some, agaín, are féminine, as, Brīsē'ĭs, Brīsē'ĭdŏs, *Bríseïs.* These differ from one anóther in the accúsative, the másculines máking -ĭm or -ĭn or -dĕm, but néver -dă ; and the féminines máking -dĕm or -dă, but néver -ĭm or -ĭn.

Declénsion of Greek próper names in the síngular ónly.

N.	Pă'rĭs	Brīsē'ĭs	Păl'lăs	Păl'lăs
G.	Pă'rĭdŏs *vel* -dĭs	Brīsē'ĭdŏs *vel*-dĭs	Păl'lădŏs *vel* -dĭs	Pāllăn'tŏs *vel* -tĭs
D	Pă'rĭdĭ	Brīsē'ĭdĭ	Păl'lădĭ	Pāllăn'tĭ
A.	Pă'rĭn *vel* -rĭdĕm	Brīsē'ĭdă *vel* -dĕm	Păl'lădă *vel* -dĕm	Pāllăn'tă
V	Pă'rĭ	Brīsē'ĭ	Păl'lăs	Păl'lā
A.	Pă'rĭdĕ	Brīsē'ĭdĕ	Păl'lădĕ	Pāllăn'tĕ

A.	*hoc*	Ŏ'-pŭs,	*a work,*
V.	*O*	Ŏ'-pŭs,	*O work,*
A.	*ab hóc*	Ŏ'-pĕrĕ,[30]	*from a work.*

N. Ăchĭl'lĕs	Ăchĭl'lĕŭs	Sĭ'mŏĭs	Pān
G. Ăchĭl'lĭs	Ăchĭl'lĕŏs	Sĭmŏĕn'tĭs	Pa'nŏs
D. Ăchĭl'lī	Ăchĭl'lĕī *vĕl* -lĭ	Sĭmŏĕn'tĭ	Pa'nī
A. Ăchĭl'lĕm	Ăchĭl'lĕă	Sĭmŏĕn'tă	Pa'nă
V. Ăchĭl'lĕ	Ăchĭl'lĕŭ	Sĭ'mŏĭ	Pān
A. Ăchĭl'lĕ	Ăchĭl'lĕĕ *vĕl* -lē	Sĭmŏĕn'tĕ	Pa'nĕ

Próper names in *-ōs* are declíned like hē'rōs; and those in *-ўs* like chē'lўs: names of séveral óther terminátions than thóse méntioned abóve, as Cў'clŏps, Cў'clō'pĭs, *a Cýclops,* Cē'ўx, Cēў'cĭs, *a king of Thrace,* Ăstў'ănāx, Ăstўănăc'tŏs, *one of the sons of Héctor,* Tī'mōn, Tīmō'nĭs, *an Athénian misánthropist,* Chă'rōn, Chărōn'tĭs, *the férryman on the river Styx,* Cās'tŏr, Cās'tŏrĭs, and Pŏl'lūx, Pŏllū'cĭs, *two sons of Léda,* with many besídes, may be reférred to one or óther of the exámples gíven in this note. Of Greek names in *-ēs,* many are declíned like Ăchĭl'lĕs, áfter the Látin fáshion, entírely relínquishing their oríginal form: as Eūrĭ'pĭdēs, Eūrĭ'pĭdĭs, *a trágic póet of Sálamis:* with all names in *-crătēs, -gĕnēs, -thĕnēs,* and a few more: but names in *-clēs,* have eíther *-ĭs,* or *-ĕŏs* in the génitive. Some Greek names in *-ēs* of this declénsion make eíther *-ĭs* or *-ē'tĭs* in the génitive case, as Chrĕ'mēs, génitive Chrĕ'mĭs *vĕl* Chrĕmētĭs :—and some names of the first declénsion, are líkewise of the third, as Ătrīdēs, génitive Ătrī'dæ *vĕl* Ătrī'dĭs : some few, álso, are of the third and sécond, as was remárked in notes 19 and 23, ábove. Dī'dō is of the third and fourth declénsion, máking Dīdō'nĭs *vĕl* Dī'dūs in the génitive.

Althoúgh the names of pérsons and of pláces, for the most part want the plúral númber, yet when more than one of the same name are spóken of, the plúral is úsed; as in the fóllowing exámple :—

	Síngular.		*Plúral.*	
N.	Cæ'săr	*Cǽsar,*	Cæ'sărēs	*the Cǽsars,*
G.	Cæ'sărĭs	*of Çǽsar,*	Cæ'sărŭm	*of the Cǽsars,*
D.	Cæ'sărī	*to Cǽsar,*	Cæsă'rĭbŭs	*to the Cǽsars,*
A.	Cæ'sărĕm	*Cǽsar,*	Cæ'sărēs	*the Cǽsars,*
V.	Cæ'săr	*O Cǽsar,*	Cæ'sărēs	*O Cǽsars,*
A.	Cæ'sărĕ	*by Cǽsar.*	Cæsă'rĭbŭs	*by the Cǽsars.*

	Síngular.		*Plúral.*	
N.	Pī'sŏ	*Píso,*	Pīsō'nēs	*the Písocs,*
G.	Pīsō'nĭs	*of Píso,*	Pīsō'nŭm	*of the Písoes,*
D.	Pīsō'nī	*to Píso,*	Pīsō'nĭbŭs	*to the Písoes,*
A.	Pīsō'nĕm	*Píso,*	Pīsō'nēs	*the Písoes,*
V.	Pī'sŏ	*O Píso,*	Pīsō'nēs	*O Písoes,*
A.	Pīsō'nĕ	*by Píso.*	Pīsō'nĭbŭs	*by the Písoes.*

[30] We remárked in note 26, abóve, that neúters in *-ăl* and in *-ăr,* have *-ī* in the áblative síngular; but jŭ'băr, *a súnbeam,* must be ex-

PLURAL.

N.	*hæc*	Ŏ'-pĕră,[31]	*works,*
G.	*hórum*	Ŏ'-pĕrŭm,	*of works,*
D.	*his*	Ŏ-pĕ'rĭbŭs,[42]	*to works,*
A.	*hæc*	Ŏ'-pĕră,	*works,*
V.	*O*	Ŏ'-pĕră,	*O works,*
A.	*ab his*	Ŏ-pĕ'rĭbŭs,	*from works.*

SINGULAR.

N.	*hic et hæc*	Pă'-rēns,	*a parent,*
G.	*hújus*	Pă-rēn'tĭs,	*of a parent,*
D.	*huic*	Pă-rēn'tĭ,	*to a parent,*
A.	*hunc et hanc*	Pă-rēn'tĕm,	*a parent,*
V.	*O*	Pă'-rēns,	*O parent,*
A.	*ab hóc et hác*	Pă-rēn'tĕ,	*by a parent.*

PLURAL.

N.	*hi et hæ*	Pă-rēn'tēs	*parents,*
G.	*hórum et hárum*	Pă-rēn'tŭm,[33]	*of parents,*
D.	*his*	Pă-rēn'tĭbŭs,[34]	*to parents,*
A.	*hos et has*	Pă-rēn'tēs,	*parents,*
V.	*O*	Pă-rēn'tēs,	*O parents,*
A.	*ab his*	Pă-rēn'tĭbŭs,	*by parents.*

cépted : with such Greek neúters in -*ăr*, as hĕ'păr, *the líver*, nēc'tăr, *the drink of gods :* to these add mónosyllables in -*ăr :* as făr, *bread-corn*, păr, *a pair or coúple ;* lăr, *a dwélling or hoúsehold god.* But the ádjective păr, *équal*, has -ĭ ónly : and yet its cómpounds have -ĕ or -ĭ.

[31] Neúters which have -ĭ in the ablative síngular, have -ĭă in the nóminative, accúsative, and vócative plúral, and -ĭŭm (as has been alréady nóticed) in the génitive.

[32] By reférring to note 29, it will be percéived in the declénsion of pŏĕ'mă, *a póem*, that the dátive and áblative cáses plúral end in -*tĭs*, (as though of the neúter noun pŏĕ'mătŭm, pŏĕ mātī, of the sécond declénsion,) in préference to -*tĭbŭs*. All Greek nouns in -*mă* have this prediléction.

[33] The word bōs, *a cow* or *an ox*, makes bŏ'ŭm (which is évidently a contráction for bŏ'vĭŭm, as părēn'tŭm is of părēn'tĭŭm,) in the génitive plúral. The plúral noun Cœ'lĭtēs, *the inhábitants of heáven*, has cœ'lĭtŭm *vĕl* cœlĭ'tŭŭm : and in like mánner, ā'lĕs, *any large bird*, has ālĭtŭm *vĕl* ālĭ'tŭŭm.

[34] Bōs, *a cow* or *an ox*, has bŏ'bŭs (and sómetimes bū'bŭs) in place of bŏ'vĭbŭs, in the dátive and áblative cáses plúral. Ausónius gives bŏ'bŭs with the penúlt short, as if by sýncopë of the míddle sýllable of bŏ'vĭbŭs, instéad of sýncopë of the *i*, and crásis of the *ov* or *ou.*

The fourth declénsion [35] makes the génitive case síngular to end in *-ûs ;* as,

<div align="center">SINGULAR.</div>

N.	*hic*	Gră′-dŭs,	*a step,*
G.	*hújus*	Gră′-dūs,	*of a step,*
D.	*huic*	Gră′-dŭĭ,[36]	*to a step,*
A.	*hunc*	Gră′-dŭm,	*a step,*
V.	*O*	Gră′-dŭs,	*O step,*
A.	*ab hôc*	Gră′-dū,	*by a step.*

---

[35] The fourth declénsion has four terminátions, námely, *-ŭs, -ūs, -ō* and *-ū,* whereóf the first and last are Látin ; but the míddle two, Greek.

Nouns in *-ūs* of this declénsion are másculine ; nouns in *-ō* are fémi-nine ; and those in *-ū,* neúter : and they are declíned in the mánner fóllowing :

Jē′sŭs or Ĭē′sŭs, *Jésus,* ē′chō, *an écho,* cōr′nŭ, *a horn.*

	Síngular.	*Síngular.*	*Síngular.*	*Plúral.*
N.	Jē′sŭs	ē′chō	cōr′nŭ	cōr′nŭă
G.	Jē′sū	ē′chūs	cōr′nū	cōr′nŭŭm
D.	Jē′sū	ē′chō	cōr′nū	cōr′nĭbŭs
A.	Jē′sŭm	ē′chō	cōr′nŭ	cōr′nŭă
V.	Jē′sŭs *vèl* sū	ē′chō	cōr′nŭ	cōr′nŭă
A.	Jē′sū	ē′chō	cōr′nū	cōr′nĭbŭs

Mány próper names in *-ō* are declíned like ē′chō : for exámple Ār′gō, *the ship Ar'go ;* Clī′ō and Ḗ′rătō, *two of the Múses ;* Mān′tō, *a daúghter of Tirésias the seer ;* Sāp′phō, *a fámous póetess of Lésbos ;* Ī′nō, *a daúghter of Cádmus ;* and Ī′ō, *a daúghter of I'nachus :* with Dī′dō, *a queen of Cárthage ;* which last is álso of the third declénsion, máking Dīdō′nĭs in the génitive case.

Séveral nouns in *-ŭs,* of the fourth declénsion, are líkewise (in whole, or in part,) of the sécond : such as, laū′rŭs, *a báy-tree ;* pī′nŭs, *a píne-tree ;* fī′cŭs, *a fíg-tree* or *a fíg ;* quēr′cŭs, *an oak ;* vēr′sŭs, *a verse ,* cŏl′ŭs, *a dístaff* or *whorl ;* cōr′nŭs, *a wild-chérry-tree :* pĕ′nŭs, *próvi-sions,* is of the sécond, third, and fourth declénsions, pĕ′nŭs, (and pĕ′nŭm,) -ī ; pĕ′nŭs, -ŏrĭs ; pĕ′nŭs, -ūs ; lă′cŭs, *a lake ;* and dŏ′mŭs, *a house :* but there is not pérhaps one of these which have all the cáses of both declénsions in cómmon. Dŏ′mŭs has dŏ′mī as well as dŏ′mŭs in the génitive síngular, but ónly to sígnify " *at home ;*" dátive, dŏ′mŭĭ and dŏ′mō ; vócative, dŏ′mŭs ; áblative, dŏmō ónly ; nóminative plúral, dŏmŭs ; génitive, dŏ′mŭŭm and dŏmō′rŭm ; dátive and áblative, dŏmĭ′bŭs only ; accúsative, dŏ′mŭs and dŏ′mōs, which last is most úsed. The peculiárities of the declénsion of dŏ′mŭs are gíven in this old line—

" Tólle *me, mu, mi, mis,* si declináre *dómus* vis."

[36] The dátive síngular of this declénsion ánciently énded in *-ū,* a ter-minátion which, in some few ínstances, the best Látin aúthors have retáined.

PLURAL.

N.	*hi*	Grä′-dūs,	*steps,*
G.	*hórum*	Grä′-dŭŭm,	*of steps,*
D.	*his*	Grä′-dĭbŭs,[37]	*to steps,*
A.	*hos*	Grä′-dūs,	*steps,*
V.	*O*	Grä′-dūs,	*O steps,*
A.	*ab his*	Grä′-dĭbŭs,	*by steps.*

The fifth declénsion [38] makes the génitive and dátive cáses síngular to end in *-ëī ;* as,

SINGULAR.

N.	*hæc*	Fă′cĭ-ēs,	*a face,*
G.	*hújus*	Făcĭ-ē′ī,	*of a face,*
D.	*huic*	Făcĭ-ē′ī,[39]	*to a face,*

---

[37] The nine nouns which fóllow, make the dátive and áblative cáses plúral in *-ŭbŭs :* néver in *-ĭbŭs :*

ă′cŭs,	*a needle*	cōr′nŭs,	*a córnel-tree*	quĕr′cŭs, *an oak*
ār′cŭs,	*a bow*	lă′cŭs,	*a lake*	spĕ′cŭs, *a den,* and
ār′tŭs,	*a joint*	pār′tŭs,	*a birth*	trĭ′bŭs, *a tribe.*

But the three fóllowing have eíther *-ĭbŭs* or *-ŭbŭs* indífferently :—

pŏr′tŭs.	*a hárbour*	gĕ′nū,	*the knee*	vĕ′rū,	*a spit.*

[38] The fifth declénsion has ónly one termination, *-ēs ;* and the nouns belónging to it hárdly exceéd fifty in númber : and, with the excéption of dī′ēs, *a day,* which is eíther másculine or féminine, in the síngular, but másculine ónly, in the plúral ; and with the excéption líkewise of its compoúnd mĕrī′dĭēs, *noon,* (which is másculine in the síngular, and wants the plúral númber,) all nouns of this declénsion are féminine. Here, álso, it may be remárked, that évery noun of the fifth declénsion ends in *-ĭēs,* excépt three ; námely, fī′dēs, *faith,* spēs, *hope,* and rēs, *a thing :* and, móreover, that all nouns énding in *-ĭēs* are of the fifth declénsion, excépt three ; námely, ă′bĭēs, (*génitive,* ăbĭ′ĕtĭs *vĕl* ăb′jĕtĭs,) a *fir-tree,* ă′rĭēs, (*génitive,* ărĭ′ĕtĭs *vĕl* ār′jĕtĭs,) a *ram,* and pă′rĭēs (*génitive,* părĭ′ĕtĭs *vĕl* pār′jĕtĭs) a *wall* or *partítion :*—but quī′ēs, *rest,* and its cómpound rĕ′quĭēs, *repóse,* are of the third, as well as of the fifth, declénsion ; máking quĭē′tī *vĕl* quĭē′tĭs, and rĕquĭē′ī *vĕl* rĕquĭē′tĭs, in the génitive : agáin, the noun fă′mēs, *húnger,* of the third declénsion, is of the fifth declénsion in the áblative case. Fínally, the three nouns of this declénsion not énding in *-ĭēs,* have *-ĕ′ī* in the génitive and dátive cases síngular : all the rest *-ē′ī.*

Rĕspūb′lĭcă, *a cómmonwealth,* which is a cómpound of rēs, *a thing,* with the féminine génder of the ádjective pūb′lĭcŭs, *públic,* is declíned as if the súbstantive rēs and the ádjective pūb′lĭcă, though wrítten togéther, were áctually séparated ; as, génitive, rĕīpūb′lĭcæ ; accúsative, rĕmpūb′-lĭcăm, &c.

[39] The génitive and dátive cáses síngular of nouns of the fifth declénsion originally énded in *-ĕ,* like the áblative ; and this termination the póets sómetimes (the prose wríters more rárely) retaín.

A.	*hanc*	Fă'cĭ-ēm,	*a face,*
V.	*O*	Fă'cĭ-ēs,	*O face,*
A.	*ab hác*	Fă'cĭ-ē,	*from a face.*

PLURAL.

N.	*hæ*	Fă'cĭ-ēs,	*fáces,*
G.	*hárum*	Făcĭ-ē'rŭm,[40]	*of fáces,*
D.	*his*	Făcĭ-ē'bŭs,	*to fáces,*
A.	*has*	Fă'cĭ-ēs,	*fáces,*
V.	*O*	Fă'cĭ-ēs,	*O fáces,*
A.	*ab his*	Făcĭ-ē'bŭs,	*from fáces.*

DECLENSION OF NOUNS ADJECTIVE.

A NOUN [41] ádjective is declíned eíther with three terminá·
tions ; as, bŏ'nŭs, *good,* tĕ'nĕr, *ténder :* or with three árticles ;
as in the fóllowing exámples :—

SINGULAR.

	Másculine.	*Féminine.*	*Neúter.*
N.	Bŏ'-nŭs,[42]	bŏ'-nă,	bŏ'-nŭm,
G.	Bŏ'-nī,	bŏ'-næ,	bŏ'-nī,
D.	Bŏ'-nō,	bŏ'-næ,	bŏ'-nō,

40 Though fă'cĭēs be here declíned through all its cáses, for the púr-
pose of shówing the terminátions, yet, in the plúral númber, the génitive,
dátive, and áblative of this noun seldom or néver occúr. Indeéd of nouns
of the fifth declénsion, ónly two, rēs, *a thing,* and dĭ'ēs, *a day,* are said to
be entíre : of the rest (excépt fă'cĭēs, *a face,* ĕffĭ'gĭēs, *an éffigy,* spēs,
hope, and spē'cĭēs, *an appeárance,* which have the nóminative, the accú-
sative, and vócative cáses,) few are read in the plúral númber, though in
the síngular they are all pérfect.

41 The ónly reáson for gíving to Látin ádjectives the name of " *nouns
ádjective,*" appeárs to be, that the Látin ádjectives are declíned like
nouns súbstantive : that is, the féminine terminátion -ă, (with the ex-
céption of the génitive and dátive cáses síngular of the nine ádjectives
méntioned in note 45, belów,) like nouns féminine in -ă, of the first de-
clénsion : the másculine terminátions -ŭs and -ĕr, (with the excéption of
vĕ'tŭs, *old ;* and with the excéption of the eléven ádjectives spécified in
note 48, belów ; and álso of paŭ'pĕr, *poor ;* ŭ'bĕr, *fruítful ;* dĕ'gĕnĕr,
degénerate ; pū'bĕr, *ripe of age ;* ĭmpū'bĕr, *únripe of age,*) like nouns
másculine in -ŭs and -ĕr of the sécond declénsion of súbstantives : all
óther terminátions, (one in -ŭr, námely, să'tŭr, *full,* excépted,) like nouns
súbstantive of the third declénsion. All ádjectives, then, are eíther of
the first and sécond declénsion of súbstantives, or of the third ónly.

42 Like " bŏ'nŭs " are declíned all ádjectives próper, énding in -ŭs,
whéther they be derived from the names of pérsons or of pláces :—as

A.	Bŏ′-num,	bŏ′-năm,	bŏ′-nŭm,
V.	Bŏ′-nĕ,	bŏ′-nă,	bŏ′-nŭm,
A.	Bŏ′-nō,	bŏ′-nā,	bŏ′-nō.

PLURAL.

	Másculine.	*Féminine.*	*Neúter.*
N.	Bŏ′-nī,	bŏ′-nӕ,	bŏ′-nă.
G.	Bŏ-nō′rŭm,	bŏ-nā′rŭm,	bŏ-nō′rŭm,
D.	Bŏ′-nīs, *of évery génder,*		
A.	Bŏ′-nōs	bŏ′-nās,	bŏ′-nă,
V.	Bŏ′-nī,	bŏ′nӕ,	bŏ′-nă.
A.	Bŏ′-nīs, *of évery génder,*		

SINGULAR.

	Másculine.	*Féminine.*	*Neúter.*
N.	Tĕ′-nĕr,	tĕ′-nĕră,	tĕ′-nĕrŭm,
G.	Tĕ′-nĕrī,[43]	tĕ′-nĕrӕ,	tĕ′-nĕrī,
D.	Tĕ′-nĕrō,	tĕ′-nĕrӕ,	tĕ′-nĕrō,
A.	Tĕ′-nĕrŭm,	tĕ′-nĕrăm,	tĕ′-nĕrŭm,
V.	Tĕ′-nĕr,	tĕ′-nĕră,	tĕ′-nĕrŭm,
A.	Tĕ′-nĕrō,	tĕ′-nĕrā,	tĕ′-nĕrō.

Thўĕstē′ŭs, *of Thўéstĕs ;* Eūrōpē′ŭs, *of Eurŏpa* or *of Eúrope,* that is, *Eurŏpéan,* &c. Mány ádjectives próper in *-ē′ŭs* reláting to wómen, have álso the terminátion *-ē′ĭs,* and are declíned like Greek names féminine in *·is* of the third declénsion of súbstantives :—for exámple, Cĕphē′ĭŭs, *Cephéan,* or *of Cépheus,* when reláting partícularly to Andrómeda, daúghter of that mónarch, is read Cĕphē′ĭs. Like bŏ′nŭs, líkewise, are declíned all párticiples in *-rŭs, -tŭs,* and *-dŭs ;* and the supérlative degreé of compárison of évery ádjective (which has that degreé) withoút excéption.

[43] Mány ádjectives in *-ĕr,* (as was remárked in note 19, abóve,) whereóf the másculine génder is declíned áfter the mánner of nouns súbstantive in *-ĕr* of the sécond déclension, lose *e* in the génitive case, and cónsequently in the féminine and neúter génders throughoút :—such, for exámple, as ā′tĕr, ā′tră, ā′trŭm, *black ;* génitive, ā′trī, ā′trӕ, ā′trī : or, pŭl′chĕr, pŭl′chră, pŭl′chrŭm, *fair ;* génitive, pŭl′chrī, pŭl′chrӕ, pŭl′chrī. The ádjectives which retáin the *e* in the génitive case, and cónsequently in the féminine and neúter génders throughoút, are, tĕ′nĕr, *ténder,* ās′pĕr, *rough,* lă′cĕr, *rágged,* ĕx′tĕr, *fóreign,* mĭ′sĕr, *wrétched,* lĭ′bĕr, *free,* prōs′pĕr, *prósperous,* gĭb′bĕr, *búnched* or *humpbácked ;* with all those that end in *-fĕr,* and in *-gĕr,* námely, the derívatives of fĕ′rŏ, *I bear,* and gĕ′rŏ, *I cárry.* To these add dĕx′tĕr, *right,* which sómetimes keeps, and sómetimes rejécts the *e :*—álso, cӕ′tĕr, *the óther,* or *the rest,* but which is not read in the másculine génder, síngular númber. Géntile or pátrial ádjectives in *-ĕr* (their númber, indeéd, is extrémely few,) génerally drop the *e ;* as, Ā′fĕr, Ā′fră, Ā′frŭm, *Af′rican.*

PLURAL.

	Másculine.	*Féminine.*	*Neúter.*
N.	Tĕ'-nĕrī,	tĕ'-nĕræ,	tĕ'-nĕră,
G.	Tĕ-nĕrŏ'rŭm,	tĕ'-nĕrā'rŭm,	tĕ-nĕrŏ'rŭm,
D.	Tĕ' nĕrīs, *of évery génder,*		
A.	Tĕ'-nĕrōs,	tĕ'-nĕrās,	tĕ'-nĕră,
V.	Tĕ'-nĕrī,	tĕ'-nĕræ,	tĕ'-nĕră,
A.	Tĕ'-nĕrīs, *of évery génder*		

Observátion. The másculine and neúter génders of ádjectives of three terminátions are declíned like nouns súbstantive of the sécond declénsion; and the féminine génder like nouns of the first declénsion.[44]

But, ū'nŭs, *one;* sō'lŭs, *alóne;* tō'tŭs, *the whole;* nūl'lŭs, *none;* āl'tĕr, *the óther;* ŭ'tĕr, *which of the two;* and a few óther ádjectives,[45] make the génitive case, síngular, in -*ĭus,* and the dátive in -*ī;* as,

SINGULAR.

	Másculine.	*Féminine.*	*Neúter.*
N.	Ū'-nŭs,[46]	ū'-nă,	ū'-nŭm,
G.	U-nī'ŭs *vel* ū'-nĭŭs, *of évery génder,*		
D.	Ū'-nī, *of évery génder,*		
A.	Ū'-nŭm,	ū'-năm,	ū'-nŭm,
V.	Ū'-nĕ,	ū'-nă,	ū'-nŭm,
A.	Ū'-nō,	ū'-nā,	ū'-nō.

The ádjective Ī'bĕr, *Ibérian* or *Spánish,* (but more espécially pertaíning to that part of Spain which bórders on the E'bro,) retaíns the long *e,* and makes Ibĕ'ră and Ibĕ'rŭm in the féminine and neúter génders.

[44] Excépt, howéver, the eléven ádjectives in -*ĕr* or -*ĭs,* méntioned in note 48, belów: for they are whólly of the third declénsion of súbstantives.

[45] The óther ádjectives are, ūl'lŭs, *ány,* ă'lĭŭs, *anóther,* and neŭ'tĕr, *neither of the two,* máking (in all) nine:—to which may be ádded the cómpounds of ŭ'tĕr; as, ŭtĕr'què, *each of the two* or *both,* ŭtĕr'vīs, *which of the two you like,* ŭtĕr'lĭbĕt, *which of the two you pleáse:* líkewise, āltĕr'ŭtĕr, *one and the óther,* génitive, āltĕrā'trĭŭs, *of both the one and the óther:*—but this last is not unfréquently wrítten as two distínct words, āl'tĕr ŭ'tĕr; génitive, ăltĕ'rĭŭs ŭ'trĭŭs *vel* ăltĕ'rĭŭs ŭtrī'ŭs. The *i* in the génitive of āl'tĕr is álways short, as ăltĕr'ĭŭs; and in the génitive of ăl'ĭŭs is álways long, as ălī'ŭs. The génitive of ŭ'tĕr is ŭ'trĭŭs more fréquently (perháps) than ŭtrī'ŭs.

[46] Here it may be próper to remárk, that ū'nŭs sígnifies " *a síngle one,*" or " *one of mány,*" whereás āl'tĕr sígnifies " *one of two:*" thus,

PLURAL.

	Másculine.	*Féminine.*	*Neúter.*
N.	Ŭ′-nĭ,	ŭ′-næ,	ŭ′nă,
G.	Ŭ-nŏ′rŭm,	ŭ-nā′rŭm,	ŭ-nŏ′rŭm,
D.	Ŭ′-nĭs, *of évery génder,*		
A.	Ŭ′-nŏs,	ŭ′-nās,	ŭ′-nă,
V.	Ŭ′-nĭ,	ŭ′-næ,	ŭ′-nă,
A.	Ŭ′-nĭs, *of évery génder.*		

Note. Ŭ′nŭs has no plúral númber, unléss it be joíned to a noun that has not the síngular númber; as, ŭ′næ lĭ′tĕræ, *a letter;* ŭ′nă mœ′nĭă, *a wall.*[47]

In like mánner, álso, is declíned ă′lĭŭs, *anóther:* which makes ă′lĭŭd in the neúter génder síngular númber.

A NOUN ádjective of three árticles is declíned áfter the third declénsion of súbstantives; as, trīs′tĭs, *sad;* mĕ′lĭŏr, *bétter;* fē′lĭx, *háppy.*

SINGULAR.

	hic et hæc	Trīs′-tĭs,[46]	*hoc*	trīs′-tĕ,
N.	*hic et hæc*	Trīs′-tĭs,[46]	*hoc*	trīs′-tĕ,
G.	*hújus*	Trīs′-tĭs, *of all génders,*		
D.	*huic*	Trīs′-tī, *of all génders,*		

ŭ′nŭs ē dĭ′gĭtĭs, *one of the fíngers;* ŭ′nŭs dĭscĭpŭlŏ′rŭm, *one of the scholars;* ăl′tĕr ŏcŭlŏ′rŭm, *one of the eyes:* sómetimes, too, ă′lĭŭs is contrásted with ăl′tĕr; as ă′lĭŭs, *the one,* ăl′tĕr, *the óther:* and sómetimes ă′lĭŭs is contrásted with itsélf, that is, when *one,* and *anóther,* instéad of *one,* and *the óther,* are meant: thus, ă′lĭŭs cāntă′băt, ă′lĭŭs sāltă′băt, *one was sínging, anóther was dáncing;* ă′lĭī sāltă′bānt, ă′lĭī cāntă′bānt, *some were dáncing, óthers were sínging.* Ŭ′nŭs, *one,* is compoúnded with quĭs′quĕ, to sígnify "*évery indivídual one:* "—as, ūnūsquĭs′quĕ, ūnă-quæ′quĕ, ūnŭmquŏd′quĕ; génitive, ūnīūscūjūs′quĕ; dátive, ūnīcuī′quĕ; accúsative, ūnūmquĕm′quĕ, ūnāmquam′quĕ, ūnŭmquŏd′quĕ.

[47] Or to ány noun plúral, which, though it may have the síngular númber, yet, is táken colléctively in an indivídual or undivíded sense: as, ū′nī sĕx dī′ēs, *one six days,* that is, *the durátion* or *space of six days.* ū′nă vĕstīmĕn′tă, *one suit of clothes* or *of apparel.*

[46] The eléven ádjectives that fóllow, have eíther three or two termínátions in the nóminative and vócative cáses síngular, that is, they have eíther -ĕr, or -ĭs, in the másculine génder of those two cáses; but are in all the óther cáses declíned like trĭs′tĭs :—námely, ā′cĕr, *sharp;* ā′lăcĕr, *brisk;* cĕ′lĕr, *spéedy* or *swift;* cē′lĕbĕr, *renówned;* sălū′bĕr, *whólesome.* vŏ′lŭcĕr, *swift of wing;* cāmpĕs′tĕr, *champaign;* pĕdĕs′tĕr, *belónging to foot;* ĕquĕs′tĕr, *pertáining to horse;* sĭlvĕs′tĕr, *woódy;* pălūs′tĕr, *márshy.* These eléven ádjectives, in the nóminative and vócative cáses síngular másculine génder, have -ĕr or -ĭs with the loss of *e* in all excépt cĕ′lĕr.

A. *hunc et hanc*	Trĭs'-tĕm,	*hoc*	trĭs'-tĕ,
V. *0*	Trĭs'-tĭs,	*neúter, 0*	trĭs'-tĕ,
A. *ab hôc, hâc, hôc*	Trĭs'-tī.⁴⁹		

PLURAL.

N. *hi et hœ*	Trĭs'-tēs,	*hœc*	trĭs'-tĭă,⁵⁰
G. *hórum, hárum, hórum*	Trĭs'-tĭŭm,⁵¹		
D. *his*	Trĭs'-tĭbŭs, *of all génders,*		
A. *hos et has*	Trĭs'-tēs,	*hœc*	trĭs'-tĭă,
V. *0*	Trĭs'-tēs,	*neúter, 0*	trĭs'-tĭă,
A. *ab his*	Trĭs'-tĭbŭs, *of all génders.*		

SINGULAR.

N. *hic et hœc*	Mĕ'lĭ-ŏr,	*hoc*	mĕ'lĭ-ŭs,
G. *hújus*	Mĕlĭ-ō'rĭs, *of all génders,*		
D. *huic*	Mĕlĭ-ō'rī, *of all génders,*		
A. *hunc et hanc*	Mĕlĭ-ō'rĕm,	*hoc*	mĕ'lĭ-ŭs,
V. *0*	Mĕ'lĭ-ŏr,	*neúter, 0*	mĕ'lĭ-ŭs,
A. *ab hôc, hâc, hôc*	Mĕlĭ-ō'rĕ *vel* mĕlĭ-ō'rī.		

PLURAL.

N. *hi et hœ*	Mĕlĭ-ō'rēs,	*hœc*	mĕlĭ-ō'ră,⁵²
G. *hórum, hárum, hórum*	Mĕlĭ-ō'rŭm,⁵³		
D. *his*	Mĕlĭ-ō'rĭbŭs, *of all génders,*		
A. *hos et has*	Mĕlĭ-ō'rēs,	*hœc*	mĕlĭ-ō'ră,
V. *0*	Mĕlĭ-ō'rēs, *neuter, 0* mĕlĭ-ō'ră,		
A. *ab his*	Mĕlĭ-ō'rĭbŭs, *of all génders.*		

Thus we say, ă'cĕr *vel* ă'crĭs, ă'crĭs, ă'crĕ, or *hic et hœc* ă'crĭs, *hoc* ă'crĕ ; but, cĕ'lĕr *vel* cĕ'lĕrĭs, cĕ'lĕrĭs, cĕ'lĕrĕ ; ótherwise, *hic et hœc* cĕ'lĕrĭs, *hoc* cĕ'lĕrĕ.

⁴⁹ All ádjectives which have the vówel -ĕ for terminátional létter in the nóminative case síngular, neúter génder, have -ī ónly in the áblative.

⁵⁰ Agreéably to the práctice of neúter nouns of the third declénsion of súbstantives, -ī in the áblative case síngular will give -ĭă in the nóminative, the accúsative, and vócative cáses plúral.

⁵¹ When the neúter génder of the nóminative case, plúral, ends in -ĭă, the génitive inváriably ends in -ĭŭm.

⁵² Although ádjectives, of the compárative degreé, have the doúble terminátion -ĕ or -ī in the áblative síngular, yet they all have -ă, and néver -ĭă, in the nóminative, accúsative, and vócative cáses plural, neúter génder : except plŭs, *more,* which has eíther plŭ'ră or plū'rĭă.

⁵³ With the excéption of plŭs, *more,* which has both plū'rŭm and plū'rĭŭm in the génitive plúral, all compáratives make this case to end in rŭm.

SINGULAR.

N.	*hic, hæc, hoc*	Fĕ'-lĭx,⁵⁴		
G.	*hújus*	Fē-lī'cĭs, *of all génders,*		
D.	*huic*	Fē-lī'cī, *of all génders,*		
A.	*huñc et hanc*	Fē-lī'cĕm,	*hoc*	fĕ'-lĭx,
V.	*O*	Fĕ'-lĭx, *of all génders.*		
A.	*ab hóc, hác, hóc*	Fē-lī'cĕ, *vèl* fē-lī'cī.⁵⁵		

PLURAL.

N.	*hi et hæ*	Fē-lī'cēs,	*hæc*	fē-lī-cĭă,
G.	*hórum, hárum, hórum*	Fē-lī'cĭŭm,		
D.	*his*	Fē-lī'cĭbŭs, *of all génders,*		
A.	*hos et has*	Fē-lī'cēs,	*hæc*	fē-lī'cĭă,
V.	*O*	Fē-lī'cēs,	*neúter,* O	fē-lī'cĭă,
A.	*ab his*	Fē-lī'cĭbŭs, *of all génders.*		

Am'bŏ, *both,* and dŭ'ŏ, *two,* are nouns ádjective ; and are thus declíned in the plúral númber ónly :—

N.	Ām'-bŏ,	ăm'-bæ,	ăm'-bŏ,	*both,*
G.	Ām-bŏ'rŭm,	ăm-bā'rŭm,	ăm-bŏ'rŭm,	*of both,*
D.	Ām-bŏ'bŭs,	ăm-bā'bŭs,	ăm-bŏ'bŭs,	*to both,*
A.	Ām'-bōs *vèl* -bŏ,	ăm'-bās,	ăm'-bŏ,	*both,*
V.	Ām'bŏ,	ăm'-bæ,	ăm'-bŏ,	*O both,*
A.	Ām-bŏ'bŭs,	ăm-bā'bŭs,	ăm-bŏ'bŭs,	*with both.*

---

⁵⁴ Like fĕ'lĭx are declíned all ádjectives of one terminátion, and all párticiples in *-ns.* But, for the most part, ádjectives in *-ĕr, -ĕs, -ūs, -ŏs, -ŏr, -ēbs, -ēps, -ōps, -ōrs, -fēx, -il, -īs, -ūx,* (with a few óthers, such as, sĕ'nĕx, *old,* sūp'plĕx, *súppliant,* sōns, *guílty,* and īn'sōns, *guíltless,*) have séldom or néver the neúter génder in the síngular númber, and véry rárely in the plúral. Pátrial and patronýmic ádjectives derived from the Greek, términating in *-is,* or, in *-ăs,* as, Pī'ĕrĭs, *Piérian,* Sī'cĕlĭs, *Sicílian,* Drȳ'ăs, *Drýad,* Lĕs'bĭăs, *Lésbian,* Āc'tĭăs, *Ac'tic, At'tic,* or *Athénian,* Āchā'ĭăs, *Achaían,* are hárdly éver met with, excépt of the féminine génder, and móstly (althoúgh not álways) of the plúral númber : these have *-ĭsĭ,* and *-ăsĭ,* respéctively (in préference to *-ibŭs*) in the dátive and ablative cáses plúral.

⁵⁵ All ádjectives (of one terminátion) in *-ĕr, -ĕs, -ĭs, -ŏs, -ăs, -ās, -ĕx, -ēbs,* and in *-pēs, -cŏlŏr, -cŏr'pŏr,* have *-ĕ* ónly, in the áblative síngular, and *-ŭm,* (not *-ĭŭm*) in the génitive plúral. To these might be ádded a few ádjectives of the óther éndings specified in note 54, abóve :—but séveral of those have sómetimes *-ī* in the áblative. Mĕ'mŏr, *mindful,* and pār, *like* or *équal,* have *-ī* only, in the áblative case síngular ; but the fórmer has *-ŭm,* the latter *-ĭŭm* in the génitive plúral :—vĕ'tŭs, álso, makes

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

Most, but not all, ádjectives have three degreés of significátion, or compárison :—

1. The pósitive, which denótes the quálity of a thing ábsolutely :—as, dŏc'tŭs, *leárned ;* brĕ'vĭs, *short.*

2. The compárative, which increáses or léssens the quálity :—as, dŏc'tĭŏr, *more leárned ;* brĕ'vĭŏr, *shórter* or *more short :—*

And it (námely, the compárative degreé) is formed of the first case of the pósitive that ends in *-ĭ,* by ádding theretó the sýllable *-ŏr,* in the másculine and féminine genders ; and the sýllable *-ŭs,* in the neúter :—as, of

Dŏc'tŭs, *génitive,* dŏc'tī, is fórmed *hic et hæc* dŏc'tĭŏr, *hoc* dŏc'tĭŭs, *more leárned.* Of

Brĕ'vĭs, *dátive,* brĕ'vī, is in like mánner fórmed *hic et hæc* brĕ'vĭŏr, *hoc* brĕ'vĭŭs, *shórter* or *more short.*

3. The supérlative, which increáses or diminíshes the significátion, or compárison, to the greátest degreé :—as, dŏc-tīs'sĭmŭs, dŏctīs'sĭmă, dŏctĭs'sĭmŭm, *the most learned ;* brĕ-vīs'sĭmŭs, brĕvīs'sĭmă, brĕvĭs'sĭmŭm, *the shórtest :—*

And it (namely, the supérlative degreé) is fórmed álso of the first case of the pósitive that ends in *-ĭ,* by ádding thereto the terminátion *-ssĭmŭs :*—as, of the

Génitive, dŏc'tī, is fórmed dŏctīs'sĭmŭs, *most leárned.* And, of the

Dátive, brĕ'vī, is fórmed brĕvīs'sĭmŭs, *the shórtest.*

Observe. Mány ádjectives váry from these Géneral Rúles, and form their compárison irrégularly :—as,

Bŏ'nŭs,	*good,*	mĕl'ĭŏr,	*better,*	ŏp'tĭmŭs,	*best.*
Mă'lŭs,	*bad,*	pĕ'jŏr,	*worse,*	pĕs'sĭmŭs,	*worst.*
Măg'nŭs,	*great,*	mā'jŏr,	*greater,*	măx'ĭmŭs,	*gréatest.*
Păr'vŭs,	*little,*	mĭ'nŏr,	*less,*	mĭ'nĭmŭs,	*least.*
Mŭl'tŭs,	*much,*	plŭs,[56]	*more,*	plŭ'rĭmŭs,	*most.*

---

vĕ'tĕrŭm. The cómpounds of pār, as ĭm'pār, *unéven* or *odd,* dīs'pār, *unéqual* or *unlike,* have *-ĕ* or *-ĭ,* in the áblative, indífferently ; and *-ŭm* or *-ĭŭm* in the génitive plúral.

[56] This comparative is not found either of the másculine or féminine génder in the síngular númber ; the neúter génder " plŭs " fóllowed by

Dī'vĕs, *rich*, dī'tĭŏr,[57] *richer* or *more rich*, dītīs'sĭmŭs, *richest* or *most rich.*

Nē'quăm,[58] *wicked*, nē'quĭŏr, *more wicked*, nēquĭs'sĭmŭs, *most wicked.*

Ĕxtĕr'nŭs, *outward*, ĕxtĕ'rĭŏr,[59] *more outward*, ĕxtrē'mŭs *vĕl* ĕx'tĭmŭs, *uttermost* or *most outward.*

Ĭn'fĕrŭs, *low*, ĭnfĕ'rĭŏr, *lower* or *more low*, ĭn'fĭmŭs *vĕl* ĭ'mŭs, *lowest* or *most low.*

---

a génitive case béing upón all occásions úsed when eíther of the óther two génders may come ínto need: but, in the plúral númber, plūs makes *hi et hæ* plū'rēs, *hæc* plū'ră *vĕl* plū'rĭă; génitive, *hórum, hárum, hórum* plū'rŭm *vĕl* plū'rĭŭm; dátive, *his* plū'rĭbŭs of all génders, and so forth.

[57] This compárative is fórmed by sýncopè from dīvī'tĭŏr; which last word occúrs in the best aúthors, though perháps less fréquently than dī'tĭŏr.

[58] This ádjective, (which is whólly indeclínable in the pósitive degreé,) is a corrúption of "nē æ'quŭs," *not just*:—so nūl'lŭs, nūl'lă, nūl'lŭm, *none*, was fórmed by synǽresis, of "nē ūl'lŭs, nē ūl'lă, nē ūl'lŭm," *not ány.*

[59] Ĕxtĕ'rĭŏr is próperly the compárative degreé of the óbsolete ádjective ĕx'-tĕrŭs, *outward*, from which it appéars (unquéstionably) to have been fórmed: use, howéver, has cónstituted it the compárative of Ĕxtĕr'nŭs :—in like mánner, álso, oùght ĭnfĕ'rĭŏr, and sŭpĕ'rĭŏr, to be con-sídered the compáratives of ĭnfĕr'nŭs and sŭpĕr'nŭs respéctively, as well as of ĭn'fĕrŭs and sŭ'pĕrŭs. Má ȳy grammárians, and not withoút much reáson, regárd ĕxtĕ'rĭŏr, ĭntĕ'rĭŏr, cĭtĕ'rĭŏr, ūltĕ'rĭŏr, sŭpĕ'rĭŏr, ĭnfĕ'rĭŏr, prī'ŏr, pŏstĕ'rĭŏr, with their supérlatives, to have the ádverbs or else prepositions ĕx'trā, *without*, ĭn'trā, *within*, cĭ'trā, *on this side*, ūl'trā, *beyónd*, sŭ'prā, *above*, ĭn'frā, *belów* or *beneáth*, præ, *befóre*, pŏst, *áfter*, for their pósitives respéctively; thus:—

Pósitive.		Compárative.		Supérlative.	
præ,	*befóre,*	prī'ŏr,	*fórmer,*	prī'mŭs,	*first,*
pŏst,	*behind,*	pŏstĕ'rĭŏr,	*more behind,*	pŏstrē'mŭs,	*last,*
ĭn'tŭs, ĭn'trā,	} *within,*	ĭntĕ'rĭŏr,	{ *inner or more within,*	ĭn'tĭmŭs,	{ *inmost or most within,*
ĕx'tĕr, ĕx'trā,	} *withoút,*	ĕxtĕ'rĭŏr,	{ *oúter or more withoút,*	ĕx'tĭmŭs,	{ *úttermost or most withoút,*
cĭs, cĭ'trā,	} *on this side,*	cĭtĕ'rĭŏr,	{ *neárer or more tówards,*	cĭ'tĭmŭs,	{ *nearest or most tówards,*
ūl'tĕr, ūl'trā,	} *beyónd,*	ūltĕ'rĭŏr,	*fárther,*	ūl'tĭmŭs,	{ *fárthest or last,*
ĭn'fĕr, ĭn'frā,	} *beneáth,*	ĭnfĕ'rĭŏr,	{ *more beneáth or lówer,*	ĭn'fĭmŭs, ĭ'mŭs,	{ *most beneáth or lowest,*
sŭ'pĕr, sŭ'prā,	} *abóve,*	sŭpĕ'rĭŏr,	{ *more abóve or hígher,*	sŭprē'mŭs, sūm'mŭs,	{ *most abóve or híghest,*
prŏ'pĕ,	*near,*	prŏ'pĭŏr,	*neárcr,*	prŏx'ĭmŭs,	*neárest.*

To these, did our límits permít, we cértainly might add véry mány

Sŭ'pĕrŭs, *high*, sŭpĕ'rĭŏr, *higher* or *more high*, sŭprē'mŭs *vĕl* sūm'mŭs, *highest* or *most high*.

Īn'tŭs, *inward*, īntĕ'rĭŏr, *more inward*, īn'tĭmŭs, *innermost* or *most inward*.

Jŭ'vĕnĭs, *young*, jŭ'nĭŏr, *younger*.

Sĕ'nex, *old*, sĕ'nĭŏr, *older*.

Prī'ŏr, *former*, prī'mŭs, *first*.

Prŏ'pĭŏr, *nearer*, prŏx'ĭmŭs, *nighest* or *nearest*.

Ūltĕ'rĭŏr, *farther*, ŭl'tĭmŭs, *last*.   With some others.[50]

---

more : but, for the present, the above must suffice.   In some of the instances which are here adduced, the original positive is obsolete ; and in others, an adjective rather than a preposition or an adverb ought to be regarded as the positive : such, for example, as, īntĕ'rĭŏr and sŭpĕ'rĭŏr, which have the adjectives īn'fĕrŭs and sŭ'pĕrŭs rightly for their positive degrees : yet in others, as prī'ŏr and prŏ'pĭŏr, the adverbs or prepositions præ, *before*, and prŏ'pĕ, *nigh*, seem to be the words from which those comparatives have been formed.

[60] The adjectives, (not here specified,) which, in addition to those already given, vary from the general rule, may be classed under one, or other, of the seven heads following.   *First*, adjectives borrowing their comparison from adjectives of some other termination :—*second*, adjectives forming their superlative degree of comparison irregularly :—*third*, adjectives wanting the positive degree :—*fourth*, adjectives wanting the comparative degree :—*fifth*, adjectives wanting the superlative degree :—*sixth*, adjectives which are found only in the positive degree : —and *seventh*, adjectives which are found only in the comparative degree.

1. *Ad'jectives borrowing their comparison.*

All adjectives ending in -*dĭcŭs*, -*fĭcŭs*, -*lŏquŭs*, and -*vŏlŭs*, change the final -*ĭ* of the first case of the positive degree which terminates in that vowel, into -ēn'tĭŏr for the masculine, and also feminine gender, of the comparative degree ; and into -ēn'tŭs, for the neuter.   Again, they, in like manner, form the superlative degree by changing the same -*ĭ* into -ēntĭs'sĭmŭs, -ēntĭs'sĭmă, -ēntĭs'sĭmŭm : as though actually borrowing their comparison from participles in -*dĭcēns*, -*fĭcēns*, -*lŏquēns*, and -*vŏlēns*.   For example, mūnī'fĭcŭs, *munificent*, makes hic et hæc mūnī-fĭcēn'tĭŏr, hoc mūnīfĭcēn'tĭŭs, *more munificent*, mūnīfĭcēntīs'sĭmŭs, mūnīfĭcēntīs'sĭmă, mūnīfĭcēntīs'sĭmŭm, *most munificent* : and so of adjectives of the other three terminations : but mīrī'fĭcŭs, *wonderful*, has either mīrīfĭcēntīs'sĭmŭs or mīrīfĭcīs'sĭmŭs, *most wonderful*, in the superlative degree ; and perhaps some of the rest are similarly formed.

2. *Ad'jectives forming their superlative degree irregularly.*

Several adjectives of this class are given in the E'ton text, and these need not therefore be repeated :—we shall add only the four following, and which, in the comparative degree, are regular :—

Ad'jectives énding in -*ĕr* form the supérlative degreé from the nóminative case síngular, másculine génder of the pósitive,

Pósitive.	*Supérlative.*
mātū'rŭs, *matúre or ripe,*	mātūr'rĭmŭs, *the rípest or most ripe.*
vĕ'tŭs, *old or áncient,*	vĕtĕr'rĭmŭs, *véry old or most áncient.*
dĕx'tĕr, *right or on the right hand,*	dĕx'tĭmŭs, *the most to the right.*
sĭnĭs'tĕr, *left or on the left hand,*	sĭnĭs'tĭmŭs, *the most to the left.*

With these, some folks (as Válpy) coúple cĭ'tĕr, *near,* cĭ'tĭmŭs, *neárest;* and pŏs'tĕrŭs, *póstern or behínd,* pōstrĕ'mŭs, *last or most behínd;* but cĭ'tĭmŭs and pōstrĕ'mŭs we, in note 59, abóve, fórmed (though perháps less próperly) from the ádverbs or prepositions cĭs or cĭ'trā, *on this side,* and pŏst, *áfter.*

3. *Ad'jectives wánting the pósitive degreé.*

The ádjectives of this class are, by no means, númerous, if we are allówed to call an ádverb, or a prepósition, a pósitive degreé; which, strictly speáking howéver, we hárdly can.   These two ádjectives fóllowing seem entírely déstitute of a pósitive degreé, even in the látitude to which we have just allúded :—

Compárative.		*Supérlative.*	
dĕtĕ'rĭŏr,	*worse,*	dĕtĕr'rĭmŭs, *worst,*	
ŏ'cĭŏr vĕl ŏ'cyŏr,	*swífter,*	ōcĭs'sĭmŭs, *speédiest, or swíftest.*	

The fórmer of these seems indeéd to have had dĕ'tĕr, or some such like, for the pósitive degreé, but which has long since becóme óbsolete.

4. *Ad'jectives wánting the compárative degreé.*

Of this class the ádjectives, which here fóllow, are those which occúr more fréquently ; but séveral óthers might be ádded :—

Pósitive.		*Supérlative.*	
bēl'lŭs,	*spruce or fine,*	bēllĭs'sĭmŭs,	*most spruce,*
dīvĕr'sŭs,	*dífferent,*	dīvērsĭs'sĭmŭs,	*most dífferent,*
fī'dŭs,	*fáithful,*	fīdĭs'sĭmŭs,	*most fáithful,*
ĭn'clўtŭs,	*renówned,*	ĭnclўtĭs'sĭmŭs,	*most renówned,*
ĭnvĭc'tŭs,	*invíncible,*	ĭnvĭctĭs'sĭmŭs,	*most invíncible,*
ĭnvī'tŭs,	*unwílling,*	ĭnvītĭs'sĭmŭs,	*most unwílling,*
mĕ'rĭtŭs,	*desérving,*	mĕrĭtĭs'sĭmŭs,	*most desérving,*
nŏ'vŭs,	*new or late,*	nŏvĭs'sĭmŭs,	*néwest or látest,*
nū'pĕrŭs,	*récent,*	nūpĕr'rĭmŭs,	*most récent,*
pērsuā'sŭs,	*persuáded,*	pērsuāsĭs'sĭmŭs,	*fúlly persuáded,*
sā'cĕr,	*hóly,*	sācĕr'rĭmŭs,	*most hóly.*

A few of these (just námed) are párticiples ráther than ádjectives ; or, at all évents, they are participials, that is, párticiples úsed ádjectively, withoút réference to time. Thus, ĭnvĭc'tŭs is a párticiple, if we transláte it ' *uncónquered,*' becaúse this meáning is connécted with the past ; but the same word ĭnvĭc'tŭs is a particípial ádjective, if we rénder it ' *invíncible,*' becaúse, in that sense, it is not confíned to the *past, présent,* nor *fúture.*

by ádding théreto the terminátion *-rĭmŭs:* as, of pŭl'chĕr.
fair, is fórmed pūlchĕr'rĭmŭs, *the fáirest.*[61]

---

5. *Ad'jectives wánting the supérlative degreé.*

The númber of ádjectives of this class is exceédingly númerous, if we
admít ínto it all ádjectives which are not compáred : but in a more
límited acceptátion, námely, a class of ádjectives which have the pósitive
and compárative degreés, but not the supérlative, the númber is véry
considerably dimínished ; embrácing ónly such ádjectives as end in
-ā'lĭs, -ī'lĭs, and *-bĭ'lĭs,* with most of those in *-ā'nŭs, -ī'vŭs,* and *-ĭn'guŭs :*
—to which may be ádded (in addítion to the two gíven in the E'ton text,)
the fóllowing :—

Pósitive.		*Compárative.*	
ădŏlēs'cēns,	*young* or *youthful,*	ădŏlēscēn'tĭŏr,	*yóunger,*
dĭŭtūr'nŭs,	*lásting,*	dĭŭtūr'nĭŏr,	*more lásting,*
īn'gēns,	*great* or *huge,*	īngēn'tĭŏr,	*more huge,*
ŏpī'mŭs,	*fértile* or *rich,*	ŏpī'mĭŏr,	*more fértile,*
prō'nŭs,	*prone,*	prō'nĭŏr,	*more prone,*
să'tŭr,	*full,*	sătŭ'rĭŏr,	*more full.*

6. *Ad'jectives which are found ónly in the pósitive degreé.*

This class is the most númerous of ány, comprísing all ádjectives and
párticiples of whatéver tense, whéreunto degreés of compárison are
incompátible with the significátion : and all ádjectives compóunded with
nouns súbstantive, and with the verbs fĕ'rō, *I bear,* and gĕ'rō, *I cárry.*
with some óthers :—álso most, if not all, ádjectives términating in *-ĭcŭs,*
-ī'cŭs, -ĭmŭs, -ī'mŭs, -ĭnŭs, -ī'nŭs, -ī'vŭs, -ō'rŭs, -sōnŭs, -fŭgŭs, and
-bŭn'dŭs : likewise in *-ū'lŭs, -ŭlŭs,* and óther éndings índicative of
diminútion ; with all párticiples in *-rŭs,* and in *-dŭs.* To which add,
āl'mŭs, *grácious ;* dŭ'bĭŭs, *doúbtful ;* ĕgē'nŭs, *indigent ;* lă'cĕr, *rágged*
or *torn ;* mĕ'mŏr, *mindful ;* mī'rŭs, *wónderful ;* sōs'pĕs, *safe ;* vă'cŭŭs,
émpty : and séveral besídes. But some few of these are found com-
páred in the writings of the eárlier Rómans, and óthers of them admít,
indeéd, of an impérfect compárison with the aid of the ádverbs mă'gĭs,
more ; văl'dē, *véry ;* and māx'ĭmē, *most.* And some ádjectives which
are régularly compáred, and others which are not, do occásionally, in the
pósitive degreé, increáse or léssen their significátion by means of pre-
posítions in compositíon : as, prædū'rŭs, *véry hard ;* pĕrdī'lĭgēns, *véry*
diligent ; dēpār'cŭs, *véry niggard.*

7. *Ad'jectives which are found ónly in the compárative degreé.*

There are féwer ádjectives of this class than of ány óther : indeéd we
hárdly know of more than these three belów :—

ǎntĕ'rĭŏr, *fórmer,* | să'tĭŏr, *bétter,* | sĕ'quĭŏr, *worse.*

Of which, the first seems to be the compárative degreé of the ádverb
ǎn'tĕ, *before ;* and the sécond, that of săt or să'tĭs, *enoúgh.* In this
class, agáin, some grammárians rank pŏ'tĭŏr *more éligible* or *chóicer :*
but this compárative has pŏ'tĭs, for its pósitive, and pŏtĭs'sĭmŭs for its
supérlative degreé.

[61] The éleven ádjectives méntioned in note 60, abóve, form their com-

Ad'jectives énding in *-lis* form the supérlative degreé
accórding to the Géneral Rule: as, of ū'tĭlĭs, *úseful*, dátive,
ū'tĭli, is fórmed ūtĭlĭs'sĭmŭs, *most úseful* :—excépt the fóllow-
ing, which change *-is* ínto *-lĭmŭs* : as,

Ă'gĭlĭs,	*nímble,*	ăgĭl'lĭmŭs,	*nímblest,* or *most nímble,*
Fă'cĭlĭs,	*éasy,*	făcĭl'lĭmŭs,	*éasiest,* or *most éasy,*
Gră'cĭlĭs,	*slénder,*	grăcĭl'lĭmŭs,	*slénderest,* or *most slénder,*
Hŭ'mĭlĭs,	*low,*	hŭmĭl'lĭmŭs,	*lówest,* or *most low,*
Sĭ'mĭlĭs,	*like,*	sĭmĭl'lĭmŭs,	*likest,* or *most like.*[62]

Likewise, if a vówel come befóre *-ŭs*, in the nóminative
case síngular, másculine génder, of the pósitive degreé of an
ádjective, the compárison is génerally made by mă'gĭs, *more,*
and māx'ĭmē, *most* :[63] as,

Pĭ'ŭs, *gódly, dútiful,* or *afféctionate ;* mă'gĭs pĭ'ŭs, *more
gódly, more dútiful,* or *more afféctionate ;* māx'ĭmē pĭ'ŭs,
most gódly, most dútiful, or *most afféctionate.*

OF A PRONOUN.

A Prónoun[64] is úsed instead of a noun, and is declíned
with númber, caşe, and génder.

---

párison like pūl'chĕr :—but the cómpounds of fĕ'rŏ, *I bear,* and of gĕ'rŏ,
I cárry, as lā'nĭgĕr, *wool-beáring,* ār'mĭgĕr, *arms-cárrying,* admit not of
a compárative or supérlative degreé. Dĕx'tĕr, *right,* and sĭnĭs'tĕr, *left,*
with some few óthers in *-ĕr,* (see note 60, abóve,) déviate from this
Rule, in the formátion of their supérlatives.

[62] To these may be ádded ĭmbēcĭl'lĭs, *weak ;* and ány cómpounds of
fă'cĭlĭs or of sĭ'mĭlĭs : as, dĭffĭ'cĭlĭs, *dífficult ;* dĭssĭ'mĭlĭs, *dissímilar* or
unlíke ; pĕrsĭ'mĭlĭs, *véry símilar* or *exceédingly like.*

[63] Althoúgh all ádjectives énding in *-ŭs* pure may be compáred by
help of these two ádverbs, yet mány of them have álso their régular
degreés of compárison ; thus, strĕ'nŭŭs, strĕnŭ'ĭŏr, strĕnŭĭs'sĭmŭs,
strénuous.

[64] Prónouns, as the name véry cleárly índicates, are súbstitutes for
nouns, supplýing the piace of the látter, and prevénting them (as it were)
from béing too fréquently repeáted: they have réference, thérefore, to
some person or thing befóre méntioned. Prónouns are éither Símple or
Compóunded : and they are moreóver divíded ínto *Pérsonal, Demón-
strative, Rélative, Interrógative, Posséssive, Indéfinite,* and *Pátrial.*
The símple prónouns, in Látin, amóunt to eighteen in númber ; námely,
the fifteen gíven in the E'ton list, abóve ; with the rélative quī, *who,* the
interrógative, quĭs ? *who,* or, *what ?* which last, howéver, some regárd

There are fífteen prónouns: námely,

Ĕ'gŏ,	*I*,	Ĭp'sĕ,	*himsélf*,	Sŭ'ŭs,	*his*,
Tū,	*thou*,	Ĭs'tĕ,	*that*,	Nōs'tĕr,	*ours*,
Ĭl'lĕ,	*he*,	Hīc,	*this*,	Vĕs'tĕr,	*yours*,
Ĭs,	*he*,	Mĕ'ŭs,	*mine*,	Nōs'trās,	*of our cóuntry*.
Sŭ'ī,	*of himsélf*,	Tŭ'ŭs,	*thine*,	Vēs'trās,	*of your cóuntry*.

To these may be ádded their cómpounds, ĕ'gŏmĕt, *I mysélf*, tū'tĕ. *thou thysélf*, ĭ'dĕm, *the same ;* álso the rélative quī, *who*, or *what ;* and cū'jās, *of what cóuntry*.

DECLENSION OF PRONOUNS.

Ĕ'gŏ, tū, sŭ'ī,[65] are prónouns súbstantive, and are thus declíned :—

---

as a cómpound of quī with ĭs ; and the pátrial, cū'jās, *of what cóuntry*. Of these, ĕ'gŏ, *I*, tū, *thou*, (or *you* by cóurtesy,) and sŭ'ī, *of himsélf, of hersélf, of itsélf*, or *of themsélves*, are súbstantives of all génders :—the remaining fífteen are ádjectives. But of these símple ádjective prónouns, séveral are assúmed súbstantively : as, ĭl'lĕ, in the másculine génder, *he :* ĭl'lă, in the féminine génder, *she ;* ĭl'lŭd, in the neúter génder, *it*. In like manner are hīc, hæc, hŏc, *this*, ĭs'tĕ, ĭs'tă, ĭs'tŭd, *that,* and ĭs, ĕ'ă, ĭd, *he, she, it*, used ; and more rárely, ĭp'sĕ, ĭp'să, ĭp'sŭm, *himsélf, hersélf, itsélf :* álso, the rélative, quī, *who ;* and some few óthers. Agáin, the prónouns ĕ'gŏ, *I*, and tū, *thou* or *you*, with their plúrals nōs, *we*, and vōs, *ye* or *you*, are térmed prímitives, becaúse from them are derived the posséssives mĕ'ŭs, *mine*, tŭ'ŭs, *thine*, nōs'tĕr, *ours*, vēs'tĕr, *yours :*—sŭ'ī, *of himsélf*, is álso a prímitive prónoun, the posséssive sŭ'ŭs, *his own, her own, its own*, or *their own*, béing derived from it. The last, námely *sŭ'ī*, and its derívative *sŭ'ŭs*, are stýled reflex, becaúse, pointing álways refléctively to the chief noun precéding them, they are in a mánner recíprocals of one anóther. With ĕ'gŏ, tū, and *sŭ'ī*, through their séveral cáses, are óften found the like cáses of *ĭp'sĕ, ĭp'să, ĭp'sŭm*, agreéing in génder and in númber, with the pérson understoód in those prímitive and símple prónouns.

[65] These three prónouns take *-mĕt*, áfter them, in all their cáses, whenéver a speáker, or wríter, inténds to mark more than órdinary emphasis : and, in the nóminative case (síngular) of *tū*, the sýllable *-tĕ-* is óften insérted betweén the prónoun and the adjúnctive, *-mĕt :*—thus, vĭ'dī ĕ'gŏmĕt, *I, my own self*, saw ; fēcĭs'sēs tū'tĕmĕt, *thou, thy own self, wouldest have done* (*it*). In so far, howéver, as regárds the sécond pérson, tū'tĕ ĭs óftener úsed, perháps, than tū'tĕmĕt. In the accúsative síngular, tĕ ĭs sómetimes doúbled ; as tĕ'tĕ, *thy idéntical self ;* and in like mánner, both in a síngular and plúral sense, we fréquently meet with sĕ'sĕ, *him véry self* or *them own selves*. Fínally, in the áblative case, both síngular and plúral, these three prónouns, in cómmon with the rélative, are fóllowed by the preposítion *cŭm* in composítion : as

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N.	Ĕ'gŏ,	*I,*	N.	Nōs,	*we,*
G.	Mĕ'ī,	*of me,*	G.	Nōs'trŭm, *vĕl -ī,*[67]	*of us,*
D.	Mĭ'hĭ,[66]	*to me,*	D.	Nō'bīs,	*to us,*
A.	Mē,	*me,*	A.	Nōs,	*us,*
V.	——	——	V.	——	
A.	Mē,	*from me.*	A.	Nō'bīs,	*from us.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N.	Tū,	*thou,*	N.	Vōs,	*ye or you,*
G.	Tŭ'ī,	*of thee,*	G.	Vēs'trŭm, *vĕl ī,*	*of you,*
D.	Tĭ'bĭ,	*to thee,*	D.	Vō'bīs,	*to you,*
A.	Tē,	*thee,*	A.	Vōs,	*you,*
V.	Tū,	*O thou,*	V.	Vōs,	*O ye or you,*
A.	Tē,	*with thee.*	A.	Vō'bīs,	*with you.*

Sŭ'ī, *of himsélf, of hersélf, of itsélf, of themsélves,* has no nóminative or vócative case, and is thus declíned :—

SINGULAR and PLURAL.

N.	——		
G.	Sŭ'ī,	*of himsélf,*	
D.	Sĭ'bĭ,	*to himsélf,*	} *hersélf, itsélf, themsélves.*
A.	Sē,	*himsélf,*	
V.	——		
A.	Sē,	*by himsélf.*	

Il'lĕ, *he,* il'lă, *she,* and ĭs'tĕ, *that,* are thus declíned :—

SINGULAR.

	Másculine.	*Féminine.*	*Neúter.*
N.	Il'lĕ,	il'lă,	il'lŭd,
G.	Il'lĭŭs, *vĕl* illī'ŭs, *of all génders,*		
D.	Il'lī, *of all génders,*		

mĕ'cŭm, *with me ;* sĕ'cŭm, *with or by himsélf or themsélves ;* vōbīs'cŭm, *with you.*

[66] The dátive mĭ'hĭ, *to me,* is óften contrácted by the póets, and sómetime by the prose wríters, into mî ; like nĭ'hĭl, *nóthing,* into nil, *nought.*

[67] The génitive plúral of ĕ'gŏ, was originally nōstrŏ'rŭm, when the pérson allúded to was másculine ; and nōstrā'rŭm, when that pérson was of the féminine génder. But in prócess of time, this génitive becáme nōstrŭm, by sýncopé : and occásionally nōstrī.

A.	Ĭl'lŭm,	ĭl'lăm,	ĭl'lŭd,
V.			
A.	Ĭl'lō,	ĭl'lā,	ĭl'lō.

PLURAL.

	Másculine.	*Féminine.*	*Neúter.*
N.	Ĭl'lī,⁶⁸	ĭl'lǣ,	ĭl'lă,
G.	Ĭllō'rŭm,	ĭllā'rŭm,	ĭllō'rŭm,
D.	Il'līs, *of all génders,*		
A.	Ĭl'lōs,	ĭl'lās,	ĭl'lă,
V.	—	—	—
A.	Ĭl'līs, *of all génders.*		

In like mánner, álso, is declíned ĭp'sĕ, *he himsélf;* excépt, that the nóminative and accúsative cáses, síngular, have pĭ'sŭm in the neúter génder.

Is, *he, she,* or *that,* and quī, *who,* are thus declíned :—

	SINGULAR.				PLURAL.		
	Másc.	*Fém.*	*Neút.*		*Másc.*	*Fém.*	*Neút.*
N.	Ĭs,	ĕ'ă,	ĭd,	N.	Ĭ'ī,	ĕ'ǣ,	ĕ'ă,
G.	Ĕ'jŭs, *of all génders,*			G.	Ĕō'rŭm,	ĕā'rŭm,	ĕo'rŭm,
D.	Ĕ'ī, *of all génders,*			D.	Ĭ'īs *vèl* ĕ'īs *vèl* eīs *vèl* īs,⁶⁹		
A.	Ĕ'ŭm,	ĕ'ăm,	ĭd,	A.	Ĕ'ōs,	ĕ'ās,	ĕ'ă,
V.	—			V.	—		
A.	Ĕ'ō,	ĕ'ā,	ĕ'ō.	A.	Ĭ'īs *vèl* ĕ'īs *vèl* eīs *vèl* īs.		

In like mánner álso is declíned its cómpound ĭ'dĕm, *the same;* as, *Nóminative,* ĭ'dĕm, ĕ'ădĕm, ĭ'dĕm; *Génitive,* ĕjūs'dĕm; *Dátive,* ĕī'dĕm, &c.⁷⁰

---

⁶⁸ For ĭl'lī, and ĭl'līs, we sometimes meet with ōl'lī, and ōl'līs, agreé-ably to the more áncient mode of spélling. Like those cáses of ĭl'lĕ were the dátive and ablative cáses síngular of hĭc, ĭs, and quī :—námely, hōīc, ĕ'oī, and quoī, for the másculine and neúter génders, and haīc, ĕ'aī, and quaī, for the féminine génder. The ádverb cĕ'cĕ, or ráther a frágment of that ádverb, énters into compositíon with ĭl'lĕ in the más-culine and féminine génders of the accúsative case both in the síngular and plúral númber :—as, ĕl'lŭm, ĕl'lăm, ĕl'lōs, ĕl'lās.

⁶⁹ With the ádverb cĕ'cĕ, the prónoun ĭs énters into compositíon exáctly in the same way, and to the same extént as ĭl'lĕ : hence we have ĕc'cŭm, ĕc'căm, ĕc'cōs, and ĕc'cās, but nóthing fúrther.

⁷⁰ This prónoun is véry évidently a cómpound of ĭs, with the adjúnc-tive sýllable -dĕm, contrácted by sýncopë into ĭ'dĕm for the másculine, and ĭ'dĕm for the neúter génder. In the accúsative case síngular and génitive case plúral it has ĕŭn'dĕm, ĕăn'dĕm, and ĕŏrŭn'dĕm, ĕărŭn'dĕm, the létter m béing chánged into n for the sake of the sound.

SINGULAR.

	Másculine.	*Féminine.*	*Neúter.*
N.	Quī,	quæ,	quŏd,
G.	Cū'jŭs,	*of all génders,*	
D.	Cuī,	*of all génders,*	
A.	Quĕm,	quăm,	quŏd,
V.	—		
A.	{ Quō,	quā,	quŏ,
	vèl quî, *of all génders.*[71]		

PLURAL.

	Másculine.	*Féminine.*	*Neúter.*
N.	Quī,	quæ,	quæ,
G.	Quŏ'rŭm,	quā'rŭm,	quŏ'rŭm,
D.	Quĭ'bŭs *vèl* quĕ'īs *vèl* queīs *vèl* quîs,		
A.	Quōs	quās,	quæ,
V.	—		
A.	Quĭ'bŭs *vèl* quĕ'īs *vèl* queīs *vèl* quîs.		

In like mánner álso are declíned its cómpounds,[72] quī´-dăm, *a cértain one;* quī'vīs, quī'lĭbĕt, *any one you please;* quīcŭn'quĕ, *whosoéver.*

Quĭs, quæ, quĭd or quŏd, *who?* or *what?* is declíned like quī, *who:*—as are álso *ă'líquis,* and óther cómpounds of *quĭs:*[73] these for the most part make the féminine génder of the nóminative case síngular, and the neúter of the nóminative and accúsative cáses plúral, in *-quă.*[74]

[71] Although the áblative *quî* occúrs of all génders, yet it is úsed óftener, perhaps, in the neúter than in éither the másculine or féminine génder. In both the síngular, and plúral númber, the rélative, whenéver it is govérned by the prepositíon *cŭm* expréssed, may be fóllowed or precéded by that word at óption: thus we may say, *cŭm quŏ̄, cŭm quĭbŭs* or *quŏ'cŭm, quā'cŭm, quī'cŭm, quĭbŭs'cŭm;* but the látter form is more élegant.

[72] In évery cómpound (without excéption) of the rélative prónoun quī, *who,* the rélative stands first:—but in those of the interrógative quĭs, *who* or *what?* the interrógative is sómetimes first and sómetimes last.

[73] *Quĭs'quăm* has óften *quīc'quăm,* for *quĭd'quăm,* in the neúter génder; and *quēn'quăm,* for *quĕm-quăm,* in the accúsative síngular, másculiae génder: but the féminine *quā'quăm* is not found. The cómpounds of *quī,* álso change *m* into *n* befóre *d:* thus we óften find *quēn'dăm, quău'dăm,—quŏrŭn'dăm, quārŭn'dăm, &c.* for *quĕm'dăm, quăm'dăm,—quŏrŭm'dăm, quārŭm'dăm, &c.*

[74] This observátion applíes ónly to such cómpounds of *quĭs,* as térmi-

Quĭs'quĭs, *whosoĕver,* is thus declíned :—

	Másculine.	*Féminine.*	*Neúter.*
N.	Quĭs'quĭs,	———	quĭd'quĭd *vĕl* quíc'quĭd.
G.	———	———	———
D.	———	———	———
A.	———	———	quĭd'quĭd *vĕl* quíc'quĭd,
V.	———	———	———
A.	Quŏ'quŏ,	quā'quā,	quŏ'quŏ.

Mĕ'ŭs, tŭ'ŭs, sŭ'ŭs, are declíned like *bŏ'nŭs,* excépt ónly that *mĕ'ŭs* makes mī[75] in the vócative case síngular, másculine ; and *tŭ'ŭs, sŭ'ŭs,* with mány óther prónouns, have no vócative case.[76]

Nōs'trās, vēs'trās, and *cū'jās,* are declíned, Nóminative, *nōs'trās,* Génitive, *nostrā'tĭs,* like *fē'lĭx.*[77]

OF A VERB.

A VERB is the chíef word in évery séntence, and exprésses éither the *áction* or *béing* of a thing.

---

nate in that prónoun : for those which begín with it, as *quĭs'năm,* have *quā* and not *quā.*

[75] To the áblative case síngular, féminine génder (and sómetimes, too, though rárely, in the másculine génder,) of *mĕ'ŭs, tŭ'ŭs, sŭ'ŭs, nōs'tĕr,* and *vēs'tĕr,* is ádded (for the sake of émphasis) the termínation *-ptĕ :*— as, *mĕāp'tĕ, tŭāp'tĕ, sŭāp'tĕ, nostrāp'tĕ, vestrāp'tĕ :* álso, *mĕŏp'tĕ, tŭŏp'tĕ,* &c. but séldom.

[76] All nouns and prónouns with which the vócative *tŭ* cánnot be cóupled, so as to make sense, that is, all nouns and prónouns which cánnot be rátionally addréssed, " O thou," seem, of necéssity, to want the vócative case :—as, *nĕ'mŏ, nobody, nūl'lŭs, no one,* quŏt, *how mány,* e̅'gŏ, *I,* sŭ'ī, *of himsélf,* hīc, *this one.*

[77] It may be remárked, that to *hīc,* and ány of its cáses ending in *o* or in *s,* there is óften ádded the sýllable *-cĕ :* as, *hīc'cĕ, hŏc'cĕ, hūjŭs'cĕ, hīs'cĕ :* and occásionally *-cĭnĕ,* to ány case énding in *c.* This prónoun is álso compóunded with *ĭl'lĕ* and with *īs'tĕ :* as, *ĭl'līc, ĭl'lăec, ĭl'lŏc,* and, *ĭst'hīc, ĭst'hăec, ĭst'hŏc,* vĕl *ĭst'hūc.* This last is fréquently wrítten withóut the *h.* And with the génitive *hū'jŭs,* and líkewise with *e̅'jŭs* and *cū'jŭs,* is óftentimes read the génitive of *mŏ'dŭs,* adjúnctively : as, hūjŭs'mŏdī, *on this wíse* or *of this mánner :* ējŭs'mŏdī, *of that mánner ;* cūjŭs'mŏdī, *of which sort,* or, interrógatively, *of what mánner* or *on what wíse ?* And as *hū'jŭs* takes *-cĕ* áfter it, (as has been said abóve) so *e̅'jŭs* and *cū'jŭs* have sómetimes the same adjúnctive : as, ējŭs'cĕ, *of*

Of Verbs there are two Voices :—

I. The Ác'tive, énding in -ŏ ; as ă'mŏ, *I love.*

II. The Pássive, énding in -ŏr ; as ă'mŏr, *I am lóved.*

Of Verbs énding in -ŏ, some are áctives tránsitive : as, vīn'cŏ, *I cónquer ;* and these, símply by chánging ŏ ínto -ŏr, becóme verbs pássive; as, vīn'cŏr, *I am cónquered.* Some are námed neúters, and íntransitives ; as, gaŭ'dĕŏ, *I am glad :* and these are néver made pássives.

Some verbs énding in -ŏr, are cálled depónents,—and have an áctive significátion :—as, lŏ'quŏr, *I speak.* And some few are neúters :—as, glō'rĭŏr, *I boast.*[78]

Note I. That verbs neúter énding in -ŏr, and verbs depónent, are declíned like verbs pássive,—but with gérunds and súpines like verbs áctive.

II. A verb is cálled tránsitive when the áction pásses on to the noun fóllowing :—as, vīn'cŏ tē, *I cónquer thee ;* vĕ'nĕrŏr Dĕ'ŭm, *I wórship God.*

III. A verb is cálled íntransitive, or neúter, when the áction does not pass on, or requíre a fóllowing noun : as, cūr'rŏ, *I run ;* glō'rĭŏr, *I boast.*

IV. Verbs that have dífferent pérsons are cálled verbs pérsonal :—as, ĕ'gŏ ă'mŏ, *I love ;* tū ă'mās, *thou lóvest.*

And such as have not dífferent pérsons are cálled verbs ímpersonal :—as, tæ'dĕt, *it irks ;* ŏpōr'tĕt, *it behóves.*

---

that, póintingly : cūjūs'cĕ, *of whose :* or *of what ?* Betweén the génitive síngular álso of those prónouns, and that of mŏ'dŭs, this frágment of ĕc'cĕ is óften introdúced : as, hŭjūscĕ'mŏdī, *of this véry sort.*

[78] *Incéptive Verbs* are such as indicate that a begínning has been made, and they are fórmed from the sécond pérson síngular of the présent of the indicative of some símple verb of kíndred meáning, by the addítion of -cŏ :—hence they all end in -scŏ ; as cälĕs'cŏ, *I wax hot,* from că'lĕŏ, că'lĕs, *I am hot.*

Frequéntative Verbs are such as implý fréquency or repetítion of that which is the súbject of the verb :—as, clă'mĭtŏ, *I excláim fréquently,* from clă'mŏ, *I excláim ;* cūr'sŏ and cūr'sĭtŏ, *I run óften,* from cūr'rŏ, *I run ;* jăc'tŏ and jăc'tĭtŏ, *I fling óften,* from jă'cĭŏ, *I cast.* All frequéntative verbs in -ĭtŏ are fórmed from verbs of the first conjugátion, by chánging the final -ŭ of the last súpine ínto -ĭtŏ.

Desíderative Verbs expréss some wish or desíre,—and are all of the fourth cónjugation ; béing fórmed by the convérsion of -ŭ of the last súpine of verbs ínto -ŭ'rĭŏ ; as, ĕsŭ'rĭŏ, *I desíre to eat,* from ĕ'sŭ, *to be eáten.*

OF MOODS.

THERE are five moods; the indicative, the imperative, the potential, the subjunctive, and the infinitive.

The indicative mood either decláres a thing pósitively, as ĕ′gŏ, ă′mŏ, *I love ;* else it asks a quéstion, as ă′mās tū ? *Dost thou love ?*

The impérative mood commánds or entreáts : as, vĕ′nī hūc, *come hither ;* pār′cĕ mĭ′hī, *spare me.*

It is álso known in En′glish by the sign *let ;* as, ĕā′mŭs, *let us go.*

The poténtial mood implíes "*pówer*" or "*dúty ;*" and in En′glish is cómmonly known by these signs, *may, can, might, would, could, should,* or *ought :*—as, ă′mēm, *I may love ;* ămāvīs′sēm, *I might have lóved ;* and the like.

The subjúnctive mood in Látin díffers from the poténtial, ónly in that it is subjoíned to anóther verb góing befóre it in the same séntence ; and has álways some conjúnction, or indéfinite word, joíned to it: as, ĕ′rām mĭ′sĕr cŭm ămā′rēm, *I was míserable when I lóved,* that is, *when I was-in-love ;* nĕ′scĭŏ quā′lĭs sĭt, *I know not what sort of man he is.*

The infínitive mood hath neíther númber, pérson, nor nóminative case ; and is (cómmonly) known by the sign *to ;* as, ămā′rĕ, *to love.*

OF GERUNDS AND SÚPINES.

VERBS have three gérunds, énding in -*dī,* -*dŏ,* -*dŭm,* and which have an áctive significátion :—as, ămăn′dī, *of lóving ;* ămăn′dŏ, *in lóving ;* ămăn′dŭm, *lóving.*

The Súpines of verbs are two :—

The one énding in -*ŭm,* which sígnifies áctively :—as, ĕ′ŏ ămā′tŭm, *I go to love.*

The óther énding in -*ū,* and háving for the most part a pássive significátion :—as, dĭffĭ′cĭlĭs ămā′tū, *hard or difficult to be lóved.*

OF THE TENSES OF VERBS.

IN VERBS there are five ténses, or times, expréssing an áction or affirmátion : viz. the présent, the pretěrímperfect, the pretěrpérfect, the pretěrplúperfect, and the fúture.

I. The présent tense speaks of a thing présent, or now dóing :—as, ă'mŏ, *I love* or *am lóving.*

II. The preterímperfect tense speaks of a thing which was dóing at some time past, and not then términated or énded : as, ămā'bām, *I did love* or *was lóving.*

III. The preterpérfect tense speaks of a thing alreády done and past :—as, ămā'vī, *I lóved* or *have lóved.*

IV. The preterplúperfect tense reférs to a thing done at some time past, and términated or énded befóre sómething else spóken of:—as, ămā'vĕrām ān'tĕ tūnc tēm'pŏrĭs, *I had lóved befóre that time.*

V. The fúture tense speaks of a thing to be done hereáfter: as, ămā'bŏ, *I shall love ;* ămā'bĭs, *thou wilt love.*

OF NUMBERS AND PERSONS.

VERBS have two númbers, the síngular and the plúral: and three pérsons in each númber ;—as,

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Ĕ'gŏ ă'mŏ,	*I love,*		Nōs ămā'mŭs,	*we love,*	
Tū ă'mās,	*thou lóvest,*		Vōs ămā'tĭs,	*ye love,*	
Ĭl'lĕ, ă'măt,	*he loves,*		Ĭl'lī ă'mānt,	*they love.*	

Note. All nouns are of the third pérson, excépt ĕ'gŏ, *I,* nōs, *we,* tū, *thou* or *you,* and vōs, *you* or *ye :* but nouns of the vócative case are próperly of the sécond pérson, becaúse *tū* or *vōs* (accórding as the noun is síngular or plúral,) must nécessarily be understoód.

OF THE VERB, ĒS'SĔ, *TO BE.*

BEFÓRE óther verbs can be declíned, it is nécessary to learn the verb ēs'sĕ, *to be ;* which is váried as fóllows :—

Sŭm, ĕs, fŭ'ī, ēs'sĕ, fŭtū'rŭs, *to be.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*am.*

	Sŭm,	*I am,*
Síngular.	ĕs,	*thou art,*
	ēst,	*he is,*

Plúral.	sŭ'mŭs,	*we are,*
	ēs'tĭs,	*ye are,*
	sūnt,	*they are.*

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*was.*

Síngular.	Ĕ'rām,	*I was,*
	ĕ'rās,	*thou wast,*
	ĕ'răt,	*he was,*

Plúral.	ĕrā'mŭs,	*we were,*
	ĕrā'tĭs,	*ye were,*
	ĕ'rānt,	*they were.*

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—*have.*

Síngular.	Fŭ'ĭ,	*I have been,*
	fŭīs'tĭ,	*thou hast been,*
	fŭ'ĭt,	*he has been,*

Plúral.	fŭ'ĭmŭs,	*we have been,*
	fŭīs'tĭs,	*ye have been,*
	fŭē'rŭnt *vel* fŭē'rĕ,	*they have been.*

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—*had.*

Síngular.	Fŭ'ĕrām,	*I had been,*
	fŭ'ĕrās,	*thou hadst been,*
	fŭ'ĕrăt,	*he had been,*

Plúral.	fŭĕrā'mŭs,	*we had been,*
	fŭĕrā'tĭs,	*ye had been,*
	fŭ'ĕrānt,	*they had been.*

5. Fúture Tense.—*shall* or *will.*

Síngular.	Ĕ'rŏ,	*I shall be,*[78]
	ĕ'rĭs,	*thou wilt be,*
	ĕ'rĭt,	*he will be,*

---

[78] Though the sign of the fúture tense be "*shall* or *will*," yet the fórmer is génerally úsed with the first pérson only; the látter, with the sécond and third pérsons: for the expréssion "*I will be,*" means ráther, "*I am willing to be,*" than "*I shall be ;*" and in like mánner, by "*you shall be,*" we ríghtly understánd "*you will be compélled to be.*" Yet mány speákers confóund "*shall*" and "*will*" with each óther, and this not unfréquently to the útter pervérsion of the sense. But there are ínstances in which, with the first pérson, "*will*" is préferable to "*shall:*" and óthers in which, with the sécond and third pérsons, "*shall*" is more éligible than "*will.*"

Plúral.	{ ĕ'rĭmŭs,	*we shall be,*
	ĕ'rĭtĭs,	*ye will be,*
	ĕ'rūnt,	*they will be.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.
Présent Tense.—*No first Pérson.*

Síngular.	{ Sīs, ĕs, ēs'tŏ,	*be thou,*
	sĭt, ēs'tŏ,	*let him be,*

Plúral.	{ sī'mŭs,	*let us be,*
	sī'tĭs, ēs'tĕ, ēstŏ'tĕ,	*be ye,*
	sīnt, sūn'tŏ,	*let them be.*

POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*may, can, or should.*

Síngular.	{ Sīm,	*I may be,*[79]
	sīs,	*thou máyest be,*
	sĭt,	*he may be,*

Plúral.	{ sī'mŭs,	*we may be,*
	sī'tĭs,	*ye may be,*
	sīnt,	*they may be.*

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*might or could.*

Síngular.	{ Ĕs'sēm, *vèl* fŏ'rēm,	*I might be,*
	ēs'sēs, *vèl* fŏ'rēs,	*thou mightest be,*
	ēs'sĕt, *vèl* fŏ'rĕt,	*he might be.*

Plúral.	{ ēssē'mŭs, *vèl* fŏrĕ'mŭs,	*we might be,*
	ēssē'tĭs, *vèl* fŏrē'tĭs,	*ye might be,*
	ēs'sēnt, *vèl* fŏ'rēnt,	*they might be.*

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—*may or should have.*

Síngular.	{ Fŭ'ĕrĭm,	*I may have been,*
	fŭ'ĕrĭs,	*thou máyest have been,*
	fŭ'ĕrĭt,	*he may have been,*

---

[79] Here, want of room prevénts us from gíving with the séveral pérsons of the different ténses, all the signs belónging to those ténses ; but cómmon sense will suggést, that they may (and ought to) be táken with each pérson, síngular and plúral :—thus, for the présent tense of the poténtial mood, *I may, can,* or *should be. thou máyest, canst,* or *shoúldest be ; he may, can,* or *should be ;* and so forth : agaín, for the preterímperfect, *I might* or *could be ; thou mightest* or *coúldest be ; he might* or *could be ;* and so on.

Plúral.	{ fŭĕ'rĭmŭs, fŭĕ'rĭtĭs, fŭ'ĕrĭnt,	*we may have been,* *ye may have been,* *they may have been.*

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—*might* or *would have.*

Singular.	{ Fŭīs'sēm, fŭīs'sēs, fŭīs'sĕt,	*I might have been,* *thou mightest have been,* *he might have been,*
Plúral.	{ fŭīssē'mŭs, fŭīssē'tĭs, fŭīs'sēnt,	*we might have been,* *ye might have been,* *they might have been.*

5. Fúture Tense.—*shall* or *will have.*

Singular.	{ Fŭ'ĕrŏ, fŭ'ĕrīs, fŭ'ĕrĭt,	*I shall have been,* *thou wilt have been,* *he will have been,*
Plúral.	{ fŭĕrī'mŭs, fŭĕrī'tĭs, fŭ'ĕrĭnt,	*we shall have been,* *ye will have been,* *they will have been.*

The Subjúnctive Mood is declíned like the Poténtial.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Présent and Preterímperfect Tense.
Ĕs'sĕ, *to be.*

Preterpérfect and Preterplúperfect Tense.
Fŭīs'sĕ, *to have been.*

Fúture Tense.
Fŏrĕ *vèl* Fŭtū'rŭm ĕs'sĕ, *to be abóut to be.*

Párticiple of the fúture in *-rŭs.*
Fŭtū'rŭs, *abóut to be.*

DECLENSION OF VERBS REGULAR.

Verbs have four conjugátions, both in the áctive and pássive voice.

The first conjugátion of Verbs áctive hath *a* long befóre *-rĕ* of the infinitive mood ; as ămā'rĕ, *to love.*

The sécond conjugátion hath *e* long befóre *-rĕ* of the infínitive mood; as mŏnē'rĕ, *to advise.*

The third conjugátion hath *e* short befóre *-rĕ* of the infínitive mood; as rĕ'gĕrĕ, *to rule.*

The fourth conjugátion hath *i* long befóre *-rĕ* of the infínitive mood; as aūdī'rĕ, *to hear.*

VERBS AC'TIVE in *-ŏ* are declíned áfter these exámples.

1. Ă'mŏ, ă'mās, ămā'vī, ămā'rĕ, ămăn'dī, ămăn'dŏ, ămān'dŭm, ămā'tŭm, ămā'tū, ă'māns, ămātū'rŭs, *to love.*

2. Mŏ'nĕŏ, mŏ'nēs, mŏ'nŭī, mŏnē'rĕ, mŏnēn'dī, mŏnēn'dŏ, mŏnēn'dŭm, mŏ'nĭtŭm, mŏ'nĭtū, mŏ'nēns, mŏnĭtū'rŭs, *to advise.*

3. Rĕ'gŏ, rĕ'gĭs, rēx'ī, rĕ'gĕrĕ, rĕgĕn'dī, rĕgĕn'dŏ, rĕgĕn'dŭm, rēc'tŭm, rēc'tū, rĕ'gēns, rēctū'rŭs, *to rule.*

4. Aū'dĭŏ, aū'dīs, aūdī'vī, aūdī'rĕ, aūdĭĕn'dī, aūdĭĕn'dŏ, aūdĭĕn'dŭm, aūdī'tŭm, aūdī'tū, aū'dĭēns, aūdītū'rŭs, *to hear.*

FIRST CONJUGATION.—Ă'mŏ, *I love.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*I do love* or *am loving.*

Síngular.	Ă'-mŏ,	*I love,*
	ă'-mās,	*thou lóvest,*
	ă'-măt,	*he loves,*
Plúral.	ă-mā'mŭs,	*we love,*
	ă-mā'tĭs,	*ye love,*
	ă'-mānt,	*they love.*

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*I was lóving or did love.*

Síngular.	Ă-mā'bām,	*I did love,*
	ă-mā'bās,	*thou didst love,*
	ă-mā'băt,	*he did love,*
Plúral.	ă-mābā'mŭs,	*we did love,*
	ă-mābā'tĭs,	*ye did love,*
	ă-mā'bānt,	*they did love.*

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—*I lóved* or *have lóved.*

Síngular.	Ămā'-vī,	*I lóved,*
	ămā-vīs'tī,	*thou lóvedst,*
	ămā'-vĭt,	*he lóved,*

Plúral.	ămā'-vĭmŭs,	*we lóved,*
	ămā-vīs'tĭs,	*ye lóved,*
	ămā-vē'rŭnt *vèl* -vērĕ,	*they lóved.*

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—*I had lóved.*

Singular.	Ămā'-vĕrām,	*I had lóved,*
	ămā'-vĕrās,	*thou hadst lóved,*
	ămā'-vĕrăt,	*he had lóved,*
Plúral.	ămā-vĕrā'mŭs,	*we had lóved,*
	ămā-vĕrā'tĭs,	*ye had lóved,*
	ămā'vĕrānt,	*they had lóved.*

5. Fúture Tense.—*I shall or will love.*

Singular.	Ă-mā'bŏ,	*I shall love,*
	ă-mā'bĭs,	*thou wilt love,*
	ă-mā'bĭt,	*he will love,*
Plúral.	ă-mā bĭmŭs,	*we shall love,*
	ă-mā'bĭtĭs,	*ye will love,*
	ă-mā'būnt,	*they will love.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Présent Tense.—*No first Pérson.*

Singular.	Ă'-mā, ă-mā'tŏ,	*love thou,*
	ă'-mĕt, ă-mā'tŏ,	*let him or her love,*
Plúral.	ă-mē'mŭs,	*let us love,*
	ă-mā'tĕ, ă-mātō'tĕ,	*love ye,*
	ă'-mĕnt, ă-mān'tŏ,	*let them love.*

POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*may, can, should, would.*

Singular.	Ă'-mēm.	*I may love,*
	ă-mēs,	*thou máyest love,*
	ă'-mĕt,	*he may love,*
Plúral.	ă-mē'mŭs,	*we may love,*
	ă-mē'tĭs,	*ye may love,*
	ă'-mēnt,	*they may love.*

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*might, could.*

Singular.	Ă-mā'rēm,	*I might love,*
	ă-mā'rēs,	*thou mightest love,*
	ă-mā'rĕt,	*he might love,*

Plúral.	ă-mārē′mŭs,	*we might love,*
	ă-mārē′tĭs,	*ye might love,*
	ă-mā′rēnt,	*they might love.*

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—*may have, should have.*

Síngular.	Ămā′-vĕrĭm,	*I may have lóved,*
	ămā′-vĕrĭs,	*thou máyest have lóved,*
	ămā′-vĕrĭt,	*he may have lóved,*
Plúral.	Ămā-vĕ′rĭmŭs,	*we may have lóved,*
	ămā-vĕ′rītĭs,	*ye may have lóved,*
	ămā′-vĕrīnt,	*they may have lóved.*

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—*might have, would have.*

Síngular.	Ămā-vīs′sĕm,	*I might have lóved,*
	ămā-vīs′sēs,	*thou míghtest have lóved,*
	ămā-vīs′sĕt,	*he might have lóved,*
Plúral.	ămā-vīssē′mŭs,	*we might have lóved,*
	ămā-vīssē′tĭs,	*ye might have lóved,*
	ămā-vīs′sēnt,	*they might have lóved.*

5. Fúture Tense.—*shall* or *will have.*

Síngular.	Ămā′-vĕrŏ,	*I shall have lóved,*
	ămā′-vĕrĭs,	*thou wilt have lóved,*
	ămā′-vĕrĭt,	*he will have lóved,*
Plúral.	ămā-vĕrĭ′mŭs,	*we shall have lóved,*
	ămā′-vĕrītĭs,	*ye will have lóved,*
	ămā′-vĕrīnt,	*they will have lóved.*

The Subjúnctive Mood is declíned like the Poténtial.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Présent and Preterímperfect Tense.
Ă-mā′rĕ, *to love.*

Preterpérfect and Preterplúperfect Tense.
Amā-vīs′sĕ, *to have lóved.*

Fúture Tense.
Ămā-tū′rŭm ēs′sĕ, *to be abóut to love.*

GERUNDS.

A-mān'dī,	*of lóving,*
ă-mān'dŏ,	*in lóving,*
ă-mān'dŭm,	*lóving.*

SUPINES.

Ămā'-tŭm, *to love.*   Ămā'-tū, *to be lóved.*

PARTICIPLES.

Présent,	Ă-māns,	*lóving.*
Fúture,	Ămā-tū-rŭs,	*abóut to love.*

Obsercátion. In VERBS séveral ténses are fórmed of the preterpérfect tense of the Indícative Mood: as, of *ămā'-vī,* are fórmed:—

1. The plúperfect of the same mood, ... *ămā'-věrām,*
2. The pérfect of the poténtial mood, ... *ămā'-věrĭm,*
3. The plúperfect of the same mood, ... *ămā-vīs'sēm,*
4. The fúture tense of the same mood, . . . *ămā'-věrŏ,*
5. The préterite of the infínitive mood, . . . *ămā-vīs'sě.*[80]

SECOND CONJUGATION.—Mŏ'něŏ, *I advíse.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.— *I do advíse or am advísing.*

	⎧ Mŏ'-něŏ,	*I advíse,*
Singular.	⎨ mŏ'-nēs,	*thou advísest,*
	⎩ mŏ'-nět,	*he or she advíses,*
	⎧ mŏ-nē'mŭs,	*we advíse,*
Plúral.	⎨ mŏ-nē'tĭs,	*ye advíse,*
	⎩ mŏ'-nēnt,	*they advíse.*

2. Preterímperfect Tense.— *I did advíse or was advísing.*

	⎧ Mŏ-nē'bām,	*I did advíse,*
Singular.	⎨ mŏ-nē'bās,	*thou didst advíse,*
	⎩ mŏ-nē'băt,	*he did ádvise,*

---

[80] From *-ŏ* of the présent, come *-bām, -bŏ, -ām, -ēm* and *-ns :* from *-ŭm* are derived *-ū* and *-rŭs :* from *-rě,* comes *-rēm,* and *-ā, -ē, -ě,* or *-ī* of the sécond pérson síngular of the impérative. The gérund takes its rise from *-ns.*

Plúral.	mŏ-nēbā′mŭs,	*we did advise,*
	mŏ-nēbā′tĭs,	*ye did advise,*
	mŏ-nē′bānt,	*they did advise.*

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—*I advised* or *have advised.*

Singular.	Mŏ′nŭ-ī,	*I advised,*
	mŏnŭ-īs tī,	*thou advisedst,*
	mŏ′nŭ-ĭt,	*he advised,*
Plúral.	mŏnŭ′-ĭmŭs,	*we advised,*
	mŏnŭ-īs′tĭs,	*ye advised,*
	mŏnŭ-ē′rūnt *vèl* -ē′rĕ,	*they advised.*

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—*I had advised.*

Singular.	Mŏnŭ′-ĕrām,	*I had advised,*
	mŏnŭ′-ĕrās,	*thou hadst advised,*
	mr̆′nŭ′-ĕrăt,	*he had advised,*
Plúral.	mŏnŭ-ĕrā′mŭs,	*we had advised,*
	mŏnŭ-ĕrā′tĭs,	*ye had advised,*
	mŏnŭ′-ĕrānt,	*they had advised.*

5. Future Tense.—*I shall* or *will advise.*

Singular.	Mŏ-nē′bŏ,	*I shall advise,*
	mŏ-nē′bĭs,	*thou wilt advise,*
	mŏ-nē′bĭt,	*he will advise,*
Plúral.	mŏ-nē′bĭmŭs,	*we shall advise,*
	mŏ-nē′bĭtĭs,	*ye will advise,*
	mŏ-nē′būnt,	*they will advise.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Présent Tense.—*No first Pérson.*

Singular.	Mŏ′-nē, mŏ-nē′tŏ,	*advise thou,*
	mŏ′-nĕăt, mŏ-nē′tŏ,	*let him advise,*
Plúral.	mŏ-nĕā′mŭs,	*let us advise,*
	mŏ-nē′tĕ, mŏ-nētō′tĕ,	*advise ye,*
	mŏ′-nĕănt, mŏ-nēn′tŏ,	*let them advise.*

POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*may, can, should, would.*

Singular.	Mŏ′-nĕăm,	*I may advise,*
	mŏ′-nĕăs,	*thou máyest advise,*
	mŏ′-nĕăt,	*he may advise,*

Plúral.	mŏ-nĕā′mŭs,	*we may advise,*
	mŏ-nĕā′tĭs,	*ye may advise,*
	mŏ′-nĕänt,	*they may advise.*

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*might, could.*

Singular.	Mŏ-nē′rēm,	*I might advise,*
	mŏ-nē′rēs,	*thou mightest advise,*
	mŏ-nē′rĕt,	*he might advise,*
Plúral.	mŏ-nērē′mŭs,	*we might advise,*
	mŏ-nērē′tĭs,	*ye might advise,*
	mŏ-nē′rēnt,	*they might advise.*

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—*may have, should have.*

Singular.	Mŏnŭ′-ĕrĭm,	*I may have advised,*
	mŏnŭ′-ĕrĭs,	*thou mayest have advised,*
	mŏnŭ′-ĕrĭt,	*he may have advised,*
Plúral.	mŏnŭ-ĕ′rĭmŭs,	*we may have advised.*
	mŏnŭ′-ĕ′rĭtĭs,	*ye may have advised,*
	mŏnŭ′-ĕrĭnt,	*they may have advised.*

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—*might* or *could have.*

Singular.	Mŏnŭ-īs′sēm,	*I might have advised,*
	mŏnŭ-īs′sēs,	*thou mightest have advised,*
	mŏnŭ-īs′sĕt,	*he might have advised,*
Plúral.	mŏnŭ-īssē′mŭs,	*we might have advised,*
	mŏnŭ-īssē′tĭs,	*ye might have advised,*
	mŏnŭ-īs′sēnt,	*they might have advised.*

5. Fúture Tense.—*shall* or *will have.*

Singular.	Mŏnŭ′-ĕrŏ,	*I shall have advised,*
	mŏnŭ′-ĕrīs,	*thou wilt have advised,*
	mŏnŭ′-ĕrĭt,	*he will have advised,*
Plúral.	mŏnŭ-ĕrī′mŭs,	*we shall have advised,*
	mŏnŭ-ĕrī′tĭs,	*ye will have advised,*
	mŏnŭ-ĕrĭnt,	*they will have advised.*

The Subjúnctive Mood is declíned like the Potén tial.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Présent and Preterímperfect Tense.

Mŏ-nē′rĕ, *to advise.*

D

Preterpérfect and Preterplúperfect Tense.

Mŏn**ŭ**-īs'sĕ, *to have advised.*

Future Tense.

Mŏnĭ-tū'rŭm ēs'sĕ, *to be about to advise.*

GERUNDS.

Mŏ-nēn'dī,	*of advising,*
mŏ-nēn'dŏ,	*in advising,*
mŏ-nēn'dŭm,	*advising.*

SUPINES.

Mŏ'nĭ-tŭm, *to advise.* Mŏ'nĭ-tū, *to be advised.*

PARTICIPLES.

Présent, Mŏ'-nēns, *advising.*
Fúture, Mŏnĭ-tū'rŭs, *aboút to advise.*

THIRD CONJUGATION.—Rĕ'gŏ, *I rule.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*I do rule* or *am rúling.*

Síngular.	Rĕ'-gŏ,	*I rule,*
	rĕ'-gĭs,	*thou rúlest,*
	rĕ'-gĭt,	*he rules,*
Plúral.	rĕ'-gĭmŭs,	*we rule,*
	rĕ'-gĭtĭs,	*ye rule,*
	rĕ'-gŭnt,	*they rule.*

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*I was rúling* or *did rule.*

Síngular.	Rĕ-gē'bām,	*I was rúling,*
	rĕ-gē'bās,	*thou wast rúling,*
	rĕ-gē'băt,	*he was rúling,*
Plúral.	rĕ-gēbā'mŭs,	*we were rúling,*
	rĕ-gēbā'tĭs,	*ye were rúling,*
	rĕ-gē'bānt,	*they were rúling.*

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—*I rúled* or *have rúled.*

Síngular.	Rēx'-ī,	*I rúled,*
	rēx-īs'tī,	*thou rúledst.*
	rēx'-ĭt,	*he rúled,*

Plúral.	rēx'-ĭmŭs,	we rúled,
	rēx-īs'tĭs,	ye rúled,
	rēx-ē'rūnt *vèl* -ē'rĕ,	they rúled.

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—*I had rúled.*

Síngular.	Rēx'-ĕrām,	I had rúled,
	rēx'-ĕrās,	thou hadst rúled,
	rēx'ĕrăt,	he had rúled,
Plúral.	rēx-ĕrā'mŭs,	we had rúled,
	rēx-ĕrā'tĭs,	ye had rúled,
	rēx'-ĕrānt,	they had rúled,

5. Fúture Tense.—*I shall or will rúle.*

Síngular.	Rĕ'-gām,	I shall rúle,
	rĕ'-gēs,	thou wilt rúle,
	rĕ'-gĕt,	he will rúle,
Plúral.	rĕ-gē'mŭs,	we shall rule,
	rĕ-gē'tĭs,	ye will rule,
	rĕ'-gēnt,	they will rule.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Présent Tense.—*No first Pérson.*

Síngular.	Rĕ'-gĕ, rĕ'-gĭtŏ,	rule thou,
	rĕ'-găt, rĕ'-gĭtŏ,	let him rule,
Plúral.	rĕ-gā'mŭs,	let us rule,
	rĕ'-gĭtĕ, rĕ-gĭtŏ'tĕ,	rule ye,
	rĕ'-gānt, rĕ-gūn'tŏ,	let them rule-

POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*may, can, should, would.*

Síngular.	Rĕ'-gām,	I may rule,
	rĕ'-gās,	thou máyest rule,
	rĕ'-găt,	he may rule,
Plúral.	rĕ-gā'mŭs,	we may rule,
	rĕ-gā'tĭs,	ye may rule,
	rĕ'-gānt,	they may rule,

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*might, could.*

Síngular.	Rĕ'-gĕrēm,	I might rule,
	rĕ'-gĕrēs,	thou míghtest rule,
	rĕ'-gĕrĕt,	he might rule,

D 2

Plúral.	rĕ-gĕrē'mŭs,	*we might rule,*
	rĕ-gĕrē'tĭs,	*ye might rule,*
	rĕ'-gĕrēnt,	*they might rule.*

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—*may have, should have.*

Singular.	Rēx'-ĕrĭm,	*I may have rúled,*
	rēx'-ĕrĭs,	*thou máyest have rúled,*
	rēx'-ĕrĭt,	*he may have rúled,*
Plúral.	rēx-ĕ'rĭmŭs,	*we may have rúled,*
	rēx-ĕ'rĭtĭs,	*ye may have rúled,*
	rēx'-ĕrĭnt,	*they may have rúled.*

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—*might have, would have.*

Singular.	Rēx-īs'sēm,	*I might have rúled,*
	rēx-īs'sēs,	*thou míghtest have rúled,*
	rēx-īs'sĕt,	*he might have rúled,*
Plural.	rēx-īssē'mŭs,	*we might have rúled,*
	rēx-īssē'tĭs,	*ye might have rúled,*
	rēx-īs'sēnt,	*they might have rúled.*

5. Fúture Tense.— *shall* or *will have.*

Singular.	Rēx'-ĕrŏ,	*I shall have rúled,*
	rēx'-ĕrīs,	*thou wilt have ruled,*
	rēx'-ĕrĭt,	*he will have rúled,*
Plúral.	rēx-ĕrī'mŭs,	*we shall have rúled,*
	rēx-ĕrī'tĭs,	*ye will have rúled,*
	rēx'-ĕrīnt,	*they will have rúled.*

The Subjúnctive Mood is declíned like the Poténtial.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Présent and Preterímperfect Tense.
Rĕ'-gĕrĕ, *to rule.*

Preterpérfect and Preterplúperfect Tense.
Rēx-īs'sĕ, *to have ruled.*

Fúture Tense.
Rēc-tū'rŭm ēs'sĕ, *to be about to rule.*

GERUNDS.

Rĕ-gēn'dī,	*of rúling,*
rĕ-gēn'dŏ,	*in rúling,*
rĕ-gēn'dŭm,	*rúling.*

SUPINES.

Rēc'-tŭm, *to rule.*   Rēc'-tū, *to be ruled.*

PARTICIPLES.

Présent,	Rĕ'-gēns,	*rúling,*
Fúture,	Rēc-tū'rŭs,	*about to rule.*

FOURTH CONJUGATION.—Aŭ'dĭŏ, *I hear.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. **Présent Tense.**—*I do hear* or *am heáring.*

Singular.	Aŭ'-dĭŏ,	*I hear,*
	aŭ'-dīs,	*thou heárest,*
	aŭ'-dĭt,	*he hears,*
Plúral.	aŭ-dī'mŭs,	*we hear,*
	aŭ-dī'tĭs,	*ye hear,*
	aŭ'-dĭŭnt,	*they hear.*

2. **Preterímperfect Tense.**—*I was heáring* or *did hear.*

Singular.	Aŭ-dĭē'bām,	*I did hear,*
	aŭ-dĭē'bās,	*thou didst hear,*
	aŭ-dĭē'băt,	*he did hear,*
Plúral.	aŭ-dĭēbā'mŭs,	*we did hear,*
	aŭ-dĭēbā'tĭs,	*ye did hear,*
	aŭ-dĭē'bānt,	*they did hear.*

3. **Preterpérfect Tense.**—*I heard* or *have heard.*

Singular.	Aūdī'-vī,	*I heard,*
	aūdī-vīs'tī,	*thou heárdest,*
	aūdī'-vĭt,	*he heard,*
Plúral.	aūdī'-vĭmŭs,	*we heard,*
	aūdī-vīs'tĭs,	*ye heard,*
	aūdī-vē'rūnt *vèl* -vē'rĕ,	*they heard.*

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—*I had heard.*

Síngular.	{ Aūdī′-vĕrăm,	*I had heard,*
	aūdī′-vĕrăs,	*thou hadst heard,*
	aūdī′-vĕrăt,	*he had heard,*
Plúral.	{ aūdī-vĕrā′mŭs,	*we had heard,*
	aūdī-vĕrā′tĭs,	*ye had heard,*
	aūdī′-vĕrānt,	*they had heard.*

5. Fúture Tense.—*I shall or will hear.*

Síngular.	{ Aū′-dĭām,	*I shall hear,*
	aū′-dĭēs,	*thou wilt hear,*
	aū′-dĭĕt,	*he will hear,*
Plúral.	{ aū-dĭē′mŭs,	*we shall hear,*
	aū-dĭē′tĭs,	*ye will hear,*
	aū′-dĭent,	*they will hear.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Présent Tense.—*No first Pérson.*

Síngular.	{ Aū′-dī, aū-dī′tŏ,	*hear thou,*
	aū′-dĭăt, aū-dī′tŏ,	*let him hear,*
Plúral.	{ aū-dĭā′mŭs,	*let us hear,*
	aū-dī′tĕ, aū-dītŏ′tĕ,	*hear ye,*
	aū′-dĭānt, aū-dīūn′tŏ,	*let them hear.*

POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*may, can, should, would.*

Síngular.	{ Aū′-dĭām,	*I may hear,*
	aū′-dĭās,	*thou máyest hear,*
	aū′-dĭăt,	*he may hear,*
Plúral.	{ aū-dĭā′mŭs,	*we may hear,*
	aū-dĭā′tĭs,	*ye may hear,*
	aū′-dĭānt,	*they may hear.*

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*might, could.*

Síngular.	{ Aū-dī′rēm,	*I might hear,*
	aū-dī′rēs,	*thou mightest hear,*
	aū-dī′rĕt,	*he might hear,*
Plúral.	{ aū-dīrē′mŭs,	*we might hear,*
	aū-dīrē′tĭs,	*ye might hear,*
	aū-dī′rēnt,	*they might hear.*

3. Preterpérfect Tense —*may have, should have.*

Singular.
{ Aūdī'-věrĭm,   *I may have heard,*
{ aūdī'-věrĭs,   *thou máyest have heard,*
{ aūdī'-věrĭt,   *he may have heard,*

Plúral.
{ aūdī-vě'rĭmŭs,   *we may have heard,*
{ aūdī-vě'rĭtĭs,   *ye may have heard,*
{ aūdī'-věrĭnt,   *they may have heard.*

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—*might or would have.*

Singular.
{ Aūdī-vīs'sēm,   *I might have heard,*
{ aūdī-vīs'sēs,   *thou míghtest have heard,*
{ aūdī-vīs'sĕt,   *he might have heard,*

Plúral.
{ aūdī-vīssē'mŭs,   *we might have heard,*
{ aūdī-vīssē'tĭs,   *ye might have heard,*
{ aūdī-vīs'sēnt,   *they might have heard,*

5. Future Tense.—*shall or will have.*

Singular.
{ Aūdī'-věrŏ,   *I shall have heard,*
{ aūdī'-věrĭs,   *thou wilt have heard,*
{ aūdī'-věrĭt,   *he will have heard,*

Plúral.
{ aūdī-věrī'mŭs,   *we shall have heard,*
{ aūdī-věrī'tĭs,   *ye will have heard,*
{ aūdī'-věrĭnt,   *they will have heard.*

The Subjúnctive Mood is declíned like the Poténtial.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Présent and Preterímperfect Tense.
Aū-dī'rĕ, *to hear.*

Preterpérfect and Preterplúperfect Tense.
Aūdī-vīs'sĕ, *to have heard.*

Fúture Tense.
Aūdī-tū'rŭm ĕs'sĕ, *to be abóut to hear.*

GERUNDS.

Aū-dĭĕn'dī,   *of heáring,*
aū-dĭĕn'dŏ,   *in heáring,*
aū-dĭĕn'dŭm,   *heáring.*

SUPINES.

Aūdī'-tŭm, *to hear.*   Aūdī'-tū, *to be heard.*

PARTICIPLES.

Présent, Aū'-dĭēns,   *heáring,*
Fúture, Aūdī-tū'rŭs,   *aboút to hear.*

DECLENSION OF VERBS PASSIVE.

VERBS PASSIVE in -*ŏr* are thus declined :

1. Ă'mŏr, ămā'rĭs *vèl* ămā'rĕ, ămā'tŭs sŭm *vèl* fŭ'ī, ămā'rī, ămā'tŭs, ămān'dŭs, *to be lóved.*

2. Mŏ'nĕŏr, mŏnē'rĭs *vèl* mŏnē'rĕ, mŏ'nĭtŭs sŭm *vèl* fŭ'ī, mŏnē'rī, mŏ'nĭtŭs, mŏnēn'dŭs, *to be advised.*

3. Rĕ'gŏr, rĕ'gĕrĭs *vèl* rĕ'gĕrĕ, rēc'tŭs sŭm *vèl* fŭ'ī, rĕ'gī, rēc'tŭs, rĕgēn'dŭs, *to be rúled.*

4. Aū'dĭŏr, aūdī'rĭs *vèl* aūdī'rĕ, aūdī'tŭs sŭm *vèl* fŭ'ī, aūdī'rī, aūdī'tŭs, aūdĭēn'dŭs, *to be heard.*

FIRST CONJUGATION.—Ămŏr, *I am lóved.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*am.*

Singular.	Á'-mŏr,	*I am lóved,*
	ă-mā'rĭs *vèl* ă-mā'rĕ,	*thou art lóved,*
	ă-mā'tŭr,	*he is lóved,*
Plúral.	ă-mā'mŭr,	*we are lóved,*
	ă-mā'mĭnī,	*ye are lóved,*
	ă-mān'tŭr,	*they are lóved.*

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*was.*

Singular.	ă-mā'băr,	*I was lóved,*
	ă-mābā'rĭs *vèl* ă-mābā'rĕ,	*thou wast lóved,*
	ă-mābā'tŭr,	*he was lóved,*
Plúral.	ă-mābā'mŭr,	*we were lóved,*
	ă-mābā'mĭnī,	*ye were lóved,*
	ă-mābān'tŭr,	*they were lóved.*

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—sŭm *vèl* fŭ'ī, *have been.*

Síngular.
{ Ămā'-tŭs sŭm,   *I have been lóved,*
{ ămā'-tŭs ĕs,   *thou hast been lóved,*
{ ămā'-tŭs ēst,   *he has been lóved,*

Plúral.
{ ămā'-tī sŭ'mŭs,   *we have been lóved,*
{ ămā'-tī ĕs'tĭs,   *ye have been lóved,*
{ ămā'-tī sŭnt,   *they have been lóved.*

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—ĕ'rām *vèl* fŭ'ĕrām, *had been.*

Síngular.
{ Ămā'-tŭs ĕ'rām,   *I had been lóved,*
{ ămā'-tŭs ĕ'rās,   *thou hadst been lóred,*
{ ămā'-tŭs ĕ'răt,   *he had been lóved,*

Plúral.
{ ămā'-tī ĕrā'mŭs,   *we had been lóved,*
{ ămā'-tī ĕrā'tĭs,   *ye had been lóved,*
{ ămā'-tī ĕ'rănt,   *they had been lóved.*

5. Fúture Tense.—*shall* or *will be.*

Síngular.
{ Ă-mā'bŏr,   *I shall be lóved,*
{ ă-mā'bĕrĭs *vèl* ă-mā'bĕrĕ,   *thou wilt be lóved,*
{ ă-mā'bĭtŭr,   *he will be lóved,*

Plúral.
{ ă-mā'bĭmŭr,   *we shall be lóved,*
{ ă-mābĭ'mĭnī,   *ye will be lóved,*
{ ă-mābūn'tŭr,   *they will be lóved.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Présent Tense.—*No first Pérson.*

Síngular.
{ Ă-mā'rĕ, ămā'tŏr,   *be thou lóved,*
{ ă-mē'tŭr, ă-mā'tŏr,   *let him be lóved,*

Plúral.
{ ă-mē'mŭr,   *let us be lóved,*
{ ă-mā'mĭnī, ă-mā'mĭnŏr,   *be ye lóved,*
{ ă-mēn'tŭr, ă-mān'tŏr,   *let them be lóved.*

POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*may, can, should, would be.*

Síngular.
{ Ă'-mĕr,   *I may*
{ ă-mē'rĭs *vèl* ă-mē'rĕ,   *thou máyest*
{ ă-mē'tŭr,   *he may*

Plúral.
{ ă-mē'mŭr,   *we may*
{ ă-mē'mĭnī,   *ye may*
{ ă-mēn'tŭr,   *they may*

} *be lóved.*

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*might* or *could be.*

Singular. {
Ă-mā'rĕr,   *I might*
ă-mārē'rĭs *vel* ă-mārē'rĕ, *thou mightest*
ă-mārē'tŭr,   *he might*
}

Plúral. {
ă-mārē'mŭr,   *we might*
ă-mārē'mĭnī,   *ye might*
ă-mārēn'tŭr,   *they might*
}

} *be loved.*

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—sīm *vel* fŭ'ĕrĭm, *may* or *should have been.*

Singular. {
Ămā'-tŭs sīm,   *I may*
ămā'-tŭs sīs,   *thou máyest*
ămā'-tŭs sīt,   *he may*
}

Plúral. {
ămā'-tī sī'mŭs,   *we may*
ămā'-tī sī'tĭs,   *ye may*
ămā'-tī sīnt,   *they may*
}

} *have been lóved.*

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—ēs'sēm *vel* fŭīs'sēm, *might* or *would have been.*

Singular. {
Ămā'-tŭs ēs'sēm,   *I might*
ămā'-tŭs ēs'sēs,   *thou mightest*
ămā'-tŭs ēs'sĕt,   *he might*
}

Plúral. {
ămā'-tī essē'mŭs,   *we might*
ăm '-tī essē'tĭs,   *ye might*
ămā'-tī ēs'sēnt,   *they might*
}

} *have been lóved.*

5. Fúture Tense.—ĕ'rŏ *vel* fŭ'ĕrŏ, *shall* or *will have been.*

Singular. {
Ămā'tŭs ĕ'rŏ,   *I shall*
ămā'tŭs ĕ'rĭs,   *thou wilt*
ămā tŭs ĕ'rĭt,   *he will*
}

Plúral. {
ămā'-tī ĕ'rĭmŭs,   *we shall*
ămā-tī ĕ'rĭtĭs,   *ye will*
ămā'-tī ĕ'rŭnt,   *they will*
}

} *have been loved.*

The Subjúnctive Mood is declíned like the Poténtial.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Présent and Preterímperfect Tense.
À·mā'rī, *to be loved.*

Preterpérfect and Preterplúperfect Tense.
Ămā-trĭm ēs'sĕ *vel* fŭīs'sĕ, **to have been lóved.**

Fúture Tense.
Ămā'-tŭm ī'rī, *to be abóut to be lóved.*

PARTICIPLES.

Past, Ă-mā'tŭs, *lóved* or *háving been lóved.*
Fúture, Ă-mān'dŭs, *that is to be* or *that must be lóved.*

SECOND CONJUGATION.—Mŏ'nĕŏr, *I am advísed.*
INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.— *am.*

	Mŏ'-nĕŏr,	*I am advísed,*
Síngular.	mŏ-nē'rĭs *vèl* mŏ-nē'rĕ,	*thou art advísed,*
	mŏ-nē'tŭr,	*he is advísed,*
	mŏ-nē'mŭr,	*we are advísed,*
Plúral.	mŏ-nē'mĭnī,	*ye are advísed,*
	mŏ-nēn'tŭr,	*they are advísed.*

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*was.*

	Mŏ-nē'băr,	*I was advísed,*
Síngular.	mŏ-nēbā'rĭs *vèl* mŏ-nēbā'rĕ,	*thou wast advísed,*
	mŏ-nēbā'tŭr,	*he was advísed,*
	mŏ-nēbā'mŭr,	*we were advísed,*
Plúral.	mŏ-nēbā'mĭnī,	*ye were advísed,*
	mŏ-nēbān'tŭr,	*they were advísed.*

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—sŭm *vèl* fŭ'ī, *have been.*

	Mŏ'nĭ-tŭs sŭm,	*I have*	
Síngular.	mŏ'nĭ-tŭs ĕs,	*thou hast*	
	mŏ'nĭ-tŭs ēst,	*he has*	*been advísed.*
	mŏ'nĭ-tī sŭ'mŭs,	*we have*	
Plúral.	mŏ'nĭ-tī ēs'tĭs,	*ye have*	
	mŏ nĭ-tī sūnt,	*they have*	

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—ĕ'răm *vèl* fŭ'ĕrăm, *had been.*

	Mŏ'nĭ-tŭs ĕ'răm,	*I had*	
Síngular.	mŏ'nĭ-tŭs ĕ'răs,	*thou hadst*	
	mŏ'nĭ-tŭs ĕ'răt,	*he had*	*been advísed.*
	mŏ'nĭ-tī ĕ'rā'mŭs,	*we had,*	
Plúral.	mŏ'nĭ-tī ĕrā'tĭs,	*ye had,*	
	mŏ'nĭ-tī ĕ'rānt,	*they had,*	

5. Fúture Tense.—*shall* or *will be.*

Síngular.	Mŏ-nē′bŏr,	*I shall*	
	mŏ-nē′bĕrĭs *vèl* -nē′bĕrĕ,	*thou wilt*	
	mŏ-nē′bĭtŭr,	*he will*	*be advised.*
Plúral.	mŏ-nē′bĭmŭr,	*we shall*	
	mŏ-nēbĭ′mĭnī,	*ye will*	
	mŏ-nēbūn′tŭr,	*they will*	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Présent Tense.—*No first Pérson.*

Síngular.	Mŏ-nē′rĕ, mŏ-nē′tŏr,	*be thou*	
	mŏ-nĕă′tŭr, mŏ-nē′tŏr,	*let him be*	*advised.*
Plúral.	mŏ-nĕă′mŭr,	*let us be*	
	mŏ-nē′mĭnī, mŏ-nē′mĭnŏr,	*be ye*	
	mŏ-nĕăn′tŭr, mŏ-nēn′tŏr,	*let them be*	

POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*may, can, should, would be.*

Síngular.	Mŏ -nĕăr,	*I may*	
	mŏ-nĕă′rĭs *vèl* mŏ-nĕă′rĕ,	*thou máyest*	
	mŏ-nĕă′tŭr,	*he may*	*be advised.*
Plúral.	mŏ-nĕă′mŭr,	*we may*	
	mŏ-nĕă′mĭnī,	*ye may*	
	mŏ-nĕăn′tŭr,	*they may*	

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*might* or *could be.*

Síngular.	Mŏ-nē′rĕr,	*I might*	
	mŏ-nē′rē′rĭs *vèl* nērē′rĕ,	*thou mightest*	
	mŏ-nērē′tŭr,	*he might*	*be advised.*
Plúral.	mŏ-nērē′mŭr,	*we might*	
	mŏ-nērē′mĭnī,	*ye might*	
	mŏ-nērēn′tŭr,	*they might*	

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—*sīm vèl fū′ĕrīm, may* or *should have been*

Síngular.	Mŏ′nĭ-tŭs sīm,	*I may*	
	mŏ′nĭ-tŭs sīs,	*thou máyest*	
	mŏ′nĭ-tŭs sĭt,	*he may*	*have been advised.*
Plúral.	mŏ′nĭ-tī sī′mŭs,	*we may*	
	mŏ′nĭ-tī sītĭs,	*ye may*	
	mŏ′nĭ-tī sīnt,	*they may*	

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—ēs'sēm *vèl* fŭīs'sēm, *might or would have been.*

Síngular.	Mŏ'nĭ-tŭs ēs'sēm,	*I might*
	mŏ'nĭ-tŭs ēs'sēs,	*thou mightest*
	mŏ'nĭ-tŭs ēs'sĕt,	*he might*
Plúral.	mŏ'nĭ-tī ēssē'mŭs,	*we might*
	mŏ'nĭ-tī ēssē'tĭs,	*ye might*
	mŏ'nĭ-tī ēs'sēnt,	*they might*

have been advised.

5. Fúture Tense.—ĕ'rŏ *vèl* fŭ'ĕrŏ, *shall or will have been.*

Síngular.	Mŏ'nĭ-tŭs ĕ'rŏ,	*I shall*
	mŏ'nĭ-tŭs ĕ'rĭs,	*thou wilt*
	mŏ'nĭ-tŭs ĕ'rĭt,	*he will*
Plúral.	mŏ'nĭ-tī ĕ'rĭmŭs,	*we shall*
	mŏ'nĭ-tī ĕ'rĭtĭs,	*ye will*
	mŏ'nĭ-tī ĕ'rūnt,	*they will*

have been advised.

The Subjúnctive Mood is declíned like the Poténtial.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Présent and Preterímperfect Tense.

Mŏ-nē'rī, *to be advised.*

Preterpérfect and Preterplúperfect Tense.

Mŏ'nĭ-tŭm ēs'sĕ *vèl* fŭīs'sĕ, *to have been advised.*

Fúture Tense.

Mŏ'nĭ-tŭm ī'rī, *to be aboút to be advised.*

PARTICIPLES.

Présent, Mŏ'nĭ-tŭs, *advised* or *háving been advised.*
Fúture, Mŏ-nēn'dŭs, *that is to be* or *that must be advísed.*

THIRD CONJUGATION.—Rĕ'gŏr, *I am rúled.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*am.*

Síngular.	Rĕ'-gŏr,	*I am rúled,*
	rĕ'-gĕrĭs *vèl* rĕ'-gĕrĕ,	*thou art rúled,*
	rĕ'-gĭtŭr,	*he is rúled,*
Plúral.	rĕ'-gĭmŭr,	*we are rúled,*
	rĕ'-gĭ'mĭnī,	*ye are rúled,*
	rĕ'-gūn'tŭr,	*they are rúled.*

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*was.*

Singular.	Rĕ-gē'băr,	*I was*
	rĕ-gēbā'rĭs *vĕl* rĕ-gēbā'rĕ,	*thou wast*
	rĕ-gēbā'tŭr,	*he was*
Plúral.	rĕ-gēbā'mŭr,	*we were*
	rĕ-gēbā'mĭnī,	*ye were*
	rĕ-gēbān'tŭr,	*they were*

rúled.

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—*sŭm vĕl fŭ'ī, have been.*

Singular.	Rēc'-tŭs sŭm,	*I have*
	rēc'-tŭs ĕs,	*thou hast*
	rēc'-tŭs ēst,	*he has*
Plúral.	rēc'-tī sŭ'mŭs,	*we have*
	rēc'-tī ēs'tĭs,	*ye have*
	rēc'-tī sūnt,	*they have*

been rúled.

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—*ĕ'rām vĕl fŭ'ĕrām, had been.*

Singular.	Rēc'-tŭs ĕ'rām,	*I had*
	rēc'-tŭs ĕ'rās,	*thou hadst*
	rēc'-tŭs ĕ'răt,	*he had*
Plúral.	rēc'-tī ĕrā'mŭs,	*we had*
	rēc'-tī ĕrā'tĭs,	*ye had*
	rēc'-tī ĕ'rānt,	*they had*

been rúled.

5. Fúture Tense.—*shall* or *will be.*

Singular.	Rĕ'·găr,	*I shall*
	rĕ-gē'rĭs *vĕl* rĕ-gē'rĕ,[81]	*thou wilt*
	rĕ-gē'tŭr,	*he will*
Plúral.	rĕ-gē'mŭr,	*we shall*
	rĕ-gē'mĭnī,	*ye will*
	rĕ-gēn'tŭr,	*they will*

be rúled.

---

[81] Here we have '*e*' long befóre *-rĕ* and *-rĭs*, in the third conjugátion. In the same tense of the sécond conjugátion we have ĕ short befóre *-rĕ* and *-rĭs*. This I méntion with allúsion to an alterátion which I have made in the E'ton text, respécting '*e*' befóre *-rĕ* and *-rĭs*, page 44, abóve. Of the óther conjugátions it is not nécessary here to speak.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Présent Tense.—*No first Pérson.*

Singular. { Rĕ-gĕrĕ, rĕ-gĭtŏr,   *be thou*
           { rĕ-gā'tŭr, rĕ'-gĭtŏr,   *let him be* }

Plúral. { rĕ-gā'mŭr,   *let us be*
         { rĕ-gĭ'mĭnī, rĕ-gĭ'mĭnŏr,   *be ye*
         { rĕ-gān'tŭr, rĕ-gūn'tŏr,   *let them be* }

ruled.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*may, can, should, would be.*

Singular. { Rĕ'-găr,   *I may be*
        { rĕ-gā'rĭs *vĕl* rĕ-gā'rĕ,   *thou máyest be*
        { rĕ-gā'tŭr,   *he may be* }

Plúral. { rĕ-gā'mŭr,   *we may be*
        { rĕ-gā'mĭnī,   *ye may be*
        { rĕ-gān'tŭr,   *they may be* }

ruled.

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*might or could be.*

Singular. { Rĕ'-gĕrĕr,   *I might*
        { rĕ-gĕrē'rĭs *vĕl* rĕ-gĕrē'rĕ,   *thou mightest*
        { rĕ-gĕrē'tŭr,   *he might* }

Plúral. { rĕ-gĕrē'mŭr,   *we might*
        { rĕ-ɡĕrē'mĭnī,   *ye might*
        { rĕ-gĕrēn'tŭr,   *they might* }

be ruled.

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—*sīm vĕl fŭ'ĕrĭm, may or should have been.*

Singular. { Rēc'-tŭs sīm,   *I may*
        { rēc'-tŭs sīs,   *thou máyest*
        { rēc'-tŭs sĭt,   *he may* }

Plúral. { rēc'-tī sī'mŭs,   *we may*
        { rēc'-tī sī'tĭs,   *ye may*
        { rēc'-tī sīnt,   *they may* }

have been ruled.

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—*ĕs'sēm vĕl fŭĭs'sēm, might or would have been.*

Singular. { Rēc'-tŭs ēs'sēm,   *I might*
        { rēc'-tŭs ēs'sēs,   *thou mightest*
        { rēc'-tŭs ēs'sĕt,   *he might* }

Plúral. { rēc'-tī ēssē'mŭs,   *we might*
        { rēc'-tī ēssē'tĭs,   *ye might*
        { rēc-tī ēs'sēnt,   *they might* }

have been ruled.

5. Fúture Tense.—ĕ'rŏ *vel* fŭ'ĕrŏ, *shall* or *will have been.*

Síngular
{
Rēc'-tŭs ĕ'rŏ,   *I shall*
rēc'-tŭs ĕ'rĭs,   *thou wilt*
rēc'-tŭs ĕ'rĭt,   *he will*
}

Plúral.
{
rēc'-tī ĕ'rĭmŭs,   *we shall*
rēc'-tī ĕ'rítĭs,   *ye will*
rēc'-tī ĕ'rŭnt,   *they will*
}

have been rúled.

The Subjúnctive Mood is declíned like the Poténtial.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Présent and Preterímperfect Tense.

Rĕ'-gī, *to be rúled,*

Preterpérfect and Preterplúperfect Tense.

Rēc'-tŭm ĕs'sĕ *vel* fŭĭs'sĕ, *to have been rúled.*

Fúture Tense.

Rēc'-tŭm ĭ'rī, *to be abóut to be rúled.*

PARTICIPLES.

Past,   Rēc'-tŭs,   *rúled* or *háving been rúled.*
Fúture, Rĕ-gēn'dŭs, *that is to be* or *that must be rúled.*

FOURTH CONJUGATION.—Aū'dĭŏr, *I am heard.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*am.*

Síngular.
{
Aū-dĭŏr,   *I am*
aū-dĭ'rĭs *vel* aū-dĭ'rĕ,   *thou art*
aū-dĭ'tŭr,   *he is*
}

Plúral.
{
aū-dĭ'mŭr   *we are*
aū-dĭ'mĭnī,   *ye are*
aū-dĭŭn'tŭr,   *they are*
}

heard.

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*was.*

Síngular.
{
Aū-dĭē'băr,   *I was*
aū-dĭēbā'rĭs *vel* aū-dĭēbārĕ, *thou wast*
aū-dĭēbā'tŭr,   *he was*
}

Plúral.
{
aū-dĭēbā'mŭr,   *we were*
aū-dĭēbā mĭnī,   *ye were*
aū-dĭēbān'tŭr,   *they were*
}

heard.

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—sŭm vèl fŭ'ī, have been.

Singular.	Aŭdī'-tŭs sŭm,	I have	
	aŭdī'-tŭs ĕs,	thou hast	
	aŭdī'tŭs ēst,	he has	been haar'd.
Plúral.	aŭdī'-tī sŭ'mŭs,	we have	
	aŭdī'-tī ēs'tĭs,	ye have	
	aŭdī'tī sūnt,	they have	

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—ĕ'răm vèl fŭ'ĕrăm, had been.

Singular.	Aŭdī'-tŭs ĕ'răm,	I had	
	aŭdī'-tŭs ĕ'răs,	thou hadst	
	aŭdī'-tŭs ĕ'răt,	he had	been heard.
Plúral.	aŭdī'-tī ĕrā'mŭs,	we had	
	aŭdī'-tī ĕrā'tĭs,	ye had	
	aŭdī'-tī ĕ'rănt,	they had	

5. Fúture Tense.—shall or will be.

Singular.	Aŭ'-dĭăr,	I shall	
	aŭ-dĭē'rĭs vèl aŭ-dĭē'rĕ,	thou wilt	
	aŭ-dĭē'tŭr,	he will	be heard.
Plúral.	aŭ-dĭē'mŭr,	we shall	
	aŭ-dĭē'mĭnī,	ye will	
	aŭ-dĭēn'tŭr,	they will	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Présent Tense.—No first Pérson.

Singular.	Aŭ-dī'rĕ, aŭ-dī'tŏr,	be thou	
	aŭ-dĭā'tŭr, aŭ-dī'tŏr,	let him be	
Plúral.	aŭ-dĭā'mŭr,	let us be	heard.
	aŭ-dī'mĭnī, aŭ-dī'mĭnŏr,	be ye	
	aŭ-dĭān'tŭr, aŭ-dĭūn'tŏr,	let them be	

POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—may, can, should, would be.

Singular.	Aŭ'-dĭăr,	I may	
	aŭ-dĭā-rĭs vèl aŭ-dĭā'rĕ,	thou máyest	
	aŭ-dĭā'tŭr,	he may	be heard.
Plúral.	aŭ-dĭā'mŭr,	we may	
	aŭ-dĭā'mĭnī,	ye may	
	aŭ-dĭān'tŭr,	they may	

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*might* or *could be.*

Singular.	Aū-dī'rĕr,	*I might*
	aū-dīrē'rĭs *vel* aū-dīrē'rĕ,	*thou mightest*
	aū-dīrē'tŭr,	*he might*
Plúral.	aū-dīrē'mŭr,	*we might*
	aū-dīrē'mĭnī,	*ye might*
	aū-dīrēn'tŭr,	*they might*

be heard.

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—sīm *vèl* fŭ'ĕrīm, *may* or *should
have been.*

Singular.	Aū-dī'tŭs sīm,	*I may*
	aū-dī'tŭs sīs,	*thou máyest*
	aū-dī'tŭs sĭt,	*he may*
Plúral.	aūdī'-tī sī'mŭs,	*we may*
	aūdī'-tī sī'tĭs,	*ye may*
	aūdī'-tī sīnt,	*they may*

have been heard.

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—ēs'sēm *vèl* fŭīs'sēm, *might or
would have been.*

Singular.	Aūdī'-tŭs ēs'sēm,	*I might*
	aūdī'-tŭs ēs'sēs,	*thou mightest*
	aūdī'-tŭs ēs'sĕt,	*he might*
Plúral.	aūdī'-tī ēssē'mŭs,	*we might*
	aūdī'-tī ēssē'tĭs,	*ye might*
	aūdī'-tī ēs'sēnt,	*they might*

have been heard.

5. Fúture Tense.—ĕ'rŏ *vèl* fŭ'ĕrŏ, *shall* or *will have been.*

Singular.	Aūdī'-tŭs ĕ'rŏ,	*I shall*
	aūdī'-tŭs ĕ'rĭs,	*thou wilt*
	aūdī'-tŭs ĕ'rĭt,	*he will*
Plúral.	aūdī'-tī ĕ'rĭmŭs,	*we shall*
	aūdī'-tī ĕ'rĭtĭs,	*ye will*
	aūdī'-tī ĕ'rūnt,	*they will*

have been heard.

The Subjúnctive Mood is declíned like the Poténtial.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Présent and Preterímperfect Tense.
Aū-dī'rī, *to be heard.*

Preterpérfect and Preterplúperfect Tense.
Aūdī-tŭm ēs'sĕ *vél* fŭīs'sĕ, *to have been heard.*

Fúture Tense.
Aūdī'tŭm ī'rī, *to be abóut to be heard.*

PARTICIPLES.

Past,   Aūdī'-tŭs,   *heard* or *háving been heard,*
Fúture, Aū-dĭēn'dŭs, *that is to be,* or *that must be heard.*[82]

DECLENSION OF VERBS IRREGULAR.

CER'TAIN verbs déviate from the Géneral Rule, and are fórmed in the mánner fóllowing :—

1. Pōs'sŭm, pŏ'tĕs, pŏ'tŭī, pōs'sĕ, pŏ'tēns, *to be áble.*

2. Vŏ'lŏ, vīs, vŏ'lŭī, vēl'lĕ, vŏlēn'dī, vŏlēn'dŏ, vŏlēn'dŭm, vŏ'lēns, *to be wílling.*

3. Nō'lŏ, nōn'vīs, nō'lŭī, nōl'lĕ, nōlēn'dī, nōlēn'dŏ, nōlēn'dŭm, nō'lēns, *to be unwílling.*

4. Mā'lŏ, mā'vīs, mā'lŭī, māl'lĕ, mālēn'dī, mālēn'dŏ, mālēn'dŭm, mā'lēns, *to be móre wílling* or *to have ráther.*

---

[82] A *Verb Depónent* (as we read in the text, page 38, abóve) is declíned like a *Verb Pássive* of the same conjugátion as itsélf,—but with *Gérunds* and *Súpines :*—thus, mŏ'dĕrŏr, mŏdĕrā'rĭs, (*vel* mŏdĕrā'rĕ), mŏdĕrā'tŭs sŭm (*vel* fŭī), mŏdĕrā'rī,—mŏdĕrān'dī, mŏdĕrān'dŏ, mŏdĕrān'dŭm, mŏdĕrā'tŭm, mŏdĕrā'tū, mŏ'dĕrāns, mŏdĕrātū'rŭs, mŏdĕrā'tŭs, mŏdĕrān'dŭs, *to móderate* or *to mánage;* pŏllĭ'cĕŏr, pŏllĭcē'rĭs, (*vel* pŏllĭcē'rĕ), pŏllĭcĭtŭs sŭm (*vel* fŭ'ī), pŏllĭcē'rī,—pŏllĭcēn'dī, pŏllĭcēn'dŏ, pŏllĭcēn'dŭm, pŏllĭ'cĭtŭm, pŏllĭ'cĭtū, pŏ'llĭcēns, pŏllĭcĭtū'rŭs, pŏllĭ'cĭtŭs, pŏllĭcēn'dŭs, *to prómise;* lŏ'quŏr, lŏ'quĕrĭs (*vel* lŏ'quĕrĕ), lŏcū'tŭs sŭm (*vel* fŭ'ī), lŏ'quī.—lŏquēn'dī, lŏquēn'dŏ, lŏquēn'dŭm, lŏcū'tŭm, lŏcū'tū, lŏ'quēns, lŏcūtū'rŭs, lŏcū'tŭs, lŏquēn'dŭs, *to speak;* lār'gĭŏr, lārgī'rĭs, (*vel* lārgī'rĕ), lārgī'tŭs sŭm (*vel* fŭ'ī), lārgī'rī,—lārgĭēn'dī, lārgĭēn'dŏ, lārgĭēndŭm, lārgī'tŭm, lārgī'tū lār'gĭēns, lārgītū'rŭs, lārgī'tŭs, lārgĭēn'dŭs, *to bestów freely.* And here it may be remárked, that the párticiple in *-ŭs* of *Depónent Verbs* has sómetimes a *pássive,* though more fréquently (and próperly) an *áctive* significátion : for exámple, in Vírgil we find ŏblī'tă mī'hī cār'mĭnă, *songs forgótten by me.* Ec'logue IX. 53.

Lástly, in the ténses of pássive and of depónent verbs, declíned by help of the verb *sŭm,* the párticiple must álways be of the same génder and númber as the nóminative case to the verb :—for, althóugh, for the sake of brévity, we say, ămā'tŭs sŭm, yet do we mean, ămā'tŭs, ămā'tă, ămā'tŭm sŭm vĕl fŭ'ī, accórding as the nóminative is másculine, féminine, or neúter : and, in the plúral númber, ămā'tī, ămā'tæ, ămā'tă sū'mŭs vĕl fŭ'ĭmŭs, *we have been lóved.*

5. Ĕ'dŏ, ĕ'dĭs (*vel* ĕs), e'dī, ĕ'dĕrĕ (*vel* ĕs'sĕ), ĕdĕn'dī, ĕdĕn'dŏ, ĕdĕn'dŭm, e'sŭm, e'sū, ĕ'dēns, ēsū'rŭs, *to eat*.

6. Fĕ'rŏ, fērs, tŭ'lī, fĕr'rĕ, fĕrēn'dī, fĕrēn'dŏ, fĕrēndŭm, lā'tŭm, lā'tū, fĕ'rēns, lātū'rŭs, *to bear* or *suffer*.

7. Fī'ŏ, fīs, fāc'tŭs sŭm *vel* fū'ī, fī'ĕrī, fāc'tŭs, făcĭĕn'dŭs, *to be made* or *done*.

8. Fĕ'rŏr, fĕr'rĭs *vel* fĕr'rĕ, lā'tŭs sŭm *vel* fū'ī, fĕr'rī, lā'tŭs, fĕrēn'dŭs, *to be borne* or *suffered*.

POSSUM, *I am áble.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*I am áble.*

Síngular.	Pōs'sŭm,[83]	I am	}
	pŏ'tĕs,	thou art	} *áble.*
	pŏ'tēst,	he is	}
Plúral.	pōs'sŭmŭs,	we are	}
	pŏtēs'tĭs,	ye are	}
	pōs'sŭnt,	they are	}

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*I was áble.*

Síngular.	Pŏ'tĕrām	I was	}
	pŏ'tĕrās,	thou wast	} *áble.*
	pŏ'tĕrăt,	he was	}
Plural.	pŏtĕrā'mŭs,	we were	}
	pŏtĕrā'tĭs,	ye were	}
	pŏ'tĕrănt,	they were	}

---

[83] *Pŏs'sŭm* is a cómpound of the ádjective pŏ'tĭs, *áble*, with sŭm, *I am*, contrácted into one word; the létters *t* and *i* béing dropped. The óther cómpounds of *sŭm*, are :—

ăb'sŭm, *I am ábsent or awáy,*	ŏb'sŭm, *I am agáinst or I hurt,*
ād'sŭm, *I am présent or at hand,*	præ'sŭm, *I am óver or chief,*
dĕ'sŭm, *I am wánting or I fail,*	prō'sŭm, *I bénefit or prófit,*
ĭn'sŭm, *I am in or withín,*	sŭb'sŭm, *I am únder or belów,*
īntĕr'sŭm, *I am in the midst of,*	sŭpĕr'sŭm, *I abóund or I remáin.*

These are, in all their ténses, declíned like the verb ĕs'sĕ, *to be*, except prō'sŭm, *I do good to* or *I bénefit*, which álways takes the létter *d* betwíxt *pro* and the ténses of *ĕs'sĕ*, beginning with a vówel : as, prō'dĕs, *thou prófitest* or *aváilest*, prō'dĕst, *he aváils*, prō'dĕrām, *I aváiled*, prōdēssĕ, *to aváil.* The verb *in'sŭm* is said to want the préterite, and cónsequently the ténses deríved from it.

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—*I have been áble.*

Singular.	Pŏ'tŭī,	*I have*	
	pŏtŭīs'tī,	*thou hast*	
	pŏ'tŭĭt,	*he has*	been áble.
Plúral.	pŏtŭ'ĭmŭs,	*we have*	
	pŏtŭĭs'tĭs,	*ye have*	
	pŏtŭĕ'rŭnt *vel* ē'rĕ,	*they have*	

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—*I had been áble.*

Singular.	Pŏtŭ'ĕrām,	*I had*	
	pŏtŭ'ĕrās,	*thou hadst*	
	pŏtŭ'ĕrăt,	*he had*	been áble.
Plúral.	pŏtŭĕrā'mŭs,	*we had*	
	pŏtŭĕrā'tĭs,	*ye had*	
	pŏtŭ'ĕrānt,	*they had*	

5. Fúture Tense.—*I shall be áble.*

Singular.	Pŏ'tĕrŏ,	*I shall*	
	pŏ'tĕrĭs,	*thou wilt*	
	pŏ'tĕrĭt,	*he will*	be áble.
Plúral.	pŏtĕ'rĭmŭs,	*we shall*	
	pŏtĕ'rĭtĭs,	*ye will*	
	pŏ'tĕrŭnt,	*they will*	

Observe. Pŏs'sŭm, in cómmon with *vŏ'lŏ* and *mā'lŏ*, is néver úsed in the Impérative Mood :—and *pŏ'tēns* rárely occúrs as a párticiple.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*may, can, should* or *would be.*

Singular.	Pōs'sĭm,	*I may*	
	pōs'sīs,	*thou máyest*	
	pōs'sĭt,	*he may*	be áble.
Plúral.	pōssī'mŭs,	*we may*	
	pōssī'tĭs,	*ye may*	
	pōs'sĭnt,	*they may*	

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*might* or *could be.*

Singular.	Pōs'sĕm,	*I might*	
	pōs'sĕs,	*thou míghtest*	be áble.
	pōs'sĕt,	*he might*	

Plúral.	pŏssē'mŭs,	*we might*	*be able.*
	pŏssē'tĭs,	*ye might*	
	pŏs'sĕnt,	*they might*	

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—*may* or *should have been.*

Síngular.	Pŏtŭ'ĕrĭm,	*I may*	*have been able.*
	pŏtŭ'ĕrĭs,	*thou máyest*	
	pŏtŭ'ĕrĭt,	*he may*	
Plúral.	pŏtŭĕ'rĭmŭs,	*we may*	
	pŏtŭĕ'rĭtĭs,	*ye may*	
	pŏtŭ'ĕrĭnt,	*they may*	

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—*might* or *would have been.*

Síngular.	Pŏtŭĭs'sēm,	*I might*	*have been able.*
	pŏtŭĭs'sēs,	*thou míghtest*	
	pŏtŭĭs'sĕt,	*he might*	
Plúral.	pŏtŭĭssē'mŭs,	*we might*	
	pŏtŭĭssē'tĭs,	*ye might*	
	pŏtŭĭs'sĕnt,	*they might*	

5. Fúture Tense.—*shall* or *will have been.*

Síngular.	Pŏtŭ'ĕrŏ,	*I shall*	*have been able.*
	pŏtŭ'ĕrĭs,	*thou wilt*	
	pŏtŭ'ĕrĭt,	*he will*	
Plúral.	pŏtŭĕrī'mŭs,	*we shall*	
	pŏtŭĕrī'tĭs,	*ye will*	
	pŏtŭ'ĕrĭnt,	*they will*	

The Subjúnctive Mood is declíned like the Poténtial.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Présent and Preterímperfect Tense.
Pōs'sĕ, *to be able.*

Preterpérfect and Preterplúperfect Tense.
Pŏtŭĭs'sĕ, *to have been able.*

Note. *Pōs'sŭm* wants the fúture tense of the Infínitive Mood : and has no gérunds or súpines.

PARTICIPLE.

Présent, Pŏ'tēns, *béing áble.*

As *Pōs'sŭm* has no súpine, it has no fúture párticiple.

VOLO, *I am willing.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*I am willing.*

Singular.	Vŏ'lŏ,	*I am*	
	vīs,	*thou art*	*willing.*
	vŭlt,	*he is*	
Plúral.	vŏ'lŭmŭs,	*we are*	
	vūl'tĭs,	*ye are*	
	vŏ'lŭnt,	*they are*	

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*I was willing.*

Singular.	Vŏlē'bām,	*I was*	
	vŏlē'bās,	*thou wast*	*willing.*
	vŏlē'băt,	*he was*	
Plúral.	vŏlēbā'mŭs,	*we were*	
	vŏlēbā'tĭs,	*ye were*	
	vŏlē'bānt,	*they were*	

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—*I have been willing.*

Singular.	Vŏ'lŭī,	*I have*	
	vŏlŭĭs'tī,	*thou hast*	*been willing.*
	vŏ'lŭĭt,	*he has*	
Plúral.	vŏlŭ'ĭmŭs,	*we have*	
	vŏlŭĭs'tĭs,	*ye have*	
	vŏlŭē'rŭnt *vel* -ē'rĕ,	*they have*	

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—*I had been willing.*

Singular.	Vŏlŭ'ĕrām,	*I had*	
	vŏlŭ'ĕrās,	*thou hadst*	*been willing.*
	vŏlŭ'ĕrăt,	*he had*	
Plúral.	vŏlŭĕrā'mŭs,	*we had*	
	vŏlŭĕrā'tĭs,	*ye had*	
	vŏlŭ'ĕrānt,	*they had*	

5. Fúture Tense.—*I shall* or *will be willing.*

Singular.	Vŏlām,	*I shall*	
	vŏ'lēs,	*thou wilt*	*be willing.*
	vŏ'lĕt,	*he will*	

Plúral.	vŏlē'mŭs,	*we shall*	*be willing.*
	vŏlē'tĭs,	*ye will*	
	vŏ'lēnt,	*they will*	

Observe. *Vŏ'lŏ* has no Impératıve Mood.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*may, can, should* or *would be.*

Síngular.	Vĕ'lĭm,	*I may*	*be willing.*
	vĕ'lĭs,	*thou máyest*	
	vĕ'lĭt,	*he may*	
Plúral.	vĕlĭ'mŭs,	*we may*	
	vĕlĭ'tĭs,	*ye may*	
	vĕ'lĭnt,	*they may*	

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*might* or *could be.*

Síngular.	Vēl lēm,	*I might*	*be willing.*
	vēl'lēs,	*thou míghtest*	
	vēl'lĕt,	*he might*	
Plúral	vēllē'mŭs,	*we might*	
	vēllē'tĭs,	*ye might*	
	vēl'lēnt,	*they might*	

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—*may* or *should have been.*

Síngular.	Vŏlŭ'ĕrĭm,	*I may*	*have been willing.*
	vŏlŭ'ĕrĭs,	*thou máyest*	
	vŏlŭ'ĕrĭt,	*he may*	
Plúral.	vŏlŭĕ'rĭmŭs,	*we may*	
	vŏlŭĕ'rĭtĭs,	*ye may*	
	vŏlŭ'ĕrĭnt,	*they may*	

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—*might* or *would have been.*

Síngular.	Vŏlŭīs'sēm,	*I might*	*have been willing.*
	vŏlŭīs'sēs,	*thou míghtest*	
	vŏlŭīs'sĕt,	*he might*	
Plúral.	vŏlŭissē'mŭs,	*we might*	
	vŏlŭissē'tĭs,	*ye might*	
	vŏlŭīs sēnt,	*they might.*	

5. Future Tense.—*shall* or *will have been.*

Singular.	Vŏlŭ′ĕrŏ,	*I shall*
	vŏlŭ′ĕrīs,	*thou wilt*
	vŏlŭ′ĕrĭt,	*he will*
Plúral.	vŏlŭĕrī′mŭs,	*we shall*
	vŏlŭĕrī′tĭs,	*ye will*
	vŏlŭ′ĕrīnt,	*they will*

been willing

The Subjúnctive Mood is declíned like the Poténtial.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Présent and Preterímperfect Tense.
Vĕl′lĕ, *to be willing.*

Preterpérfect and Preterplúperfect Tense.
Vŏlŭīs′sĕ, *to have been willing.*

Note. Vŏ′lŏ wants the fúture tense of the Infínitive Mood, as it has no súpine.

GERUNDS.

Vŏlĕn′dī,	*of béing willing,*
vŏlĕn′dŏ,	*in béing willing,*
vŏlĕn′dŭm,	*béing willing,*

PARTICIPLE.

Présent, Vŏ′lēns, *willing* or *béing willing.*

As Vŏ′lŏ has no súpine, it has no fúture párticiple.

NOLO, *I am unwílling.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*I am unwílling.*

Singular.	Nŏ′lŏ,[83]	*I am*
	nōn′vīs,	*thou art*
	nōn′vūlt,	*he is*
Plural.	nŏ′lŭmŭs,	*we are*
	nōnvūl′tĭs,	*ye are*
	nŏ′lūnt,	*they are*

unwilling

[84] This verb is a cómpound of nōn, *not,* with the precèding verb vŏ′lŏ, *I will.*

E

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*I was unwilling.*

Síngular.	Nōlē'bām,	*I was*	
	nōlē'bās,	*thou wast*	
	nōlē'băt,	*he was*	*unwilling.*
Plúral.	nōlēbā'mŭs,	*we were*	
	nōlēbā'tĭs,	*ye were*	
	nōlē'bānt,	*they were*	

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—*I have been unwilling.*

Síngular.	Nō'lŭī,	*I have*	
	nōlŭīs'tī,	*thou hast*	
	nō'lŭīt,	*he has*	*been unwilling.*
Plúral.	nōlŭ'īmŭs,	*we have*	
	nōlŭīs'tĭs,	*ye have*	
	nōlŭē'rŭnt *vĕl* -ē'rĕ,	*they have*	

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—*I had been unwilling.*

Síngular.	Nōlŭ'ĕrām,	*I had*	
	nōlŭ'ĕrās,	*thou hadst*	
	nōlŭ'ĕrăt,	*he had*	*been unwilling.*
Plúral.	nōlŭĕrā'mŭs,	*we had*	
	nōlŭĕrā'tĭs,	*ye had*	
	nōlŭ'ĕrānt,	*they had*	

5. Fúture Tense.—*I shall or will be unwilling.*

Síngular.	Nō'lām,	*I shall*	
	nō'lēs,	*thou wilt*	
	nō'lĕt,	*he will*	*be unwilling.*
Plúral.	nōlē'mŭs,	*we shall*	
	nōlē'tĭs,	*ye will*	
	nō'lēnt,	*they will*	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Présent Tense.—*No first or third Pérson*

Síngular.	Nō'lī, nōlī'tŏ,	*be thou unwilling.*
Plúral.	nōlī'tĕ, nōlītŏ'tĕ,	*be ye unwilling.*

POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*may, can, should, would be.*

Singular.	Nō'lĭm,	*I may*	
	nō'lĭs,	*thou máyest*	*be unwilling.*
	nō'lĭt,	*he may*	
Plúral.	nōlĭ'mŭs,	*we may*	
	nōlĭ'tĭs,	*ye may*	
	nō'lĭnt,	*they may*	

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*might* or *could be.*

Singular.	Nōl'lēm,	*I might*	
	nōl'lēs,	*thou míghtest*	*be unwilling.*
	nōl'lĕt,	*he might*	
Plúral.	nōllē'mŭs,	*we might*	
	nōllē'tĭs,	*ye might*	
	nōl'lēnt,	*they might*	

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—*may* or *should have been.*

Singular.	Nōlŭ'ĕrĭm,	*I may*	
	nōlŭ'ĕrĭs,	*thou máyest*	*have been unwilling.*
	nōlŭ'ĕrĭt,	*he may*	
Plúral.	nōlŭĕ'rĭmŭs,	*we may*	
	nōlŭĕ'rĭtĭs,	*ye may*	
	nōlŭ'ĕrĭnt,	*they may*	

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—*might* or *would have been.*

Singular.	Nōlŭĭs'sēm,	*I might*	
	nōlŭĭs'sēs,	*thou míghtest*	*have been unwilling.*
	nōlŭĭs'sĕt,	*he might*	
Plúral.	nōlŭĭssē'mŭs,	*we might*	
	nōlŭĭssē'tĭs,	*ye might*	
	nōlŭĭs'sēnt,	*they might*	

5. Fúture Tense.—*shall* or *will have been.*

Singular.	Nōlŭ'ĕrŏ,	*I shall*	
	nōlŭ'ĕrĭs,	*thou wilt*	*have been unwilling.*
	nōlŭ'ĕrĭt,	*he will*	
Plúral.	nōlŭĕrī'mŭs,	*we shall*	
	nōlŭĕrī'tĭs,	*ye will*	
	nōlŭ'ĕrĭnt,	*they will*	

The Subjúnctive Mood is declíned like the Poténtial.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Présent and Preterímperfect Tense.
Nōl'lĕ, *to be unwilling.*

Preterpérfect and Preterplúperfect Tense.
Nōlŭīs'sĕ, *to have been unwilling.*

Note. Nō'lŏ wants the fúture tense of the Infínitive Mood, as it has no súpine.

GERUNDS.

Nōlēn'dī,	*of béing unwilling.*
nōlēn'dŏ,	*in béing unwilling.*
nōlēn'dŭm,	*béing unwilling.*

PARTICIPLE.

Present, Nō'lēns, *unwilling* or *béing unwilling.*

As *Nō'lŏ* has no súpine, it has no fúture párticiple.

---

*MALO, *I am more willing.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*I am more willing* or *I would have ráther.*

Síngular.	Mā'lŏ,[85]	*I am*	
	mā'vīs,	*thou art*	*more willing.*
	mā'vŭlt,	*he is*	
Plúral.	mā'lŭmŭs,	*we are*	
	māvŭl'tĭs,	*ye are*	
	mā'lŭnt,	*they are*	

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*I was more willing.*

Síngular.	Mālē'bām,	*I was*	
	mālē'bās,	*thou wast*	*more willing.*
	mālē'băt,	*he was*	
Plúral.	mālēbā'mŭs,	*we were*	
	mālēbā'tĭs,	*ye were*	
	mālē'bānt,	*they were*	

---

[85] This verb is a cómpound of the ádverb mă'gĭs, *more,* with the símple irrégular verb, vŏ'lŏ, *I will* or *am willing.*

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—*I have been more willing.*

Singular.	Mā′lŭī,	I have	
	mālŭīs′tī,	thou hast	
	mā′lŭĭt,	he has	
Plúral.	mālŭ′īmŭs,	we have	
	mālŭīs′tĭs,	ye have	
	mālŭē′rŭnt *vel* -ē′rĕ,	they have	

been more willing.

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—*I had been more willing.*

Singular.	Mālŭ′ĕrām,	I had	
	mālŭ′ĕrās,	thou hadst	
	mālŭ′ĕrăt,	he had	
Plúral.	mālŭĕrā′mŭs,	we had	
	mālŭĕrā′tĭs,	ye had	
	mālŭ′ĕrānt,	they had	

been more willing.

5. Fúture Tense.—*I shall or will be more willing.*

Singular.	Mālām,	I shall	
	mā′lēs,	thou wilt	
	mā′lĕt,	he will	
Plúral.	mālē′mŭs,	we shall	
	mālē′tĭs,	ye will	
	mā′lēnt,	they will	

be more willing.

Observe. Mā′lŏ has no Impérative Mood.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*may, can, should, would be.*

Singular.	Mā′līm,	I may	
	mā′līs,	thou máyest	
	mā′lĭt,	he may	
Plúral.	mālī′mŭs,	we may	
	mālī′tĭs,	ye may	
	mā′līnt,	they may	

be more willing.

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*might or could be.*

Singular.	Māl′lēm,	I might	
	māl′lēs,	thou míghtest	
	māl′lĕt,	he might	
Plúral.	māllē′mŭs,	we might	
	māllē′tĭs,	ye might	
	māl′lēnt,	they might	

be more willing.

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—*may* or *should have been.*

Singular.	Mālŭ ĕrĭm,	*I may*	
	mālŭ'ĕrĭs,	*thou máyest*	
	mālŭ'ĕrĭt,	*he may*	
Plúral.	mālŭĕ'rĭmŭs,	*we may*	
	mālŭĕ'rĭtĭs,	*ye may*	
	mālŭ'ĕrĭnt,	*they may*	

more willing. *have been*

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—*might* or *would have been.*

Singular.	Mālŭīs'sēm,	*I might*	
	mālŭīs'sēs,	*thou míghtest*	
	mālŭīs'sĕt,	*he might*	
Plúral.	mālŭĭssē'mŭs,	*we might*	
	mālŭĭssē'tĭs,	*ye might*	
	mālŭĭssĕnt,	*they might*	

more willing. *have been*

5. Fúture Tense.—*shall* or *will have been.*

Singular.	Mālŭ'ĕrŏ,	*I shall*	
	mālŭ'ĕrĭs,	*thou wilt*	
	mālŭ'ĕrĭt,	*he will*	
Plúral.	mālŭĕrī'mŭs,	*we shall*	
	mālŭĕrī'tĭs,	*ye will*	
	mālŭ'ĕrĭnt,	*they will*	

more willing. *have been*

The Subjúnctive Mood is declíned like the Poténtial.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Présent and Preterímperfect Tense.

Māl'lĕ *to be more willing* or *to have ráther.*

Preterpérfect and Preterplúperfect Tense.

Mālŭīs'sĕ, *to have been more willing* or *to have had ráther.*

Note. *Mā'lŏ* wants the fúture tense of the Infínitive Mood, as it has no súpine.

GERUNDS.

Mālēn'dī,	*of béing more willing.*
mālēn'dŏ,	*in béing more willing.*
mālēn'dŭm,	*béing more willing.*

PARTICIPLE.

Présent, Mā'lēns, *more willing* or *béing more willing.*

As *Mā'lŏ* has no súpine, it has no fúture párticiple.

EDO, *I eat.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*I do eat* or *am eáting.*

Síngular.	Ĕ′dŏ,	*I eat,*
	ĕ′dĭs *vèl* ĕs,	*thou eátest,*
	ĕ′dĭt *vèl* ēst,	*he eats,*
Plúral.	ĕ′dĭmŭs,	*we eat,*
	ĕ′dĭtĭs *vèl* ēs′tĭs,	*ye eat,*
	ĕ′dūnt,	*they eat.*

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*I did eat* or *was eáting.*

Síngular.	Ĕdē′bām,	*I was*	*eáting.*
	ĕdē′bās,	*thou wast*	
	ĕdē′băt,	*he was*	
Plúral.	ĕdēbā′mŭs,	*we were*	
	ĕdēbā′tĭs,	*ye were*	
	ĕdē′bānt,	*they were*	

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—*I ate* or *have eáten.*

Síngular.	Ĕ′dī,	*I ate,*
	ēdīs′tī,	*thou átest,*
	ĕ′dĭt,	*he ate,*
Plúral.	ĕ′dĭmŭs,	*we ate,*
	ēdīs′tĭs,	*ye ate,*
	ēdē′rūnt *vèl* ēdē′rĕ,	*they ate*

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—*I had eáten.*

Síngular.	Ĕ′dĕrām,	*I had*	*eáten.*
	ĕ′dĕrās,	*thou hadst*	
	ĕ′dĕrăt,	*he had*	
Plúral.	ēdĕrā′mŭs,	*we had*	
	ēdĕrā′tĭs,	*ye had*	
	ĕ′dĕrānt,	*they had*	

5. Fúture Tense.—*I shall* or *will eat.*

Síngular.	Ĕ′dām,	*I shall*	*eat.*
	ĕ′dēs,	*thou wilt*	
	ĕ′dĕt,	*he will*	

Plúral.	ĕdē'mŭs,	*we shall*	}
	ĕdē'tĭs,	*ye will*	*eat.*
	ĕ'dĕnt,	*they will*	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.—*No first Pérson.*

Singular.	Ĕ'dĕ, ĕ'dĭtŏ *vel* ĕs, ēs'tŏ,[86]	*eat thou,*
	ĕ'dăt, ĕdĭtŏ *vel* ēs'tŏ,	*let him eat,*
Plúral.	ĕdā'mŭs,	*let us eat,*
	ĕ'dĭtĕ, ĕdĭtŏ'tĕ *vel* ēs'tĕ, ēstō'tĕ,	*eat ye,*
	ĕ'dănt, ĕdūn'tŏ,	*let them eat.*

POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*may, can, should, would.*

Singular.	Ĕ'dăm,	*I may*	}
	ĕ'dās,	*thou máyest*	*eat.*
	ĕ'dăt,	*he may*	
Plúral.	ĕdā'mŭs,	*we may*	
	ĕdā'tĭs,	*ye may*	
	ĕ'dānt,	*they may*	

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*might or could.*

Singular.	Ĕ'dĕrēm *vel* ēs'sēm,	*I might*	}
	ĕ'dĕrēs *vel* ēs'sēs,	*thou mightest*	*eat.*
	ĕ'dĕrĕt *vel* ēs'sĕt,	*he might*	
Plúral.	ĕdĕrē'mŭs *vel* ēssē'mŭs,	*we might*	
	ĕdĕrē'tĭs *vel* ēssē'tĭs,	*ye might*	
	ĕdĕ'rēnt *vel* ēs'sēnt,	*they might*	

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—*may or should have.*

Singular.	Ĕ'dĕrĭm,	*I may*	}
	ĕ'dĕrĭs,	*thou máyest*	*have eáten.*
	ĕ'dĕrĭt,	*he may*	
Plúral.	ĕdĕ'rĭmŭs,	*we may*	
	ĕdĕ'rĭtĭs,	*ye may*	
	ĕ'dĕrĭnt,	*they may*	

---

[86] This verb has some of its parts the same with those of the verb ĕs'sē, *to be.*

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—*might* or *would have.*

Singular.	Ēdĭs'sēm, ēdīs'sēs, ēdīs'sĕt,	*I might* *thou mightest* *he might*	
Plúral.	ēdīssē'mŭs, ēdīssē'tĭs, ēdīs'sēnt,	*we might* *ye might* *they might*	*have eáten.*

5. Fúture Tense.—*shall* or *will have.*

Singular.	Ĕ'dĕrŏ, ĕ'dĕrīs, ĕ'dĕrĭt,	*I shall* *thou wilt* *he will*	
Plúral.	ēdĕrĭ'mŭs, ēdĕrĭ'tĭs, ĕ'dĕrīnt,	*we shall* *ye shall* *they will*	*have been.*

The Subjúnctive Mood is declíned like the Poténtial.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Présent and Preterímperfect Tense.
Ĕ'dĕrĕ *vĕl* ēs'sĕ, *to eat.*

Preterpérfect and Preterplúperfect Tense.
Ēdīs'sĕ, *to have eáten.*

Fúture Tense.
Ēsū'rŭm ēs'sĕ, *to be aboút to eat.*

GERUNDS.

Ĕdēn'dī,	*of eáting,*
ĕdēn'dŏ,	*in eáting,*
ĕdēn'dŭm,	*eáting.*

SUPINES.

Ĕ'sŭm, *to eat.*   Ĕ'sū, *to be eáten.*

PARTICIPLES.

Présent, Ĕ'dēns, *eáting.*
Fúture, Ēsū'rŭs, *aboút to eat.*

FERO, *I bear* or *suffer.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*I do bear* or *am beáring.*

Síngular.	Fĕ rŏ,	*I bear,*
	fērs,	*thou beárest,*
	fērt,	*he bears,*
Plúral.	fĕ'rĭmŭs,	*we bear,*
	fēr'tĭs,	*ye bear,*
	fĕ rŭnt,	*they bear.*

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*I did bear* or *was beáring.*

Síngular.	Fĕrē'bām,	*I was*	*beáring.*
	fĕrē'băs,	*thou wast*	
	fĕrē'băt,	*he was*	
Plúral.	fĕrēbā'mŭs,	*we were*	
	fĕrēbā'tĭs,	*ye were*	
	fĕrē'bānt,	*they were*	

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—*I bare, bore,* or *have borne.*

Síngular.	Tŭ'lī,	*I bare,*
	tŭlīs'tī,	*thou bárest,*
	tŭ'lĭt,	*he bare,*
Plúral.	tŭ'lĭmŭs,	*we bare,*
	tŭlĭs'tĭs,	*ye bare,*
	tŭlē'rŭnt *vèl* tŭlē'rĕ,	*they bare.*

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—*I had borne.*

Síngular.	Tŭ'lĕrām,	*I had*	*borne.*
	tŭ'lĕrās,	*thou hadst*	
	tŭ'lĕrăt,	*he had*	
Plúral.	tŭlĕrā'mŭs,	*we had*	
	tŭlĕrā'tĭs,	*ye had*	
	tŭ'lĕrānt,	*they had*	

5. Fúture Tense.—*I shall* or *will bear.*

Síngular.	Fĕ'rām,	*I shall*	*bear.*
	fĕ'rēs,	*thou wilt*	
	fĕ'rĕt,	*he will*	

Plúral.	fĕrē'mŭs,	we shall	
	fĕrē'tĭs,	ye will	bear.
	fĕ'rēnt,	they will	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Présent Tense.—*No first Pérson.*

Síngular.	Fĕr, fēr'tŏ,	bear thou,
	fĕ'răt, fēr'tŏ,	let him bear,
Plúral.	fĕrā'mŭs,	let us bear,
	fĕr'tĕ, fērtŏ'tĕ,	bear ye,
	fĕ'rānt, fĕrūn'tŏ,	let them bear.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*may, can, should, would.*

Síngular.	Fĕ'rām,	I may	
	fĕ'rās,	thou máyest	bear.
	fĕ'răt,	he may	
Plúral.	fĕrā'mŭs,	we may	
	fĕrā'tĭs,	ye may	
	fĕ'rānt,	they may	

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*might or could.*

Síngular.	Fēr'rēm,	I might	
	fēr'rēs,	thou míghtest	bear.
	fēr'rĕt,	he might	
Plúral.	fērrē'mŭs,	we might	
	fērrē'tĭs,	ye might	
	fēr'rēnt,	they might	

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—*may or should have.*

Síngular.	Tŭ'lĕrĭm,	I may	
	tŭ'lĕrĭs,	thou máyest	have borne.
	tŭ'lĕrĭt,	he may	
Plúral.	tŭlĕ'rĭmŭs,	we may	
	tŭlĕ'rĭtĭs,	ye may	
	tŭ'lĕrĭnt,	they may	

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—*might or would have.*

Síngular.	Tŭlĭs'sēm,	I might	
	tŭlĭs'sēs,	thou míghtest	have borne.
	tŭlĭs'sĕt,	he might	

Plúral.	{ tŭlīssē'mŭs,	*we might*	} *have borne.*
	tŭlīssē'tĭs,	*ye might*	
	tŭlīs'sēnt,	*they might*	

5. Fúture Tense.—*shall* or *will have.*

Singular.	{ Tŭ'lĕrŏ,	*I shall*	} *have borne.*
	tŭ'lĕrīs,	*thou wilt*	
	tŭ'lĕrĭt,	*he will*	

Plúral.	{ tŭlĕrī'mŭs,	*we shall*	} *have borne.*
	tŭlĕrī'tĭs,	*ye will*	
	tŭ'lĕrĭnt,	*they will*	

The Subjúnctive Mood is declíned like the Potential.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Présent and Preterímperfect Tense.
Fĕr'rĕ, *to bear* or *súffer.*

Preterpérfect and Preterplúperfect Tense.
Tŭlīs'sĕ, *to have borne* or *súffered.*

Fúture Tense.
Lātū'rŭm ĕs'sĕ, *to be aboút to bear* or *súffer.*

GERUNDS.

Fĕrēn'dī,	*of beáring,*
fĕrēn'dŏ,	*in beáring,*
fĕrēn'dŭm,	*beáring.*

SUPINES.

Lā'tŭm, *to bear.*   Lā'tū, *to be borne.*

PARTICIPLES.

Présent,	Fĕ'rēns,	*beáring* or *súffering.*
Fúture,	Lātū'rŭs,	*aboút to bear* or *súffer*

FIO, *I becóme* or *am made.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*I do becóme* or *am made.*

Singular.	{ Fī'ŏ,	*I becóme,*
	fīs,	*thou becómest,*
	fīt,	*he becómes,*

Plúral.	fī'mŭs,	*we becóme,*
	fī'tĭs,	*ye becóme,*
	fī'ŭnt,	*they becóme.*

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*I did becóme* or *was made.*

Singular.	Fiē'bām,	*I did*	*becóme.*
	fiē'bās,	*thou didst*	
	fiē'băt,	*he did*	
Plúral.	fiēbā'mŭs,	*we did*	
	fiēbā'tĭs,	*ye did*	
	fiē'bänt,	*they did*	

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—sŭm *vèl* fŭī, *I becáme, I am becóme,* or *I have been made.*

Singular.	Fāc'tŭs sŭm,	*I have*	*been made.*
	fāc'tŭs ĕs,	*thou hast*	
	fāc'tŭs ēst,	*he has*	
Plúral.	fāc'tī sŭ'mŭs,	*we have*	
	fāc'tī ēs'tĭs,	*ye have*	
	fāc'tī sūnt,	*they have*	

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—ĕ'rām *vèl* fŭ'ĕrām, *I had becóme* or *I had been made.*

Singular.	Fāc'tŭs ĕ'rām,	*I had*	*becóme.*
	fāc'tŭs ĕ'rās,	*thou hadst*	
	fāc'tŭs ĕ'răt,	*he had*	
Plúral.	fāc'tī ĕrā'mŭs,	*we had*	
	fāc'tī ĕrā'tĭs,	*ye hád*	
	fāc'tī ĕ'ränt,	*they had*	

5. Fúture Tense.—*I shall* or *will becóme.*

Singular.	Fī'ām,	*I shall*	*becóme.*
	fī'ēs,	*thou wilt*	
	fī'ĕt,	*he will*	
Plúral.	fiē'mŭs,	*we shall*	
	fiē'tĭs,	*ye will*	
	fī'ĕut,	*they will*	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Présent Tense.—*No first Pérson.*

Singular.	Fī, fī'tŏ,	*becóme thou,*
	fī'ăt, fī'tŏ,	*let him becóme,*

Plúral.	fĭā'mŭs,	*let us becóme.*
	fī'tĕ, fītō'tĕ,	*becóme yĕ,*
	fī'ānt, fīūn'tŏ,	*let them becóme.*

POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*may, can, should, would.*

Síngular.	Fĭ'ăm,	*I may*
	fĭ'ās,	*thou máyest*
	fĭ'ăt,	*he may*
Plúral.	fĭā'mŭs,	*we may*
	fĭā'tĭs,	*ye may*
	fĭ'ānt,	*they may*

becóme.

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*might or could.*

Síngular.	Fĭ'ĕrēm,	*I might*
	fĭ'ĕrēs,	*thou míghtest*
	fĭ'ĕrĕt,	*he might*
Plúral.	fĭĕrē'mŭs,	*we might*
	fĭĕrē'tĭs,	*ye might*
	fĭ'ĕrēnt,	*they might*

becóme.

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—sīm *vĕl* fŭ'ĕrĭm, *may have or* should *have been made or have becóme.*

Síngular.	Fāc'tŭs sīm,	*I may*
	fāc'tŭs sīs,	*thou máyest*
	fāc'tŭs sĭt,	*he may*
Plúral.	fāc'tī sī'mŭs,	*we may*
	fāc'tī sī'tĭs,	*ye may*
	fāc'tī sīnt,	*they may*

have becóme.

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—ēs'sēm *vĕl* fūīs'sēm, *might or would have becóme, or been made or done.*

Síngular.	Fāc'tŭs ēs'sēm,	*I might*
	fāc'tŭs ēs'sēs,	*thou míghtest*
	fāc'tŭs ēs'sĕt,	*he might*
Plúral.	fāc'tī ēssē'mŭs,	*we might*
	fāc'tī ēssē'tĭs,	*ye might*
	fāc'tī ēs'sēnt,	*they might*

have becóme.

5. Fúture Tense.—ĕ'rŏ *vel* fŭ'ĕrŏ, *shall* or *will have becóme,*
or *been made* or *done.*

Singular.	Fāc'tŭs ĕ'rŏ,	*I shall*	
	fāc'tŭs ĕ'rĭs,	*thou wilt*	
	fāc'tŭs ĕ'rĭt,	*he will*	
Plúral.	fāc'tī ĕ'rĭmŭs,	*we shall*	*have becóme.*
	fāc'tī ĕ'rĭtĭs,	*ye will*	
	fāc'tī ĕ'rŭnt,	*they will*	

The Subjúnctive Mood is declíned like the Poténtial.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Présent and Preterímperfect Tense.
Fī'ĕrī, *to be made* or *done,* or *to becóme.*

Preterpérfect and Preterplúperfect Tense.
Fāc'tŭm ĕs'sĕ *vel* fŭĭs'sĕ, *to have been made* or *done,* or *to have becóme.*

Fúture Tense.
Fāc'tŭm ī'rī, *to be abóut to be made* or *done,* or *to be abóut to becóme.*

PARTICIPLES.

Past, Fāc'-tŭs, *made, done,* or *becóme.*
Fúture, Fă-cĭĕn'dŭs,* *that is to* or *that must becóme;* or, *that is to be* or *that must be made* or *done.*

FEROR, *I am borne.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*I am borne* or *súffered.*

Singular.	Fĕ'rŏr,	*I am*	
	fĕr'rĭs *vel* fĕr'rĕ,	*thou art*	*borne.*
	fĕr'tŭr,	*he is*	

---

* Sómetimes this párticiple, as álso the gérunds of *fă'cĭŏ,* have the vówel *u* in place of *e* in the third sýllable: as *făcĭŭn'dŭs, făcĭŭn'dă, făcĭŭn'dŭm, făcĭŭn'dī, făcĭŭn'dō;* but this mánner of wríting is more áncient.

Plúral.	fĕ'rĭmŭr,	*we are*	borne.
	fĕrī'mĭnī,	*ye are*	
	fĕrŭn'tŭr,	*they are*	

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*I was borne.*

Singular.	Fĕrē'băr,	*I was*	borne.
	fĕrēbā'rĭs *vèl* -bā'rĕ,	*thou wast*	
	fĕrēbā'tŭr,	*he was*	
Plúral.	fĕrēbā'mŭr,	*we were*	
	fĕrēbā'mĭnī,	*ye were*	
	fĕrēbān'tŭr,	*they were*	

3 Preterpérfect Tense.—sŭm *vèl* fŭ'ī, *I have been borne.*

Singular.	Lā'tŭs sŭm,	*I have*	been borne.
	lā'tŭs ĕs,	*thou hast*	
	lā'tŭs ĕst,	*he has*	
Plúral.	lā'tī sŭ'mŭs,	*we have*	
	lā'tī ĕs'tĭs,	*ye have*	
	lā'tī sūnt,	*they have*	

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—ĕ'răm *vèl* fŭ'ĕrăm, *I had been borne.*

Singular.	Lā'tŭs ĕ'răm,	*I had*	been borne.
	lā'tŭs ĕ'răs,	*thou hadst*	
	lā'tŭs ĕ'răt,	*he had*	
Plúral.	lā'tī ĕrā'mŭs,	*we had*	
	lā'tī ĕrā'tĭs,	*ye had*	
	lā'tī ĕ'rānt,	*they had*	

5. Fúture Tense.—*I shall or will be borne.*

Singular.	Fĕ'răr,	*I shall*	be borne.
	fĕrē'rĭs *vèl* fĕrē'rĕ,	*thou wilt*	
	fĕrē'tŭr,	*he will*	
Plúral.	fĕrē'mŭr,	*we shall*	
	fĕrē'mĭnī,	*ye will*	
	fĕrēn'tŭr,	*they will*	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.
Présent Tense.—*No first Pérson.*

Singular.	Fĕ'rĕ, fĕr'tŏr,	*be thou*	borne.
	fĕrā'tŭr, fĕr'tŏr,	*let him be*	
Plúral.	fĕrā'mŭr,	*let us be*	
	fĕrī'mĭnī, fĕrī'mĭnŏr,	*be ye*	
	fĕrān'tŭr, fĕrŭntŏr,	*let them be*	

POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*may, can, should, would be.*

Singular.	Fĕ′răr,	*I may*	be borne.
	fĕ′rā′rĭs *vel* fĕrā′rĕ	*thou máyest*	
	fĕrā′tŭr,	*he may*	
Plúral.	fĕrā′mŭr,	*we may*	
	fĕrā′mĭnī,	*ye may*	
	fĕrān′tŭr,	*they may*	

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*might or could be.*

Singular.	Fĕr′rĕr,	*I might*	be borne.
	fĕrrē′rĭs *vel* fĕrrē′rĕ,	*thou míghtest*	
	fĕrrē′tŭr,	*he might*	
Plúral.	fĕrrē′mŭr,	*we might*	
	fĕrrē′mĭnī,	*ye might*	
	fĕrrēn′tŭr,	*they might*	

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—sīm *vel* fŭ′ĕrĭm, *may or should have been.*

Singular.	Lā′tŭs sīm,	*I may*	have been borne
	lā′tŭs sīs,	*thou máyest*	
	lā′tŭs sĭt,	*he may*	
Plúral.	lā′tī sī′mŭs,	*we may*	
	lā′tī sī tĭs,	*ye may*	
	lā′tī sīnt,	*they may*	

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—ēs′sēm *vel* fŭīs′sēm, *might or would have been.*

Singular.	Lā′tŭs ēs′sēm,	*I might*	have been borne.
	lā′tŭs ēs′sēs,	*thou míghtest*	
	lā′tŭs ēs′sĕt,	*he might*	
Plúral.	lā′tī ēssē′mŭs,	*we might*	
	lā′tī ēssē′tĭs,	*ye might*	
	lā′tī ēs′sēnt,	*they might*	

5. Fúture Tense.—ĕ′rŏ *vel* fŭ′ĕrŏ, *shall or will have been.*

Singular.	Lā′tŭs ĕ′rŏ,	*I shall*	have been borne.
	lā′tŭs ĕ′rĭs,	*thou wilt*	
	lā′tŭs ĕ′rĭt,	*he will*	

Plúral.	lā'tī ĕ'rĭmŭs,	*we shall*	
	lā'tī ĕ'rĭtĭs,	*ye will*	
	lā'tī ĕ'rūnt,	*they will*	

have been borne.

The Subjúnctive Mood is declíned like the Poténtial.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Présent and Preterímperfect Tense.

Fēr'rī, *to be borne.*

Preterpérfect and Preterplúperfect Tense.

Lā'tŭm ĕs'sĕ *vĕl* fŭĭs'sĕ, *to have been borne.*

Future Tense.

Lā'tŭm ī'rī, *to be aboút to be borne.*

PARTICIPLES.

Past. Lā'tŭs, *borne or háving been borne*
Fúture, Fĕrēn'dŭs, *that is to be or that must be borne.*

EO, *I go.*

Ĕ'ŏ, *I go,* is álso a Verb Irrégular, but, in mány of its ténses, it resémbles verbs of the Fourth Conjugátion : it is declíned as fóllows :—

Ĕ'ŏ, īs, ī'vī, ī'rĕ, ĕun'dī, ĕun'dŏ, ĕun'dŭm, ī'tŭm, ī'tū, ī'ēns, ītū'rŭs, *to go.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*I do go or am góing.*

Síngular.	Ĕ'ŏ,	*I go,*
	īs,	*thou góest,*
	ĭt,	*he goes,*
Plúral.	ī'mŭs,	*we go,*
	ī'tĭs,	*ye go,*
	ĕ'ŭnt,	*they go.*

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*I did go or was góing.*

Síngular.	Ī'bām,	*I was*	
	ī'bās,	*thou wast*	
	ī'băt,	*he was*	
Plúral.	ībā'mŭs,	*we were*	
	ībā'tĭs,	*ye were*	
	ī'bānt,	*they were*	

góing.

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—*I went* or *have gone.*

Singular.
$$\begin{cases} \text{I'vī,} & I \text{ went,} \\ \text{ivīs'tī,} & thou \text{ wéntest,} \\ \text{i'vĭt,} & he \text{ went.} \end{cases}$$

Plúral.
$$\begin{cases} \text{i'vĭmŭs,} & we \text{ went,} \\ \text{ivīs'tĭs,} & ye \text{ went,} \\ \text{īvē'rŭnt } vèl \text{ īvē'rĕ,} & they \text{ went.} \end{cases}$$

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—*I had gone.*

Singular.
$$\begin{cases} \text{I'vĕrām,} & I \text{ had} \\ \text{i'vĕrās,} & thou \text{ hadst} \\ \text{i'vĕrăt,} & he \text{ had} \end{cases}$$ gone.

Plúral.
$$\begin{cases} \text{ivĕrā'mŭs,} & we \text{ had} \\ \text{ivĕrā'tĭs,} & ye \text{ had} \\ \text{i'vĕrānt,} & they \text{ had} \end{cases}$$

5. Fúture Tense.—*I shall* or *will go.*

Singular.
$$\begin{cases} \text{I'bŏ,} & I \text{ shall} \\ \text{i'bĭs,} & thou \text{ wilt} \\ \text{i'bĭt,} & he \text{ will} \end{cases}$$ go.

Plúral.
$$\begin{cases} \text{i'bĭmŭs,} & we \text{ shall} \\ \text{i'bĭtĭs,} & ye \text{ will} \\ \text{i'būnt,} & they \text{ will} \end{cases}$$

IMPERATIVE MOOD.
Présent Tense.—*No first Pérson.*

Síngular.
$$\begin{cases} \text{I, i'tŏ,} & go \text{ thou,} \\ \text{ĕ'ăt, i'tŏ,} & let \text{ him go,} \end{cases}$$

Plúral.
$$\begin{cases} \text{ĕā'mŭs,} & let \text{ us go,} \\ \text{i'tĕ, ītŏ'tĕ,} & go \text{ ye,} \\ \text{ĕ'ānt, ĕūn tŏ,} & let \text{ them go.} \end{cases}$$

POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*may, can, should, would.*

Síngular.
$$\begin{cases} \text{Ĕ'ām,} & I \text{ may} \\ \text{ĕ'ās,} & thou \text{ máyest} \\ \text{ĕ'ăt,} & he \text{ may} \end{cases}$$ go.

Plúral.
$$\begin{cases} \text{ĕā'mŭs,} & we \text{ may} \\ \text{ĕā'tĭs,} & ye \text{ may} \\ \text{ĕ'ānt,} & they \text{ may} \end{cases}$$

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*might* or *could.*

Singular.	Ĭ'rēm,	*I might*
	ĭ'rēs,	*thou mightest*
	ĭ'rĕt,	*he might*
Plúral.	īrē'mŭs,	*we might*
	īrē'tĭs,	*ye might*
	ĭ'rēnt,	*they might*

} go.

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—*may* or *should have.*

Singular.	Ĭ'vĕrĭm,	*I may*
	ĭ'vĕrĭs,	*thou máyest*
	ĭ'vĕrĭt,	*he may*
Plúral.	īvĕ'rĭmŭs,	*we may*
	īvĕ'rĭtĭs,	*ye may*
	ĭ'vĕrĭnt,	*they may*

} have gone.

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—*might* or *would have.*

Singular.	Ĭvīs'sēm,	*I might*
	īvīs'sēs,	*thou mightest*
	īvīs'sĕt,	*he might*
Plúral.	īvīssē'mŭs,	*we might*
	īvīssē'tĭs,	*ye might*
	īvīs'sēnt,	*they might*

} have gone.

5. Fúture Tense.—*shall* or *will have.*

Singular.	Ĭ'vĕrŏ,	*I shall*
	ĭ'vĕrĭs,	*thou wilt*
	ĭ'vĕrĭt,	*he will*
Plúral.	īvĕrī'mŭs,	*we shall*
	īvĕrī'tĭs,	*ye will*
	ĭ'vĕrĭnt,	*they will*

} have gone.

The Subjúnctive Mood is declíned like the Poténtial.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Présent and Preterímperfect Tense.
Ī'rĕ, *to go.*

Preterpérfect and Preterplúperfect Tense.
Īvīs'sĕ, *to have gone.*

Fúture Tense.

Ĭtū'rŭm ēs'sĕ, *to be abóut to go.*

GERUNDS.

Eūn'dī,	*of góing,*
ĕūn'dŏ,	*in góing,*
ĕūn'dŭm,	*góing.*

SUPINES.

Ĭ'tŭm, *to go.*   Ĭ'tū, *to be gone.*

PARTICIPLES.

Présent, Ĭ'ēns,   *góing.*
    Génitive. ĕūn'tĭs, *of a pérson* or *thing góing.*
  Fúture. Ĭtū'rŭs, *abóut to go.*

In like mánner are the cómpounds[67] of ĕ'ŏ declíned : as are

---

[67] The more cómmon cómpounds of ĕ'ŏ are the fóllowing, which, ex-
clúsive of quĕ'ŏ and of nĕ'quĕŏ, and exclúsive (líkewise) of ăm'bĭŏ, *I
environ,* a verb originally a cómpound of ĕ'ŏ, but evéntually adópted
amóng the régular verbs of the fourth conjugátion, amóunt to séventeen
in númber :—

1. ăb'ĕŏ,	ăbĭ'vī,	ăb'ĭtŭm,	ăbĭ'rĕ,	*to go awáy,*
2. ăd'ĕŏ,	ădĭ'vī,	ăd'ĭtŭm,	ădĭ'rĕ,	*to go únto,*
3. āntĕ'ĕŏ,	āntĕĭ'vī,	āntĕ'ĭtŭm,	āntĕĭ'rĕ,	*to go befóre,*
4. cīrcŭm'ĕŏ,	cīrcŭmĭ'vī,	cīrcŭm'ĭtŭm,	cīrcŭmĭ'rĕ,	*to go round,*
5. cŏ'ĕŏ,	cŏĭ'vī,	cŏ'ĭtŭm,	cŏĭ'rĕ,	*to go togéther with,*
6. ēx'ĕŏ,	ēxĭ'vī,	ēx'ĭtŭm,	ēxĭ'rĕ,	*to go out,*
7. ĭn'ĕŏ,	ĭnĭ'vī,	ĭn'ĭtŭm,	ĭnĭ'rĕ,	*to go in,*
8. īntĕr'ĕŏ,	īntĕrĭ'vī,	īntĕr'ĭtŭm,	īntĕrĭ'rĕ,	*to pérish,*
9. īntrŏ'ĕŏ,	īntrŏĭ'vī,	īntrŏ'ĭtŭm,	īntrŏĭ'rĕ,	*to go into,*
10. ŏb'ĕŏ,	ŏbĭ'vī,	ŏb'ĭtŭm,	ŏbĭ'rĕ,	*to go through with,*
11. pĕr'ĕŏ,	pĕrĭ'vī,	pĕr'ĭtŭm,	pĕrĭ'rĕ,	*to pérish,*
12. præ'ĕŏ,	præĭ'vī,	præ'ĭtŭm,	præĭ'rĕ,	*to precéde.*
13. prætĕr'ĕŏ,	prætĕrĭ'vī,	prætĕr'ĭtŭm,	prætĕrĭ'rĕ,	*to pass by,*
14. prŏ'ĕŏ,	prŏdĭ'vī,	prŏ'dĭtŭm,	prŏdĭ'rĕ,	*to go forth,*
15. rĕd'ĕŏ,	rēdĭ'vī,	rĕ'dĭtŭm,	rēdĭ'rĕ,	*to retúrn,*
16. sŭb'ĕŏ,	sŭbĭ'vī,	sŭb'ĭtŭm,	sŭbĭ'rĕ,	*to go únder,*
17. trāns'ĕŏ,	trānsĭ'vī,	trāns'ĭtŭm,	trānsĭ'rĕ,	*to pass óver.*

In all these verbs the pénult of the súpine (ĕ'ŏ being one of the excép-
tions to the Géneral Rule " SŬPĪ'NŬM *dĭssȳl'lăbŭm priŏ'rĕm hăbĕt
lōn'găm,*") is short. See Prósody.
  And here it is réquisite to obsérve, that in the Préterite of the Indí-
cative, and the ténses deríved from it, the *v* is óftener drópped, than

álso quḗŏ, *I am áble*, and nḗquḗŏ, *I am unáble ;* but these last are not úsed in the Impérative Mood, and séldom or néver either in the Gérunds or Párticiples.[88]

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

VERBS that have ónly some partícular Ténses and Pérsons,[89] are cálled *Deféctive ;* such are the fóllowing :—

1. Aïŏ,[90] *I say.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Présent Tense.—*I say.*

	Síngular.		*Plúral.*		
Aïŏ,	ăʹïs,	ăʹït,	——	——	aïʹŭnt.

retaíned, in ẽʹŏ and all its cómpounds :—thus, for ădïʹvï, pĕrïʹvï, &c., we more fréquently read and say ădʹïï, pĕrʹïï, &c. This contrácted form is likewise véry fréquent in óther verbs, though scárcely so fréquent as in ẽʹŏ and its cómpounds.

Agaín, although ẽʹŏ is próperly a neúter verb, yet, éven by the best writers, was it úsed *pérsonally*, as well as *impersonally*, in the passive voice :—thus in Cæʹsar we find "flūʹmĕn pĕʹdïbŭs trānsïʹrï pŏʹtĕst," *the river can be cróssed oa foot:* álso in Cïʹcero we read "pĕrïʹcŭlă ădĕūnʹtŭr," *dángers are come únto:* and mány óther pássages of like kind might be quóted.

In prōʹdĕŏ and rĕʹdĕŏ the létter *d* is insérted for the sake of distínctness of sound ; and in præʹẽŏ, the díphthong is óftener short than long.

[88] Vẽʹnĕŏ, *to be sóld*, is cónjugated like ẽʹŏ, excépt that it has no impérative, nor fúture infínitive, nor gérunds, súpines, or párticiples.

[89] The verb dăʹrĕ, *to give*, wants the first pérson síngular of the présent of the indicative, and álso of the présent of the poténtial, pássive :—in like mánner, fāʹrï, *to speak*, wants the same pérsons, of the like tense, of the same two moods. Agaín, the sécond pérson síngular of the impérative of scïʹŏ, *I know*, námely, *scï*, was séldom (or perháps néver) in use.—Amóng *Deféctive Verbs* some grammárians class such words as "sïs," for sï vïs, *if thou art willing ;* "sūlʹtïs," for sï vūlʹtïs, *if ye are willing ;* "sōʹdēs," for sï aūdēs, *if thou dárest :*—álso, ïnʹfït, *he begíns*, or ráther, *it is begún ;* dēʹfït, *it is wánting ;* and cōnʹfït, *it is done ;* with a few more which hárdly belóng to this tribe.

[90] In the verb aïʹŏ the first two létters are álways pronoúnced as one syllable whenéver they are fóllowed by a vówel : but when a cónsonaat fóllows the *i*, then the first létter is inváriably short ; as, ăʹït, *he saith* or *says.*

Preterímperfect Tense.—*I said* or *did say.*

	Singular.			*Plúral.*	
Aīē'-bām,	-bās,	-băt,	-bā'mŭs,	-bā'tĭs,	-bănt.

Preterpérfect Tense.—*thou saídest.*

	Singular.			*Plúral.*	
———	ăī'stĭ,	———	———	āīs'tĭs,	———

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Présent Tense.—*say.*

	Singular.			*Plúral.*	
———	ăī *vel* aī,	———	———	———	———

POTENTIAL MOOD.

Présent Tense.—*thou máyest say.*

	Singular.			*Plúral.*	
———	aī'ās,	aī'ăt,	aīā'mŭs,	———	aī'ănt.

PARTICIPLE.

Présent, Aī'ēns, *sáying.*

---

2. Aū'sĭm, *I dare.*

INDICATIVE AND POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*I dare* or *I may dare.*

	Singular.			*Plúral.*	
Aū'sĭm,	aū'sĭs,	aū'sĭt,	———	———	aū'sĭnt.

---

3. Ă'vē, *hail.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*hail.*

	Singular.			*Plúral.*	
———	{ ă'vē, ăvē'tŏ, }	———	———	{ ăvē'tĕ, ăvētō'tĕ. }	———

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Présent Tense.
Ăvē'rĕ, *to hail* or *to speed.*

4. Săl'vĕ,[91] *God save you.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Fúture Tense.—*thou wilt be safe.*

Síngular.	Plúral.
sālvē'bĭs, ——	—— —— ——

IMPERATIVE MOOD

Présent Tense.—*be safe.*

Singular.	Plúral.
{ sāl've, { sālvē'tŏ, } ——	{ sālvē'tĕ, { sālvētō'tĕ, } ——

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Présent Tense.
Sālvē'rĕ, *to be safe and sound.*

---

5. Cĕ'dŏ, *tell me.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Présent Tense.—*tell me.*

Síngular.	Plúral.
—— cĕ'dŏ, ——	—— cĕ'dĭtĕ, ——

---

6. Fāx'ĭm for Fă'cĭăm or Fē'cĕrĭm, *I may do it.*

INDICATIVE AND POTENTIAL MOOD.

Preterpérfect Tense.—*I may do it.*

Síngular.			Plúral.		
Fāx'ĭm,	fāx'ĭs,	fāx'ĭt,	fāx'ĭmŭs,	fāx'ĭtĭs,	fāx'ĭnt.

Fúture Tense.—*I shall or will do it.*

Síngular.			Plúral.		
Fāx'ŏ,	fāx'ĭs,	fāx'ĭt,	fāxī'mŭs,	fāxī'tĭs,	fāx'ĭnt.

---

91 With this verb séveral grammárians coúple the like parts of the verb vă'lĕŏ, *I am áble*, in the sense of "*adieú*" or "*fárewell.*"

7. Quæ′sŏ,[92] *I pray.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Présent Tense.—*I pray.*

Singular.	*Plúral.*

Quæ′sŏ, quæ′sĭs, quæ′sĭt, quæ′sŭmŭs, —— ——

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Présent Tense.
Quæ′sĕrĕ, *to beg* or *to beseéch.*

PARTICIPLE.
Présent, Quæ′sēns, *beseéching.*

---

8. Ĭn′quĭŏ *vèl* Ĭn′quăm, *I say.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Présent Tense.—*I say.*

Singular.				*Plúral.*	

In′quĭŏ,)
  vèl } ĭn′quĭs, ĭn′quĭt, ĭn′quĭmŭs, —— —— ĭn quĭūnt.
Ĭn′quăm,)

Preterímperfect Tense.—*I said* or *did say.*

Singular.		*Plúral.*	

—— —— ĭnquĭĕ′băt, —— —— ĭnquĭē bănt.

Preterpérfect Tense.—*saidest thou.*

Singular.	*Plúral.*

—— ĭnquĭs′tī, —— —— —— ——

Fúture Tense.—*thou wilt say.*

Singular.	*Plúral.*

—— ĭn′quĭēs, ĭn′quĭĕt, —— —— ——

---

[92] This verb quæ′sŏ seems to have been the oríginal form of quæ′rŏ, *I seek.*

F

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Présent Tense.—*say thou.*

Singular.   *Plúral.*

—— {ĭn'quĕ, ĭn'quĭtŏ,} {ĭn'quĭăt, ĭn'quĭtŏ,} —— —— ——

PARTICIPLE.

Présent, Ĭn'quĭēns, *sáying.*[93]

Nō'vī, *I know* or *I have known,* ō'dī,[94] *I hate* or *I have háted,* cǣ'pī, *I begín* or *I have begún,* and mĕ'mĭnī, *I do re-mémber* or *I have remémbered,* are líkewise Verbs Deféctive; as they have ónly the Preterpérfect Tense of the Indícative Mood, with the Ténses fórmed therefróm:—thus,

Nō'vī,	*I know* or *I knew,*	Ō'dī,	*I hate* or *I háted,*	
Nō'vĕrăm,	*I had*	Ō'dĕrăm,	*I had*	
Nō'vĕrĭm,	*I may have*	Ō'dĕrĭm,	*I may have*	
Nōvīs'sĕm,	*I might have*	Ōdīs'sĕm,	*I would have*	
Nō'vĕrŏ,	*I shall have*	Ō'dĕrŏ,	*I shall have*	
Nōvīs'se,	*to have*	Ōdīs'sĕ,	*to have*	

(marginal: known.)   *(marginal: hated.)*

In like mánner do cǣ'pī, and mĕ'mĭnī, form their ténses:— and it is to be obsérved that these four verbs have not ónly the first pérson, but álso all the óther pérsons of those Tenses: mĕ'mĭnī has moreóver the sécond pérson of the Impérative Mood, both síngular and plúral:—as,

mĕmēntŏ'tĕ, *rémember thou.* || mĕmēntŏ'tĕ, *rémember ye.*[95]

---

[93] To these some add fō'rēm, *I might be,* and the infinitive fō'rĕ, *to be.*

[94] The two verbs ō'dī and cǣ'pī have the past párticiples ō'sŭs, *háted,* and cǣp'tŭs, *begún;* the two párticiples ēxō'sŭs and pĕrō'sŭs are álso in use.

[95] To these *Deféctive Verbs* might be jóined ō'vās, *thou exúltest,* ō'văt, *he exúlts,* ō'vāns, *exúlting:* álso, ă'păgĕ, *awáy with thee,* ăpă'gĭtĕ, *get ye hence.* And here it may be nóticed that the four fóllowing verbs, fă'cĭŏ, *I do,* dī'cŏ, *I say,* dū'cŏ, *I lead,* and fĕ'rŏ, *I bring* or *I bear,* lose the létter e, by the fígure apócopĕ, in the sécond pérson síngular of the im-pérative, áctive; máking făc, dīc, dūc, fĕr, instéad of fă'cĕ, dī'cĕ, dū'cĕ, fĕ'rĕ. But when fă'cĭŏ is compoúnded with a preposítion it chánges the first vówel of the présent into i, and forms its impérative régularly: as, pĕrfī'cĭŏ, *I perfórm;* pĕr'fĭcĕ, *perfórm thou.*

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

VERBS that are úsed, exclúsively, in the third pérson sín-
gular, withoút a nóminative in Latin (but of which the
nóminative in En'glish is "*It*" indéfinitely táken,) are cálled
Verbs Impérsonal, as, dēlēc'tăt, *it delígteth*, dĕ'cĕt, *it be-
cómeth*, pūgnā'tŭr, *it is fought*, vĭdē'tŭr,[95] *it seems.*

Impérsonal Verbs have all the moods and ténses which
Pérsonal Verbs have, with the excéption, perháps, of the
impérative: thus,

Dēlēc'tăt,	*it delights*,	Vĭdē'tŭr,	*it seems*,
Dēlēctā'băt,	*it did delight*,	Vĭdēbā'tŭr,	*it did seem*,
Dēlēctā'vĭt,	*it delighted*,	Vī'sŭm ēst,	*it seémed*,
Dēlēctā'vĕrăt,	*it had delighted*,	Vī'sŭm ĕ'răt,	*it had seémed*,
Dēlēctā'bĭt,	*it will delight*,	Vĭdē'bĭtŭr,	*it will seem*,
Dēlēc'tĕt,	*it may delight*,	Vĭdēā'tŭr,	*it may seem*,
Dēlēctā'rĕt,	*it might delight*,	Vĭdērē'tŭr,	*it might seem*,
and so forth.		and so forth.	

---

[95] Verbs which are séldom, or néver, found except in the third pérson
síngular of one or more of the ténses of the áctive voice are, stríctly,
Verbs Impérsonal:—but mány verbs which are régular in all the pérsons
of the áctive voice, are óften assúmed *impérsonally* in the pássive. The
verbs próperly térmed *Impérsonals* are the fóllowing:—

dĕ'cĕt, *it becómes*,	mĭ'sĕrĕt, *it pities*,	pœ'nĭtĕt, *it repénts*,
lĭ'bĕt, *it pléases*,	ŏpŏr'tĕt, *it behóves*,	pŭ'dĕt, *it ashámes*, and
lĭ'cĕt, *it is láwful*,	pĭ'gĕt, *it irks*,	tæ'dĕt, *it weáries.*

To which some grammárians add mány more, as, cŏn'fĭt, *it is done*,
dē'fĭt, *it is wánting*, ĭn'fĭt, *he begíns* or ráther *it is begún*, lĭ'quĕt, *it
appéars*; with verbs expréssive of the occúrrences of náture; thus,
plŭ'ĭt, *it rains*, nĭn'gĭt, *it snows*, grān'dĭnăt, *it hails*, gĕ'lăt, *it fréezes*,
rē'gĕlăt, *it thaws*, tŏ'năt, *it thúnders*, fūl'mĭnăt, *it lightens*, vēsperā'scit,
it begíns to draw tówards évening: and a múltitude besídes.

Some verbs not strictly impérsonal, are nevertheléss óften úsed im-
pérsonally. Of these we shall give, as a spécimen, one or two of each
conjugátion:—

1st CONJUGATION. Jŭ'văt, *it delíghts*; cŏn'stăt, *it is agreéd on*; vă'cĕt,
there is leísure; spĕc'tăt, *it concérns*, cĕrtā'tŭr, *it is conténded*; pŏtā'-
tŭr, *it is drunk*; &c.

2nd CONJUGATION. Dĕ'bĕt, *it ought*; plă'cĕt, *it pléases*; ăt'tĭnĕt, *it
pertáins*; făvē'tŭr, *favour is shown*; vĭdē'tŭr, *it appeárs or seems*; &c.

3rd CONJUGATION. Sūf'fĭcĭt, *it sufficeth*; ĭn'cĭpĭt, *it begíns*; dē'sĭnĭt,
it términates or *gives óver*; crē'dĭtŭr, *it is trústed*; mĭt'tĭtŭr, *it is
sent*; &c.

4th CONJUGATION. Ē'vĕnĭt, *it comes to pass*; cŏn'vĕnĭt, *it is meet*;
ēx'pĕdĭt, *it is expédient*; sēntī'tŭr, *it is percéived*; ăpĕrī'tŭr, *it is
opened*, &c.

OF A PARTICIPLE⁷.

A PARTICIPLE is a part of speech derived from a Verb, and has share with a Noun Ad'jective, in número, génder, case, and declénsion; and share with a Verb, in tense and significátion.

There are four distínct sorts or kinds of PARTICIPLES:

1. One of the présent tense, which in En'glish ends álways in *-ing*; and in Látin álways in *-āns* or in *-ēns*: as, *lóving* ă'māns; *teáching*, dŏ'cēns.

2. One of the fúture, in *-rŭs*, which implíes a líkelihood or desígn of dóing a thing: as, ămātū'rŭs,⁹⁸ *about to love*.

3. One of the preterpérfect tense, which has génerally a pássive significátion, and in En'glish ends (for the most part) in *-d*, *-t*, or *-n*:—as, lēc'tŭs, *read*; dōc'tŭs, *taught*; vīsŭs, *seen*⁹⁹.

IRREGULAR VERBS, Prŏ'dēst, *it prófits*; rĕ'fĕrt, *it concérns*; ĭn'tĕrĕst, *it ínterests*; sŭ'pĕrĕst, *it remaíns*; ădī'tŭr, *it is come únto*; ăbĕundŭm ēst, *it is to be* or *must be gone awáy*.

⁹⁷ A Párticiple owes its name to the circumstance of partícipating or partáking of *Génder* and *Declénsion* in cómmon with AD'JECTIVES, and of *Time* and *Significátion* in cómmon with VERBS. Some párticiples of the présent and past ténses admít éven of compárison:—thus, ă'māns, *lóving*, ămăn'tĭŏr, *more loving*, ămāntĭs'sĭmŭs, *most lóving*: dōc'tŭs, *taught* or *leárned*, dōc'tĭŏr, *more taught* or *more leárned*, dōctĭs'sĭmŭs, *the most taught* or *véry leárned*. But as in this sense the idéa of tense or time is not strictly blénded with the significátion, séveral grammárians rejéct the name of *Párticiples* in such ínstances, and adópt that of *Partícipials*. Párticiples admítting of degreés of compárison are génerally the source or órigin of ádverbs; which, in like manner, admít of compárison:—thus, from ă'māns, *lóving*, are derived ămăn'tĕr, *lóvingly*: ămă'n'tĭŭs, *more lóvingly*, ămāntĭs'sĭmĕ, *most lóvingly*: and símilarly from dŏc'tŭs, *leárned*, come the ádverbs dōc'tĕ, *leárnedly*, dōc'tĭŭs, *more leárnedly*, dōctĭs'sĭmĕ, *most leárnedly*.

⁹⁸ With the verb SŬM this párticiple is fréquently úsed (and with élegance) instead of the fúture of the indicative of verbs, espécially if *Púrpose* or *Inténtion* be sígnified; and with SĬM it is élegantly employed for the présent, or fúture, and, with ēs'sēm, for the plupérfect, of the poténtial mood: thus, prŏfēc'tūrŭs sŭm, *I will go*, that is, *I am about to go*; nōn dŭ'bĭtō quīn sĭt făctū'rŭs, *I doubt not but he may* (or *will*) *do it*; nōn dŭbĭtā'vī quīn ēs'sĕt vēntū'rŭs, *I doubted not but he would come*: ráther than "quīn fă'cĭăt, quīn fă'cĕrĕt, quīn fĕ'cĕrĭt; quīn vĕ'nīrĕt, quīn vēnĭssĕt, quīn vēnĕrĭt." All verbs which have no súpines, want of course this párticiple, which is derived from the súpine in *-ū*.

⁹⁹ In Látin the párticiple of the past tense ends inváriably in *-ŭs*, precéded for the most part by *t*, not unfréquently by *s*, sómetimes by *x*, and in one ínstance, námely, mŏr'tŭŭs, *dead*, by the vówel ŭ.

4. One of the fúture, in *-dŭs*, which has álso a pássive sig-
nificátion, and exprésses a fúture áction ; as, ămăn′dŭs, *that
is to be*, or *that must be lóved*, else, *that is desérving* or *wórthy
of béing lóved.*[100]

Note. All párticiples are declíned like nouns ádjective :
those of thrée terminátions, like *bŏ′nŭs*, and those of one ter-
minátion, like *fē′lix*.

OF AN ADVERB.[101]

AN AD′VERB is a part of speech joíned to verbs, ádjectives,
and súbstantives, to increáse or dimínish their significátion :
as, he speaks *well ;* they write *bádly*.

OF A CONJUNCTION.[102]

A CONJUNC′TION is a part of speech that joins words and
séntences togéther ; as, my fáther *and* móther.

---

[100] The párticiple in *-dŭs* is véry séldom, or perháps néver, úsed in a
sense púrely denóting *Futúrity ;* for, its ímport is that of Necéssity,
Dúty, or Mérit, ráther than that of bare and ábsolute *Futúrity.* Thus,
dī′cŏ lī′tĕrās ā mē scrīp′tŭm ī′rī, and dī′cŏ lī′tĕrās ā mē scrībēn′dās ĕs′sĕ,
are véry dífferent indéed in méaning,—the fórmer signifýing, *I say that
a létter will be written by me :* but the látter, *I say that a létter must be
written by me*, or, *that I am oblíged to write a létter.*

[101] An ádverb, as the name impórts, is a part of speech ádded to a
verb to expréss *Quántity, Quálity, Mánner, Tíme, Ór′der,* or *Place.*
And not ónly to verbs, but álso to nouns, prónouns, párticiples, and éven
to óther ádverbs are these óften adjoíned. Of ádverbs some are deríved
from súbstantives, as pār′tīm, *pártly*, mĕ′rĭtō, *desérvedly :*—and some
are abbreviátions of nouns combíned with prónouns or prepositíons ;
as, hŏ′dĭē, *to-day*, for hōc dī′ē, *on this day ;* ād′mŏdŭm, *véry*, for ăd
mŏ′dŭm, *únto méasure :*—óthers are deríved from ádjectives ; as, āltē,
lóftily or *déeply*, from āl′tŭs, *high* or *deep ;* brĕ′vĭtĕr, *bríefly*, from brĕ′-
vĭs, *short ;* vŏlēn′tĕr, *wíllingly*, from vŏ′lēns, *wílling.* These génerally
admít of compárison, if the ádjectives or párticiples (whence they are
deríved) can be compáred ; and their compárative and supérlative
degrées of compárison are álways análogous to those of the ádjectives or
párticiples from which they spring : as, bĕ′nĕ, *well*, mĕ′lĭŭs, *bétter*, ŏp′-
tĭmē, *best*, from bŏ′nŭs, *good ;* pŏtēn′tĕr, *pówerfully*, pŏtēn′tĭŭs, *more
pówerfully*, pŏtēntīs′sĭmē, *most pówerfully*, from pŏ′tēns, *áble.* In mány
ínstances the neúter génder of ádjectives or of párticiples, is usúrped
advérbially : as, dūl′cĕ, *swéetly*, plŭs, *more*, trānsvēr′sā, *askéw* or *léer-
ingly.* And a few ádverbs are deríved from verbs : as, scī′lĭcĕt, *námely*,
for scī′ās lī′cĕt, *it is permítted thou know.*

[102] The líne of distínction betwéen ádverbs and conjúnctions is óften so
indetérminate, that it is dífficult in some ínstances to distínguish betwéen

OF A PREPOSITION.

A Preposi'tion is a part of speech most cómmonly set befóre a Noun ;[103] as, ăn'tĕ mĕrī'dĭĕm, *befóre noon-dáy ;* ăd dēx'trăm, *to* or *on the right hand :*—or else is joíned in composítion to Nouns, Verbs, Párticiples, and Ad'verbs; as, pĕrār'dŭŭs, *véry árduous,* prǣ'stŏ, *I stand befóre,* or *I excél,* ĭndōc'tŭs, *unleárned,* dē'sŭpĕr, *from abóve.*

These Preposítions have an accúsative case áfter them.

Ăd,	*to, at,* or *for,*	Jūx'tă,	*besíde* or *nigh to,*
Ādvēr'sŭm	} *against,*	Ŏb,[105]	*for* or *becaúse of,*
Ādvēr'sŭs,	}	Pĕ'nĕs,	*in the pówer of,*
Ăn'tĕ,	*befóre,*	Pĕr,	*by* or *through,*
Ā'pŭd,	*at, with,* or *near,*	Pō'nĕ,	*behínd,*
Cĭr'că,	}	Pōst,	*áfter* or *since,*
Cĭr'cŭm,	} *abóut,*	Prǣ'tĕr,	*besíde,* or *excépt,*
Cĭr'cĭtĕr,	}	Prŏ'pĕ,	*nigh,* or *near to,*
Cĭs,	} *on this side,*	Prŏp'tĕr,	*for* or *becaúse of,*
Cī'trā,[104]	}	Sĕcūn'dŭm,	*accórding to,*
Cōn'trā,	*against,*	Sĕ'cŭs,	*by* or *alóng,*
Ēr'gā,	*tówards,*	Sŭ'prā,	*abóve,*
Ēx'trā,	*withoút,*	Trāns,	*acróss,*
Īn'frā,	*beneáth,*	Vēr'sŭs,	*tówards,*
Īn'tĕr,	*betweén* or *amóng,*	Ūl'trā,	*beyónd,*
Īn'trā,	*withín.*	Ūs'quĕ,	*as far as.*

Observe. Vēr'sŭs is set áfter its case ; as, Lōndī'nŭm vēr'sŭs, *tówards Lóndon.*

Likewise *pĕ'nĕs* and *ūs'quĕ* may be so pláced.

---

those two Parts of Speech, and to assígn to each its right place. It éven not unfréquently háppens, indeéd, that the same words are at one time *Ad'verbs,* and at anóther, *Conjúnctions ;* and that words which mány grammárians call *Conjúnctions,* óthers call *Ad'verbs.*

[103] I have táken the líberty of enlárging this pórtion of the E'ton text, becaúse (to me) it appeáred to be by much too brief, and at the same time véry váguely wórded.

[104] *Cī'trā* in the láter prose wríters has sómetimes the significátion of *withoút,* e. g. "Phī'dĭās ĭn ē'bŏrĕ lŏn'gē cī'trā ǣ'mŭlŭm trā'dĭtŭr." *Phídias is said to have been quite withoút rival in cárving ivóry.*

[105] In composítion *ŏb* sígnifies *against ;* thus, pŏ'nŏ, *I set,* ŏppō'nŏ, *I set against.*

The Prepositions following have an áblative case :—

Ā, ăb, ābs,[106]	*from* or *by,*	Pă'lăm,	*ópenly,*
Ābs'què,	*withóut,*	Præ,	*befóre* or *in front,*
Cō'răm,	*in présence of,*		*on accóunt of,*
Cŭm,[107]	*with,*	Prō,[109]	*for,* or *instéad of,*
Dē,	*of* or *concérning,*	Sĭ'nĕ,	*withóut,*
Ē, ēx,[108]	*from* or *out of,*	Tĕ'nŭs,	*up to* or *as far as.*

Obserṽe. Tĕ'nŭs is set áfter its case ; as, pŏr'tā tĕ'nŭs, *as far as the gate :*—and, in the plúral númber, the noun is cómmonly put in the génitive case : as, aū'rĭŭm tĕ'nŭs, *up to the ears.*

The Prepositions fóllowing serve to both cáses, that is, to the accúsative and álso to the áblative.

Clăm, *unknówn to ;* as, clăm pă'trĕm *vèl* pă'trĕ, *unknówn to my fáther,* or *withóut my fáther's knówledge.*

Ĭn,[110] for *into,* signifying *mótion tówards,* has an accúsative case ; as ĕ'ŏ ĭn ŭr'bĕm, *I go ínto the cíty.*

Ĭn, for *in* ónly, or signifying either *mótion* or *rest, in a place,* serves to the áblative case ; as, ĭn tē spēs ēst, *in thee is my hope.*

Sŭb,[111] *únder,* as, sŭb nōc'tĕm, *a líttle befóre night :* sŭb jū'dĭcĕ līs ēst, *the strífe or mátter is befóre the judge.*

---

[106] *A* is úsed only befóre cónsonants ; *ăb* befóre vówels ; *ābs* befóre *c, q,* and *t.*

[107] In compositíon *cŭm* is for the most part chánged into *cōn-.* as. cōnsĭ'mĭlis, *véry like ;* cōnjūn'gŏ, *I conjóin :* but if the word, with whic this prepositíon is compóunded, begín with the létter *l,* then *cōn-* becómes *cōl-,* as cōllū'dŏ, *I sport with :* or if the word begín with *b, p,* or *m,* then *cōn-* is made *cŏm-,* as cōm'bĭbŏ, *I drink togéther with,* complō'rŏ, *I bewáil togéther with :*—or, if the word begín with a vówel, the final cónsonant of the prepositíon is, in géneral, drópped ; as, cŏăccĕr'vŏ, *I amáss togéther with ;* cŏ'ĕmŏ, *I buy togéther with :* but the verb ĕ'dŏ, *I eat,* retains the *m,* as, cŏm'ĕdŏ, *I eat up.*

[108] *E* is préfixed only to cónsonants. *ēx* both to cónsonants and vówels.

[109] *Prō* in compositíon úsually implíes *"fórward or forth :"* as prōmŏ'vĕŏ, *I move fórward ;* prōdū'cŏ, *I lead forth.* And, here, it should be obsérved, that although, as a mónosyllable, the prepositíon *prō* be long, yet in compositíon it is fréquently short. In some words, indéed, it seems to be habítually short ; in óthers, habítually long ; and in óthers, cómmon.

[110] In compositíon with ádjectives the prepositíon *in* génerally sígnifies *not ;* as ĭnfĭr'mŭs, *not strong,* that is, *infírm* or *féeble ;* ĭn'ŭtĭlis, *not úseful,* that is, *úseless :*—but in compositíon with verbs it úsually retains its prímitive meáning ; as, ĭn'vŏlŏ, *I fly in.*

[111] The prepositíon *sŭb* in cómpound words génerally weákens or di-

Sŭb′tĕr, *beneáth*, as, sŭb′tĕr tĕr′răm, *under the earth :* sŭb′tĕr
ă′quā, *under the wáter.*

Sŭ′pĕr, *óver*, as, sŭ′pĕr lă′pĭdĕm, *upón a stone :* sŭ′pĕr vĭ′rĭdī
frōn′dĕ, *upón the green leaf.*[112]

OF AN INTERJECTION.

An Intĕrjéction is a part of speech[113] which betókens a
súdden emótion of mind ; be it grief, joy, or óther pássion.

THE THREE CONCORDS EXPLAINED.

There are three Cóncords, or Agreements, in Látin :

1. Betweén the nóminative case and the verb.

minishes the significátion of ány símple word with which it is joíned :
thus, sŭbrī′dĕŏ, *I laugh a líttle*, or *I smile :*—but in some ínstances it
retaíns its oríginal meáning : as sŭbscrĭbŏ, *I write únder* or *I subscríbe.*

[112] Before dismíssing the súbject of prepositions it may be right to
nótice, that there are four sýllables óften found in compositíon with
words, but which néver occúr by themsélves :—these are cálled *Insépa-
rable Prepositions*, and are, ăm-, *round abóut*, dī- *vĕl* dĭs-, *asúnder*, rĕ-,
agaín, and sē-, *aside* or *apárt :* to which some add vē-, *pósitively nót*,
and cōn, *togéther*, for cŭm, *with.*

[113] Interjéctions expréss compéndiously a whole séntence in one word,
—represénting, instantly, to the mind of a heárer, some súdden emótion
of soul as respécts the útterer. A shriek, for exámple, is a nátural sound
cómmon to all lánguages,—and expréssive of súdden dread :—a groan is,
líkewise, a nátural sound expréssive of deep súffering : a sigh betókens
heáviness of heart, whéther occasíoned by grief, or by desíre, or by
anxíety. Yet, as no one of these three can be regárded as an artículate
sound, they do not fall (próperly) únder the head of *Interjéctions*, gram-
mátically so cálled : though séveral of the acknówledged interjéctions
have véry little artículate in them ; thus, 'st, *hush*, hā, hā, hē, *sounds of
laúghing.*

Interjéctions are úsually divíded ínto those of joy, as, ē′văx, ĭ′ō,
hey ! brave !—of grief, as, ăh, heī, heū, ĕ′heū, *ha ! woe ! alás !* of
wonder, as, vāh, pă′pē, *strange !* of praise, as, eŭ, eŭ′gĕ, *well done !*—
of surprise, as, ă′tăt, a, *ahá ?*—of calling, as, hŏ, ĕ′hŏ, *ho, ho ! there !*
—of attention, as, hĕm, *hah !*—of exclaíming, as, ōh ! prōh ! *O ! ah !*
of imprecátion, as vē, *woe on it !*—of derísion, as huī, *awáy ! silly*
with séveral óthers.

And not unfréquently are Nouns úsed for Interjéctions :—thus, mă′lŭm,
with a míschief ! mĭ′sĕrŭm, *O wrétched !* pāx, *silence ! hush !* înfăn′-
dŭm, *O fy for shame !* nĕ′fās, *O the víllany !* In some ínstances too the
same interjéction denótes one pássion at one time, and anóther pássion
at anóther :—as, vāh, *O joy, O sórrow*, or *O wónder.*—An interjéction
díffers from an ádverb, in that it can be put indepéndent of ány óther
word whatéver, and be a pérfect séntence (if we may so speak) in itsélf.

2. Beween the súbstantive and the ádjective.
3. Between the antecédent and the rélative.

THE FIRST CONCORD

A VERB agreés with its nóminative case in númber, and in pérson.

In órder to find out the nóminative case, ask the quéstion *who?* or *what?* with the verb; and the word that ánswers to the quéstion is the nóminative case to the verb; as, *who reads? who regárds not?*

> *The* máster *reads, but ye* regárd *not.*
> Præcēp'tŏr lĕ'gĭt, vōs vē'rŏ nēglĭ'gĭtĭs.

Sómetimes an infínitive mood, or a séntence, is the nóminative case to a verb; and sómetimes, the súbstantive to an ádjective; and in this evént the ádjective or the rélative must be in the neúter génder: as,

> Dīlū'cŭlō sūr'gĕrĕ sălūbēr'rĭmŭm ēst.
> *To rise betímes in the mórning is most whólesome.*
> Ĭn tēm'pŏrĕ vē'nī, quŏd ōm'nĭŭm ēst prī'mŭm.
> *I came in seáson, which is the chief thing of all.*

Two or more nóminative cáses síngular requíre a verb plúral, which must agreé with the nóminative case of the most wórthy pérson.

Now, the first pérson is more wórthy than the sécond, and the sécond more wórthy than the third: as,

> Ĕ'gŏ ĕt tū sŭ'mŭs ĭn tū'tō.
> *I and thou are in sáfety.*
> Tū ĕt pă'tĕr pĕrīclĭtā'mĭnī.
> *Thou and thy fáther are in jéopardy.*

The súbstantive which comes next áfter the verb, and ánswers únto the quéstion *whom?* or *what?* made by the verb, shall cómmonly be the accúsative case,—excépt the verb by some partícular Rule, requíre anóther case áfter it: as,

> Sī cŭ'pĭs plăcē'rĕ măgĭs'trō, ū'tĕrĕ dīlĭgēn'tĭā.
> *If you desíre to please the máster, use díligence.*

Obsérve. In this Exámple, *măgĭs'trō* is the dátive, and *dīlĭgēn'tĭā* the áblative case, accórding to the Rules of Látin Sýntax or The Constrúction of Látin Grámmar.

THE SECOND CONCORD.

When you have an ádjective, ask this quéstion, *who* or *what ?* with the, ádjective; and the word which •ánswers to the quéstion shall be the súbstantive to the ádjective.

The ádjective, whéther it be a noun, prónoun, or párticiple, agreés with its súbstantive in génder, númber, and case: as,

Ămī'cŭs cēr'tŭs īn rē īncēr'tā cēr'nĭtūr.
A sure friend is discérned in a doúbtful affaír.

Observátion 1st. The másculine génder is more wórthy than the féminine, and the féminine (in things ánimate,) more wórthy than the neúter. But, agaín, in things without life, the neúter génder is the most wórthy: as,

Laūs ĕt īmpĕ'rĭūm quæ pĕtĭīs'tī.
The praise and dominion which thou soúghtest.

And in such evént, though the súbstantives or antecédents be of the másculine or féminine génder, and none of them of the neúter, yet may the ádjective, or rélative, be put in the neúter génder: as,

Ăr'cŭs ĕt că'lāmī sūnt bŏ'nă.
The bow and árrows are good.

Ăr'cŭs ĕt că'lāmī quæ frēgīs'tī.
The bow and árrows which thou brókest.

Observátion 2nd. Two (or more) súbstantives síngular will have an ádjective plúral; which ádjective shall agreé with the súbstantive of the most wórthy génder: as,

Rēx ĕt rēgī'nă sūnt bĕă'tī.
The king and queen are háppy.

Observátion 3rd. When, in En'glish, the word "*thing*" is put with an ádjective, you may in Látin leave out the súbstantive "*nĕgō'tĭŭm,*" and put the ádjective in the neúter génder: as, mūl'tă mē īmpĕdĭē'rūnt, *mány things have híndered me.*

THE THIRD CONCORD.

When you have a rélative, ask this quéstion, *who ?* or *what ?* with the verb; and the word that ánswers únto the quéstion shall be the antecédent to the rélative.

The rélative agreés with its antecédent in génder, númber and pérson : as,

> Vĭr sặ'pĭt quī paū'că lŏ'quĭtŭr.
> *The* man *is wise* who *speaks few words.*

Observátion 1*st.* If the rélative cleárly refér to two antecédents, or to more, then it must be of the plúral númber :—as, tū mūl'tŭm dōr'mīs, ĕt sæ'pĕ pō'tās, quæ ām'bŏ sūnt cōr'pŏrī ĭnĭmī'că, *thou sleépest much, and drínkest óften,*—both which *things are injúrious to the bódy.*

Observátion 2*nd.* When the Én'glish word " that" can be túrned ínto " *who*" or " *which*," it is a rélative ; ótherwise it is a conjúnction, expréssed in Látin by *quŏd,* or *ŭt :* and, in máking Latin, the conjúnction may be put awáy, by túrning the nóminative case to the verb ínto the accúsative, and the verb ínto the infínitive mood : as, gaū'dĕŏ quŏd tū bĕ'nĕ vặ'lēs *or* gaū'dĕŏ tē bĕ'nĕ vălē'rĕ, *I am glad* that *you are well.*

Páradigm (or Géneral Táble) of Régular Verbs, shówing the Terminátion of the first and sécond Pérsons síngular of the séveral Ténses of the dífferent Moods : —álso the Infínitives, Párticiples, and Súpines.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	ACTIVE.	1. Présent Tense.		PASSIVE.
C. 1.	-ŏ[114],	-ās,	-ŏr,	-ā'rĭs,
2.	-ĕŏ,	-ēs,	-ĕŏr,	-ē'rĭs,
3.	-ŏ,	-ĭs,	-ŏr,	-ĕrĭs,
4.	-ĭŏ,	-īs,	-ĭŏr,	-ī'rĭs.

2. Pretérimperfect Tense.

C. 1.	-ā'bām,	-ā'bās,	-ā'bār,	-ābā'rĭs,
2. & 3	-ē'bām,	-ē'bās,	-ē'bār,	-ēbā'rĭs,
4.	-ĭē'bām,	-ĭē'bās,	-ĭē'bār,	-ĭēbā'rĭs.

---

[114] There are betweén thírty and fórty verbs of the first conjugátion, which términate in -ĭŏ,—and from fifteén to twénty símple verbs (besídes their númerous cómpounds) of the third conjugátion, which términate símilarly : these all retaín the létter *i* in the impérfect and fúture ténses of the indícative mood, and in the présent of the poténtial, both áctive and pássive ; álso in the présent párticiple, the gérunds, and fúture párticiple in *-dŭs.*

	ACTIVE.	3. Preterpérfect Tense.	PASSIVE.

$C.$ 1,2,3,4.	-ī,	-ĭs'tī,	-ŭs sŭm, -ŭs ĕs.

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.

$C.$ 1,2,3,4.	-ĕrăm,	-ĕrās,	-ŭs ĕ'răm, -ús ĕ'rās.

5. Fúture Tense.

$C.$ 1.	-ā'bŏ,	-ā'bĭs,	-ā'bŏr,	-ā'bĕrĭs,
2.	-ēbŏ,	-ē'bĭs,	-ē'bŏr,	-ē'bĕrĭs,
3.	-ăm,	-ēs,	-ăr,	-ē'rĭs,
4.	-ĭăm,	-ĭēs,	-ĭăr.	-ĭē'rĭs.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

$C.$ 1.	——	-ā,	——	-ā'rĕ,
2	——	-ē,	——	-ē'rĕ,
3.	——	-ĕ,	——	-ĕrĕ,
4	——	-ī.	——	-ī'rĕ.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.

$C.$ 1.	-ēm,	-ēs,	-ĕr,	-ēr'īs,
2.	-ĕăm,	-ĕās,	-ĕăr,	-ēā'rĭs,
3.	-ăm,	-ās,	-ăr,	-ā'rĭs,
4	-ĭăm,	-ĭās,	-ĭăr,	-ĭā'rĭs.

2. Preterímperfect Tense.

$C.$ 1.	-ā'rēm,	-ā'rēs,	-ā'rĕr,	-ārē'rĭs,
2.	-ē'rēm,	-ē'rēs,	-ē'rĕr,	-ērē'rĭs,
3.	-ĕrēm,	-ĕrēs,	-ĕrĕr,	-ĕrē'rĭs,
4.	-ī'rēm,	-ī'rēs,	-ī'rĕr,	-īrē'rĭs.

3. Preterpérfect Tense.

$C.$ 1,2,3,4.	-ĕrĭm,	-ĕrĭs,	-ŭs sĭm,	-ŭs sĭs.

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.

$C.$ 1,2,3,4.	-īs'sēm,	-īs'ses.	-ŭs ēs'sēm, -ŭs ēs'sēs.

5. Fúture Tense.

$C.$ 1,2,3,4.	ŏ,	-ĕrĭs,	-ŭs ĕ'rŏ,	-ŭs ĕ'rĭs.

ACTIVE.	INFINITIVE MOOD.	PASSIVE.

C. 1. -ā′rĕ, -īs′sĕ, -ū′rŭm ēs′sĕ, | -ā′rī, -ŭm ēs′sĕ, -ŭm ī′rī,
2. -ē′rĕ, -ĭs′sĕ, -ū′rŭm ēs′sĕ, | -ē′rī, -ŭm. ēs′sĕ, -ŭm ī′rī,
3. -ĕrĕ, -īs′sĕ, -ū′rŭm ēs′sĕ, | -ī,   -ŭm ēs′sĕ, -ŭm ī′rī,
4. -ī′rĕ, īs′sĕ, -ū′rŭm ēs′sĕ, | -ī′rī, -ŭm ēs′sĕ, -ŭm ī′rī.

PARTICIPLES.

	Présent.	*Future.*		*Past.*	*Future.*
C. 1.	-āns,	-rŭs,		-ŭs,	-dŭs,
2.	-ēns,	-rŭs,		-ŭs,	-dŭs;
3.	-ēns,	-rŭs,		-ŭs,	-dŭs,
4	-ĭēns,	-rŭs,		-ŭs,	-dŭs,

SUPINES.

C. 1,2,3,4.	-ŭm,		-ū.

END OF THE ACCIDENCE.

RULES

FOR THE

GENDERS OF NOUNS.

☞ These Rules being in Hexámeter verse, and Látin verse requíring such final sýllables as have eíther a *vówel*, or a *díphthong*, or *m* for terminátional létter, to be elíded, or at least to be véry spáringly pronoúnced when the fóllowing word begíns with a vówel or a díphthong, all the sýllables' which, in scánning, are cut off by the fígures *Synalǽpha* and *Ecthlípsis*, are here prínted in a smáller type than the rest of the text. Now respéting final *m* befóre an inítial vowel, or an inítial díphthong, it is to be remárked, that the *m* itself is not drópped, but that the vowel before it is sílent, or neárly sílent ; while the final *m* is so pronoúnced as to seem (to a heárer) to begín the word which fóllows it. Thus, in the thírd line belów, "*flŭvĭṓrŭm ; ŭt*, Tĭ'brĭs," ought to be pronoúnced as if wrítten "*flŭ'vĭŏr ; mŭt*, Tĭ'brĭs."

*** In these verses, as was méntioned indeéd at the end of the Préface, all short final sýllables énding in a cónsonant are márked long (*by position*) befóre an inítial cónsonant ; but sýllables léngthened by *cæsúra* are márked short, with an ásterisk áfter them. And note, a dágger set áfter ány partícular short sýllable denótes that though the sýllable is *short in itsélf*, yet it is *long by position* in the verse.

Obsérve. All Rules in verse are best committed to mémory by scánning them on the fíngers in leárning them, and áfterwards (for the fírst week at least) by repéating them in this mánner when leárned : for thus the toil of leárning them is greátly diminíshed, and the reténtion of them will be more lásting.

PROPER NAMES.

1. Másculine.

Prŏp'rĭă quæ mă'rĭbŭs trĭbŭŭn'tŭr mās'cŭlă dī'cās :
ūt sŭnt Dīvṓ'rŭm ; Mārs, Bāc'chŭs, Ăpŏl'lŏ : *vĭrṓ'rŭm ;*
ūt, Că'tŏ, Vĭrgĭ'lĭŭs : *flŭvĭṓ'rŭm ; ūt*, Tĭb'rĭs, Ŏrŏn'tēs : [1]
mēn'sĭŭm ; ūt, Ŏctṓ'bĕr : *vēntṓrŭm ; ūt*, Lĭbs, Nŏ'tŭs, Aŭs'tĕr.

---

[1] To the names of rívers might be ádded those of moúntains, as béing, for the most part, másculine : such are, Hĕ'lĭcŏn, Āt'lās, Pĕ'lĭŏn, Jŭ'ră, Cĭthǽ'rŏn. But to this Rule there are excéptions in regárd both of the one and the óther : for, the names of séveral rívers in -ă, not increásing in the génitive case, are féminine, conformably to the First Spécial Rule for the Génders of Nouns. Thus, Āl'bŭlă, *the áncient name of the Tíber* Mă'trŏnă, *the Marne,* Sĕ'quănă, *the Seine,* with some óthers, are fémi-nine : and of moúntains, álso, mány take their génder from the termi-nátion : thus Ǽ'tnă, Ǽ'tnæ, *mount Ǽtna,* Ŏs'să, Ŏs'sæ, Os'sa, Œ'tă, Œ'tæ, Œ'ta, Āl'pēs, Āl'pĭŭm, *the Alps,* are féminine ; and Sōrāc'tĕ Sōrāc'tĭs, *mount Sorácte,* neúter.

2. Féminine.

Prŏp'rĭă fǣmĭ'nĕum rĕfĕrēn'tĭă nŏ'mĭnă sēǣ'ŭm,
fǣmĭ'nĕŏ gĕ'nĕrī trĭbŭun'tŭr : sī'vĕ Dĕǣ'rŭm
sūnt ; ŭt Jū'nŏ, Vĕ'nŭs : mŭlĭē'brĭₐ; ŭt, Ăn'nă, Phĭlŏ'tĭs ;
ŭr'bĭum ; ŭt, E'lĭs, Ŏpŭs : rĕgĭŏ'num ; ŭt, Grǣ'cĭă, Pĕr'sĭs ;
in'sŭlₐ ĭ'tĕm nŏ'mĕn ; ceū Crē'tă, Brĭtan'nĭă, Cy̆p'rŭs.[3]
Ĕxcĭpĭĕn'dă tă'mĕn quǣ'dăm sūnt ūr'bĭum ; ŭt, ĭs'tă[4]
mas'cŭlă : Sūl'mo, Ăgrăgas : *quǣ'dăm neūtrā'lĭa ; ŭt, Ārgŏs,*
Tĭ'būr, Prǣnēs'te ;[5] *ēt gĕ'nŭs* Ăn'xŭr *quŏd dăt ŭtrŭm'quĕ.*

NOUNS APPELLATIVE.

1. Féminine Génder.

Appēllātĭ'va ār'bŏrum ĕ'rŭnt mŭlĭē'brĭa ; ŭt, ăl'nŭs,
cŭprĕs'sŭs, cēd'rŭs. Mas spī'nŭs, mas ŏlĕas'tĕr :[6]
ēt sūnt neū'tră, sī'lĕr, sūbĕr, thŭs, rŏ'bŭr, ăcĕr'quĕ.

2. E'picene Nouns.

Sūnt ĕ'tĭăm Vŏlŭ'crŭm ; ceū pās'sĕr, hĭrūn'dŏ ; Fĕrā'rŭm ;
ŭt, tĭg'rĭs, vūl'pēs : ēt Pĭs'cĭum ; ŭt, ōs'trĕă, cĕ'tŭs,
dīc'ta ĕpĭcǣ'nă :[7] *quĭ'bŭs vōx ĭp'să gĕ'nŭs fĕ'rĕt ăp'tŭm.*

---

[2] The names of some few countries, as Pŏn'tŭs, *a région bórdering upón the Eúxine sea,* are, by their termination, másculine ; in confórmity to the *Spécial* ráther than to the *Géneral Rule.*

[3] Although the names of most íslands be féminine, yet Ăl'bĭŏn, *the ísland of Great Brítain,* which (like Pĕ'lĭŏn, méntioned in the first note abóve) ought, by its termination, to benéuter, is more próperly másculine.

[4] The names of most towns énding in -o, and all plúral names of cíties in -i, are másculine : as, Hĭp'pŏ, *a town of Af'rica,* Phĭlĭp'pī, *a cíty of Macedónia,* Gă'bĭī, *a cíty of the Vólsci,* Părĭ'sĭī, *Páris, the metrópolis of France.*

[5] Séveral óther excéptions might be ádded, partícularly of names of the sécond declénsion énding in -ŏn, as Ăby̆'dŏn, *a cíty on the Héllespont,* but which más more fréquently written Ăby̆'dŏs, of the féminine génder. Some grammárians, howéver, class all próper names in -ŏn, únder the head of nouns in -ăm.

[6] To these másculines add pălĭū'rŭs, *búckthorn,* rhăm'nŭs, *rheínberry bush,* and vĕ'prĕs, *a bríer ;* which, though shrubs ráther than trees, come as próperly únder this Rule, as my̆r'tŭs, *a my̆rtle,* and mány óthers. Cŭprĕs'sŭs, *a cýpress,* lă'rĭx, *a larch,* lŏ'tŭs, *the lote-tree,* and rŭ'bŭs, *a brámble,* with a few more, are occásionally másculine, and may thérefore be said to be of dóubtful génder.

[7] In some ánimals the dífference of sex is not immédiately óbvious ; neíther, indeéd, for the géneral púrposes of lánguage, is it nécessary to ascertáin it. In Látin, the names of ánimals of this description are cálled *Nouns E'picene,* of which the génder (like that of the names of

3. Neúter Génder.

Āt́tămĕn ēx cūnć't́is sŭp'ră, rĕliquis'quĕ, nŏtān'dŭm,
ōm'nĕ quŏd ēx'ĭt ĭn -ŭm,† seū Grǣ'cŭm, sī'vĕ Lăt́ī'nŭm,
ĕs sĕ gĕ'nŭs neŭ'trŭm :³ sīc ĭnvărĭā'bĭlĕ nō'mĕn.

FIRST SPECIAL RULE.

NOUNS NOT INCREASING ARE FEMININE.

Nō'mĕn nōn crēs'cĕns gĕnĭt́ī'vō ; ceū că'rŏ cār'nĭs,
căp'ră că'prǣ, nū'bēs nū'bĭs ; gĕ'nŭs ēst mŭlĭĕ'brĕ.

1. Nouns Másculine excépted.

Mās'cŭlă nō'mĭna ĭn -ă* dĭcūn'tŭr mŭl't́ă vĭrō'rŭm :
ūt, scrī'ba, ās'sēclă, scū'ra, ĕt rā'bŭlă, lix'ă, lănīs't́ă.
Mās'cŭlă, Grǣcō'rŭm quŏt dēclīnā'tĭŏ prī'mă
fūn'dĭt ĭn -ās, ĕt ĭn -ēs ;⁹ ĕt ăb ĭl'lĭs quŏt pĕr ă frūnt :
ūt să'trăpās să'trăpa, ăthlē'tēs ăthlē't́ă.¹⁰   Lĕgūn'tŭr
mās'cŭla ĭ'tēm, vēr'rēs, nătā'lĭs, ăquā'lĭs : ăb ās'sĕ
nā't́a; ūt, cēntūs'sĭs : cōnjūn'gĕ lĭĕ'nĭs, ĕt ōr'bĭs,
căl'lĭs, caū'lĭs, fōl'lĭs, cōl'lĭs, mēn'sĭs, ĕt ēn'sĭs,
fūs'cĭs, fū'nĭs, cēn'chrĭs, pā'nĭs, crī'nĭs, ĕt ĭg'nĭs ;
cās'sĭs, fās'cĭs, tōr'rĭs, sēn'tĭs, pĭs'cĭs, ĕt ūn'guĭs ;
ĕt vēr'mīs, vēc't́ĭs, pōs'tĭs : sŏcĭĕ'tŭr ĕt āx'ĭs.¹¹

---

inánimate things) is régulated by the termination. Thus, by the Spécial Rule for the énding, pās'sĕr, *a spárrow*, cŏr'vŭs, *a ráven*, cē'tŭs, *a whale*, are másculine ; whilst vŭl'pēs, *a fox*, fē'lĭs, *a cat*, ă'quĭlă, *an eágle*, are féminine ; althoúgh each inclúdes both the male and fémale. The names howéver of séveral ánimals, in which the dífference of sex is not álways ínstantly appárent, are to be excépted : such, for exámple, as tāl'pă, *a mole*, dă'mă, *a deer*, pĕr'dĭx, *a pártridge*, lī'māx, *a snail*, of doúbtful génder : vēr'mĭs, *a worm*, lē'ŏ, *a líon*, mūs, *a mouse*, dēl'phĭn, *a dólphin*, másculine : că'nĭs, *a dog or bitch*, bōs, *a cow* or *ox*, sūs, *a hog*, cómmon of two génders, that is, both másculine and féminine.

⁸ Though this Rule holds good in most ínstances, yet the names of wómen, as Glȳcē'rĭŭm. *Glýcery*, must be excépted :—to these, álso, may be ádded, the names of ships, and of gems.

⁹ As tĭā'rās, *a túrban or sash for the head ;* ăcī'năcēs, *a scýmitar or faúlchion.* In Greek, both these nouns are of the first declénsion ; but in Látin, the fórmer is of the first declénsion, and the látter of the third.

¹⁰ To these excéptions in -ă, add nĕ'pă, *a scórpion ;* álso, the próper name Ā'drĭă or Hā'drĭă, *the Adriátic sea or gulf :* as béing of the másculine génder.

¹¹ In like mánner must be excépted cŭ'cŭmĭs, *a cúcumber*, mŏlă'rĭs, *a mill-stone*, ŏr'chĭs, *a sort of herb, also a fi:h ;* with some óthers.

(113)

Mās'cŭla in -ĕr;† *ceū*, vēn'tĕr; *in* -ŏs,† *vĕl* -ŭs; *ūt*, lŏgŏs,
ān'nŭs.

Fœmĭ'nĕi āt gĕ'nĕrĭs sūnt, mā'tĕr, hŭ'mūs, dŏ'mūs, āl'vŭs,
ēt cŏ'lŭs, ēt quār'tæ prō frūc'tū fī'cŭs, ăcŭs'quĕ,
pōr'tĭcŭs, āt'quĕ trĭ'būs, sŏc'rŭs, nŭ'rŭs, ēt mă'nŭs, ĭ'dūs:
hūc ă'nŭs āddēn'da ēst, *hūc* mȳs'tĭcă vān'nŭs *Ĭāc'chi.*
Hīs jūn'gās -ŏs *in* -ūst† *vērtēn'tĭă Grǣ'că* : pāpȳ'rŭs,
āntĭ'dŏtŭs, cōs'tŭs, dīphthōn'gŭs, bȳs'sŭs, ăbȳs'sŭs,
crȳstāl'lŭs, sȳ'nŏdŭs, săpphī'rŭs, ĕrē'mŭs, ĕt Ārc'tŭs:
cūm mūl'tĭs ă'lĭĭs, quæ nūnc pērscrĭ'bĕrĕ lōn'gum ēst.[12]

2. Nouns Neúter excépted.

Neūtrum nŏ'mĕn in -ĕ,* *sī gĭg'nĭt* -ĭs ; *ūt* mă'rĕ, rē'tĕ :
ēt quŏt in -ŏn,† *pĕr* -ĭ[13] *flĕă'ă lĕ'gās* ; *ūt* bār'bĭtŏn, ād'dĕ.
Ēst neūtrum hĭppŏ'mănĕs† *gĕ'nŭs, ēt neū'trum* căcŏĕ'thĕs :[14]
ēt vī'rŭs, pĕ'lăgŭs :[15] *neūtrum* mŏ'dŏ, *mās* mŏdŏ, vūl'gŭs.

3. Nouns of the Doúbtful Génder excépted.

Incēr'tĭ gĕ'nĕrĭs sūnt tāl'pa, ēt dā'mă, cănā'lĭs,
ēt cȳ'tĭsŭs, bă'lănŭs, clū'nĭs, fī'nĭs, pĕnŭs, ăm'nĭs,
pām'pĭnŭs, ēt cōr'bĭs, līn'tĕr, tōr'quĭs, spĕ'cŭs, ān'guĭs,
prō mōr'bō fī'cŭs, fī'cī dāns, āt'quĕ phăsē'lŭs,
lĕ'cȳthŭs, āc ă'tŏmŭs, grōs'sŭs, phă'rŭs, ēt părădī'sŭs.[16]

---

† The sýllables -ĕr and -ŏs in this line béing in themselves short, al-
thoúgh lóng by posítion in the verse, I have set a dágger to mark this
círcumstance, that the leárner may not confoúnd them with -ēr and -ōs
of the sécond Spécial Rule, from which they are quite dífferent in soúnd.
Mány, howéver, make no distínction in the pronunciátion betweén -ĕr
and ēr, nor betweén -ŏs and -ōs!

[12] Such as dĭălĕc'tŭs, *a díalect* or *mánner of speech,* mĕ'thŏdŭs, *a
méthod* or *mode,* pĕrĭ'ŏdŭs, *a périod* or *pérfect séntence.*

[13] Although the scánning of the verse befóre us requíres this *i* to be
short, yet fínal *i,* of the génitive síngular of the sécond declénsion, is
álways long. Such exámples as ē for ĕ in the precéding line, ā for ă in
the fírst verse of the First Excéption to the First Spécial Rule, and ĭ for
ī here, with mány óthers that might be námed, detráct greátly from the
mérits of these Rules.

[14] Al'so, though occúrring less fréquently, nĕpĕn'thĕs, *búgloss;* and
pă'năcĕs, *all-heal,* a sort of herb, are neúter : and séveral óthers.

[15] The two nouns, sĕx'ŭs, *sex,* and spĕ'cŭs, *a den* or *lúrking-place,* are
óften of the neúter génder : but the fórmer, espécially when of the fourth
declénsion, is perháps more próperly másculine ; and the látter, (as may
be seen in the next excéption) is of doúbtful génder, béing sómetimes
másculine, and sómetimes féminine, as well as néuter.

[16] To these may be ádded cār'băsŭs, *cámbric* or *lawn,* álso *sail-cloth,*
which, in the síngular númber, is either féminine or másculine ; and, in

4. Nouns of the Cómmon of two Génders excépted.

Cōmpŏ'sĭtum ā vēr'bō dāns -ă, cōmmū'nĕ dŭŏ'rum ēst:*
Grājŭ'gĕn*a ā gĭg'n*o, āgrĭ'cŏl*a ā cŏ'lo, id* ād'vĕnă *mŏn'strănt*
*ā vĕ'nĭ*o: *ād'dĕ* sĕ'nēx, aūrī'g*a, ēt* vēr'nă, sŏdā'lĭs,
vā'tēs, ēxtŏr'rĭs, pătrŭĕ'lĭs, pēr-*quĕ*-dŭēl'lĭs,
āffĭ'nĭs, jŭ'vĕnĭs, tēs'tĭs, cī'vĭs, că'nĭs, hŏs'tĭs.

SECOND SPECIAL RULE.

NOUNS INCREASING WITH THE ACUTE ACCENT ON THE PENULT
OF THE GENITIVE CASE ARE FEMININE.

Nŏ'mēn, crēscēn'tĭs pēnūl'tĭmă sī gĕnĭtī'vī
sȳl'lăba ăcū'tă sŏ'năt, vĕ'lŭt hæc, pĭ'ētās pĭĕtā'tĭs,
vīr'tūs vīrtū'tĭs, *mŏn'strănt, gĕ'nŭs ēst mŭlĭĕ'brĕ* [17]

1. Nouns Másculine excépted.

Mās'cŭlă dīcūn'tūr mŏnŏsȳl'lăbă nŏ'mĭnă quæ'dăm :
sāl, sōl, rēn, *ēt* splēn, Cār, Sēr, vīr, vās vă'dĭs, ās, mās,
bēs, Crēs, præs, *ēt* pēs, glīs glī'rĭs *hă'bēns gĕnĭtī'v*ō ;
mōs, flōs, rōs, *ēt* Trōs, mūs, dēns, mōns, pōns, *sĭ'mŭl ēt* fōns ;
sēps *prō sērpēn'te, ēt* grȳps, Thrāx, rēx, grēx grĕ'gĭs, *ēt*
Phrȳx.[18]
Mās'cŭlă sūnt ĕ'tiăm pŏlȳsȳl'lăba ĭn -n : *ŭt,* Ăcārnān,
lī'chēn, *ēt* dēl'phīn: [19] *ĕt ĭn* -o *sĭgnān'tĭă cŏr'pŭs ;*
ŭt, lĕ'ŏ, cūrcŭ'lĭŏ: *sīc* sē'nĭŏ, tēr'nĭŏ, sēr'mŏ.

---

the plúral númber, néuter : pălūm'bēs, *a pígeon*, is líkewise a noun of
doúbtful génder ; in Vírgil, howéver, it is féminine, conséntingly with
the First Spécial Rule.

[17] To this Rule, of course, belóng all nouns whereóf the pénult of the
génitive case (increásing) is sharp ; whéther the sýllable be long or
short. Thus rēs, génitive, rĕ'ī, *a thing,* grūs, génitive, grŭ'ĭs, *a crane,*
increáse sharp, (although the pénult of the génitive be short,) as well as
dī'ēs, génitive, dĭĕ'ī, *a day,* or līs, génitive, lī'tĭs, *strife,* which have the
pénult of the génitive case long.

[18] To these másculines add lār, *a fire-side or hoúsehold god,* să'lăr, *a*
trout, vōl'vōx, *a worm cálled a vine frétter,* and some few óthers.

[19] The words lī'chēn, and dēl'phīn, are (próperly speáking) díssyllables,
ráther than pólysyllables ; but by " pŏlȳsȳl'lăbă," in the precéding verse
we are to understánd *words of more than one sýllable.* Hence the Rule
applíes to such díssyllables as gnō'mōn, *the stíle of a dial,* pæ'ān, *a song*
or hymn to Apóllo, as well as to the trísyllables ăt'tăgēn, *a snipe,* and
Ăcār'nān, *a man of Acarnánia.*

Mās cŭla ĭn -ēr, -ŏr, *ĕt* -ōs : *ceū*, crā'tēr, cŏn'dĭtŏr, hē'rōs :
hĭs, tŏr'rēns,²⁰ nēf'rēns, ŏ'rĭēns²¹ *cŏnjūn'gĕ*, clĭēns'*quĕ ;*
ăt'quĕ bĭ'dēns *ĭnstrūmēn'tŭm, cŭm plū'rĭbŭs ĭn* -dēns :
ăd'dĕ gĭ'gās, ĕ'lĕphās, ă'dămās, Gărămās'*quĕ,* tăpēs'*quĕ,*
ăt'quĕ lĕ'bēs, *sīc ēt* māg'nēs,²² *ūnŭm'quĕ* mĕrĭ'dĭ-
ēs *nō'mĕn* quĭn'tæ : *ēt quæ cōmpōnŭn'tŭr, ăb ās'sĕ,*
ŭt dō'drāns, sē'mĭs :²³ *Jūngān'tŭr mās'cŭlă,* Sām'nĭs,
hy̆'drōps, *ēt* thō'rāx : *jŭn'gās quŏ'quĕ mās'cŭlă,* vēr'vēx,
phœ'nĭx, *ēt* bōm'by̆x *prō vērmĭ'cŭlo : Āt'tămĕn ēx hĭs*
sŭnt mŭlĭĕ'brĕ gĕ'nŭs, Sy̆'rēn, *nēc'nōn* sŏ'rŏr, ūx'ŏr.

2. Nouns Neúter excépted.

Sŭnt neūtrā'lĭă ĕt hæc mŏnŏsy̆l'lăbă nō'mĭnă ; mēl, fĕl,
lāc, fār, vēr, æs, cōr, vās, vā'sĭs, ŏs ōs'sĭs, ĕt ŏ'rĭs,
rūs, thūs, jūs, crūs, pūs. *Ēt ĭn* -āl *pŏly̆sy̆l'lăbă, ĭn* -ār'*quĕ,*²⁴
ŭt, că'pĭtāl, lă'queār. *Neū'trŭm* ā'lēc, -lēx *mŭlĭĕ'brĕ.*

3. Nouns of the Doúbtful Génder excépted.

Sŭnt dŭ'bĭī gĕ'nĕrĭs, scrōbs, sēr'pēns, būbŏ, rŭ'dēns, grūs,
pēr'dĭx, ly̆nx, lī'māx, stĭrps *prō trŭn'cō,* pĕ'dĭs *ēt* cālx :
ăd'dĕ dĭ'ēs ; *nŭ'mĕrō tān'tŭm mās ēs'tŏ sĕcūn'dō.*

4. Nouns of the Cómmon of two Génders excépted.

Sŭnt cōmmū'nĕ, pă'rēns, aūctōr'*que,* īn'fāns, ădŏlēs'cēns,
dūx, īl'lēx, hæ'rēs, ēx'lēx : *ā frŏn'tĕ crĕā'tă,*
ŭt, bīf'rōns : cūs'tōs, bōs, fūr, sūs, *ăt'quĕ* săcĕr'dōs.

---

²⁰ In like mánner of the másculine génder, cŏn'flŭēns, *a méeting of two rívers,* prō'flŭēns, *a stream or cúrrent,* rĕ'flŭēns, *the réfluent tide ;* with séveral óther nouns resémbling the présent párticiple of verbs.
²¹ At the same time, too, ŏc'cĭdēns, *the wést,* is to be excépted as másculine. This word (as well as ŏ'rĭēns) is próperly a présent párti-ciple : the súbstantive sōl, *the sun,* béing understoód.
²² To these might jústly be ádded séveral óther Greek nouns in -*ēs,* máking -*ē'tĭs* in the génitive case ; as, hĕr'pēs, *a cutáneous erúption.*
²³ In sē'mĭs, (which is a contráction for sē'mĭăs ; as dō'drāns, is for dĕ'ēst quă'drāns,) the fínal sýllable is long by crásis. And here it may be seásonably nóticed that all the derívatives of ūn'cĭă, *an óunce,* as well as those of ās, *a póund,* are másculine ; as quīn'cūnx, *five óunces,* sĕp'tūnx, *séven óunces.*
²⁴ This excéption applíes to díssyllables (as că'lcăr, *a spur*), as well as to pólysyllables próperly so cálled : but să'lār, *a trout, or young sálmon,* (as we remárked in note 18 abóve) is másculine.

THIRD SPECIAL RULE.

NOUNS INCREASING GRAVE IN THE PENULT OF THE GENITIVE
ARE MASCULINE.

Nō′měn, crēscēn′tǐs pēnŭl′tǐmă sī gěnǐtǐ′vī
sǐt grā′vǐs, ŭt sān′guǐs gěnǐtǐ′vō sān′guǐnǐs, ēst mās.

1. Nouns Féminine excépted.

Fæmǐ′něǐ gě′něrǐs sǐt hy̆pērdǐssy̆l′lăbŏn in -dō,
quŏd ·dǐnǐs, ăt′que in -gō, quŏd dăt -gǐnǐs, in gěnǐtǐ′vō:
ǐd tǐ′bǐ dūlcē′dō fǎ′cǐens dūlcē′dǐnǐs, ǎd′quĕ
mŏn′strāt cōmpă′gō cōmpă′gǐnǐs : ăd′jǔcĕ vīr′gō,
grān′dǒ, fī′dēs, cōm′pēs, tě′gēs, ēt sě′gēs, ăr′bŏr, hy̆ēms′quĕ :
sīc chlǎ′my̆s, ēt sīn′dŏn, Gōr′gŏn, ī′cō″, ět Ămā′zŏn.[25]
Grǣ′cǔla in -ăs,† vĕl in -ǐs † fīnī′ta; ŭt, lām′păs,[26] *ǐăs′pǐs,*
căs′sǐs, cūs′pǐs :[27] *ī′tēm mǔ′lǐēr, pě′cǔs ēt pě′cǔdǐs dāns :*
hǐs fōr′fēx, pēl′lēx, cā′rēx, sǐ′mǔl ăt′quĕ sǔpēl′lēx,
ăppēn′dǐx, hy̆s′trǐx, cōxēn′dǐx, ăd′dĕ fǐlǐx′quĕ.[28]

2. Nouns Neúter excépted.

Ēst neūtrā′lĕ gě′nǔs sīg′nāns rēm nōn ănǐmā′tăm
nō′měn in -a, ŭt prŏblē′ma; -ěn, ŭt ō′měn; -ăr, ŭt jǔ′băr;
      ǔr † dāns,
ŭt jě′cǔr; -ǔs,† ŭt ǒ′nǔs; -pǔt, ŭt ŏc′cǐpǔt. Ăt′tămĕn ēx hǐs
măs′cǔlă sǔnt pēc′tēn, fūr′fǔr. Sǔnt neū′trǎ, cădā′vĕr,
vēr′bĕr, ī′tēr, sū′bĕr, prō fūn′gō tū′bĕr, ět ū′bĕr,
gǐn′gǐbĕr, ēt lā′sĕr, cǐ′cĕr ēt pī′pĕr, ăt′quĕ păpā′vĕr,
ēt sī′sĕr : hǐs ăd′dās neū′tra, ǣ′quŏr, măr′mŏr, ădōr′quĕ,[29]
ăt′quĕ pě′cǔs quăn′dō pě′cŏrǐs fǎ′cǐt in gěnǐtǐ′vō.

---

[25] To these may líkewise be joíned ăē′dŏn, *a níghtingale,* and hăl′cy̆ŏn, *a kíngfisher,* with a few óthers.

[26] This excéption exténds ónly to nouns in -ăs, máking -ădǐs (or -ădŏs) in the génitive case : for Greek nouns in -ăs máking -ătǐs, as bǔ′cěrăs, bǔcě′rătǐs, *fénugreek,* are neúter ; save ǎ′năs, *a duck,* which is of the cómmon génder.

[27] To this excéption, of course, belóng such words as pŏē′sǐs, pŏē′sĕŏs, *pőĕsy or pőĕtry,* mĕtămŏr′phŏsǐs, mĕtămōrphŏ′sĕŏs, *a transformátion :*—these, howéver, sómetimes take the Látin infléxion, and have símply -ǐs, in the génitive ; fálling, as to their génder, únder the First Spécial Rule.

[28] The fóllowing, líkewise, are féminine : fū′lǐx, *a coot,* lăgō′pǔs, *the white pártridge,* lēn′dǐx, *a mággot,* pŏ′ly̆thrix, *maidenhair,* tŏ′mēx, *a cord or rope,* and mēr′gēs, *a hándful :* to which some add băc′căr, *plóughman's-nard,* but this noun is próperly neúter ; sómetimes, howéver, it is wrítten băc′cărǐs in the nóminative case, and is then féminine.

[29] This noun incréases éither long, or short, in the génitive case, or

3. Nouns of the Doúbtful Génder excépted.

Sūnt dŭ'bĭī gĕ'nĕrĭs, cār'dō, mār'gō, cĭ'nĭs, ō'bēx,
fōr'cēps, pū'mēx, ĭm'brēx, cōr'tēx, pūl'vĭs, ădēps'quĕ :
ād'dĕ cŭ'lēx, nā'trīx, ĕt ŏ'nўx cŭm prō'lĕ, sĭlēx'quĕ ;[30]
quām'vĭs hæc mĕ'lĭūs vŭlt mās'cŭlă dī'cĭĕr ŭ'sŭs.

4. Nouns Cómmon excépted.

Cōmmū'nĭs gĕ'nĕrĭs sūnt ĭs'tă ; vĭ'gĭl, pŭ'gĭl, ēx'ŭl,
præ'sŭl, hŏ'mō, nē'mō, mār'tўr, Lĭ'gŭr, aū'gŭr, ĕt Ār'căs,
āntīs'tēs, mĭ'lēs, pĕ'dĕs, ĭntĕr'prĕs, cŏ'mĕs, hōspĕs ;
sīc ā'lēs, præ'sēs, prīn'cēps, ĕ'quĕs, ōb'sĕs ,[31]
āt'que ă'lĭa ā vēr'bĭs quæ nō'mĭnă mŭl'tă crĕān'tŭr ;
ūt, cōn'jūx, jū'dēx, vĭn'dēx, ŏ'pĭfēx, ĕt ărūs'pēx.[32]

ADJECTIVES.

Ādjēctī'va ū'nām dūntāx'ăt hăbēn'tĭă vō'cĕm ;
ūt, fē'lĭx, aū dāx, rĕ'tŭnēnt gĕ'nŭs ōm'nĕ sŭb ŭ'nā :
sŭb gĕ'mĭnā sī vō'cĕ că'dānt, vĕ'lŭt ōm'nĭs, ĕt ōm'nĕ,
vōx cōmmū'nĕ dŭ'ūm prĭ'ōr ēst, vōx āl'tĕră neŭ'trŭm :
āt sī trēs vă'rĭānt vō'cēs ; să'cĕr ŭt, să'crā, sāc'rŭm ;
vōx prĭ'ma ēst mās, āl'tĕră fæ'mĭnă, tĕr'tĭă neŭ'trŭm.
Āt sūnt quæ flēxŭ'ū prŏ'pĕ sŭbstāntĭ'vă vŏcā'rēs,
ădjēctī'vă tă'mĕn nātŭ'rá ūsŭ'quĕ rĕpĕr'tă :
tă'lĭă sūnt, paū'pēr, pū'bēr, cŭm dē'gĕnĕr, ŭ'bēr,
ēt dī'vēs, lŏ'cŭplēs, sōs'pēs, cŏ'mēs, āt'quĕ sŭpēr'stĕs :
cŭm paū'cĭs ă'lĭĭs, quæ lēctĭō jŭs'tă dŏcē'bĭt.

---

ráther, perhaps, it álways incréases long, and cónsequently oúght to have been clássed únder the Sécond Spécial Rúle : ă'dŭs from which cómes the génitive ă'dŏrĭs with short pénult, is of course néuter, fálling under the same excéption as ŏ'nŭs. The ádjective ădŏ'rĕŭs seems to ówe derivátion to ă'dŏr, ădŏ'rĭs.

[30] With these may be conjoíned ra'mēx, *a sort of abdóminal swélling* or *túmour*, rŭ'mēx, *sórrel*, vă'rīx, *a swóln vein*, and stў'rāx, *a sort of gum ;* though in the best aúthors they are génerally másculine.

[31] To these may be ádded the Greek noun ă'nās, *a duck or drake*, as béing both másculine and féminine : álso, quă'drŭpĕs, *a four-footed beast*.

[32] Séveral vérbal nouns fálling únder this head, as to génder, end in -cēps, from că'pĭō, *I take*, as, mŭ'nĭcēps, *a búrgess ;* in -cĕn, from că'nō, *I sing*, as, cōr'nĭcĕn, *a horn-blówer ;* in -fēx, from fă'cĭō, *I make*, as, ār'tĭfēx, *an artíficer :* and in -spēx, from spĕ'cĭō, *I view*, as, aūs'pēx, *a divíner by birds :* with mány as in -dēx, as ĭn'dēx, *an índicator.*

Hæc prŏ′prĭum quēn′dăm sī′bĭ flēx′um ādsĭs′cĕrĕ gaū′dēnt:
cāmpĕs′tĕr, vŏ′lŭcĕr, cĕ′lĕbĕr, cĕ′lĕr, āt′quĕ sălū′bĕr:
jūn′gĕ pĕdĕs′tĕr, ĕquĕs′tĕr, ĕt ā′cĕr : jūn′gĕ pălūs′tĕr,
āc ă′lăcĕr, sȳlvĕs′tĕr : ăt hæc tū sīc vărĭă′bĭs ;
hīc cĕ′lĕr, hæc cĕ′lĕrīs neū′tro hōc cĕ′lĕre : aūt ă′lĭtĕr sīc ;
hīc āt′que hæc cĕ′lĕrīs, rūr′sum hōc cĕ′lĕre ēst tĭ′bĭ neū′trŭm.

OF HETEROCLITE OR IRREGULAR NOUNS.

Quæ gĕ′nŭs aūt flēx′ŭm vă′rĭănt, quæcūn′quĕ nŏvā′tō
rī′tū dēfĭ′cĭunt sŭpĕrānt′ve, Hĕtĕrŏc′lĭtă sūntŏ.[33]

---

[33] *Irrégular Nouns* are of three different sorts or kinds : I. *Váriant.*
II. *Redúndant.* III. *Deféctive.* And these three sorts admit each of
séveral subdivisions : as, 1. *Váriant* in *Génder.* 2. *Váriant* in *Fléxion.*
3. *Váriant* in *Méaning.* Agaín, 1. *Redúndant* in *Terminátion.* 2. *Re-
dúndant* in *Génder.* 3. *Redúndant* in *Declénsion.* And, 4. *Redún-
dant* in *Case.* Likewise, 1. *Deféctive* in *Númber.* And, 2. *Deféctive*
in *Case.*

I. VARIANTS.

I. NOUNS VARYING THEIR GENDER MAY BE CLASSED AS FOLLOWS :

1. *Nouns Másculine in the Síngular Númber, and Neúter in the*
Plúral.

Ăvĕr′nŭs,	*a lake of Campánia,*	Păngæ′ŭs,	*a prómontory of Thrace,*
Dīn′dўmŭs,	*a hill of Phrýgia,*	Tæ′nărŭs,	*a prómontory of Lacónia,*
Ĭs′mărŭs,	*a hill of Thrace,*	Tār′tărŭs,	*the abóde of the dead,*
Mæ′nălŭs,	*a hill of Arcádia,*	Tāȳgĕ′tŭs,	*a hill of Lacónia.*

2. *Nouns Féminine in the Síngular Númber, and Neúter in the Plúral.*

Cār′băsŭs, *sail-cloth,* | Pĕr′gămŭs, *Troy,* | Sŭpĕl′lēx, *hóusehold stuff.*

3. *Nouns Neúter in the Síngular Númber, and Másculine in the*
Plúral.

Ār′gŏs, *a city of Greece,* | Cœ′lŭm, *héaven,* | Ēlȳ′sĭŭm, *the Elýsian realm.*

4. *Nouns Neúter in the Síngular Númber, and Féminine in the Plúral.*

Băl′nĕŭm,	*a bath,*	Ē′pŭlŭm, *a bánquet,*
Dĕlĭ′cĭŭm,	*a delight,*	Nŭn′dĭnŭm, *márket-day.*

Of these, *băl′nĕŭm* is éither féminine or neúter in the plúral númber.

5. *Nouns Másculine in the Síngular, and Másculine or Neúter in the*
Plúral.

Jŏ′cŭs, *a jest,* | Lŏ′cŭs, *a place,* | Sī′bĭlŭs, *a hiss.*

Of these, *jŏ′cŭs* and *lŏ′cŭs* were at first declíned régularly : but there
were álso two nouns, *jŏ′căm* and *lŏ′căm,* of the neúter génder, which
went at length ínto disúse in the síngular númber ; and the óther two,
ínto disúse in the plúral. Yet, éven in the plúral númber, *lŏ′cī* may be
úsed in the sense of *points of position :* and the neúter noun *sĭ′bĭlŭm* is
found in séveral aúthors.

Nouns chánging their génder and declíning.

Hǣc gĕ'nŭs, ǣc flēx'ŭm, pār'tīm vărĭăn'tĭă cēr'nĭs ;
Pēr'gămŭs in nŭ'mĕrō plūrā'lī Pēr'gămă gíg'nĭt.
Dāt prī'ŏr hīs nŭ'mĕrŭs neū'trŭm gĕ'nŭs, āl'tĕr ŭtrŭm'quĕ,
rās'trŭm cūm frǣ'nō, fī'lŭm, sĭ'mŭl āt'quĕ căpīs'trŭm :
Ār'gŏs ĭ'tem, ēt cœ'lŭm, sūnt sīn'gŭlă neū'tră : sĕd aū'dī,
mās'cŭlă dūntāx'āt cœ'lōs vŏcĭtā'rīs, ĕt Ār'gōs :
frǣ'nă sĕd ēt frǣ'nōs, quō pāc'tō ēt cǣ'tĕră fōr'mānt.

> *Plūrā'līs nŭ'mĕrŭs gĕ'nŭs hīs sŏ'lĕt ād'dĕre ŭtrŭm'quĕ ;*
> *sĭ'bĭlŭs āt'quĕ jŏ'cŭs, lŏ'cŭs.—Hīs quŏ'quĕ plū'rĭmă jūn'gās.*

---

6. *Nouns Neúter in the Síngular, and Másculine or Neúter in the Plúral.*

Căpĭs'trŭm, *a hálter* or *headstall,*	Frǣ'nŭm, *the bit of a brídle,*
Fī'lŭm, *a thread* or *string,*	Rās'trŭm, *a rake* or *hárrow.*

II: NOUNS VARYING THEIR FLECTION, ARE :—

1. Vās, *a véssel*, which is of the third declénsion, in the síngular númber ; and of the sécond declénsion, in the plúral.

2. Jū'gĕrŭm, *an ácre of ground*, which is of the sécond declénsion, in the síngular númber ; and of the third declénsion, in the plúral.

III. NOUNS VARYING THEIR MEANING IN THE PLURAL, ARE :—

Síngular.		*Plúral.*	
ǣ'dēs,	*a témple,*	ǣ'dēs,	*a house,*
cŏ'pĭă,	*plénty,*	cŏ'pĭǣ,	*fórces,*
făcŭl'tās,	*opportúnity,*	făcŭltā'tēs,	*means,*
fī'nĭs,	*an end,*	fī'nēs,	*bóundaries,*
fōrtū'nă,	*fórtune,*	fōrtū'nǣ,	*posséssions,*
fūr'fŭr,	*bran,*	fūr'fŭrēs,	*scurf,*
mōs,	*a cústom,*	mō'rēs,	*mánners,*
ŏ'pĭs,	*aid,*	ŏ'pēs,	*wéalth,*
sāl,	*salt,*	sǎ'lēs,	*fláshes of wit.*

To these might séveral óthers be ádded :—with mány, indeéd, which have véry dífferent significátions éven in the same númber.

II. REDUNDANTS.

NOUNS REDUNDANT MAY BE CLASSED AS FOLLOWS :—

1. *Nouns Redúndant in Terminátion ónly :*—such, for exámple, as, ār'bŏr *vel* ār'bōs, *a tree ;* hŏ'nŏr *vel* hŏ'nōs, *hónor ;* lă'bŏr *vel* lă'bōs, *lábor ;* lē'pŏr *vel* lē'pōs, *mirth ;* vŏ'mĕr *vel* vŏ'mĭs, *a plough-share.*

2. *Nouns Redúndant in Terminátion, with change of Génder :*—thus, bă'cŭlŭs *vel* bă'cŭlŭm, *a staff ;* băr'bĭtŭs *vel* băr'bĭtŏs *vel* băr'bĭtŏn, *a harp ;* sĭ'bĭlŭs *vel* sĭ'bĭlŭm, *a híssing ;* Ī'lĭŏs *vel* Ī'lĭŏn *vel* Ī'lĭŭm, *the cíty of Troy ;* mū'gĭl *vel* mū'gĭlĭs, *a múllet ;* and a host besídes.

3. *Nouns Redúndant in Génder únder the same Terminátion :*—as, pĕ'cŭs, pĕ'cŭdĭs, *féminine ;* pĕ'cŭs, pĕ cŏrĭs, *neúter.*

4. *Nouns Redúndant in Declénsion ónly :*—as, laū'rŭs, *a bay-tree* or

Nouns Deféctive.

Quǽ sē'quŭtŭr, mān'ca ēst cā'sū nŭmĕrō'vĕ, prŏpā'gŏ.

I. Āptŏ'tă; or, Nouns undeclíned.

Quæ nŭl'lŭm vā'rĭānt cā'sum ; ŭt, fās, nīl, nī'hĭl, īn'stăr ;
mŭl'ta ĕt ĭn -ū, sī'mŭl -ĭ ; ŭt sŭnt hæc, cōrnŭ'quĕ, gĕnŭ'quĕ ;
sīc gŭm'mī, frū'gī : sīc Tēm'pē, tōt, quŏt, ĕt ōm'nĕs
ā trĭbŭs ăd cēn'tŭm nŭ'mĕrōs, āptŏ'tă vŏcā'bĭs.

---

lăúrel, of the sécond or the fourth declénsion : quī'ēs, *rest,* and rĕ'quĭes,
repóse, of the third or fifth declénsion.

5. *Nouns Redúndant both in Terminátion and Declénsion :*—as,
dĕl'phīn, a *dólphin,* of the third, and dĕlphī'nŭs, a *dólphin,* of the sécond ;
ĕ'lĕphăs, an *élephant,* of the third, and ĕlĕphān'tŭs, an *élephant,* of the
sécond.

6. *Nouns Redúndant in Terminátion and Declénsion, with change
of Génder :*—as, æ'thĕr, *the sky,* of the third, and æ'thĕră vĕl æ'thră, *the
sky,* of the first ; mēn'dă a *fault* or *blémish,* of the first, and mēn'dŭm, a
fault or *blémish,* of the sécond ; cra'tēr, a *góblet,* of the third, and cra-
tē'ră, a *góblet,* of the first.

7. *Nouns Redúndant in Case, or differently váried in the same De-
clénsion :*—thus, jĕ'cŭr, *the líver,* génitive, jĕ'cŏrĭs vĕl jĕcĭ'nŏrĭs, *of the
líver ;* ă'dŏr, *fine wheat,* génitive, ă'dōrĭs vĕl ădō'rĭs, *of fine wheat ;* tī'grĭs,
a *tíger,* génitive, tī'grĭs vĕl tī'grĭdĭs, *of a tíger.*

8. *Nouns Redúndant in one Case ónly, and of a different Declén-
sion :*—as, ancī'lĭă, *the sácred búcklers,* génitive plúral, āncī'lĭŭm vĕl
āncī'lĭŏrŭm, *of the sácred búcklers :* of which sort are the names of
feasts : for exámple, Sātūrnā'lĭă, *Feasts dédicated to Sáturn ;* Bācchā-
nā'lĭă, *Feasts dédicated to Bácchus ;* Quīnquā'trĭă, *Feasts dédicated to
Minérva :* this last has *-trĭis* vĕl *-trĭbŭs* in the dátive and áblative cáses
plúral.

III. Defectives.

DEFECTIVE NOUNS MAY BE CLASSED AS FOLLOWS :—

1. *Nouns Undeclíned in both Númbers :*—as, pōn'dŏ, a *pound-weight,*
or *pounds-weight* gŭm'mī, *gum* or *gums ;* with some ádjectives ; as,
nĕ'quăm, *wícked ;* frū'gī, *thrifty.*

3. *Nouns Undeclíned in the Síngular Númber, but Declíned in the
Plúral :*—as, cōr'nū, a *horn.*

4. *Nouns Undeclíned in the Síngular Númber, and Wánting the
Plúral :*—as sīnā'pī, *mustard ;* gaŭ'săpĕ, *frize.*

5. *Nouns Declíned in the Síngular Númber, but which Want the
Plúral :*—as, nĕ'mŏ, *nóbody ;* sān'guĭs, *blood ;* jŭvĕn'tūs, *youth ;* sĕ'-
nĭŭm, *old age ;* sī'tĭs, *thirst :* with most próper names of men, wómen,
héathen gods and góddesses, ángels ; names of pláces (save those which
are of the plúral númber ónly, *Ar'gŏs* excépted) ; the names of vírtues,
víces, arts and sciences, métals, líquids, diséases, spíces, and plants : the
names of ábstract quálities, such as cólour, taste, touch, condítion ; and
a great mány more words which, by their ímport, are confíned to the
síngular númber ; as, bŭ tўrŭm, *bútter ;* glū'tĕn, *glue ;* fī'mŭs, *dung.*

II. Mŏnōptō′tă ; or Nouns declíned with one Case.

Est′quĕ mŏnōptō′tŏn nō′mĕn, cui vōx că′dĭt ū′nă :
ceū, nōc′tū, nā′tū, jūs′sŭ ; ĭnjūs′sŭ, sĭ′mŭl ās′tū,
prōm′ptū, pērmīs′sŭ : plūra′lĭ lĕ′gĭmŭs ās′tūs :
lĕ′gĭmŭs ĭnfĭ′cĭās, sĕd vōx ĕ′ă sō′lă rĕpĕr′ta ēst.

III. Dĭptō′tă ; or Nouns declíned with two Cáses.

Sūnt dĭptō′tă, qui′bŭs dŭp′lex flēxū′ră rĕmān′sĭt :
ūt fōrs fōr′tĕ dă′bĭt sēx′tō, spōn′tĭs quŏ′quĕ spōn′tĕ ;
jū′gĕrĭs ēt sēx′tō dūt jū′gĕrĕ ; vēr′bĕrĭs au′tĕm
vēr′bĕrĕ : sūppĕ′tĭæ quār′tō quŏ′quĕ sūppĕ′tĭās dănt ;

Yet some nouns which, in En′glish, admít séldom, and óthers néver, of a plúral, are found of the plúral númber in Látin. Such, for exámple, as the fóllowing :—

æs,	*brass,*	fŭ′gă,	*flight,*	pĭtŭĭ′tă,	*phlegm,*
æ′vŭm,	*age,*	fū′mŭs,	*smoke,*	pīx,	*pitch,*
ă′quă,*	*wáter,*	hī′lŭm,	*mere nóthing,*	quĭ′ēs,	*rest,*
brī′lĭs,	*gall or bile,*	hōr′dĕŭm,	*bárley,*	rūs,*	*the cóuntry,*
că′rŏ,*	*flesh,*	mĕl,*	*hóney,*	sōl,*	*the sun,*
cē′ră,	*wax,*	mēn′thă,	*mint,*	sŏ′lŭm,	*the ground,*
chŏ′lĕră,	*chóler,*	mĕ′tŭs,	*dread,*	sūl′phŭr,	*brímstone,*
crŭ′ŏr,	*gore,*	mūr′mŭr,	*a múrmur,*	tă′lĭŏ,	*retaliátion,*
ĕ′bŭr,	*ívory,*	mūs′tŭm,	*new wine,*	tēl′lŭs,	*the earth,*
ēlĕc′trŭm,	*ámber,*	paupēr′tās,	*póverty,*	thūs,*	*fránkincense,*
fā′mă,	*fame,*	pāx,	*peace,*	thy′mŭm,	*thyme.*
fār,	*bread-corn,*				

The nouns márked with an ásterisk (in the abóve list) were in habítual use in the plúral númber :—some of them in all the six cáses, as, ă′quă, *wáter;* óthers ónly in the nóminative, accúsative, and vócative cáses, as, rūs, *the cóuntry;* mĕl, *hóney;* fār, *meal:* óthers agaín in évery case excépt the génitive, as sōl, *the sun.* The nouns not márked with an ásterisk occúr véry rárely in the plúral númber, and few of them in more than one terminátion : as, æ′vīs, *to* or *by áges;* mūs′tă, *new wines.*

On the óther hand, some nouns, which ádmit of a síngular númber in En′glish, are séldom or néver úsed in the síngular númber in Látin :—such, for exámple, as lī′bĕrĭ, *children;* nū′gæ, *trífles.*

And mány nouns, which, in our lánguage, admít of a plúral, have próperly no plúral númber in Látin ; such as the fóllowing :—

æ′thĕr,	*the sky,*	lĕ′thŭm,	*death,*	pōn′tŭs,	*the sea,*
hŭ′mŭs,	*the ground,*	lŭ′ēs,	*a plague,*	vī′rŭs,	*poison.*

6. *Nouns wánting the Síngular Númber, but which are Régular in the Plúral:* as cŭpĕ′dĭæ, *sweet′meats;* pĕnā′tēs, *household gods;* ār′mă, *wéapons of war.* To these might be ádded mány names of pláces, péople, feasts, and games.

7. *Nouns wánting one Case or more :*—as, vīs, *force;* ŏpĭs, *of wealth* or *pówer;* prŏmp′tū, *in réadiness.*

tāntūn'dēm *dăt* tāntĭ'dēm, *sĭ'mŭl* īm'pĕtĭs *ĕt dăt*
īm'pĕtĕ ; ————————————
sīc rĕpĕtūndā'rūm rĕpĕtūn'dīs. Vēr'bĕrĭs *āl'tĕrō*
quā'tŭŏr ĭn nŭ'mĕrō cā'sŭs cŭm jŭ'gĕrĕ *sēr'vănt.*

IV. Trīptŏ'tă ; or, Nouns declíned with three Cáses.

Trēs quĭ'bŭs īnflēc'tĭs cā'sŭs, trīptŏ'tă *vŏcăn'tŭr :*
sīc ŏ'pĭs *ĕst nōs'træ, fĕr* ŏ'pĕm, *lĕ'gĭs, āt'quĕ* ŏ'pĕ *dīg'nŭs,*
fĭcc'tĕ prĕ'cĭ, *āt'quĕ* prĕ'cĕm *pĕ'tĭt ĕt* prĕ'cĕ *blān'dŭs ămī'căm.*
ăt tūn'tŭm rēc'tō frŭ'gĭs *că'rĕt, ĕt* dītĭŏ'nĭs :
ĭn'tĕgră vōx vīs *ĕst, nĭ'sĭ dē'sĭt fōr'tĕ dătĭ'vŭs :*
hĭs vī'cĭs *āt'quĕ* vī'cem *ĕt* jūn'gās vī'cĕ ; plŭs *quŏ'quĕ* plū'rĭs,
plŭs *hă'bĕt ĕt* quār'tŏ : *Hĭs nŭ'mĕrŭs dă'tŭr ŏm'nĭbŭs āl'tĕr.*

V. Nouns deféctive in the Plúral Númber.

Prŏp'rĭă cūn'ctă nŏ'tēs, *quĭ'bŭs ĕst nātū'ră* cŏĕr'cēns,
vlū'rĭmă nē fŭ'ĕrĭnt : ă'lĭa ĕt tĭ'bĭ mūltă lĕgēntī
vccūr'rēnt, nŭ'mĕrŭm rā'ro ēxcēdēn'tĭă prī'mŭm.

VI. Nouns deféctive in the Síngular Númber.

Mūs'cŭlă sŭnt tān'tŭm nŭ'mĕrō cōntēn'tă sĕcūn'dŏ,
mā'nēs, mājō'rēs, cāncēl'lī, lĭ'bĕrī, *ĕt* ān'tēs,
lēn'dēs, *ĕt* lĕ'mūrēs, fās'tī, *sĭ'mŭl āt'quĕ* mĭnō'rēs,
cŭm gĕ'nŭs āssĭg'nănt nātā'lēs : *ăd dĕ* pĕnā'tēs
ĕt lŏ'că plūrā'lī, *quā'lēs* Gābĭī'*quĕ* Lŏcrī'*quĕ* ;
ĕt quæcŭn'quĕ lĕ'gās pās'sĭm sĭmĭlĭs rătĭŏ'nĭs.

Hæc sŭnt fœmĭ'nĕī gĕ'nĕrĭs, nŭmĕrī'*quĕ* sĕcūn'dĭ ;
ēxŭ'vĭæ, phă'lĕræ, grātēs'*quĕ*, mănŭ'bĭa, *ĕt* ī'dŭs,
ān'tĭæ, *ĕt* īndŭ'cĭæ ; *sĭ'mŭl* īnsĭdĭæ'*quĕ* mĭnæ'*quĕ* ;
ēxcŭ'bĭæ, nō'næ, nū'gæ, trĭcæ'*quĕ*, călēn'dæ,
quĭsquĭ'lĭæ, thēr'mæ, cūnæ, dī'ræ, ēxĕquĭæ'*quĕ*,
fĕ'rĭæ, *ĕt* īnfĕ'rĭæ ; *sīc* prīmĭtĭæ'*quĕ*, plāgæ'*quĕ*
rē'tĭă sīgnān'tēs, *ĕt* vāl'væ, dīvĭtĭæ'*quĕ*,
nŭp'tĭæ ĭ'tem, *ĕt* lāc'tēs : *ăddān'tŭr* Thē'bæ *ĕt* Ăthē'næ ;
quŏd gĕ'nŭs īnvĕ'nĭăs *ĕt* nō'mĭnă plū'ră lŏcō'rŭm.

Rā'rĭŭs hæc prī'mō plūrā'lĭă neū'tră lĕgūn'tŭr ;
mæ'nĭă, *cŭm* tēs'quĭs, præcōr'dĭă, lūs'tră fĕrā'rŭm,
ār'mă, măpā'lĭă ; *sīc* bēllā'rĭă, mū'nĭă, cās'tră :
fū'nŭs jūs'tă pĕ'tĭt, pĕ'tĭt ĕt spōnsā'lĭă vīr'gŏ ;
rōs'tră dĭsēr'tŭs ă'măt, pŭĕrī'*quĕ* crĕpūn'dĭă gĕs'tănt,
īnfāntēs'*quĕ* cŏ'lŭnt cūnā'bŭlă : cōnsŭ'lĭt ēx'tă
aŭ'gŭr ; *ĕt* ābsŏl'vēns sŭ'pĕrĭs ēfĭā'tă rĕcān'tăt :

fēs'tă dĕ'ŭm pŏ'tĕrŭnt, ceŭ Bācchānā'lĭă, jŭn'gī :
quōd sī plū'ră lĕ'gēs, lī'cĕt hāc quŏ'quĕ clās'sĕ rĕpō'nās.

Nouns declíned áfter both the Sécond and Fourth Declénsion.

Hæc sī'mŭl ēt quār'tī flĕx'ūs sŭnt, āt'quĕ sĕcŭn'dī :
laū'rŭs ĕ'nĭm laū'rī fă'cĭt ēt laū'rŭs gĕnĭtī'vō ;
sīc quĕr'cŭs, pī'nŭs, prō frŭc'tŭ ăc ār'bŏrĕ fī'cŭs,
sīc cŏ'lŭs, āt'quĕ pĕ'nŭs ; cŏr'nŭs quān'dŏ ār'bŏr hăbē'tŭr ;
sīc lă'cŭs, āt'quĕ dŏ'mŭs ; lī'cĕt hāc nĕc ŭbī'quĕ rĕcŭr'rānt.
Hīs quŏ'quĕ plū'ră lĕ'gēs, quæ prīs'cīs jū'rĕ rĕlĭn'quās.

RULES

FOR THE

PRETERPERFECT TENSE,

AND

SUPINES OF VERBS.

I. *Of the Preterpérfect Tense of Símple Verbs.*

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Ās———ā'vī.

Ās *in* præsēn'tī pērfēc'tūm fōr'māt *in* ā'vī :
ūt nō nās nā'vī, vŏ'cĭtō vŏ'cĭtās vŏcĭtā'vī.
Dĕ'mĕ lă'vō lā'vī, jŭ'vŏ jū'vī, nĕ'xŏquĕ nĕx'uī,[34]
ēt sĕ'cŏ quŏd sĕ'cŭī, nĕ'cŏ quŏd nĕ'cŭī, mī'cŏ rĕr'bŭm
quŏd mī'cŭī, plī'cŏ quŏd plī'cŭī, frī'cŏ quŏd frĭ'cŭī dăt :
sīc dŏ'mŏ quŏd dŏ'mŭī, tŏ'nŏ quŏd tŏ'nŭī, sŏ'nŏ vēr'bŭm
quŏd sŏ'nŭī, crĕ'pŏ quŏd crĕ'pŭī, vĕ'tŏ quŏd vĕ'tŭī dăt,
āt'quĕ cŭ'bŏ cŭ bŭī : rā'rŏ hāc fōrmān'tŭr ĭn -ā'vī.
Dŏ dās rī'tĕ dĕ'dī, stō stās fōrmā'rĕ stĕ'tī vŭlt.

---

[34] Pronoúnced as a díssyllable by Synǽresis ; the verse requiring -uī to be a díphthong, else the final -i to be elíded befóre the initial -e of the next line.

SECOND CONJUGATION.
Ēs——ŭī.

Es *in præsēn'tī pĕrfēc'tŭm fŏr'măt* -ŭī *dāns:*
ūt nĭ'grĕō nĭg'rēs, nĭ'grŭī : jŭ'bĕo *ēx'cĭpĕ* jŭs'sī :
sŏr'bĕo sŏr'bŭī hă'bēt, sŏr'psī *quŏd'quĕ;* mŭl'cĕō mŭl'sī :
lū'cĕō *vŭlt* lūx'ī, sĕ'dĕo sē'dī, vĭdĕō'quĕ
vŭlt vī'dī : *sēd* prān'dĕo prān'dī, strī'dĕo strī'dī,
suā'dĕo suā'sī, rī'dĕo rī'sī, hă'bĕt ār'dĕo *ĕt* ār'sī.

Quă'tŭŏr hīs īn'frā gĕmĭnā'tūr sўl'lăbŭ prī'mă:
pēn'dĕo *nām'quĕ* pĕpēn'dī, mŏr'dĕo *vŭlt'quĕ* mŏmŏr'dī,
spŏn'dĕo *hăbē'rĕ* spŏpŏn'dī, tŏn'dĕo *vŭlt'quĕ* tŏtŏn'dī.

L vĕl r̆ *ān'tĕ* -gĕō *sī stēt,* -gĕō *rĕr'lītŭr īn* -sī.
ūr'gĕo *ŭt* ūr'sī ; mŭl'gĕō mŭl'sī, *dăt quŏd'quĕ* mŭl'xī ;
frī'gĕō frīx'ī, lū'gĕo lūx'ī, hă'bĕt au'gĕo *ĕt* aūx'ī.

Dăt flĕ'ŏ flēs flē'vī, lĕ'o lēs lē'vī, *īn'dĕquĕ nā'tŭm*
dē'lĕo dēlē'vī ; plĕ'ŏ plēs plē'vī, nĕ'o nē'vī.

Ā mă'nĕo mān'sī *fŏrmā'tūr;* tŏr'quĕo tŏr'sī,
hæ'rĕo *vŭlt* hæ'sī. Vĕ'ŏ *fĭt* -vi *ŭt* fēr'vĕo fēr'vī ;
nĭ'vĕo, *ĕt īn'dĕ* să'tŭm pŏs'cĭt cōnnī'vĕo -nī'vī
ēt -nīx'ī : cĭ'ĕo cī'vī, vĭcĭō'quĕ vĭĕ'vī.

THIRD CONJUGATION.
Vá́rious.

Tĕr'tĭă prætĕ'rĭtŭm fŏrmā'bĭt ŭt hīc mănĭfēs'tŭm.
Bō *fĭt* bi : *ŭt* lām'bō lām'bī : scrī'bo *ēx'cĭpĕ* scrīp'sī,
ĕt nū'bō nūp'sī : *āntī'quŭm* cūm'bō cŭ'bŭī *dăt.*

Cō *fĭt* ci : *ŭt* vīn'cō vī'cī : *vŭlt* pār'cŏ pĕpēr'cī
ĕt pār'cī : dī'cō dīx'ī, dū'cō *quŏd'quĕ* dūx'ī.

Dō *fĭt* di : *ŭt* mān'dō mān'dī : *sēd* scīn'dŏ scī'dī *dăt,*
fīn'dŏ fĭdī, fūn'dō fū'dī, tūn'dō tŭtŭdī'*quĕ;*
pēn'dŏ pĕpēn'dī, tēn'dŏ tĕtēn'dī, jūn'gĕ cădō'*quĕ,*
quŏd cĕ'cĭdī *fŏr'măt;* *prō vēr'bĕrŏ* cæ'dŏ cĕcī'dī :
cĕ'dō *prō dīscē'dĕrĕ,* sī'vĕ lŏ'cŭm dă'rĕ, cēs'sī :
vā'dō, rā'dō, læ'dō, lū'dō, dī'vĭdō, trū'dō,
clau'dō, plau'dō, rō'do, *ēx* -dō *sēm'pĕr* fă'cĭŭnt -sī.

Gō *fĭt* xī : *ŭt* jūn'gō jūn'xī : *sĕd* r̆ *ān'tĕ* -gŏ *vŭlt* -sī,
ŭt spār'gō spār'sī : lĕ'gō lē gi, *ĕt* ă'gō fă'cĭt ē'gī :
dăt tān'gō tĕ tĭgī, pūn'gō pūn'xī pŭpŭgī'*quĕ;*
dăt frān'gō frē'gī, pĕ'pĭgī *vŭlt* pā'gŏ *păcĭs'cŏr,*
pān'go ĕ'tĭăm pē'gī, *sēd* pān'xī *mā'lŭĭt ū'sŭs.*

Hō *fīt* xī : trăʹhŏ *ceū* trāxʹī *dŏ̆ʹcĕt,* ĕt vĕ̆ʹhŏ vĕxʹī.
Lō *fīt* -ŭī : cŏ̆ʹlō *ceū* cŏ̆ʹlūī : psălʹlō *ēxʹcĭpĕ cūm* p̄,
ĕt sălʹlō *sĭʹnĕ* p̄, *nām* -lī *tĭʹbī fōrmăt ŭtrŭmʹquĕ.*
Dăt vēlʹlō vēlʹlī, vūlʹsī *quŏʹquĕ ;* fălʹlō fĕfĕlʹlī,
cĕlʹlō *prō frānʹgō,* cĕ̆ʹcŭlī, pēlʹlō pĕpŭlĭʹquĕ.
Mō *fīt* -ŭī : vŏ̆ʹmŏ *ceū* vŏ̆ʹmŭī : *sĕd* ĕ̆ʹmŏ *fă̆ʹcĭt* ēʹmī,
cō̆mʹŏ *pĕ̆ʹtīt* cō̆mʹpsī, *prŏ̆ʹnŏ* prō̆mʹpsī : *ăd̄ʹjĭcĕ* dē̆ʹmŏ
quŏd *fōrʹmăt* dē̆mʹpsī, sū̆ʹmŏ sū̆mʹpsī, *prĕ̆ʹmŏ* prēsʹsī.
Nō *fīt* -vī : sĭʹnŏ *ceū* sĭʹvī : *tēmʹno ēxʹcĭpĕ* tē̆mʹpsī :
dăt stĕrʹnŏ străʹvī, spērʹnŏ sprēʹvī, lĭʹnŏ lēʹvī,
īntĕrʹdūm lĭ̆ʹnĭ *ĕt* lĭʹvī, cĕrʹnŏ *quŏʹquĕ* crēʹvī :
gĭgʹnŏ, pŏ̆ʹnŏ, că̆ʹnŏ ; gĕ̆ʹnŭī, pŏ̆ʹsŭī, cĕ̆ʹcĭnī, *dănt.*
Pō *fīt* -psī : *ūt* scălʹpŏ scălʹpsī : rū̆mʹpo *ēxʹcĭpĕ* rū̆ʹpī ;
ĕt strĕ̆ʹpŏ *quŏd fōrʹmăt* strĕ̆ʹpŭī, crĕ̆ʹpŏ *quŏd* crĕ̆ʹpŭī *dăi.*
Quō *fīt* -quī : *ūt* lĭnʹquŏ lĭʹquī : *cŏʹquŏ dē̆ʹmĭtŏ* cō̆xʹī.
Rō *fīt* -vī : sĕʹrŏ *ceū prō plānʹto ĕt sĕ̆ʹmĭnŏ,* sēʹvī ;
quŏd sĕ̆ʹrŭī *mĕ̆ʹlĭŭs sēmʹpĕr dă̆ʹbĭt, ōrʹdĭnŏ sĭgʹnāns.*
Vŭlt vĕrʹrō vĕrʹrī *ĕt* vĕrʹsī, ŭʹro ŭsʹsī, gĕ̆ʹrŏ gēsʹsī,
quă̆ʹrō quăēsʹvī, tĕ̆ʹrŏ trīʹvī, cūrʹrŏ cŭcūrʹrī.
Sō, *vĕ̆ʹlŭtī prŏ̆ʹbăt* ārcēsʹsō, īncēsʹsō, *ăt̄ʹquĕ* lăcēsʹsō,
fōrmăʹbĭt -sīʹvī : *sĕd tōlʹlĕ* căpēsʹsŏ căpēsʹsī,
quŏd̄ʹquĕ căpēssīʹvī *fă̆ʹcĭt ăt̄ʹquĕ* făcēsʹsŏ făcēsʹsī,
ĕt vīʹsō vīʹsī ; *sĕd* pīnʹso pīnʹsŭi *hă̆bē̆ʹbĭt.*
Scō *fīt* -vī : *ūt* pāsʹcŏ pā̆ʹvī : *vŭlt* pōsʹcŏ pŏ̆pōsʹcī ;
vŭlt dĭ̆ʹdĭcī dĭsʹcŏ, quĕxʹī *fōrmă̆ʹrĕ* quīnīsʹcŏ.
Tō *fīt* -tī : *ūt* vĕrʹtō vĕrʹtō *sĕd* sīsʹtŏ *nŏ̆tē̆ʹtŭr*
prō fă̆ʹcĭŏ stăʹre āctĭʹvŭm, nām jū̆ʹrĕ stĭ̆ʹtī *dăt ;*
dăt mĭtʹtŏ mĭʹsī, pĕ̆ʹtŏ *vŭlt fōrmă̆ʹrĕ* pĕtĭʹvī ;
stĕrʹtō stĕrʹtŭi *hă̆ʹbĕt,* mĕ̆ʹtŏ mēsʹsŭi : *Ăb* -ēcʹtŏ *fĭt* -ēxʹī ;
ūt flēcʹtŏ flĕxʹī : nēcʹtŏ *dăt* nēxʹŭi, *hă̆bĕt̄ʹquĕ*
nēxʹi ; *č̆ʹtĭăm* pēcʹtŏ *dăt* pēxʹŭi, *hă̆ʹbĕt quŏʹquĕ* pēxʹī.
Vō *fīt* -vī : *ūt* vōlʹvŏ vōlʹvī : vīʹvo *ēxʹcĭpĕ* vīxʹī.
Xō *fīt* -ŭī : *ūt* mōnʹstrăt tĕxʹŏ, *quŏd* tĕxʹŭi *hă̆bē̆ʹbĭt.*
Fĭt -cĭŏ -cī : *ūt* fă̆ʹcĭŏ fē̆ʹcī, *jă̆ʹcĭŏ quŏʹquĕ* jē̆ʹcī :
ăntĭʹquŭm lă̆ʹcĭŏ lĕxʹī, spĕ̆ʹcĭŏ *quŏʹquĕ* spĕxʹī.
Fĭt -dĭŏ -dī : *ūt* fŏ̆ʹdĭŏ fŏ̆ʹdī : -Gĭŏ *ceū* fŭ gĭŏ, -gī.
Fĭt -pĭŏ -pī : *ūt* că̆ʹpĭŏ cē̆ʹpī : cŭ̆ʹpĭo *ēxʹcĭpĕ* -pīʹvī,
ĕt ră̆ pĭŏ ră̆ʹpŭī, să̆ʹpĭŏ să̆ʹpŭi *ăt̄ʹquĕ* săpīʹvī.
Fĭt -rĭŏ rī : *ūt* pă̆ʹrĭŏ pĕ̆ʹpĕrī : -Rĭŏ -ssī, *gĕ̆ʹmĭnāns* s̄ ;
ūt quă̆ʹtĭŏ quăsʹsī, *quŏd vĭx rĕ̆pĕrī̄ʹtŭr īn ū̆ʹsū.*
Dē̆ʹnĭque -ŭō *fĭt* -ŭī : *ūt* stă̆ʹtŭŏ stă̆ʹtŭī : plŭ̆ʹŏ plŭ̆ʹvī
fōrʹmăt, sĭ̆ʹvĕ plŭ̆ʹī ; strŭ̆ʹŏ *sĕd* strŭxʹī, flŭ̆ʹŏ flŭxʹī.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

īs———ī′vī.

Quār′tă dăt -īs -īvī: *ŭt mōn′strāt* scī′ŏ scīs *tĭ′bĭ* scī′vī.
Ēxcī′piās vĕ′nĭŏ *dāns* vĕ′nī, *ēt* vĕ′nĕŏ vĕ′nĭī; [35]
raŭ′cĭŏ raū′sī, făr′cĭŏ fār′sī, sār′cĭŏ sār′sī,
sē′pĭŏ sēp′sī, sēn′tĭŏ sēn′sī, fūl′cĭŏ fūl′sī,
haŭ′rĭŏ *ĭ′tĕm* haŭ′sī, sān′cĭŏ sān′xī, vīn′cĭŏ vīn′xī;
prō sāl′tō să′lĭō să′lŭi, *ĕt* ămĭ′cĭŏ ămĭ′cŭī *dăt.*[36]

II. Of the Preterperfect Tense of Cómpound Verbs.

Prætĕ′rĭtŭm dăt ĭ′dēm sīm′plēx ēt cōmpŏsĭtĭ′cŭm:
ŭt dŏ′cŭi ēdŏ′cŭī mōn′strāt: sēd sȳl′lăbă, sēm′pĕr
quăm sĭm′plēx gĕ′mĭnāt, cōmpōs′tō nōn gĕmĭnā′tŭr;
prātēr′quăm trĭ′bŭs hīs, prăecūr′rŏ, ēxcūr′rŏ, rĕpūn′gŏ;
āt′que ā dō, dīs′cō, stō, pōs′cō, *rĭ′tĕ crĕā′tĭs.*
Ā plĭ′cŏ *cōmpŏ′sĭtŭm cŭm sŭb vĕl nŏ′mĭne, ŭt ĭs′tă,*
sŭp′plĭcŏ, mūltĭ′plĭcŏ, *gaŭ′dēt fōrmā′rĕ* -plĭcā′vī;
āp′plĭcŏ, cōm′plĭcŏ, rĕ′plĭcŏ, *ĕt ēx′plĭco* -ŭī *quŏ′quĕ fōr′mānt.*
Quăm′vīs vŭlt ŏ′lĕŏ sĭm′plēx ŏ′lŭī, tă′mĕn īn′dĕ
quŏd′vīs cōmpŏ′sĭtŭm mĕ′lĭŭs fōrmā′bĭt -ŏlē′vī;
sĭm′plĭcĭs āt fōr′mām rĕ′dŏlĕt sĕ′quĭtŭr, sŭbŏlĕt′quĕ.
Cōmpŏ′sĭta ā pūn′gŏ *fōrmā′lŭnt ōm′nĭă* pūn′xī;
vŭlt ŭ′nŭm pŭ′pŭgī, *īntĕrdŭm′quĕ* rĕpūn′gŏ rĕpūn′xī.
Nā′tŭm ā dō, *quān′dŏ ēst īnflĕx′ĭŏ tēr′tĭa, ŭt* ād′dŏ,
crē′dŏ, ē′dŏ, dē′dŏ, rēd′dŏ, pēr′dŏ, āb′dŏ, *vĕl* ōb′dŏ,
cōn′dŏ, īn′dŏ, trā′dŏ, prō′dŏ, vēn′dŏ, -dĭdi; *ăt ū′nŭm*
ābscōn′dŏ ābscōn′dī. *Nā′tŭm ā* stō stās -stĭti *hăbē′bĭt.*

Cómpound Verbs which change the first Vówel into E.

Vēr′ba hăec sĭmplĭ′cĭă* prăesēn′tĭs prătĕrĭtĭ′quĕ,
sī cōmpōnān′tŭr; vŏcā′lēm prī′mam īn ĕ mŭ′tānt:
dăm′nŏ, lăc′tŏ, să′crŏ, făl′lo, ār′cĕŏ, trăc′tŏ, fătīs′cŏr,
căn′dŏ *vĕ′tŭs,* căp′tŏ, jăc′tŏ, pă′tĭŏr, grădĭŏr′quĕ,
păr′tĭŏ, căr′pŏ, pă′trŏ, scăn′dŏ, spăr′gŏ; părĭŏ′quĕ,
cū′jŭs nā′tă pĕr ī dŭ′ŏ, cōm′pĕrĭt *ēt* rĕ′pĕrĭt, *dănt;*
căĕ′tĕră sēd pĕr -ŭī; *vĕ′lŭt hăec,* ăpĕrĭ′re ŏpĕrĭ′rĕ.
Ā pās′cō pă′vī *tān′tŭm cōmpōs′tă nŏtēn′tŭr*

---

hæc dŭ'ŏ, cōmpēs'cō, dīspēs'cō, -pēs'cŭi hăbē'rĕ :
cæ'tĕra, ŭt ēpās'cō, sērvă'bŭnt sĭm'plĭcĭs ū'sŭm.

Cómpound Verbs which change the first Vówel ínto I.

Hǣc, hă'bĕō, lă'tĕō, să'lĭō, stă'tŭō, că'dŏ, lă'dŏ,
ēt tān'gō, āt'quĕ că'nō, sīc quǣ'rō, cæ'dŏ cĕcĭ'dī,
sīc ĕ'gĕō, tĕ'nĕō, tă'cĕō, să'pĭō, răpĭŏ'quĕ,
sī cōmpōnān'tūr, vōcā'lĕm prī'mam ĭn ĭ mŭ'tānt :
ŭt ră'pĭō ră'pŭi ērĭ'pĭō ērĭ'pŭi : Ā că'nō nă'tŭm
prætĕ'rĭtŭm pĕr -ŭī, cĕu cōn'cĭnŏ cōncĭ'nŭī, dăt.
Ā plă'cĕō sīc dīsplĭ'cĕō ; sēd sĭm'plĭcĭs ū'sŭm
hæc dŭ'ŏ, cōmplă'cĕō cūm pērplă'cĕō, bĕ'nĕ sēr'vănt.
Cōmpŏ'sĭta ā vēr'bĭs cāĭ'cō, sāĭ'to, ā pĕr ŭ mŭ'tānt :
ĭd tĭ'bĭ dēmōn'strānt, cōncŭl'cō, incŭl'cō, rĕsŭl'tō.
Cōmpŏ'sĭta ā clau'dō, quă'tĭō, lă'vŏ, rējĭ'cĭūnt ă :
ĭd dŏ'cĕt ā clau'dō, ŏcclū'dō, ēxclū'dŏ ; ā quătĭŏ'quĕ,
pērcŭ'tĭŏ, ēxcŭ'tĭŏ ; ā lă'vŏ, prŏ'lŭŏ, dĭ'lŭŏ, nă'tă.

Cómpound Verbs which change the first Vówel of the Présent
Tense ínto I, but which néverthelcss change nóthing in the
Preterpérfect Tense.

Hǣc sī cōmpŏ'nās, ă'gō, ĕ'mō, sĕ'dĕō, rĕ'gō, frān'gō,
ēt că'pĭō, jă'cĭō, lă'cĭō, spĕ'cĭō, prĕ'mō, pān'gō,
vōcā'lĕm prī'mam prǣsēn'tĭs ĭn ĭ sĭ'bĭ mŭ'tānt,
prætĕ'rĭtī nūn'quăm : cĕu frān'gō, rĕfrīn'gō rĕfrē'gī :
ā că'pĭō, incĭ'pĭo incē'pī. Sēd pau'că nŏtēn'tūr ;
năm'quĕ sŭ'ŭm sĭm'plēx pĕr'ăgŏ sĕ'quĭtūr, sătāgŏ'quĕ ;
āt'quĕ ăb ā'gō, dē'gō dăt dē'gī, cō'gō cōē'gī ;
ā rĕ'gō, sīc pēr'gō pērrēx'ī ; vŭlt quŏ'quĕ sūr'gō
sūrrēx'ī ; mĕ'dĭā prǣsēn'tĭs sȳl'lăbā ădēm'ptă.
Cōmpŏ'sĭta ā pān'gō rĕ'tĭnēnt ā quă'tŭŏr ĭs'tă :
dēpān'gō, ōppān'gō, circūmpān'gō, āt'quĕ rĕpān'gō.
Nĭl vă'rĭāt fă'cĭō, nĭ'sĭ prǣpŏ'sĭtō prǣcŭn'tĕ :
ĭd dŏ'cĕt ōlfă'cĭō, cūm cālfă'cĭō, inficĭŏ'quĕ.
Ā lĕ'gŏ nă'tă, rĕ, pĕr, præ, sūb, trāns, ād, prǣcŭn'tĕ,
prǣsēn'tĭs sēr'vānt vōcā'lem : ĭn ĭ cæ'tĕră mŭ'tānt ;
dē quă'bŭs hǣc, intēl'lĭgŏ, dĭ'lĭgŏ, nĕ'glĭgŏ, tān'tŭm
prætĕ'rĭtūm -lēx'ī fă'cĭūnt ; rĕ'lĭqua ōm'nĭŭ -lē'gī.

III. Of the Súpines of Símple Verbs.

Nūnc ēx prætĕ'rĭtō dīs'cās fōrmă'rĕ sŭpĭ'nŭm.

Bī sĭ'bĭ -tūm sū'mīt : sīc nām'quĕ bĭ'bī bĭ'bītūm fīt.
Cī fīt -ctum : ŭt vī'cī vīc'tūm tēstā'tŭr, ĕt ī'cī
dāns īc'tūm, fē'cī fāc'tūm, jē'cī quŏ'quĕ jāc'tūm.
Dī fīt -sum : ŭt vī'dī vīs'ūm : quæ'dām gĕ'mĭnānt s̄ ;
ŭt pān'dī pās'sūm, sēdī sēs'sum, āddĕ scī'dī, quŏd
ʒlāt scīs'sum, āt'quĕ fī'dī fīs'sum, fō'dī quŏ'quĕ fōs'sŭm.
Hīc ĕ'tiăm ādvēr'tās, quŏd sȳl'lăbă prī'mă sŭpī'nīs,
ʒuăm vūlt prætĕ'rĭtūm gĕmĭnā'rī, nōn gĕmĭnā'tŭr :
ī̆d'quĕ tŏtŏn'dī dāns tŏn'sūm dŏ'cĕt, āt'quĕ cĕcī'dī
quŏd cæ'sum, ĕt cĕ'cĭdī quŏd dāt cā'sum, āt'quĕ tĕtēn'dī
quŏd tēn'sum ĕt tēn'tūm, tŭ'tŭdī tūn'sum, āt'quĕ dĕ'dī quŏd
ʒū'rĕ dă'tūm pōs'cĭt; mōr'sum vūlt āt'quĕ mŏmŏr'dī.
Gī fīt -ctum : ŭt lē'gī lēc'tūm, pē'gī pĕpĭgī'quĕ
dānt pāc'tūm, frē'gī frāc'tūm, tĕ'tĭgī quŏ'quĕ tāc'tūm,
ē'gī āc'tūm, pŭ'pŭgī pūnc'tūm ; fū'gī fŭ'gītūm dăt.
Lī fīt -sum : ŭt sāl'lī, stāns prō să'lĕ cōn'dĭŏ, sāl'sŭm :
ʒlāt pĕpŭlī pūl'sūm, cĕ'cŭlī cūl'sum, āt'quĕ fĕfēl'lī
fāl'sum : dāt vēl'lī vūl'sūm : tŭ'lĭ hă'bĕt quŏ'quĕ lā'tum.
Mī, nī, pī, quī, -tūm fōr'mānt, vĕ'lŭt hīc mănĭfēs'tum :
ē'mī ēm'ptūm, vē'nī vēn'tūm, cĕ'cĭnī ā că'nŏ cān'tūm ;
ā că'pīŏ cē'pī cāp'tūm ; cæ'pī quŏ'quĕ cæp'tūm ;
ā rūm'pŏ rū'pī rūp'tūm ; lī'quī quŏ'quĕ līc'tūm.
Rī fīt -sum : ŭt vēr'rī vēr'sūm : pĕ'pĕrī ex'cĭpĕ pār'tūm.
Sī fīt -sum : ŭt vī'sī vī'sūm ; tă'mĕn s̄ gĕmĭnā'tō
mī'sī fōrmā'bĭt nīs'sūm : fūl'sĭ ex'cĭpĕ fūl'tūm,
haū'sī haūs'tūm, sār'sī sār'tūm, fār'sī quŏ'quĕ fār'tūm,
ūs'sī ūs'tūm, gēs'sī gēs'tūm ; tōr'sī dŭ'ŏ, tōr'tŭm
ĕt tōr'sum ; īndūl'sī īndūl'tum, īndūlsūm'quĕ rĕquī'rĭt.
Psī fīt -ptum : ŭt scrīp'sī scrīp'tūm ; scŭl'psī quŏ'quĕ scŭl'ptŭm.
Tī fīt -tum : ā stō nām'quĕ stĕ'tī, ā sīstŏ'quĕ stī'tī, dānt
ām'bō rī'tĕ stā'tūm : vērtī tă'mĕn ex'cĭpĕ vēr'sŭm.
Vī fīt -tum : ŭt flā'vī flā'tūm : pā'vī ex'cĭpĕ pās'tūm :
dāt lā'vī lō'tum, īntēr'dūm laū'tum, āt'quĕ lăvā'tūm ;
pōtā'vī pō'tum, īntēr'dūm fă'cĭt ĕt pōtā'tūm :
sēd fā'vī faū'tūm ; că'vī caū'tum. Ā sĕ'rŏ sē'vī
fōr'mēs rī'tĕ să'tūm ; lī'vī līnī'quĕ lī'tum dānt :
sōl'vi ā sōl'vŏ sōlū'tūm ; vōl'vī ā vōl'vŏ vŏlū'tŭm ;
c̄ult sīngŭltī'vī sīngŭl'tūm ; vĕ'nĕŏ vē'nīs
vēnī'vī vē'nūm ; sĕpĕl'ī'vī rī'tĕ sĕpūl'tūm.
Quŏd dăt -ŭī dăt -ĭtum : ŭt dŏ'mŭī dŏ'mĭtum :—ex'cĭpĕ
    quŏd'cīs
vēr'bum īn -ŭō, quĭă sēm'pĕr -ŭī fōrmā'bĭt īn -ū'tūm ;

ĕx'ŭi; *ut* ēxū'tum : *ā* rŭ'ŏ *dē'mĕ* rŭ'ī rŭ'ĭtum *dāns* :
vŭlt sĕ'cŭi sēc'tum, nĕ'cŭi nēc'tum, frĭcŭi'*quĕ*
frĭc'tum ; mīs'cŭi *ĭ'tĕm* mīs'tum, *ĕt* ămī'cŭi *dăt* ămīc'tum ;[37]
tōr'rŭi *hă'bĕt* tōs'tum, dŏ'cŭi dōc'tum, tĕnŭi'*quĕ*
tēn'tum, cōnsŭ'lŭi cōnsūl'tum, ă'lŭi āl'tum ălĭtūm'*quĕ* ;
sīc să'lŭi sāl'tum, cŏ'lŭi ŏccŭ'lŭi *quŏ'quĕ* cūl'tŭm :
pīn'sŭi *hă'bĕt* pīs'tum, ră'pŭi rāp'tum, sĕrŭi'*quĕ*
ā sĕ'rŏ *vŭlt* sēr'tum ; *sīc* tēx'ŭi *hă'bĕt* *quŏ'quĕ* tēx'tum.
Hāc sĕd -ŭi *mū'tānt ĭn* -sum ; *nām* cēn'sĕŏ cēn'sum,
Cēl'lŭi *hă'bĕt* cēl'sum, mĕ'tŏ mēs'sŭi *hă'bĕt* *quŏ'quĕ* mēs'sŭm.
Nēx'ŭi *ĭ'tĕm* nēx'um, *sīc* pēx'ŭi *hă'bĕt* *quŏ'quĕ* pēx'ŭm.
Xī *fĭt* -ctum : *ŭt* vīn'xī vīnc'tum : *quĭn'que ābjĭ'cĭŭnt* n̄ ;
ŭt fīn'xī fīc'tum, mīn'xī mīc'tum, *ād'jĭcĕ* pīn'xī
dāns pīc'tum, strīn'xī strīc'tum, rīn'xī *quŏ'quĕ* rīc'tum.
Xūm, flēx'ī, plēx'ī, fīx'ī, *dānt* ; *ĕt* flŭ'ŏ flūx'ŭm.

IV. Of the Súpines of Cómpound Verbs.

*Cōmpŏ'sĭtum ŭt sīm'plēx fōrmā'tŭr quŏd'quĕ sŭpī'nŭm,
quăm'vīs nōn ĕ'ădēm stēt sŷl'lăbă sēm'pĕr ŭtrī'quĕ.
Cōmpŏ'sita ā* tūn'sum, *dēm'ptā* n̄, -tū'sum : *ā* rŭ'ĭtum *fĭt*,
ĭ *mĕ'diā dēm'ptā*, -rŭ'tum ; *ĕt ā* sāl'tum *quŏ'quĕ* -sūl'tŭm ;
ā sĕ'rŏ, *quăn'dŏ* să'tum *fōr'māt, cōmpōstă* -sī'tum *dānt.
Hāc* cāp'tum, făc'tum, jăc'tum, răp'tum, ā *pĕr ĕ mŭ'tānt,
ĕt* cān'tum, pār'tum, spār'sum, cār'ptum, *quŏ'quĕ* fār'tum.
Vēr'bum ĕ'dŏ cōmpŏ'sĭtŭm nōn -ēs'tum, *sĕd fŭ'cĭt* -ē'sŭm ;
ŭ'nŭm dūntāx'ăt cŏ'mēdŏ *fōrmā'bĭt ŭtrŭm'quĕ.
Ā* nōs'cō *tān'tŭm dŭ'ŏ* cōg'nĭtum *ĕt* āg'nĭtum *hăbēn'tŭr :
că'tĕră dānt* nō'tŭm : *nŭl'lo ēst jăm* nōs'cĭtum *ĭn ŭ'sŭ.*

V. Of the Preterpérfect Tense of Verbs in -ŏr.

Vēr'ba ĭn -ŏr *ādmĭt'tŭnt ēx pōstĕ'rĭōrĕ sŭpī'nō
prætĕ'rĭtŭm, vēr'sŏ* -ū *pĕr* -ŭs, *ēt* sum *cōnsŏcĭā'tō
vēl* fŭ'ī: *ŭt ā* lēc'tū, lēc'tŭs sum *vēl* fŭ'ī. *Ăt hō'rŭm
nūnc ēst* dēpō'nēns, *nūnc ēst* cōmmŭ'nĕ *nŏtān'dŭm :
nām* lā'bŏr lāp'sŭs ; *pă'tĭŏr dăt* pās'sŭs, *ĕt ĕ'jŭs
nā'ta ; ŭt* cōmpă'tĭŏr cōmpās'sŭs, pĕrpĕtĭŏr'*quĕ
fŏr'māns* pĕrpēs'sŭs : fā'tĕŏr *dăt* fās'sŭs, *ĕt ĭn'dĕ
nā'ta ; ŭt* cōnfĭ'tĕŏr cōnfēs'sŭs, dĭffĭtĕŏr'*quĕ
fŏr'māns* dĭffēs'sŭs : gră'dĭŏr *dăt* grēs'sŭs, *ĕt ĭn'dĕ*

nā′ta ; ŭt dīgrĕ′dĭŏr dīgrēs′sŭs: *jūn′gĕ* fătīs′cŏr
fēs′sŭs sūm, mēn′sŭs sūm mĕ′tĭŏr, ū′tŏr ĕt ū′sŭs.
Prō tēx′o ōrdī′tŭs, *pro incēp′tŏ* dăt ōr′dĭŏr ōr′sŭs,
nī′tŏr nī′sŭs *vĕl* nīx′ŭs sum, ŭlcīs′cŏr ĕt ŭl′tŭs ;
Īrās′cŏr *sĭ′mŭl* īrā′tŭs, rĕ′ŏr *āt′quĕ* rā′tŭs sŭm,
ōblīvīs′cŏr *vŭlt* ōblī′tŭs sum, frŭ′ŏr *ŏp′tăt*
frūc′tŭs *vĕl* frŭ′ītŭs: mĭsĕrĕ′rī *jūn′gĕ* mĭsĕr′tŭs.
Vŭlt tŭ′ŏr ĕt tŭ′ĕŏr *nōn* tū′tŭs, *sēd* tŭ′ītŭs sŭm :
ā lŏ′quŏr *ād′dĕ* lŏcū′tŭs ; ĕt *ā* sĕ′quŏr *ād′dĕ* sĕcū′tŭs.
Ēxpĕ′rĭŏr *fă′cĭt* ēxpĕr′tŭs ; *fōr′mā′rĕ* păcīs′cŏr
gaū′dĕt păc′tŭs sŭm, nāncīs′cŏr nāc′tŭs, ăpīs′cŏr,
quōd vĕ′tŭs ēst vēr′bum, āp′tŭs sum ; *ŭn′de* ădĭpīs′cŏr ădēp′tŭs.
Jūn′gĕ quĕ′rŏr quēs′tŭs, prŏfĭcīs′cŏr *jūn′gĕ* prŏfēc′tŭs,
ēxpērgīs′cŏr sum ēxpērrēc′tŭs ; *ĕt hæc quŏ′quĕ* cōmmĭ-
nīs′cŏr cōmmēn′tŭs, nās′cŏr nā′tŭs, mŏrĭŏr′*quĕ*
mŏr′tŭŭs ; *āt′que* ŏ′rĭŏr, *quōd prætĕ′rĭtum fă′cĭt* ōr′tŭs.

VI. Of Verbs which make the Preterpérfect Tense both of the áctive and pássive Voice.

Prætĕ′rĭtum āctī′væ ēt pāssī′væ vō′cĭs hă′bēnt hæc :
cæ′nō cænā′vi ēt cænā′tŭs sūm *tĭ′bĭ fōr′măt,*
jŭ′rō jūrā′vi ēt jūrā′tŭs, pŏ′tŏ*quĕ* pŏtā′vi [38]
ēt pŏ′tŭs, tĭ′tŭbō tĭ′tŭbā′vī *vĕl* tĭtŭbā′tŭs.
Prān′dĕŏ prān′di ēt prān′sŭs sŭm, plă′cĕŏ plă′cŭī *dăt*
ēt plă′cĭtŭs, suēs′cō suē′vī *vŭlt āt′quĕ* suē′tŭs.
Nŭ′bō nŭp′sī nūp′tă*quĕ* sŭm, mĕ′rĕŏr mĕ′rĭtŭs sŭm,
vĕl mĕ′rŭ̄i ; *ād′dĕ* lĭ′bēt lĭ′bŭ̄it lĭ′bĭtum, ēt lĭ′cĕt *ād′dĕ*
quōd lĭ′cŭ̄it lĭ′cĭtŭm, tæ′dēt *quŏd* tæ′dŭ̄it ēt dăt
pērtæ′sum : *ād′dĕ* pŭ′dēt *fă′cĭens* pŭ′dŭ̄it pŭdĭtŭm′*quĕ ;*
āt′quĕ pĭ′gēt, *tĭ′bĭ quōd fōr′măt* pĭ′gŭ̄it pĭgĭtŭm′*quĕ.*

VII. Of the Préterite of Verbs Neúter-pássive.

Neŭ′trō-pāssī′vŭm sĭc prætĕ′rĭtum tĭ′bĭ fōr′măt :
gaū′dĕŏ gāvī′sŭs sūm, fī′dō fī′sŭs, *ĕt* aū′dĕŏ [39]
aū′sŭs sūm, fī′ō fāc′tŭs, sŏ′lĕŏ sŏ′lĭtŭs sūm.

---

[38] The last sýllable of this verse, béing hypérmeter, is elíded befóre the inítial vówel of the first word of the next line.

[39] The scánning requíres aū′dĕŏ to be a díssyllable, else the fínal **o** to be elíded befóre aū′sŭs of the next verse

Verbs which want the Preterpérfect Tense.

Prætĕ′rĭtŭm fŭ′gĭŭnt, vēr′go, ām′bĭgŏ, glīs′cŏ, fătīs′cŏ,
pōl′lĕŏ, nĭ′dĕo : *ăd hæc incēptĭ′va ; ŭt pŭĕrās′cŏ ;*
ēt pāssĭ′vă, quĭ′bŭs cărŭĕ′re āctĭ′vă sŭpĭ′nis ;
ŭt mĕ′tŭŏr, tĭ′mĕŏr : *mĕdĭtātĭ′va ōm′nĭă, præ′tĕr*
pārtŭ′rĭo, ēsŭ′rĭŏ ; *quæ prētĕ′rĭtŭm dŭ′ŏ sēr′vănt.*

Verbs which séldom admit a Súpine.

Hæc rā′ro aŭt nŭn′quăm rĕtĭnē′bŭnt vēr′bă sŭpĭ′nŭm :
lām′bŏ, mĭ′co mĭ′cŭī, rŭ′dŏ, scă′bŏ, pār′cŏ pĕpĕr′cī,
dīspēs′cŏ, pōs′cŏ, dīs′cŏ, cōmpēs′cŏ, quĭnīs′cŏ.
Dĕ′go, ān′gŏ, sŭ′gŏ, lin′gō, nin′gō, sătăgō′quĕ,
psāl′lŏ, vŏ′lŏ, nō′lŏ, mā′lŏ, trĕ′mŏ, strĭ′dĕŏ, strĭ′dŏ,
flā′vĕŏ, lĭ′vĕo, ă′vĕt, pă′vĕŏ, cōnnĭ′vĕŏ, fĕr′vĕt.
Ā nŭ′ŏ *cōmpŏ′sĭtum ; ŭt* rĕ′nŭo : *ā* că′do ; *ŭt* āc′cĭdŏ : *præ′tĕr*
ōc′cĭdŏ *quŏd fă′cĭt* ōccā′sŭm, rĕcĭdŏ′quĕ rĕcā′sŭm.
Rēs′pŭŏ, lin′quŏ, lŭ′ŏ, mĕ′tŭŏ, clŭ′ŏ, frĭ′gĕŏ, cāl′vĕo,[40]
ēt stĕr′tŏ, tĭ′mĕŏ : *sīc* lŭ′cĕo, *ĕt* ār′cĕŏ, *cŭ′jŭs*
cōmpŏ′sĭta -ĕr′cĭtum *hă′bēnt : sīc ā* grŭ′o, *ŭt* in′grŭŏ, *nă′tă ;*
ēt quæ′cūnque in -ŭī *fōrmān′tŭr* neŭ′tră *sĕcŭn′dæ :*
ēxcĭ′pĭăs ŏ′lĕŏ, dŏ′lĕŏ, plă′cĕŏ, tăcĕŏ′quĕ,
pā′rĕŏ, *ĭ′tēm* că′rĕŏ, nŏ′cĕŏ, jă′cĕŏ, lătĕŏ′quĕ,
ēt vă′lĕŏ, că′lĕŏ : *gaŭ′dēnt hæc năm′quĕ sŭpĭ′nō.*

EXCEPTIONS TO SOME OF THE FOREGOING RULES.

1. Althoúgh *dăm′nŏ* and *trăc′tŏ,* when compoúnded, génerally change the first vówel (*a*) into *e,* yet prædām′nŏ, *I condémn befórehand,* pĕr-trāc′tŏ, *I treat thóroughly,* and rĕtrāc′tŏ, *I hándle agáin,* are to be excépted.

2. Althoúgh *hă′bĕŏ,* when compoúnded, génerally chánges the first vówel (*a*) into *i,* yet āntĕhă′bĕŏ, *I prefér,* and pōsthă′bĕŏ, *I postpóne,* must be excépted.

3. Althoúgh *lă′vŏ,* when compoúnded, génerally rejécts the first vówel, yet rĕ′lăvŏ, *I wash agáin,* retáins it.

4. Althoúgh the verbs *ĕ′mŏ* and *sĕ′dĕŏ,* when compoúnded, change the first vówel (*e*) of the présent tense into *i,* yet cŏ′ĕmŏ, *I buy up,* and sŭpērsĕ′dĕŏ, *to omít* or *forbeár,* are to be excépted. Lástly, to pĕr′ăgŏ and săt′ăgŏ, cómpounds of *ă′gŏ* retáining the first vówel, may be ádded cīrcŭm′ăgŏ, *I drive abóut.*

---

[40] Here cāl′vĕŏ must be consídered a díssyllable, else the fínal *o,* being an hypérmeter sýllable, must súffer elísion, befóre the vówel *e* at the begínning of the next line.

SYNTAXIS:[1]

OR THE

CONSTRUCTION OF GRAMMAR.

☞ In the fóllowing Rules the short final sýllables are márked short, with-oút réference to position ; but in the Exámples to the Rules, whenéver ány Exámple is in verse, all short sýllables long by position are márked long, agreéaoly to the plan which we adópted in the métrical Rules for the génder of nouns, and formátion of the préterite and súpines of verbs.

⁎ The Exámples to the Rules of Constrúction are here séverally prínted in Itálic, with the excéption of the words to which ány Rule more partícu-larly reférs, those words are in Róman cháracters to distínguish them from tho rest.

CONCORDANTIA PRIMA.[2]

Nōmĭnātī'vŭs ĕt Vēr'bŭm.

The First Cóncord. The Nóminative Case and the Verb.

VĒR'BŬM pērsōnā'lĕ cōncŏr'dăt cŭm nōmĭnātī'vō, nŭ'mĕrō ĕt pērsō'nā :[3] ŭt,

—*Sē'ră nŭn'quam ēst ād bŏ'nōs mō'rēs vī'ă.*   Sen.

---

[1] Sýntax is that part of Grámmar which teáches the right constrúction of words in a séntence, accórding to cértain Rules, but with occásional excéptions. It consísts of Con'cord, or the right agreément of words with one another, and of Go'vernment, or the due ínfluence and de-péndence of words on one anóther.

[2] There are in Grámmar three Cóncords : *first*, of a verb with its nóminative ; *sécond*, of an ádjective with its súbstantive ; *third*, of the Rélative with its antecédent.

[3] The símplest séntence póssible consísts of a neúter verb and its nóminative case, either expréssed or understoód :—as Dĕ'ŭs ēst, *God is*, or *there is a God* ; dōr'mĭŏ, *I sleep*, or, *I am asleép*, understánd ĕ'gŏ ; tŏ'nāt, *it thúnders*, understánd ĭd, *it*. The séntence which has the next degreé of simplícity to the símplest, is that which consísts of a tránsitive verb, with its nóminative case, and régimen : as, lū'nă rĕ'gĭt mēn'sēs, *the moon rules the months*. As, howéver, there is fréquently an Ellípsis of the nóminative in a séntence, so, álso, is there sómetimes an ellípsis of the verb : as, Dī mēlĭŏ'ră, understánd dēnt, *may the Gods awárd létter things :* quŏt hŏ'mĭnēs, tŏt sēntēn'tĭæ, understánd sūnt áfter hŏ'mĭnēs and agáin áfter tŏt, that is, *as mány pérsons soéver as there are in the world, so mány dífferent opíníons are there*, or, as we say ın

Nŏmĭnātĭ'vŭs prōnō'mĭnŭm rā'rō ēxprĭ'mĭtŭr, nĭ'sĭ dĭs-
tīnctĭō'nĭs, aūt ēm'phăsĭs grā'tĭā : ŭt,

" Vōs *dāmnās'tĭs* :"

[*quă'sĭ dī'căt*, prētĕ'rēā nē'mŏ.]

" Tu *ēs pătrō'nŭs*, tū *pă'rēns*,————

" *Sī dē'sĕrĭs* tū, *pĕrĭ'ĭmŭs* :"————Ter.

[*quă'sĭ dī'căt*, " præcĭ'pŭē, ĕt præ ă'lĭĭs, tū pătrō'nŭs, ĕs."]

" *Fē'rtŭr ătrō'cĭā flāgĭ'tĭā dēsīgnās'sĕ*." Ovid.

Ălĭquān'dō ōrā'tĭō ēst vē'rbō nōmĭnātĭ'vŭs : ŭt,

————*Īngĕ'nŭās* dĭdĭcĭs'sĕ *fĭdē'lĭtĕr* ār'tēs⁴
Ēmōl'lĭt mō'rēs, nēc sĭ'nĭt ēs'sĕ fĕ'rōs. Ovid.

Ălĭquān'dō ādvē'rbĭŭm cŭm gĕnĭtĭ'vō : ŭt,

Pār'tĭm vĭrō'rŭm *cĕcĭdē'rŭnt ĭn bēl'lō*.

Excéptions.

I. Vē'rbă īnfīnĭtĭ'vī mō'dĭ frēquēn'tĕr prō nōmĭnātĭ'**vō**
āccūsātĭ'vŭm ān'tĕ sē stă'tŭŭnt, cōnjūnctĭō'nĕ *quŏd* vĕl *ŭt*
ŏmĭs'sā :⁵ ŭt,

Tē *rĕdīs'sĕ ĭncō'lŭmĕm gaū'dĕō.*

En'glish, *mány men, mány minds.* E'very verb, then, must have a nó-
minative case, either expréssed or understoód ; and évery nóminative
case must have a verb : álso two or more nóminative cáses síngular
(línked togéther by one or more cópulative conjúnctions, either expréssed
or understoód,) will have a verb plúral ; whereóf the pérson will be that
of the more wórthy súbstantive, if ány distinction of wórthiness can be
drawn :—but sómetimes the verb agreés with the nóminative neárest to
it :—as, mē pĕrī'tŭs dīs'cĕt Ĭ'bēr, Rhŏdănĭ'quĕ pō'tŏr, *me the accóm-
plished, (or refined) Spániard* (literally *skilled Ibérian*) *shall stúdy,
and the drinker of the Rhone (shall stúdy me).* On the cóntrary, a
verb plúral is sómetimes usúrped áfter a nóminative síngular and an
áblative precéded by the preposítion cŭm, *with.*

⁴ The whole of this line may be táken as the nóminative case to
ēmōl'lĭt, and likewise to sĭ'nĭt : but a verb of the infinitive mood is not
ónly fréquently the nóminative case to a verb, but álso the súbstantive
to an ádjective : as mēntī'rī tūr'pĕ ēst, *to lie is a base thing* : vēl'lĕ
sŭ'ŭm cuī'que ēst, *his own will is to évery one*, that is, *évery one has a
will of his own.*

⁵ In transláting ány En'glish séntence into Látin, if the conjúnction
' *that* ' (either expréssed or understoód) come betweén two verbs, the
látter verb may with élegance be put in the infinitive mood, its nómi-
native case béing túrned ínto the accúsative :—as, *they say (that) the
king is cóming,* aĭ'ūnt rē'gĕm ādvēntā'rē, ráther than, aĭ'ūnt quŏd rēx
ādvĕn'tăt : agáin, *he said (that) he (himsélf) would come,* dīx'ĭt sē vēntū-

II. Vĕr′bŭm ĭn′tĕr dŭ′os nōmĭnātī′vōs dīvērsō′rŭm nŭmĕ-
rō′rŭm pŏ′sĭtŭm, cŭm ăltĕrŭ′trō[6] cōncōrdā′rĕ pŏ′tēst :—ŭt,

> *Ă măn′tĭum* ī′ræ *ămō′rĭs* intĕgrā′tĭo ēst.   Ter.
> Pĕc′tŭs *quŏ′quĕ* rŏ′bŏră fī′ŭnt.   Ovid.

III. Nō′mĕn mŭltĭtū′dĭnĭs sĭngŭlā′rĕ quāndō′quĕ vĕr′bō
plūrā′lī jūn′gĭtŭr :[7] ŭt,

> Pārs *ăbĭē′rĕ.*
> Ŭtĕr′quĕ *dēlūdūn′tŭr dŏ′līs.*

Vĕr′bă īmpērsōnā′lĭă nōmĭnātī′vŭm nōn hă′bēnt ēnūncĭā′-
tŭm :[8] ŭt,

> Tæ′dĕt *mē* vī′tæ.
> Pĕrtæ′sŭm ēst *cōnjŭ′gĭī.*

---

rŭm ĕs′sĕ, ráther than dīx′ĭt quŏd ĭp′sĕ vĕnī′rĕt : but if the verb which
ought to be in the infinitive mood, ought álso to be in the fúture tense,
and it have no fúture tense of that mood, then fŏ′rĕ, *to be abóut to be,*
fóllowed by ŭt, *that,* and a subjúnctive mood must be úsed ; as, *he says
(that) I shall be áble,* dī′cĭt fŏ′rĕ, ŭt pōs′sīm. This constrúction, too,
is sómetimes véry élegantly emplóyed, éven where the verb which ought
to be in the infinitive mood, has the fúture tense. Occásionally, líkewise,
it háppens, that insteád of the infinitive mood, the subjúnctive mood,
with the omíssion of *ŭt,* is preferable ; as, īgnōs′cās, vŏ′lŏ, *I wish (that)
you would be forgíving :* jŭbē′tō, cĕr′tĕt Amȳn′tās, *give órders (that)
Amȳntas vie ;* or símply, *bid Amȳntas conténd.*

[6] Mány exámples of this sort are undoúbtedly to be met with ; but
espécially amóng the póets, who were óften compélled by the méasure of
their verse to take a líberty which could hárdly be gránted in prose ;
the efficient or real nóminative, howéver, that is, the word which (more
immédiately) ánswers to the quéstion made with the verb, ought próperly
to régulate or diréct the pérson of the verb.

[7] Nouns of múltitude, or, as they are génerally stýled, in En′glish,
Colléctive Nouns, are such as, though themsélves of the síngular númber,
have yet a plúral significátion :—for exámple, pŏ′pŭlŭs, *the péople,*
vŭl′gŭs, *the rábble,* tūr′bă, *a crowd,* ĕxĕr′cĭtŭs, *an ármy,* clās′sĭs, *a fleet,*
and the like. Whenéver the idéa implíes a separátion ínto parts, a verb
plúral is preferable ; but when there is no divísion or separátion ínto
parts, the verb should most unquéstionably be of the síngular númber.

[8] By impérsonal verbs are meant, such verbs as are néver found ex-
cépt in the third pérson síngular, and which have néver ány nóminative
expréssed in Látin ; the prónoun ĭd, *it,* béing upón all occásions under-
stoód. Some pérsonal verbs, howéver, are now and then assúmed im-
pérsonally : and all neúter verbs in -ŏ may be símilarly úsed in évery
tense of the pássive voice ; sómetimes with much élegance, and at all
times with strict confórmity to the ídiom of the Látin tongue.

CONCORDANTIA SECUNDA.

Sūbstāntī′vŭm ĕt Ādjēctī′vŭm, &c.

The Sécond Cóncord.   The Súbstantive and Ádjective.

Ādjēctī′vă, pārtĭcī′pĭă, ĕt prōnō′mĭnă, cŭm sūbstāntī′vō, gĕ′-
nĕrĕ, nŭ′mĕrō, ĕt cā′sū, cōncōr′dānt: ⁹ ŭt,

Rā′ra ă′vĭs *in* tēr′rĭs, nīgrō′quĕ sĭmĭl′lĭmă cȳg′nō.   Juv.

Ălĭquān′dō ōrā′tĭō sūp′plĕt lŏ′cŭm sūbstāntī′vĭ, ādjēctī′vō ĭn
neū′trō gĕ′nĕrĕ pŏ′sĭtō: ŭt,

Aūdī′tō rē′gĕm Dŏrŏbĕr′nĭăm prŏfĭcīs′cī.

CONCORDANTIA TERTIA.

Rĕlātī′vŭm ĕt Āntĕcē′dēns.

The Third Cóncord.   The Rélative and the Antecédent.

Rĕlātī′vŭm cŭm āntĕcēdēn′tĕ¹⁰ cōncōr′dăt, gĕ′nĕrĕ, nŭ′-
mĕrō, ĕt pērsō′nā: ŭt,

―――――― Vīr bŏ′nŭs ēst quĭs?
Quī cōnsūl′tă pā′trŭm, quī lē′gĕs jū′răquĕ sēr′văt.   Hor.

---

⁹ There can be no ádjective ín a séntence, withoút some súbstantive (eíther expréssed or understoód) agreeíng with it.   When no súbstantive is expréssed, the ádjective is pút in the neúter génder, becaúse the súbject with which it is suppósed to agreé is not detérmined eíther to be másculine or féminine, and cónsequently is regárded as neúter.   Óften-times, ádjectives agreé with súbstantives not áctually expréssed, but yet cleárly understoód : as, ămī′cŭs (vĭr) *a friéndly man*, that is, *a friend;* dēx′tră (mă′nŭs), *the right hand;* rē′gĭă (dŏ′mŭs), *a róyal mánsion* or *king's pálace ;* paū′pĕr (hŏ′mŏ), *a poor pérson ;* prŏfūn′dŭm *vel* āl′tŭm (mă′rĕ), *the deep,* that is, *the deep sea* or *ócean ;* fĕrī′nă (că′rō) *wild flesh,* meáning, *vénison* : with véry mány besídes.

¹⁰ The antecédent is sómetimes whólly withhéld in its own claúse of a séntence, and élegantly expréssed in the same caúse of the Rélative, and in the same caúse with the Rélative : as, ūr′bĕm quăm stă′tŭō, vĕs′tra ēst, that is, *the cíty which I build (or am aboút to eréct) is yours.*   Some-times, too, the antecédent is gíven in both claúses, as, dī′ĕm dī′cŭnt quō dī′ē, *they name or appoínt a day, on which day :* sómetimes, agaín the antecédent is entírely suppréssed ; thus, vīn′cĕ, quī vīn′cĭs, *cónquer-thou who cónquerest ;* understánd tū, *thou :* mī′sĭt quī cōgnōs′cĕrĕnt, *he sent (pérsons) who might explóre,* or, *he sent to explóre ;* understánd mī′lĭtĕs, *sóldiers,* else, ĕxplōrātō′rēs, *scouts :*―and sómetimes, agaín, the Rélative is understoód ; as, ūrbs āntī′quă fŭ′ĭt, Tȳ′rĭī tĕnŭē′rĕ cŏlō′nī,

Ălĭquān'dō ōrā'tĭŏ pŏ'nĭtŭr prō āntĕcēdēn'tĕ : ŭt,

Ĭn tēm'pŏrĕ *ăd ĕ'ăm vĕ'nī,* quód *rē'rŭm ōm'nĭŭm est prī'mŭm.*

Rĕlātī'vŭm īn'tĕr dŭ'ŏ sŭbstāntī'vă[11] dīvērsō'rŭm gĕ'nĕrŭm [ĕt nŭmĕrō'rŭm] cōllŏcā'tŭm, īntĕr'dŭm cŭm pōstĕrĭō'rĕ cōncōr'dāt : ŭt,

Hŏ'mĭnēs tŭĕn'tŭr ĭl'lŭm glŏ'bŭm quæ tēr'ră *dī'cĭtŭr.* Cic.

Ălĭquān'dō rĕlātī'vŭm cōncōr'dāt cŭm prīmĭtī'vō, quŏd ĭn pōssēssī'vō sŭbaŭdī'tŭr : ŭt,

————— *ōm'nēs ōm'nĭă bŏ'nă dī'cĕre, ēt laūdā'rĕ fōrtū'nās* mĕ'ās, quī[12] *gnā'tum hăbē'rēm tā'lī ĭngĕ'nĭŏ præ'dĭtŭm.* Ter.

Sī nōmĭnātī'vŭs rĕlātī'vō ĕt vēr'bō īntērpōnā'tŭr,[13] rĕlātī'-vŭm rĕ'gĭtŭr ā vēr'bō, aūt, ăb ā'lĭā dīctĭŏ'nĕ, quæ cŭm vēr'bō īn ōrātĭŏ'nĕ lŏcā'tŭr : ŭt,

Grā'tĭa ăb ōffĭ'cĭō, quōd mŏ'ră tār'dāt, *ăb'ēst.* Ovid.
Cū'jŭs nū'mĕn *ădō'rō.*

---

there was an áncient cíty (uhich) Týrian cólonists posséssed: but in En'glish this omíssion is much more fréquent than in Látin. Here it is wórthy of the nótice of leárners that the Rélative agreés with its ante-cédent in *génder, númber,* and *PER'SON,* but with that antecédent, if found in the same clause of the séntence with the Rélative itsélf, the Rélative agreés in *génder, númber,* and *CASE.*

[11] The restríction méntioned in note 6, abóve, is équally ápplicable in the présent ínstance : for the Rélative ought álways to agreé with the súbstantive which is more immédiately and osténsibly its antecédent, unléss indeéd some véry weíghty reáson can be assígned for déviating from this práctice.

[12] Here quī has, for its antecédent, mĕ'ī, *of me,* understoód in the pos-séssive ádjective mĕ'ās, *my,* of the precéding line.

[13] The *Case* of the Rélative álways depénds upón some word in the same clause of the séntence with itsélf, but it takes its *génder, númber,* and *pérson,* from the súbstantive to which it párticularly reférs, and which is génerally in some fórmer clause of the séntence. When the Rélative is not the nóminative case to àny verb, it may be víewed as a súbstantive ráther than an ádjective, as it is góverned precísely in the same mánner as a súbstantive is góverned :—if, howéver, the Rélative agreés with àny súbstantive exprésed in its own clause of the séntence, then it is to all inténts an ádjective, and the súbstantive with which it agreés, dirécts its case.

NOMINUM CONSTRUCTIO.

1. SUBSTANTIVA.

The Constrúction of Nouns Súbstantive.

Quŭm dŭ'ŏ sŭbstántĭ'vă dĭvēr'sæ sĭgnĭfĭcātĭŏ'nĭs[14] cōncŭr'-rŭnt, pōstē'rĭŭs ĭn gĕnĭtĭ'vō pō'nĭtŭr : ŭt,

Crēs'cĭt ă'mōr nūm'mī, quān'tum ĭp'să pĕcū'nĭă crēs'cĭt.

Hīc gĕnĭtĭ'vŭs ălĭquān'dŏ ĭn dătĭ'vŭm vēr'tĭtŭr : ŭt,

Ŭr'bī pă'tĕr *ēst*, ūrbī*quĕ* mărī'tŭs. Luc.

Ādjēctī'vŭm ĭn neū'trō gĕ'nĕrĕ sĭ'nĕ sŭbstántĭ'vō pō'sĭtŭm, ălĭquān'dŏ gĕnĭtĭ'vŭm[15] pōs'tŭlăt : ŭt,

Paŭ'lŭlŭm pĕcū'nĭæ.

Pō'nĭtŭr ĭntēr'dŭm gĕnĭtĭ'vŭs tān'tŭm, prĭō'rĕ sŭbstántĭ'vŏ pĕr ēllīp'sĭn sŭbaūdĭ'tō :[16] ŭt,

――――*Ŭ'bi* ād Dĭă'næ *vē'nĕris,*

Ī'to ād dēx'trăm :――――Ter.

[*Subaúdi* témplum.]

――――

[14] In réndering En'glish ínto Látin, it not unfréquently háppens that two súbstantives of dífferent significátion come togéther with the sign *of* betweén them, whereóf the látter ought not in confórmity to the Látin ídiom to be put in the génitive case : for ínstance, whenéver the látter súbstantive denótes the *súbstance* or *matérials* of which the fórmer consísts, the Látin ídiom requíres the áblative case precéded by ē, ĕx, or dĕ, *out of* or *of*; else, that the súbstantive of *mátter* be túrned ínto the ádjective expréssive of that sort of mátter. Thus, the two súbstantives, *a vase of sílver*, that is, *a sílver vase*, must not be réndered vās ārgĕn'tī, but vās ĕx ārgĕn'tō fāc'tŭm, or vās ārgĕn'tĕŭm. In líke mánner, óther súbstantives are occásionally convérted ínto their ádjectives : as, *my fáther's house* may be transláted, dŏ'mŭs pă'trĭs or dŏ'mŭs pătēr'nă.

[15] The ádjectives more cómmonly úsed in this way are those which reláte to Quántity or Númber ; as, mŭl'tŭm, *much*, plūs, *more*, plŭ'rĭ-mŭm, *very much* or *very many*, pār'vŭm, *little*, mĭ'nŭs, *less*, mĭ'nĭmŭm, *the least thing* or *pórtion*, sūm'mŭm, *the very híghest pitch*, ŭl'tĭmŭm, *the last stage*, ĕxtrĕ'mŭm, *the útmost verge*, mĕ dĭum, *the míddle divísion* or *point :*—with the prónouns, hŏc, *this*, ĭd, *that*, quĭd, *what ;* and the séveral cómpounds of quĭd, as, ă'lĭquĭd, *ánything*, nē'quĭd, *no one thing ;* thus, quĭd rĕ'ī ? *what is the mátter ?*

[16] This is an élegant mode of expréssion, províded ónly that the omíssion be consístent with perspícuity, and that the púrport of the speáker or wríter, be at once (and unambíguously) évident : thus ĭn En'glish we say, St. Paul's, meáning *the Cathédral* of St. Paul : and St. James's, meáning *the Pálace* of St. James, else *the Church* or *Párish*

Dŭ'ŏ sūbstāntĭ'vă rĕ'ī ējŭs'dĕm, ĭn ĕŏ'dĕm cā'sŭ pōnŭn'tŭr:¹⁷ ŭt,

Ĕffŏdiūn'tŭr ŏ'pēs, īrrītāmēn'tă *mălō'rŭm.* Ovid.

Laūs, vĭtŭpĕ'rĭŭm, vĕl *quă'lĭtās* rĕ'ī,¹⁸ pō'nĭtŭr ĭn āblātī'vō, ĕ'tĭăm gĕnĭtī'vō: ŭt,

Īngĕ'nŭī vūl'tŭs *pŭ'ĕr,* ĭngĕnŭī'quĕ pŭdō'rĭs. Juv.
Vīr nūl'lā fī'dĕ.

Ŏ'pŭs ĕt *ū'sŭs* āblātĭ'vŭm ēx'ĭgŭnt: ŭt,

Aūctōrĭtā'tĕ *tŭā* nō'bīs ŏ'pŭs ēst. Cic.
Pĕcŭ'nĭăm, (quā *nĭ'hīl sĭ'bĭ* ēs'sĕt ū'sŭs,) *ăb ĭis* nōn āccē'pĭt. Gell.

Ŏ'pŭs aū'tĕm ādjēctī'vē, prō " *nĕcēssā'rĭŭs,*" quāndō'quĕ pōnī vĭdē'tŭr: ŭt,

Dūx *nō'bīs* ĕt aūc'tŏr ŏ'pŭs ēst. Cic.

II. ADJECTIVA.
The Constrúction of Nouns Ádjective.

1. Gĕnĭtī'vŭs pōst Adjēctī'vŭm.
The Génitive Case áfter the Ádjective.

Ādjēctī'vă quæ dēsīdĕ'rĭŭm, nōtĭ'tĭăm, mĕmŏ'rĭăm, tĭmō'—

---

named after that Saint. So, in Látin, by "pĕr Vārrō'nĭs" was meant "pĕr fūn'dŭm Vārrō'nĭs," *through Várro's ground or glebe;* líkewise, by "Pōppæ'ă Nĕrō'nĭs," was meant "Pōppæ'ă Nĕrō'nĭs ŭx'ŏr," *Néro's consort or wife Poppéa*——and so forth.

¹⁷ Of the substantives thus concórding in case, one may be síngular, the óther plúral; as, ūrbs Āthē'næ, *the cíty A'thens,* fī'lĭŭs, dĕlĭ'cĭæ mā'trĭs, *a son, the dárling of his móther.*

¹⁸ The exámples fálling únder this Rúle (in so far, at least, as regárds the áblative case,) seem to be góverned by some ádjective, or preposí-tion, understoód: thus, vĭr nūllā fī'dĕ, *a man with no prínciple;* under-stánd cŭm, *with,* else, præ'dĭtŭs cŭm, *endúed with.* In most ínstances either the génitive or áblative may be assúmed indífferently: but, agáin, there are cértain phráses, in which the génitive is more élegant than the áblative; and óthers, in which the áblative is deémed préferable to the génitive:—thus, the Rómans said, "ĕs bŏ'nō ă'nĭmō," *be of good cheer,* or, *of coúrage,* ráther than "ĕs bŏ'nī ă'nĭmī;" but, "hŏ'mŏ ī'mī sŭbsēl'lĭī," *a pérson of the lówest caste, or rank,* ráther than "hŏ'mŏ ī'mō sŭbsēl'lĭō." Cícero has "sūmmā spē, sūm'mæ vīrtū'tĭs," *of the híghest hope, the híghest válour,* in one and the same séntence. Occásionally,

rĕm sĭgnĭ′fĭcănt, ăt′quĕ ĭ′īs cōntrā′rĭă, gĕnĭtī′vŭm ēxĭ′gŭnt ;[19]
ŭt,

> *Ēst nătū′ră hŏ′mĭnŭm nŏvĭtā′tĭs ă′vĭdă.*   Plin.
> *Mēns* fŭtū′rī præ′scĭă.
> Mĕ′mŏr ēs′tŏ brĕ′vĭs æ′vī.
> *Ĭnĭ′mĕmŏr bĕnĕfĭ′cĭī.*
> *Ĭmpĕrĭ′tŭs rē′rŭm.*   Ter.
> *Rŭ′dĭs bĕl′lī.*
> *Tĭ′mĭdŭs Dĕŏ′rŭm.*   Ovid.
> *Ĭmpă′vĭdŭs sŭ′ī.*   Claud.

Cŭm plŭ′rĭmĭs ă′lĭīs quæ ăffĕctĭŏ′nĕm ă′nĭmī dĕ′nŏtănt.

Adjēctī′vă vērbā′lĭă ĭn -*ax* ĕ′tĭăm gĕnĭtī′vŭm ēx′ĭgŭnt : ŭt,

> *Au′dāx ĭngĕ′nĭī.*
> *Tēm′pŭs ĕ′dāx rē′rŭm.*   Ovid.

Nŏ′mĭnă pārtītī′vă, nŭmĕrā′lĭă, cōmpărātī′vă, ĕt sŭpērlă-
tī′vă, ĕt quæ′dăm ădjēctī′vă pārtītī′vē[20] pŏ′sĭtă, gĕnĭtī′vŭm, ā
quŏ ĕt gĕ′nŭs mūtŭăn′tŭr, ēx′ĭgŭnt : ŭt,

> Ŭ′trŭm hŏ′rŭm *mā′vīs ăc′cĭpĕ,*
> Prī′mŭs rē′gŭm *Rōmānō′rŭm fŭ′ĭt Rō′mŭlŭs.*
> Mă′nŭŭm fŏr′tĭŏr ēst dĕx′tră.
> Dĭgĭtō′rŭm mĕ′dĭŭs ēst lōngĭs′sĭmŭs.
> Sĕ′quĭmŭr tē, sānc′tĕ Dĕŏ′rŭm !

Ūsūrpān′tŭr au′tĕm ĕt cŭm hīs præpŏsĭtĭŏ′nĭbŭs, *ā, ăb, dē,
ē, ēx, ĭn′tĕr, ăn′tĕ :* ŭt,

> Tēr′tĭŭs ăb *Ænē′ā.*
> Sō′lŭs dē *sŭ′pĕrīs.*

---

however, an ádjective expréssed agreés with the fórmer of the two súb-
stantives, and then the látter is put in the áblative case :—as, vĭr prŭ-
dēn′tĭā ēxcēl′lēns, *a man excélling in prúdence,* that is, *a man of extra-
órdinary prúdence.*

[19] To these may be ádded, ádjectives expréssive of *díligence, perse-
vérance, cértainty, pátience, engágement, cárefulness, guílt, síckness,
anxíety, kíndness, liberálity, prodigálity,* and séveral óther quálities and
afféctions of the like náture : with their ópposites, as, *remíssness, insta-
bílity, doubt, impátience, disengágement, négligence, ínnocence, health,
fréedom from care, unkíndness, pársimony, níggardness :* and a host
besídes.

[20] By *nouns pártitive,* and *ádjectives put pártitively,* are meant such
nouns and ádjectives as denóte a part, or pórtion, of ány whole.   When
there are two súbstantives of different génders, the ádjective agreés with
the first ráther than the last : as, Ĭn′dŭs flŭ′mĭnŭm māx′ĭmŭs, *the Índus,
greátest of rivers :* lĕ′ŏ ănĭmā′lĭŭm fŏrtĭs′sĭmŭs, *the lion, stróngest or
brávest of ánimals.*

Dĕ′ŭs ē vō′bīs āl′tĕr ĕs. Ovid.
Prī′mŭs īn′tĕr ōm′nēs.
Prī′mŭs ān′tĕ ōm′nēs.

Sĕcŭn′dŭs ălĭquān′dō dătĭ′vŭm ĕx′ĭgĭt : ŭt,

—— *Haŭd ūl′lī vĕ′tĕrŭm vīrtū′tĕ sĕcŭn′dŭs.* Virg.

Īntĕrrŏgātī′vŭm ĕt ĕ′jŭs rĕddĭtī′vŭm, ĕjūs′dĕm cā′sūs ĕt tēm′pŏrĭs ĕ′rŭnt,—nĭ′sĭ vō′cēs vă′rĭæ cōnstrūctĭō′nĭs ădhĭbĕān′tŭr : ŭt,

Quā′rŭm rē′rŭm *nūl′lă* ēst sătĭ′ĕtās ? Dīvĭtĭā′rŭm.
Fŭrtĭ′nĕ *āccū′sās,* ăn hŏmĭcĭ′dĭī ? Ŭtrō′quĕ.

2. Dătĭ′vŭs pōst Ādjēctĭ′vŭm.

The Dátive Case áfter the Ádjective.

Ādjēctī′vă quĭ′bŭs cōm′mŏdŭm, īncōm′mŏdŭm, sĭmĭlĭtū′dŏ, dĭssĭmĭlĭtū′dŏ, vŏlŭp′tās, sŭbmīs′sĭŏ, aŭt rĕlā′tĭŏ ăd ă′lĭquĭd[21] sĭgnĭfĭcā′tŭr, dătĭ′vŭm pōs′tŭlānt : ŭt,

Sī fă′cĭs ŭt pă′trĭæ sĭt ĭdō′nĕŭs, ū′tĭlĭs āg′rīs. Juv.
Tŭr′bă grā′vĭs pā′cī, plăcĭdæ′que ĭnĭmī′că quĭĕ′tī. Mart.
Pă′trī sĭ′mĭlĭs. Cic.
Quī cŏ′lŏr āl′bŭs ĕ′rāt, nūnc ēst cōntrā′rĭŭs āl′bō. Ovid.
Jūcŭn′dŭs ămī′cĭs. Mart.
Ōm′nĭbŭs sŭp′plēx.
Ēst fīnĭ′tĭmŭs ōrātō′rī pŏĕ′tă.

Hūc rĕfĕrŭn′tŭr nŏ′mĭnă ēx *cōn* præpŏsĭtĭō′nĕ cōmpŏ′sĭtă : ŭt, *cōntŭbērnā′lĭs, cōmmĭ′lĭtŏ, cōnsēr′vŭs, cōgnā′tŭs.*

Quæ′dăm ēx hīs, quæ sĭmĭlĭtū′dĭnĕm sĭgnĭ′fĭcānt, ĕ′tĭăm gĕnĭtī′vō jūngŭn′tŭr : ŭt,

Quēm mĕ′tŭīs, pār hŭ′jŭs ĕ′rāt. Lucan.
Dŏ′mĭnī sĭ′mĭlĭs ĕs. Ter.

Cōmmū′nĭs, *ălĭĕ′nŭs, īmmū′nĭs,* gĕnĭtī′vō, dătĭ′vō, ĕt āblātī′vō cŭm præpŏsĭtĭō′nĕ, jūngŭn′tŭr : ŭt,

---

[21] Such as *friéndliness, detestátion, equálity, sámeness :* thus, æ′tās ădŏlēscēn′tŭlĭs ŏdĭō′să, *a time of life háteful to stríplings ;* ĭ′dĕm ŏccī-dēn′tī, *the same thing as kílling,* that is, *the same with a pérson or thing kílling,*—for the act of killing would be expréssed by the gérund. In géneral, however, *i′dĕm* is fóllowed by quī *who,* else by āc, *as,* or ăt′quĕ, *and :* thus, ă′nĭmŭs ēr′gā tē ĭ′dĕm āc fŭ′ĭt, *a disposítion tówards you, the same as it was* or *has been.*

Cōmmū'nĕ ănĭmān'tĭŭm ōm'nĭŭm ēst. Cic.
Mōrs ōm'nĭbŭs ēst cōmmū'nĭs.   Ibid.
Hŏc mī'hĭ tē cŭm cōmmū'nĕ ēst.
Nōn ălĭē'nă cōnsĭ'lĭī. Sall.
Ălĭē'nŭs āmbĭtĭō'nĭ. Sen. Præf.
Nōn ălĭē'nŭs ā *Scæ'vŏlæ* stŭ'dĭīs. Cic.
—————— *Vō'bĭs* īmmū'nĭbŭs hū'jŭs
Ēs'sĕ mă'lī *dă'lĭtŭr*. Ovid.
Cŭprĭ'sĭ'cŭs ōm'nĭbŭs īmmū'nĭs ēst.   Plin.
Īmmū'nēs ăb *ĭl'lĭs* mă'lĭs *sŭ'mŭs*.

Nā'tŭs, *cōm'mŏdŭs*, *ĭncōm'mŏdŭs*, *ŭ'tĭlĭs*, *ĭnŭ'tĭlĭs*, *vĕ'hĕmēns*, *ā'p'tŭs*, cŭm mūl'tīs ă'lĭīs, īntĕr'dŭm (ĕ'tĭăm) āccūsātī'vō cŭm præpŏsĭtĭŏ'nĕ jūngūn'tŭr: ŭt,

Nā'tŭs ăd *glō'rĭăm*. Cic.
Ŭ'tĭlĭs ăd *ĕ'ăm rēm*.

Vērbā'lĭă ĭn "-*bĭlĭs*" āccēp'tă pāssī'vē, ĕt pārtĭcĭpĭa'lĭă ĭn "-*dŭs*," dătī'vŭm pōs'tŭlānt :[22] ŭt,

——*Nŭl'lĭ* pĕnĕtrā'bĭlĭs ās'trō
Lū'cŭs ĭ'nērs. Stat.
Ō mī'hĭ *pōst nŭl'lōs Jū'lī* mĕmŏrān'dĕ *sŏdā'lēs !* Mart.

3. Āccūsātī'vŭs pōst Ādjēctī'vŭm.

The Accúsative Case áfter the Ádjective.

Māgnĭtū'dĭnĭs mēnsū'ră sūbjĭ'cĭtŭr ādjēctī'vīs ĭn āccūsā-tī'vō, āblātī'vō, ĕt gĕnĭtī'vō: ŭt,

Tūr'rĭs cēn'tŭm pĕ'dēs ăl'tă.
Fōns lā'tŭs pĕ'dĭbŭs *trĭ'bŭs*, ăl'tŭs *trĭgīn'tă*.
Ārĕă lā'tă pĕ dŭm *dē'nŭm*.

Āccūsātī'vŭs ălĭquān'dŏ sūbjĭ'cĭtŭr ādjēctī'vīs ĕt pārtĭcĭ'pĭīs, ŭ'bĭ præpŏsĭ'tĭō *sĕcūn'dŭm* vĭdē'tŭr sūbĭntēl'lĭgī: ŭt,

Ōs hŭmĕrōs'quĕ *Dĕ'ō sĭ'mĭlĭs*. Virg.
Vūl'tŭm *dēmīs'sŭs*.

---

[22] To these may be ádded most (if indeéd not all) ádjectives derived from such verbs as góvern a dátive case :—thus, frī'dŭs ămī'cīs, *faithful to friends* ; bĕnĕ'vŏlŭs dŏ'mĭnō sēr'vŭs, *a slave well-disposed to his máster* ; crē'dŭlŭs ĭl'līs, *crédent to them.* For the constrúction of Past and of Présent Párticiples, which, when úsed as ádjectives, are fóllowed by a dátive, see page 162.

4. Āblātī′vŭs pōst Ādjēctī′vŭm.

The Áblative Case áfter the Adjective.

Ādjēctī′vă, quæ ăd cō′pĭăm, ĕgēstātēm′vĕ pēr′tĭnēnt, īn-
tēr′dŭm āblātī′vŭm, īntēr′dŭm gĕnĭtī′vŭm[23] ĕx′ĭgŭnt: ŭt,

<div style="margin-left:2em">

Dī′vĕs ĕ′quŭm, dī′vĕs *pictā′ī* vēs′tĭs ĕt aū′rī.   Virg.

Ă′mŏr* ĕt mēl′le ĕt fēl′le ēst fœcūndīs′sĭmŭs.   Plau.

Éx′pērs fraū′dĭs.

Grā′tĭă bĕă′tŭs.

</div>

Ādjēctī′vă ĕt sūbstāntī′vă rĕ′gŭnt āblātī′vŭm sīgnĭfĭcān′tĕm
caū′săm ĕt fōr′măm, vĕl mŏ′dŭm rĕ′ī: ŭt,

<div style="margin-left:2em">

Pāl′lĭdŭs t′rā.

Nō′mĭnĕ grāmmă′tĭcŭs, rē bār′bărŭs.

Trōjā′nŭs ŏ:ĭ′gĭnĕ *Cæ′săr.*   Virg.

</div>

Dīg′nŭs,[24] *indĭg′nŭs, præ′dĭtŭs, cāp′tŭs, cōntēn′tŭs, ēxtōr′-
rĭs, frē′tŭs, lĭ′bĕr,* cŭm ādjēctī′vīs prĕ′tĭŭm sīgnĭfĭcān′tĭbŭs,
āblātī′vŭm ĕx′ĭgŭnt: ŭt,

<div style="margin-left:2em">

Dīg′nŭs ĕs ŏ′dĭō.   Ter.

Quī gnā′tŭm hăbē′rēm tā′lī īngĕ′nĭō præ′dĭtŭm.   Ibid.

———ŏ′cŭlīs cāp′tī *fōdē′rĕ cŭbī′lĭă tāl′pæ.*   Virg.

Sŏr′tĕ *tĭ′ā* cōntēn′tŭs āb′ī.   Liv.

Tērrō′rĕ lĭ′bĕr *ă′nĭmŭs.*

Nōn gēm′mīs vēnā′lĕ, *nĕc* aū′rō.   Hor.

</div>

Hŏ′rŭm nōnnūl′lă īntēr′dŭm gĕnĭtī′vŭm ādmīt′tŭnt: ŭt,

<div style="margin-left:2em">

Māgnō′rum īndīg′nŭs ăvō′rŭm.   Virg.

</div>

---

[23] The ádjectives īn′dĭgŭs, *neédy,* ĭ′nōps, *not posséssing,* ĕgĕ′nŭs,
stánding in want of, ĕx′pērs, *free from,* cōm′pŏs, *máster of,* and īm′pŏs,
not máster of, are generally fóllowed by a génitive case: but, dīstēn′tŭs,
distént, gră′vĭdŭs, *grávid* or *heávy,* rĕfēr′tŭs, *crámmed* or *stúffed agaín,*
ōr′bŭs, *deprived of* or *left déstitute,* vă′cŭŭs, *émpty* or *vácant,* and
vĭ′dŭŭs, *void,* prefér an áblative. Most óther ádjectives relàting to
plénty or to want take a génitive or an áblative indífferently: as, plē′nŭs
vī′nī vĕl vī′nō, *full of wine* or *with wine;* īnā′nĭs prūdēn′tĭæ vĕl prū-
dēn′tĭā, *void of prúdence* or *discrétion;* cās′sŭs lūmĭnĕ vĕl lū′mĭnĭs,
devoíd of light.

[24] *Dīg′nŭs* is sómetimes fóllowed by an infínitive mood; which, as
was remárked in note 4 (on Sýntax) abóve, is a sort of noun of the
neúter génder; undeclíned indeéd, but which may, nevertheléss, be
usúrped in ány case, the vócative (perhaps) excépted. Thus, in Vírgil,
we find dīg′nŭs āmā′rī, *wórthy to be lóved,* instead of dīg′nŭs āmō′rĕ,
wórthy of love:—but éither of these expréssions is less élegant than
dīg′nŭs quī (vĕl ŭt) ămē′tŭr vĕl ămārē′tŭr, *wórthy who shoṹld* or *mìght
be lóved,* or *that hc should or might be lóved.*

Cār'mĭnă dīg'nă dĕ'æ.
Ēxtŏr'rīs rē'gnī. Stat.

Cōmpărătī'vă, cŭm ēxpōnān'tŭr pĕr *quăm*,[25] āblātī'vŭm ād-
mīt'tūnt : ŭt,

Vī'lĭŭs *ārgēn'tum ēst* aū'rō, vīrtū'tĭbŭs *aū'rŭm*. Hor.
[Ĭd ēst, *quăm*[26] aū'rŭm, *quăm* vīrtū'tēs.]

Tān'tō, *quăn'tō*, *hōc*, *ĕ'ō*, ĕt *quō*, cŭm quĭbŭs'dăm ă'lĭīs
quæ mēnsū'rām ēxcēs'sūs sĭgnĭ'fĭcănt, ĭ'tĕm *ētă'tĕ*, ĕt *nā'tū*,
cōmpărătī'vīs ĕt sŭpērlātī'vīs sæ'pĕ jūngūn'tŭr : ŭt,

Tān'tō pēs'sĭmŭs *ŏm'nĭŭm pŏĕ'tă*,
Quān'tō tu ŏp'tĭmŭs *ŏm'nĭŭm pătrō'nŭs*. Catull.
Quō plūs *hă'bēnt*, ĕ'ō plūs *cŭ'pĭūnt*.
Mā'jŏr ĕt māx'ĭmŭs *ētā'tĕ*.
Mā'jŏr ĕt māx'ĭmŭs *nā'tū*.

PRONOMINUM CONSTRUCTIO.

The Constrúction of Prónouns.

MĒI, *tŭ'ĭ*, *sŭ'ĭ*, *nōs'trī*, *vēs'trī*, gĕnĭtī'vī prīmĭtīvō'rŭm, pē-
nūn'tŭr cŭm pērsō'nă sĭgnĭ'fĭca'tŭr : ŭt,

---

[25] And the ádjective ă'lĭŭs, *óther*, or, *any óther*, is in like mánner
fóllowed by an áblative, as óften as the conjúnction quăm, *than*, is by
the fígure ellipsis omítted áfter it : as, pŭtās'nĕ ă'lĭŭm săpĭēn'tĕ bĕă'tŭm?
thínkest thou ány óther than a wi:e man háppy? Here we read ă'lĭŭm
săpĭēn'tĕ for ă'lĭŭm quăm săpĭēn'tĕm. Al'so an ellipsis of quăm, *than*,
áfter the ádverb mă'gĭs, *more*, in júnction with an ádjective or párticiple,
may be símilarly fóllowed : as, ō lū'cĕ mă'gĭs dīlēc'tă sŏrō'rī, *O thou
deárer to thy síster* (literally, *more belóved*) *than the líght!*
[26] Quăm, *than*, is óften úsed (and with pecúliar beaúty) betweén two
compáratives :—as, trīŭm'phŭs clā'rĭŏr quăm grā'tĭŏr, *a tríumph more
spléndid than ácceptable*. And this conjúnction is fréquently understoód
áfter some ádverbs of the compárative degreé, fóllowed by álmost ány
case, the vócative and (perháps) dátive excépted. See Conjúnctions.
Sómetimes, too, such áblatives as sŏ'lĭtō, *than úsual*, æ'quō, *than right*,
nĕcēssă'rĭŏ, *than nécessary*, are élegantly understoód áfter compáratives
of the neúter génder : as, sī fōr'tĕ, quĭd ăp'tĭŭs ēx'ĭt, *if, perchánce,
aught more fit or more to the púrpose* (sŏ'lĭtō, *than úsual*) *has gone fórth;*
lībĕ'rĭŭs vīvĕ'băt, *he líved more freély* (æ'quō, *than right*), that is, *he
líved ráther gaíly and profúsely*. And here it should be obsérved, that
in no ínstance is it nécessary to omít quăm, though such omíssion be, on
mány occásions, préferable. It may líkewise be obsérved that when
quăm is expréssed, the noun áfter it must be in the same case with the
noun befóre it.

Lān'gŭĕt dēsīdĕ'rĭŏ tŭ'ī.
Pĭg'nŏră cā'ră sŭ'ī.   Virg.
Că'cŭs ă'mŏr sŭ'ī.   Hor.
Ĭmā'gŏ nōs'trī.[27]

Mĕ'ŭs, *tŭ'ŭs, sŭ'ŭs, nŏs'tĕr, vĕs'tĕr,* pōnŭn'tŭr cŭm āc'tĭŏ
vĕl pŏssēs'sĭŏ rĕ'ī sĭgnĭfĭcā'tŭr: ŭt,

Fă'vĕt dēsīdĕ'rĭŏ tŭ'ō.
Ĭmā'gŏ nŏs'trā :—
[ĭd ēst, *quăm nōs pŏssĭdē'mŭs.*]

Hæc pŏssēssī'vă, *mĕ'ŭs, tŭ'ŭs, sŭ'ŭs, nŏs'tĕr,* ĕt *vĕs'tĕr,* hōs
gĕnĭtī'vōs pōst sē rĕcĭ'pĭŭnt,—"*ĭpsī'ŭs, sōlī'ŭs, ūnī'ŭs, dŭŏ'rŭm,
trī'ŭm,* &c. ōm'nĭŭm plū'rĭŭm, paūcō'rŭm, cūjŭs'quĕ :"—ĕt
gĕnĭtī'vōs pārtĭcĭpĭŏ'rŭm, quī ăd prīmĭtī'vŭm sŭbaūdī'tŭm
rĕfĕrŭn'tŭr: ŭt,

Dīx'ī mĕ'ā ūnī'ŭs ŏ'pĕrā *rēmpŭb'lĭcăm ēs'sĕ sāl'văm.* Cic.
Mĕ'ŭm sōlī'ŭs pĕccā'tŭm *cŏr'rĭgī nōn pŏ'tēst.* Ibid.
———— *Cūm* mĕ'ā *nē'mŏ*
Scrīp'tā *lĕ'gāt vŭlgō rĕcĭtā'rĕ* tĭmēn'tĭs.——Hor.
Dē tŭ'ō ĭpsī'ŭs stŭ'dĭŏ *cōnjēctŭ'răm cē'pĕrĭs.* Cic.
Ĭn sŭ'ā cūjŭs'quĕ laū'dĕ *prǣstān'tĭŏr.*
Nŏs'trā ōm'nĭŭm *mĕmŏ'rĭā.*
Vĕs'trīs paūcō'rŭm *rēspōn'dĕt laū'dĭbŭs.* Cic.

Sŭ'ī ĕt *sŭ'ŭs* rĕcĭ'prŏcă[28] sŭnt :—hŏc ēst, sĕm'pĕr rĕfĭēc-
tŭn'tŭr ăd ĭd, quŏd prǣcĭ'pŭŭm ĭn sĕntĕn'tĭā prǣcĕs'sĭt: ŭt,

_____

[27] The pérsonal and posséssive prónouns are sómetimes (but less
corréctly) úsed for one anóther : as, ădspĕc'tū sŭ'ō, *at his* or *her sight,*
for ădspĕc'tū sŭ'ī, *at the sight of himsélf* or *of hersélf,* that is, *at the sight
of the pérson speáking* or *dóing.* And Plaútus has lă'bŏr mĕ'ī, *the
lábour of me,* for lă'bŏr mĕ'ŭs, *my lábour.* Fréquently, too, the póets,
and occásionally the prose wríters, emplóy the pérsonal prónouns în the
dátive case, when, stríctly speáking, posséssion is meant :—as, mĭ'hĭ
mă'nŭs, *the hand to me,* for mĕ'ā mă'nŭs, *my hand.* Símilarly, álso,
are óther prónouns, and nouns, usúrped :—as, ĕ'ī cŏr'pŭs, *the bódy to him,*
for ĕ'jŭs cŏr'pŭs, *the bódy of him,* that is, *his bódy ;* pĕ'lăgŏ prŏ-
spĕc'tŭs, *a próspect to the sea,* for pĕ'lăgī prŏspĕc'tŭs, *a próspect* or *view
of the sea.*

[28] Whenéver the Én'glish word ' self ' can be ádded to *him, her,* or *it,*
(or ' *selves* ' to *them,*) the Látin word " sŭ'ī," and none óther, is próper,
and nécessary. Thus, *Cáto owns he érred,* Că'tŏ sĕ pĕccās'sĕ fătĕ'tŭr :
and, in the same mánner, whenéver the Én'glish word " own" can be
ádded to *his, her, its,* or *their,* the posséssive " sŭ'ŭs," and none óther,
is corréct. Thus, *Cáto killed hímself with his (own) sword,* sŭ'ŏ sĕ
glă'dĭŏ cōnfē'cĭt Că'tŏ.

Pĕ'trŭs nī'mĭŭm ādmīrā'tŭr sē: pār'cĭt ērrō'rĭbŭs sū'īs.
Māgnŏ'pĕrĕ Pĕ'trŭs rŏ'găt, nē sē dē'sĕrās.

Hæc dēmōnstrātī'vă, hĭc, īs'tĕ, īl'lĕ, sīc dīstīnguūn'tŭr : hĭc
mĭ'hĭ prŏx'ĭmŭm dēmōn'străt ; īs'tĕ, ĕ'ŭm quī ă'pŭd tē ēst ;
īl'lĕ, ĕ'ŭm quī ăb ŭtrŏ'quĕ rĕmō'tŭs ēst.

Hĭc ĕt īl'lĕ, cŭm ăd dŭ'ŏ āntĕpŏ'sĭtă rĕfĕrūn'tŭr, hĭc plē-
rūm'quĕ ăd pōstĕ'rĭŭs, īl'lĕ ăd prī'ŭs rĕfĕr'tŭr :[29] ŭt,

> Quōcūn'quᵉ āspĭ'cĭās, nĭ'hĭl ēst nĭ'sĭ pōn'tŭs ĕt ā'ēr ·
> Nū'bĭbŭs hĭc tŭ'mĭdŭs, flūc'tĭbŭs īl'lĕ mĭ'nāx. Ovid.

VERBORUM CONSTRUCTIO.
The Constrúction of Verbs.
I. Nōmīnātī'vŭs pōst Vēr'bŭm.
The Nóminative Case áfter the Verb.

VĒR'BĂ sūbstāntī'vă ; ŭt sŭm, fŏ'rēm, fī'ŏ, ēxīs'tŏ, vēr'bă
vŏcān'dī pāssī'vă ; ŭt nō'mĭnŏr, āppĕl'lŏr, dī'cŏr, vŏ'cŏr, nūn'-
cŭpŏr; ĕt ī'īs sĭmĭ'lĭă, ŭt vĭ'dĕŏr, hă'bĕŏr, ēxīs'tĭmŏr, ŭtrīn'quĕ
ēōs'dĕm cā'sūs hă'bēnt :[30] ŭt,

Dĕ'ŭs ēst sŭm'mŭm bŏ'nŭm.
Pērpŭsīl'lī vŏcān'tŭr nā'nī.
Fī'dēs rĕlĭgĭŏ'nīs nōs'træ fūndāmēn'tŭm hă'bē'tŭr.
——————— Nătū'ră bĕā'tīs[31]
Ōm'nĭbŭs ēs'sĕ dĕ'dĭt.   Claud.

---

[29] But sómetimes, éven in the best aúthors, we find hĭc reférring to
the fórmer, and īl'lĕ to the látter of two pérsons or things befóre mén-
tioned. For ínstance, in O'vid :—sīc dĕ'ŭs ĕt vīr'go ēst ; hīc spē cĕ'lĕr,
īl'lă tĭmŏ'rĕ, thus the god is, and maíden, he swíft with hope, she with
fear.

[30] And all verbs of gésture, that is, verbs betókening bódily áspect or
posítion :—as, ĕ'ŏ, I go; īncē'dŏ, I walk; sĕ'dĕŏ, I sit; cŭ'bŏ, I lie;
dŏr'mĭŏ, I sleep; and mány of the like sort : thus, īncē'dŏ claŭ'dŭs, I
walk lame; ŏpŏr'tĕt mĭ'lĭtĕm ēxcŭbā'rĕ stān'tĕm, it behóves a sóldier to
watch stánding. These verbs, howéver, are inclúded amóng those to
which the next Part of the Rule applíes; ónly insteád of an ádjective
they have sómetimes a súbstantive in apposítion with them :—as,
īncē'dĭt rēx, he walks a king, that is, his mánner of wálking is majéstic
or that of a king.

[31] This dátive " bĕā'tīs" might (though not so élegantly) be the accú-
sative case " bĕā'tōs," the prónoun " īl'lōs" béing understoód befóre
" ēs'sĕ." Thus, in Térence, we find,—vŏ'bīs ēx'pĕdĭt ēs'sĕ bŏ'nās, it is
expédient for you to be good wómen. And several óther pássages of the
same kind might be quóted.

Ĭ'tĕm ōm'nĭă fĕ'rē vēr'bă pōst sē ādjēctī'vŭm ādmĭt'tŭnt, quŏd cŭm nōmĭnātī'vō vēr'bī cā'sū, gĕ'nĕrĕ, ĕt nŭ'mĕrō[32] cōncōr'dăt : ŭt,

> Pĭ'ī ō'rănt tă'cĭtī.
> *Mă'lŭs* pās'tŏr *dōr'mĭt* sŭpī'nŭs.

II. Gĕnĭtī'vŭs pōst Vēr'bŭm.

The Génitive Case áfter the Verb.

Sŭm gĕnĭtī'vŭm[33] pōs'tŭlăt, quŏ'tĭēs sīgnĭ'fĭcăt *possēssĭō'nĕm, ōf'fĭcĭŭm, sīg'nŭm,* aŭt ĭd quŏd ăd rēm quăm'pĭăm pēr'tĭnĕt : ŭt,

> *Pĕ'cŭs* ēst Mĕlĭbœ'ī.
> Ădōlēscēn'tĭs ēst *mājō'rēs* nā'tū rĕvĕrē'rī. Cic.

Ēxcĭpĭūn'tŭr hī nōmĭnātī'vī, *mĕ'ŭm, tŭ'ŭm, sŭ'ŭm, nōs'trŭm, vĕs'trŭm,*[34] *hūmā'nŭm, bĕllŭī'nŭm,* ĕt sĭmĭ'lĭă : ŭt,

---

[32] An ádverb in Én'glish is óften expréssed (with élegance) by an ádjective in Látin, which ádjective agreés with the nóminative case to the verb,—as in the two Exámples gíven with this Part of the Rule, in the E'ton text. To these a múltitude of óther Exámples might be ádded :—but we shall contént ourselves with the few fóllowing : tă'cĕō mūl'tŭs, *I hold my peace much :* lŏ'quŏr frē'quĕns, *I speak óften ;* scrī'bō ĕpĭs'tŏlās rārĭs'sĭmŭs, *I write létters véry séldom ;* in which the use of an ádjective (for an ádverb) is altogéther at váriance with oŭr ídiom. But we recóncile ourselves (éasily enoúgh) to an ádjective in the nóminative case áfter ány tránsitive verb, (when such ádjective agreés with the nóminative case to the verb,) as óften as the En'glish párticiple "*béing*" can make pérfect sense, when pláced betweén the nóminative case to the verb, and the ádjective which fóllows : thus, nē ässŭĕs'cās bĭ'bĕrĕ vī'nŭm jējū'nŭs, *do not accústom (yoursélf) to drink wine fásting,* that is, *you béing húngry.* In mány ínstances of this sort an ádverb in Látin, and an ádjective in En'glish, would be prepósterous,—becaúse cóntrary to the úsage of the two lánguages, respéctively.

[33] Whenéver *sŭm* is fóllowed by a génitive, that génitive is álways góverned by some súbstantive understoód : thus, hæc vēs'tĭs ēst pă'trĭs, *this gárment is fáther's,* that is, hæc vēs'tĭs ēst vēs'tĭs mĕ'ī pă'trĭs, *this gárment is the gárment of my fáther :*—hence the séveral Exámples gíven únder this Rule belóng more próperly to the Rule " *Quùm dúo substantíva divérsæ significatiónis concúrrunt, &c.*" and partícularly to that part of it " *Pónitur intérdùm genitívus tántùm, &c.*"

[34] Not ónly in the neúter génder, but álso in the másculine and féminine génders, are these posséssive prónouns úsed :—thus, hĭc cō'dēx ēst mĕ'ŭs, *this book is mine ;* ĭl'lă dō'mŭs ĕ'răt tŭ'ă, *that house was thine ;*—yet the dátive of the prímitive is, in most ínstances, more élegant : as, hīc cō'dēx ēst mĭ'hī, *this book is to me :* ĭl'lă dō'mŭs ĕ'răt tĭ'bĭ, *that house was to thee or was thíne.*

Nōn ēst mĕ'ŭm *cōn'trā auctōrĭtā'tĕm* sĕnā'tūs dī'cĕrĕ. Cic.
Hūmā'nŭm ēst *īrās'cī.*

Vēr'bă accūsān'dī, dāmnān'dī, mŏnēn'dī, ābsōlvēn'dī, ĕt
sĭmĭ'lĭă, gĕnĭtī'vŭm pōs'tŭlānt, quī crī'mĕn sĭgnĭ'fĭcăt: ŭt,

 ——*Quī āl'tĕr*ᵘᵐ īncū'sāt prŏ'brī
Ē'um ĭp'sŭm se *īntŭē'rī ŏpŏr'tĕt.*——Plaut.
Scĕ'lĕrĭs cŏndēm'nāt gĕ'nĕrŭm sŭ'ŭm. Cic.
Ādmŏnē'tŏ *īl'lŭm prĭs'tĭnæ* fōrtū'næ.³⁵
Fūr'tī ābsŏlū'tŭs *ēst.*

Vēr'tĭtŭr hīc gĕnĭtī'vŭs ălĭquān'dŏ īn āblātī'vŭm vĕl cŭm
præpŏsĭtĭŏ'nĕ vĕl sĭ'nĕ præpŏsĭtĭŏ'nĕ ;³⁶ ŭt,

Pŭtā'vī ĕ'ā dē rē tĕ *ĕs'sĕ* ādmŏnēn'dŭm. Cic.
Sī īn mē īnī'quŭs ĕs jū'dēx, cōndēmnā'bŏ *cŏ'dĕm ĕ'gŏ* tē
crī'mĭnĕ. Ibid.

ŬTĚR'QUĚ, nŭl'lŭs, āl'tĕr, neū'tĕr, ă'lĭŭs, ām'bŏ,—ĕt sŭpēr-
lātī'vŭs grā'dŭs,—nōn, nĭ'sĭ īn āblātī'vō, ĭd gĕ'nŭs vēr'bīs
jūngūn'tŭr: ŭt,

Ācū'sās fūr'tī, ăn stŭ'prī? Ŭtrŏ'quĕ, *vĕl* dē ŭtrŏ'quĕ:
āmbŏ'bŭs, *vĕl* dē āmbŏ'bŭs: neū'trō, *vĕl* dē neū'trō.
Dē plū'rĭmĭs *sī'mŭl* āccūsā'rĭs.

SĂ'TĂGŎ, mĭsĕ'rĕŏr, ĕt *mĭsĕrēs'cŏ,* gĕnĭtī'vŭm pōs'tŭlānt:
ŭt,

*Ĭs * * sŭā'rŭm* rē'rŭm să'tăgĭt. Ter.
 ——*Ō'rō* mĭsĕrē'rĕ lăbō'rŭm
Tāntō'rŭm, mĭsĕrē're ă'nĭmæ *nōn dĭg'nă fĕrēn'tĭs.* Virg.
Ēt gĕ'nĕrĭs mĭsĕrēs'cĕ *tŭ'ī.* Stat.

RĚMĬNĬS'CŎR, ōblīvīs'cŏr, mĕ'mĭnī, rĕcōr'dŏr, gĕnĭtī'vŭm,
aūt āccūsātī'vŭm, ādmīt'tŭnt: ŭt,

Dă'tæ fī'dĕī rĕmĭnĭs'cĭtŭr.
Prŏ'prĭŭm ēst stŭltĭ'tĭæ ălĭō'rŭm *vĭ'tĭă* cēr'nĕrĕ, ōblīvīs'cī
sŭŏ'rŭm. Cic.
Fă'cĭam ŭt hŭ'jŭs lŏ'cī * * * sēmpēr mĕmĭ'nĕrĭs. Ter.
Hæc ō'lĭm mĕmĭnĭs'sĕ *jŭvă'bĭt.* Virg.

---

³⁵ Verbs of *Wárning* or *Admónishing* are sómetimes fóllowed by two
accúsative cáses. See the Rule " *Vérba rogándi, docéndi, &c.*" únder
the head of ACCUSATI'VUS POST VER'BUM.
³⁶ Verbs of *Wárning* or *Admónishing,* when fóllowed by an áblative
case, have álways some preposítion (génerally dē, *of* or *concérning,*)
expréssed with the noun which spécifies the súbject of admonítion.

Hū'jŭs mĕ'rĭtī *in mē* rĕcōr'dŏr.   Cic.

Sī rī'tĕ audī'tă rĕcor'dŏr.

Pŏ'TĬŎR,[37] aūt gĕnĭtī'vō, aūt āblātī'vō, jūn'gĭtŭr : ŭt,

Rōmā'nī sīgnō'rŭm *ĕt* ārmō'rŭm pŏtī'tī *sūnt.* Sallust.

Ēgrēs'sī ōptā'tā pŏtīūn'tŭr *Trō'ĕs* ārē'nā.   Virg.

III. Dătī'vŭs pōst Vēr'bŭm.

The Dátive Case áfter the Verb.

Ōm'nĬX vēr'bă rĕ'gŭnt dătī'vŭm ē'jŭs rē'ī, cuī ă'līquĭd āc-quī'rĭtŭr, aūt ădī'mĭtŭr :[38] ŭt,

Mī'hĭ *is'tĭc nĕc* sĕ'rĭtŭr, *nĕc* mĕ'tĭtŭr.   Plaut.

Quĭs tē mī'hĭ *cā'sŭs* ădē'mĭt ?   Ovid.

Huīc RĒ'GŬLÆ āppēn'dēnt vă'rĭī gĕ'nĕrĭs Vēr'bă.

I. Īmprī'mīs, vēr'bă sīgnĭfĭcăn'tĭă cōm'mŏdŭm, aūt īncōm'-mŏdŭm,[39] rĕ'gŭnt dătī'vŭm : ŭt,

---

[37] According to the more áncient mode of writing, *pŏ'tĭŏr,* and in like mánner *fūn'gŏr,* and *ū'tŏr,* had an accúsative case :—but in láter aúthors all these verbs góvern an áblative ; ónly *pŏ'tĭŏr* admits likewise of the génitive.

[38] The dátive case of the *Pérson,* or *Thing,* to which a verb points ; or for which ány áction is eíther done, or inténded ; or by which some acquisítion is made, or loss sustaíned,—is emplóyed áfter ány verb so pointing, or denóting the *áction, acquisítion,* or *loss,*—whéther such verb be tránsitive or íntransitive, áctive or pássive. When the verb is tránsitive, the noun, which is the immédiate óbject of the verb, must be in the accúsative ; while the noun, to which the súbject of the verb reférs, must be in the dátive :—thus, tă'lĭă mū'tæ jă'cĕ vēr'bă făvil'læ, *throw such words as these to the dumb émbers ;* cū'ră mī'hĭ hūnc lī'brŭm, *take care of this book for me ;* dŏcēbŏ tĭ'bĭ gnā'tŭm, *I will teach thy son for thee.* Hence may álmost ány verb whatéver admít a dátive case áfter it. Sómetimes there is in a séntence, an ellípsis of the *óbject* áfter a tránsitive verb,—that is an ellípsis of the accúsative case ; whilst the noun, to which the verb points, is expréssed in the dátive case :— for exámple, tĭ'mĕŏ tĭ'bĭ, *I fear for thee ;* understánd pĕrī'cŭlŭm, *dánger,* else ă'līquĭd mă'lī, *sómething of ill :* whereás " tĭ'mĕŏ tē" would signify " *I fear thee,"* or, in óther words, " *I am afraid of thee."* And here it may be nóticed, that the póets, by a Greek ídiom, óften use a dátive case áfter verbs both of the áctive and pássive voice, instéad of an áblative with a prepòsition :—as, tĭ'bĭ cĕr'tĕt, *he can vie with thee,* for tē'cŭm cĕr'tĕt ; again, tūr'bæ mīx'tŭs ĭnĕr'tī, *mingled with the lístless crowd,* for cŭm tūr'bā mīx'tŭs ĭnĕr'tĕ ; or, hæc mī'hĭ ōblī'tă sūnt, *these things are forgótten to me,* for ā mē ōblī'tă, *forgótten by me.*

[39] To this head may be reférred Verbs of *Prófit* or *Advántage,* of *Héaling ;* of *Gratificátion ,* of *Fávour, Consént, Súccour, Complaisánce ;* of *Fáwning* or *Fláttery ;* and of *Allúrement :* with their séveral óppo-

Nōn pŏtĕs mĭ'hĭ cōmmŏdā'rĕ, *nĕc* īncōmmŏdā'rĕ.

Ēx hĭs, *jŭ'vō, lǣ'dŏ, dēlēc'tŏ,* ĕt ā'lĭă quǣ'dăm,[40] āccūsā-tĭ'vŭm ēx'ĭgŭnt : ŭt,

Fēs'sŭm *quĭ'ēs plŭ'rĭmŭm* jŭ'văt.

II. Vēr'bă cōmpărăn'dĭ rĕ'gŭnt dătĭ'vŭm : ŭt,

—— *Sīc pār'vīs cōmpŏ'nĕrĕ māg'nă sŏlē'băm.* Virg.

Īntĕr'dŭm vē'rō āblātĭ'vŭm cŭm prǣpŏsĭtĭŏ'nĕ *cŭm* ; īntĕr'-dŭm āccūsātĭ'vŭm cŭm prǣpŏsĭtĭŏ'nĭbŭs *ăd* ĕt *ĭn'tĕr :*—ŭt,

Cōm'părŏ Vĭrgĭ'lĭŭm cŭm Hŏmē'rō.
Sī ăd ĕ'ŭm cōmpără'tŭr, nĭ'hĭl ēst.
Hǣc nōn sŭnt ĭn'tĕr sē *cōnfĕrēn'dă.*

III. Vēr'bă dān'dĭ ĕt rēddēn'dĭ[41] rĕ'gŭnt dătĭ'vŭm : ŭt,

Fōrtū'nă mūl'tīs dăt *nĭ'mĭs, să'tīs* nūl'lĭ. Mart.
Īngrā'tŭs ēst, quĭ grā'tĭăm bĕ'nĕ mĕrēn'tĭ *nōn* rĕpŏ'nĭt.

IV. Vēr'bă prōmĭttēn'dĭ āc sōlvēn'dĭ rĕ'gŭnt dătĭ'vŭm ; ŭt,

Quǣ tĭbĭ *prōmīt'tŏ, āc* rĕcĭ'pĭŏ sānctīs'sĭmē *ēs'sĕ ōbsērvā-tū'rŭm.* Cic.
Ǣs ălĭē'nŭm mĭ'hĭ nŭmĕrā'vĭt. Ibid.

V. Vēr'bă ĭmpērān'dĭ, ĕt nūntĭăn'dĭ, rĕ'gŭnt dătĭ'vŭm : ŭt,

Ĭm'pĕrăt *aŭt* sēr'vĭt cŏllēc'tă pĕcū'nĭă cuī'quĕ. Hor.
Quĭd dē quŏ'quĕ vĭ'rŏ ēt cuī dī'căs, *să'pĕ vĭdē'tŏ.* Ibid.

Ēx'cĭpĕ *rĕ'gŏ, gŭbēr'nŏ,*[42] quǣ āccūsātĭ'vŭm hă'bēnt,——

sites ; as those of *Loss* or *Disadvántage* ; of *Hurt :* of *Displeásure ;* of *Discoúntenance* and *Impartiálity* ; of *Deníal, Opposítion, Incivílity ;* of *Detráction, Cóntumely* or *Repróach* ; of *Intimidátion* and *Repúlsion :* —álso verbs of *Endúrance* and *Forbeárance* ; of *Congratulátion* ; of *Caútion* and of *Apprehénsion* ; of *Offénding* and *Defénding* ; of *Grudge, Én'vy, Málice, Ráncour,* and mány more ; whereóf some are tránsitive and óthers neúter.

[40] Such as ŏffēn'dŏ, *I offénd* ; which is álso an excéption to the Rule "*Dătĭ'vŭm fēr'mē* rĕ'gŭnt *vēr'bă cōmpŏ'sĭtă,*" &c. page 150, belów.

[41] To this class may be reférred Verbs of *Assígning, Allótting, Be-queáthing, Bestówing, Impárting, Receíving, Sénding, Brínging, Intro-dúcing, Presénting, Jóining, Míngling, Concéding, Refúsing, Remítting, Forgíving, Delívering up,* and *Táking awáy,* with séveral óthers of like ímport.

[42] With these two may be conjoíned jŭ'bĕŏ, *I órder* or *I bíd,* and dŏ'mŏ, *I tame* or *I máster :* both which are verbs of kíndred meáning, though not strictly verbs of *Commánding* or of *Rúling :* and, in like mánner, vīn'cŏ, *I cónquer,* which is still more different in sense.

tĕm'pĕrŏ, ĕt mŏ'dĕrŏr, quæ nūnc dătĭ'vŭm, nūnc āccūsātĭ'vŭm hă'bĕnt: ŭt,

> *Lū'nă* rĕ'gĭt mēn'sēs: ōr'bĕm *Dĕ'ŭs ĭp'sĕ* gŭbĕr'năt.
> Tēm'pĕrăt *ĭp'sĕ* sĭ'bĭ.—*Sōl* tēm'pĕrăt ōm'nĭă *lū'cĕ.*
> *Hīc* mŏdĕrā'tŭr ĕ'quōs,—*quī nōn* mŏdĕrā'bĭtŭr ī'ræ.

VI. Vēr'bă fīdēn'dī[43] dătĭ'vŭm rĕ'gŭnt: ŭt,

> ——— *Vă'cŭīs* cōmmĭt'tĕrĕ vē'nīs
> *Nīl nĭ'sĭ lē'nĕ dĕ'cĕt.* Hor.

VII. Vēr'bă ōbsĕquēn'dī, ĕt rĕpūgnān'dī, dătĭ'vŭm rĕ'gŭnt: ŭt,

> *Sēm'pĕr* ōbtēm'pĕrăt, *prŭ's fī'lĭŭs* pă'trī.
> *Ignā'vīs* prĕ'cĭbŭs *fōrtū'nă* rĕpūg'năt.

VIII. Vēr'bă mĭnān'dī, ĕt īrāscēn'dī,[44] rĕ'gŭnt dătĭ'vŭm: ŭt,

> Ŭtrī'quĕ *mōr'tĕm ēst* mĭnĭtā'tŭs. Cic.
> Ădŏlēscēn'tī *nĭ'hĭl ēst quŏd* sŭccēn'sĕam. Ter.

IX. Sŭm, cŭm cōmpŏ'sĭtīs, præ'tĕr *pōs'sŭm,* rĕ'gĭt dătĭ'vŭm: ŭt,

> *Rēx prŭ's ēst rĕīpūb'lĭcæ ōrnāmēn'tŭm.*
> Mĭ'hĭ *nĕc* ŏb'ēst, *nĕc* prŏ'dēst.

Dătĭ'vŭm fēr'mē rĕ'gŭnt vēr'bă cōmpŏ'sĭtă cŭm hīs ādvēr'bĭīs, *bĕ'nĕ, să'tĭs, mă'lĕ,*—ĕt cŭm hīs præpŏsĭtĭŏ'nĭbŭs, *præ, ăd, cōn, sŭb, ān'tĕ, pōst, ŏb, ĭn, ĭn'tĕr* :[45] ŭt,

> *Dī'ī* tĭ'bĭ bĕnĕfă'cĭant. Ter.
> *Ḗgŏ mĕ'īs* mājŏ'rĭbŭs *vīrtū'tĕ* prælūx'ī. Cic.
> *Ĭntēmpēstī'vē qui* ōccŭpā'to ādlū'sĕrīt. Phædr.
> Cōndū'cĭt *hōc* tŭ'æ laū'dī.
> Cōnvīx'ĭt nŏ'bīs.
> Sŭb'ŏlĕt *jăm* ūxō'rī *quŏd ĕ'gŏ mā'chĭnŏr.*

---

[43] With Verbs of *Confíding* or *Trústing* may be coúpled those of *Belíeving* and *Discréditing,* and likewise Verbs of *Persuáding* and *Undecéiving:* but all these come próperly únder the head of *Verbs of Gíving.*

[44] The Látin and Én'glish idioms (it may be percéived) are at considerable váriance in verbs of this description :—for we say, " *to threáten a pérson with death,*" whereás the Rómans said, " *to threáten death to a pérson.*"

[45] To which may be ádded *sŭ'pĕr* : but mány verbs compoúnded with this last are not put *acquisitively* : thus tēr'răm sŭpērgĕ'rĕrĕ, *to heap up the earth,* withoút specífying, " *to whom* or *for what.*"

Ĭnĭquĭs'sĭmăm pā'cĕm jŭstĭs'sĭmō bēl'lō āntĕ'fĕrŏ. Cic.

Pŏstpŏ'nŏ fā'mæ pĕcū'nĭăm.

—*Ĕ'ă quŏ'nĭām* nē'mĭnĭ ōbtrū'dĭ *pŏ'tĕst,*

Ī'tŭr ād mē. Ter.

Ĭmpēn'dĕt ōm'nĭbŭs pĕrī'cŭlŭm.

Nōn sō'lŭm ĭntēr'fŭĭt *hĭs* rē'bŭs, *sĕd ĕ'tĭăm* præ'fŭĭt. Cic.

Nōn paū'că ēx hīs mū'tānt dătī'vŭm ălĭquŏ'tĭēs ĭn ă'lĭŭm cā'sŭm :⁴⁶ ŭt,

Præ'stăt *ĭngĕ'nĭō ă'lĭŭs* ă'lĭŭm. Quinct.

Ēst, prŏ *hă'bĕŏ,* rĕ'gĭt dătī'vŭm :⁴⁷ ŭt,

Ēst mĭ'hĭ *nām'quĕ dŏ'mĭ pă'tĕr,* ēst ĭnjūs'tă nŏvēr'că.

Huĭc sĭ'mĭlĕ ēst *sŭp'pĕtĭt :* ŭt,

Paū'pĕr ĕ'nĭm nōn ēst, cuĭ rē'rŭm sūp'pĕtĭt *ū'sŭs.* Hor.

---

⁴⁶ These are chiefly verbs compounded with the preposition *præ,* *before,* or ān'tĕ, *before :* many of which compounds take an accusative · in preference to a dative, especially where a dative case may be understood after the immediate object expressed with the verb ; or where the régimen of the simple verb is the accusative case : others, again, take an accusative or a dative indifferently ; and others, a dative only. Verbs compounded with the rest of the prepositions mentioned, frequently have the same preposition (or one of like meaning) set before the substantive which follows the verb : and sometimes, if the preposition govern an accusative case, the substantive is put in the accusative case, with an omission of the preposition,—being governed either by the preposition understood, or by that in composition with the verb.

⁊ This is a prevailing idiom of the Latin language, borrowed (originally) from the Greek ; and is much more elegant than the use of the verb *hă'bĕŏ.* In fact it would be almost a barbarism to say, *hă'bĕŏ dŏ'mĭ pă'trĕm, hă'bĕŏ ĭnjūs'tăm nŏvēr'căm !* Here, then, we may observe, that the word which seems (in English) to be the nominative case, is actually the dative in Latin ; while the word which to us is the accusative, is, in the idiom, of that language, the nominative. It therefore follows by analogy, that if the word which, with us, is the nominative, be converted into the accusative (in Latin) by the omission of the conjunction " *that,*" which answers in Latin to " *quŏd* or *ŭt,*" then the verb Ēst must be in the infinitive mood ; but still followed by a dative of the word which, in our idiom, is the nominative : as, *I know thou hast not money,* scī'ŏ tī'bĭ nōn ēs'sĕ ārgēn'tŭm ; literally, *I know money not to be unto thee.* In like manner is dĕ'ēst, *it is wanting,* (followed by a dative,) very appropriately used for că'rĕŏ, *I want :*—thus, for example, plū'rĭmă mĭ'hĭ dē'sŭnt, *very many things are wanting to me* or *I want very many things.* In the third person, both singular and plural of all the tenses and moods, are these verbs thus usurped and with elegance as it respects the Latin tongue.

Sŭm, cŭm mūl'tīs ă'lĭīs, gĕ'mĭnŭm ādmīt'tĭt dătī'vŭm : ŭt,[48]

Exĭ'tĭo ēst ă'vĭdīs mă'rĕ naū'tīs. Hor.

Spē'rās tĭ'bĭ laū'dī fō'rĕ, quŏd mĭ'hĭ vĭ'tĭō vēr'tĭs ?

Ēst ŭ'bĭ hīc dătī'vŭs, tĭ'bĭ, aūt sĭ'bĭ, aūt ĕ'tĭăm mĭhĭ, ēlē-
gān'tĭĕ caū'sā ād'dĭtŭr : ŭt,

Sŭ'ō sĭ'bĭ glă'dĭo hūnc jŭ'gŭlŏ. Ter.

IV. Ācūsātī'vŭs pōst Vēr'bŭm.

The Accúsative Case áfter the Verb.

Vēr'bĂ Trānsītī'vĂ[49] cūjūscūn'quĕ gĕ'nĕrĭs, sī'vĕ āctī'vī,
sī'vĕ dēpōnēn'tĭs, sī'vĕ cōmmū'nĭs, ēx'ĭgūnt āccūsātī'vŭm : ŭt,

Pērcōntātō'rēm fŭ'gĭtō, nām gār'rŭlŭs ĭ'dem ēst. Hor.

Ă'pĕr ā'grōs dēpŏpŭlā'tŭr.

Imprī'mĭs vĕnĕrā'rĕ dĕ'ōs.

Vēr'bă Neū'tră āccūsātī'vŭm hă'bēnt cōgnā'tĕ sīgnĭfĭcā-
tĭō'nĭs : ŭt,

Dū'răm sēr'vĭt sērvĭtū'tĕm.

Sūnt quĂ fĭgūrā'tĕ āccūsātī'vŭm hă'bēnt : ŭt,

—— Nēc vōx hŏ'mĭnēm sŏ'năt : Ō dĕ'ă, cēr'tĕ ! Virg.

Vēr'bă rŏgān'dī, dŏcēn'dī, vēstĭēn'dī, cēlān'dī, fĕ'rĕ dŭ'plĭcĕm
rĕ'gūnt āccūsātī'vŭm : ŭt,

Tū mŏ'dŏ pōs'cĕ dĕ'ōs vĕ'nĭăm. Virg.

Dēdŏcē'bŏ tē ĭs'tōs mō'rēs.

Rĭdī'cŭlum ēst te ĭs'tŭc me ādmŏnē'rĕ.[50] Ter.

---

[48] Particularly when there is in the sense of the expréssion sómething
more or less, of the meáning of the verbs āf'fĕrŏ, *I bring,* dŭ'cŏ, *I esteem*
or *réckon,* trĭ'bŭŏ, *I give* or *ascríbe,* vēr'tŏ, *I turn* or *impúte,* and a few
óthers of símilar impórt ; for besídes the dátive of the pérson there is
óften a dátive of the *resúlt* or *efféct ;* or of the *light* in which the óbject
is regárded ; or of the *design* with which a thing is done, or of the
púrpose for which it is inténded. To this Rule belóng such phráses as
the fóllowing :—dĕ'dĭt mĭ'hĭ dŏ'nō, *he gave it me a présent :* rĕlī'quĭt
tĭ'bĭ pĭg'nŏrĭ, *he left it to thee a pledge :* ĭs rē'gī dĭc'tō aū'dĭēns nōn ĕ'răt,
he was not heáring (that is, óbedient) *to the king's command,* líterally, *to
the sáying to thẹ king :* ēst ĕ'ī nŏ'mĕn Iŭ'lō, *the name Iúlus is io him,* i. e.
he has the name Iúlus.

[49] By *Verbs Trānsitive* we must understánd all verbs which have a
stríctly *áctive significátion,* that is, which expréss an áction pássing on
to some pérson, or thing, as the diréct and immédiate óbject of the verb.

[50] Though Verbs of *Teáching* and *Admónishing* have fréquently two

Ĭn'dŭĭt sē cāl'cĕŏs [51] *quōs prĭ'ŭs ēxŭ'ĕrăt.*
Ē'ă *nē* mē cē'lĕt [52] *cŏnsŭ̄'jē'cī fī'lĭŭm.* Ter.

Hūjūs'mŏdī vēr'bă ĕ'tĭăm ĭn pāssī'vā **vō'cĕ** āccūsātī'vŭm
pōst sē hă'bĕnt : ŭt,

Pōs'cĕrĭs ēx'tā *bŏ̄'vis.*

Nō'mĭnă āppēllātī'vă āddŭn'tŭr fĕ'rĕ cŭm præpŏsĭtĭŏ'nĕ
vēr'bĭs, quæ dē'nŏtănt mō'tŭm : ŭt,

Ăd *tēm'plŭm Pāl'lădĭs* ī'bănt.

V. Āblātī'vŭs pōst Vēr'bŭm.

The Áblative Case áfter the Verb.

Quŏd'vīs Vēr'bŭm ādmĭt'tĭt ăblātī'vŭm sīgnĭfĭcăn'tĕm ĭn-
strŭmēn'tŭm, aūt caū'săm, aūt mŏ'dŭm [53] āctĭŏ'nĭs : ŭt,

Hī jă'cŭlīs, *ĭl'lī cēr'tănt* dēfēn'dĕrĕ săx'īs. Virg.

---

accúsatives, námely, one of the *Pérson,* and one of the *Admoníton,* yet
sómetimes (and éven élegantly) áfter the látter, the thing which is the
súbject of admonítion is expréssed in the génitive case ; or in the áblative
with the preposítion dē̄, *of* or *concérning :*—as, ādmŏ'nĕ̄ō tē̄ ŏffī'cĭī. *I*
remínd you of your dúty ; dē̄ hāc rē̄ tē̄ sǣ'pĭūs ādmŏ'nŭī, *I have óften*
and óften wárned you of this círcumstance. Agaín, Verbs of *As'king*
sómetimes change the accúsative of the *pérson* ínto an áblative with a
preposítion :—as, hŏc ā tē̄ pĕ'tŏ, *this I ask of thee :*—and séveral Verbs
of *Intérrogating* retaín the accúsative of the *Pérson,*—but change the
accúsative of the *Thing* ínto the áblative with the preposítion dē̄.

[51] Verbs of *Clóthing* have more cómmonly, instéad of two accúsatives,
the accúsative of the *pérson,* and the áblative of the *vésture* withoút a
preposítion : as vēs'tĭt sē̄ pūr'pŭrā, *he arráys himsélf in púrple :* álso, the
two verbs ĭn'dŭŏ, *I put on,* and ĕx'ŭŏ, *I put óff,* have not unfréquently
the *vésture* in the accúsative, and the *pérson* in the dátive : as, thōrā-
cĕm sĭ'bĭ ĭn'dŭĭt, *he put upón himsélf his córslet* or *bréast-plate.*

[52] The verb cē'lŏ is óftentimes fóllowed by the dátive of the *pérson* and
the accúsative of the *thing :* else, by the accúsative of the *pérson,* and
the áblative of the *thing* góverned by the preposítion dē̄.

[53] A preposítion is, véry fréquently, expréssed with nouns sígnifying
éither the *Cause* or the *Mánner,* as, præ gaū'dĭō, *for joy,* cŭm sūm'mŏ
lăbŏ'rĕ, *with the gréatest lábour ;* or if the preposítion góvern an accú-
sative case, the noun is put, accórdingly, in the accúsative case, as, prŏp'tĕr
ămŏ'rĕm, *for love,* ŏb cūl'păm, *for the fault,* pĕr dĕ'dĕcŭs, *with disgráce :*
—but with the *In'strument,* a preposítion is *néver úsed :* for we cánnot
say scrī'bŏ cŭm că'lămŏ, but scrī'bŏ că'lămŏ, *I write with a pen ;* neíther
can we say cŭm ŏ'cŭlīs vĭ'dĕŏ, but ŏ'cŭlīs vĭ'dĕŏ, *I see with my eyes.*
Yet with the *In'strument* as a *Concómitant* the preposítion is génerally
expréssed ; as, ĭngrēs'sŭs ēst cŭm glă'dĭō, *he éntered with a sword,* that
is, *háving a sword abóut him,* or *in his hand.*

Vĕhĕmĕn'tĕr ī'rā ēxcān'dŭĭt.
Mī'rā cĕlĕrĭtā'tĕ *rēm* pĕrē'gĭt.

Quī'būs'dăm vēr'bīs sūbjī'cĭtŭr nŏ'mĕn prĕ'tĭī ĭn āblātī'vō
cā'sū : ŭt,

Tĕrūn'cĭŏ, seū vĭtĭō'sā nŭ'cĕ *nōn* ē'mĕrĭm.
Mūltō'rŭm sān'guĭnĕ *āc* vūlnĕ'rĭbŭs *ĕ'ā Pǣ'nĭs vĭctō'rĭă*
stĕ'tĭt.   Liv.

VĪ'LĪ, *paū'lō, mĭ'nĭmō, māg'nō, nĭ'mĭō, plū'rĭmō, dīmĭ'dĭō,
dŭ'plō,*[54] pĕr sē sǣ'pĕ pōnūn'tŭr, sŭbaūdī'tā vō'cĕ *prĕ'tĭō :* ŭt,

Vī'lĭ *vē'nĭt trĭ'tĭcŭm.*

Ēxcĭpĭūn'tŭr hī gĕnĭtī'vī sĭ'nĕ sūbstāntī'vīs pŏ'sĭtī ; *tān'tĭ,
quān'tĭ, plū'rĭs, mĭnō'rĭs, tāntī'dĕm, quāntī'vĭs, quāntī'lĭbĕt,
quāntĭcūn'quĕ, &c. :*—ŭt,

Tān'tĭ *ĕ'rĭs ă'lĭīs,* quān'tĭ *tĭ'bĭ fŭ'ĕrĭs.*   Cic.

FLŌC'CĪ, *naŭ'cī, nĭ'hĭlī, pĭ'lī, ās'sĭs, hŭ'jŭs, tĕrūn'cĭī,* vēr'bīs
ǣstĭmān'dī pĕcūlĭā'rĭtĕr āddūn'tŭr : ŭt,

Ē'gŏ ĭl'lŭm flōc'cī pĕn'dŏ,—*nĕc* hŭ'jŭs *fă'cĭŏ, quĭ mē*
pĭ'lī ǣs'tĭmăt.

Vēr'bă ăbūndān'dī, ĭmplēn'dī, ŏnĕrān'dī, ĕt hīs dīvēr'să,[55]
āblātī'vō jūngūn'tŭr : ŭt,

Ămō're ăbūn'dās, *Ān'tĭphŏ.*   Ter.
Sȳl'lă ōm'nēs sŭ'ōs dīvĭ'tĭīs ēxplē'vĭt.   Sall.
Tē quĭ'bŭs mēndā'cĭīs *hŏ'mĭnēs lĕvĭs'sĭmī* ŏnĕrā'rūnt !
Tē hōc crī'mĭne ēx'pĕdī.   Ter.

Ēx quĭ'bŭs quǣ'dăm nōnnūn'quăm gĕnĭtī'vŭm rĕ'gūnt : ŭt,

Ĭmplēn'tŭr *vĕ'tĕrĭs* Bāc'chī, *pīnguĭs'quĕ* fĕrī'nǣ.   Virg.
——*Quă'sĭ tu hŭ'jŭs* ĭndĭ'gēās *pă'trĭs.*   Ter.

FŪN'GŎR, *fru'ŏr, ū'tŏr, vēs'cŏr, dīg'nŏr, mū'tŏ,*[56] *cōmmū'nĭcŏ,
sŭpĕrsĕ'dĕŏ,* āblātī'vō jūngūn'tŭr : ŭt,

---

[54] With séveral óthers of like ímport ; as, pērmāg'nō, *for véry much* ;
pār'vō, *for líttle ;* pērpār'vō, *for véry líttle :*—and sómetimes, nĭhĭ'lō, *for
nóthing,* either with, or withoút, the prepositíon prō, *for,* espécially áfter
the verb hă'bĕŏ, *I regárd* or válue.

[55] To this Rule belóng Verbs of *Beréaving* or *Plúndering* ; such as,
ŏr'bŏ, spŏ'lĭō, &c. :—thus, ŏr'bās pă'trĭăm jŭvēntū'tĕ, *thou beréavest thy
coúntry of her youth ;* mē bŏ'nīs spŏlĭā'vĭt, *he plúndered me of my goods.*

[56] Mū'tŏ, and (in like mánner) dīg'nŏr, and cōmmū'nĭcŏ, góvern an
accúsative case, but requíre moreóver an áblative to compléte the sense :

Qui ădĭpīs'cī vē'răm glō'rĭăm vŏ'lĕt, jūstĭ'tĭæ fūngā'tŭr
ŏffĭ'cĭīs. Cic.

Ōp'tĭmŭm ēst ălĭē'nā frŭ'ī īnsā'nĭā.

Īn rē mă'lā, ă'nĭmŏ sī bŏ'nŏ ūtā'rē, *jŭ'văt.*

Vēs'cŏr cār'nĭbŭs.

Haŭd ĕ'quĭdēm tā'lī mē dĭg'nŏr hŏnō'rē. Virg.

Dī'rŭīt, ædĭ'fĭcāt, mū'tāt quădrā'tă rŏtūn'dīs. Hor.

Cōmmūnĭcā'bŏ tē mēn'sā *mĕ'ā.*

Vērbō'rŭm mūltĭtū'dĭnĕ sŭpĕrsĕdēn'dŭm *ēst.*

MĔ'RĔŎR, cŭm ădvĕr'bĭīs *bĕ'nĕ, mă'lĕ, mĕ'lĭŭs, pĕ'jŭs, ŏp'-
tĭmē, pēs'sĭmē,* āblātĭ'vō jūn'gĭtŭr,—cŭm præpŏsĭtĭŏ'nĕ *dē :* ŭt,

Dē mē *nūn'quăm* bĕ'nĕ mĕ'rĭtŭs *ēst.*

Quæ'dăm āccĭpĭēn'dī, dīstān'dī, ĕt aŭfĕrēn'dī vēr'bă, ălĭ-
quān'dŏ dātĭ'vō jūngūn'tŭr : ŭt,

Paŭ'lūm sĕpŭl'tæ dīs'tăt īnēr'tĭæ
Cēlā'tă vīr'tūs. Hor.

Ērĭ'pĕ tē mŏ'ræ. Ibid.

Quĭbūs'lĭbĕt vēr'bīs ăd'dĭtŭr āblātĭ'vŭs [57] ābsŏlūtē sūm'ptŭs :
ŭt,

---

thus, mū'tŏ gă'lĕăm tŏ'gā, *I change a hélmet with* or *for a gown ;* and
it is remárkable that mū'tŏ sígnifies eíther to gíve or receíve ín exchánge :
as, mū'tăt ū'văm strĭ'gĭlī, " *he receíves grápes in exchánge for a scráper.*"
—Hor. ; mē dĭg'nŏr hŏnō'rĕ, *I deem mysélf wórthy of hónour.* Hence
they cánnot (in stríctness,) be said to be joíned to an áblative ; but, to
requíre an accúsative fóllowed by an áblative. As well, indeéd, míght
the verbs dō'nŏ, *I presént* or *I gift,* mū'nĕrŏ, *I rewárd,* and séveral
óthers of the like sort, be said to be joíned to an áblative, becaúse, like
mū'tŏ, they have an accúsative of the *pérson,* fóllowed (in géneral) by an
áblative of the *thing.* Gaŭ'dĕŏ, *I delíght in,* and nĭ'tŏr, *I lean on,* have
an áblative ónly. And to these might be ádded a few more.

[57] The áblative cáse is táken *ábsolutely* or *indepéndently,* when the
sense of the súbstantive is ínsulated (as it were) in the séntence : for if
the súbstantive (thus táken or assúmed) have ány word in the séntence
wherebý it can be góverned, or ány verb to which it can be the nómi-
native, then (of course) the áblative case ought not to be úsed. For
exámple, *the king háving spóken these words went awáy,* rēx, hæc lŏcŭ'-
tŭs, discēs'sĭt : here the accúsative *hæc* is góverned by the partíciple
lŏcŭ'tŭs, and the noun understoód with it is not assúmed ábsolutely : but
agaín, *the king, these words háving been said, went away,* rēx, hīs dīc'tīs,
discēs'sĭt ; here *hīs* is the áblative ábsolute. When no partíciple is ex-
préssed with the áblative ábsolute, then exīstēn'tĕ or exīstēn'tĭbŭs, *béing,*
is álways understoód :—as, mē pŭ'ĕrŏ, *me a boy,* that is, *when I was a
boy,* or mē exīstēn'tĕ pŭ'ĕrŏ, *I béing a boy :* Dī'īs īnvī'tīs, *the Gods béing
unwílling,*—understánd, exīstēn'tĭbŭs.

Ĭmpĕrān'tĕ Aūgŭs'tō, *nā'tŭs ēst Chrĭs'tŭs ;* ĭmpĕrān'tĕ
   Tĭbĕ'rĭō, *crŭcĭfīx'ŭs.*
Mē dŭ'cĕ, *tū'tŭs ĕ'rĭs.* Ovid.

Vēr'bīs quĭbūs'dăm ād'dĭtŭr āblātī'vŭs pār'tĭs āffēc'tæ ĕt
pŏē'tĭcē āccūsātī'vŭs : ŭt,

   Ǣgrŏ'tăt ă'nĭmō mă'gĭs quăm cōr'pŏrĕ.
   Căn'dĕt dēn'tēs.
   Rŭ'bĕt căpĭl'lōs.

Quæ'dăm ūsūrpān'tŭr ē'tĭăm cŭm gĕnĭtī'vō : ŭt,

   ———— *Āb sūr'dē fă'cĭs,*
Quĭ ān'gās *te* ă'nĭmī. Plaut.

VERBA PASSIVA.

Verbs Pássice.

Pāssī'vīs ād'dĭtŭr āblātī'vŭs ăgēn'tĭs, sĕd āntĕcēdēn'tĕ *ā* vĕl
ăb præpŏsĭtĭō'nĕ ; ĕt īntēr'dŭm dātī'vŭs : [58] ŭt,

   Laūdā'tŭr ăb *hīs,* cūlpā'tŭr ăb *ĭl'līs.* Hor.
   Hŏnēs'tă bŏ'nīs vĭ'rīs, *nōn ōccūl'tă,* quærūn'tŭr.

Cæ'tĕrī cā'sūs mă'nēnt ĭn pāssī'vīs, [59] quĭ fŭē'rŭnt āctīvō'-
rŭm : ŭt,

   Āccūsā'rĭs *ā mē* fūr'tī.
   Hăbē'bĕrĭs lūdĭ'brĭō.
   Dēdŏcē'bĕrĭs *ā mē ĭs'tōs* mō rēs.
   Prīvā'bĕrĭs măgīstrā'tū.

---

[58] The use of the dátive, instéad of the áblative with a preposítion, is
by a Greek ídiom, and occúrs óftener (perháps) in póetry than in prose.
And sómetimes, with the áblative of the ágent, the preposítion is omítted
áfter pássive verbs : as, scrībē'rĭs Vā'rĭō, *you will be described by Várius.*

[59] The meáning of this Rule appeárs to be, that if with the áctive
voice two cáses (neither of which is góverned by a preposítion) be
emplóyed, the látter of those cáses may be put áfter the pássive voice.
Thus, dŏ'cĕŏ tē grāmmă'tĭcăm, *I teach thee grámmar,* tū dŏcē'rĭs grām-
mă'tĭcăm, *thou art taught grámmar :* rŏ'gŏ tē sēntēn'tĭăm, *I ask thee thy
opínion,* rŏgā'rĭs sēntēn'tĭăm, *thou art ásked thy opínion :* āccīn'gŏ mē
ēn'sěm, *I begírd me with my sword,* āccīn'gŏr ēn'sěm, *I am begírt (as to)
my sword :* ŏ'nĕrō nā'vĕm aū'rō, *I freight the ship with gold,* nā'vĭs
ŏnĕrā'tŭr aū'rō, *the ship is freighted with gold :* lĕ'vŏ tē fās'cĕ, *I líghten
thee of a búndle,* tū lĕvā'rĭs fās'cĕ, *thou art lightened of a búndle.*

Vā′pŭlŏ, vē′nĕŏ, lī′cĕŏ, ĕx′ŭlŏ, fī′ŏ, neŭ′trŏ-pāssī′vă ; pāssī-
văm cōnstrūctiŏ′něm hă′bēnt : ŭt,

A *prǣceptŏ′rĕ* vāpŭlā′bĭs.
Mā′lŏ ā cī′vĕ spŏlĭā′rī, quăm ăb hŏs′tĕ vēnī′rĕ.
Vīr′tūs pār′vō prĕ′tĭō lĭ′cĕt ăb ōm′nĭbŭs.
Cūr ā cōnvīvān′tĭbŭs ēx′ŭlăt *phĭlŏsŏ′phĭă* ?
Quĭd fī′ĕt ăb *ĭl′lō* ?

VERBA INFINITA.
Verbs of the Infinitive Mood.

Vēr′bīs quĭbŭs′dăm, pārtĭcĭ′pīīs, ĕt ādjĕctī′vīs, āddūn′tŭr
vēr′bă īnfīnī′tă ;[60] ĕt pŏĕ′tĭcē sūbstāntī′vīs : ŭt,

Dī′cĕrĕ *quǣ* pŭ′dŭīt, scrībĕrĕ jūs′sīt *ă′mŏr*. Ovid.
Jūs′sŭs cōnfūn′dĕrĕ *fǣ′dŭs*. Virg.
Ĕ′rāt tŭm dīg′nŭs āmā′rī. Ibid.
Tēm′pŭs ăbī′rĕ *tĭ′bĭ*.

Pōnūn′tŭr īntēr′dŭm sŏ′lă, pĕr Ēllīp′sĭn, vēr′bă īnfīnī′tă : ŭt,
—————— *Hīnc* spār′gĕrĕ *vŏ′cēs*
Īn vŭl′gum āmbĭ′gŭās, ĕt quǣ′rĕrĕ cōn′scĭŭs ār′mă. Virg.
[*Hīc subaudĭtur* incipiébat.]

GERUNDIA ET SUPINA.
Gérunds and Súpines.

Gĕrŭn′dĭă ĕt Sŭpī′nă rĕ′gŭnt cā′sŭs sŭŏ′rŭm vērbŏ′rŭm: ŭt,
Ĕf′fĕrŏr stŭ′dĭō pă′trēs *vēs′trōs* vĭdēn′dī. Cic.
Ŭtēn′dŭm[61] *ēst ǣtā′tĕ : cĭ′tō pĕ′dĕ prǣ′tĕrĭt ǣ′tās.* Ovid.
—————— *Scĭtā′tum ōrā′cŭlă Phǣ′bī*
Mĭt′tĭmŭs. Virg.

I. GERUNDIA.
1. *Gérunds.*

Gĕrūn′dĭă īn -*dī* ĕăn′dĕm cŭm gĕnĭtī′vīs cōnstrūctĭŏ′něm
hă′bēnt, ĕt pēn′dēnt ā quĭbŭs′dăm tŭm sūbstāntī′vīs, tŭm
ādjĕctī′vīs : ŭt,

---

[60] When two verbs come together, without ány nóminative case
betweén them, the látter is génerally put in the infinitive mood.

[61] In this Exámple *ŭtĕn′dŭm* is not by ány means the gérund in -*dŭm*,
but the neúter génder of the fúture párticiple pássive in -*dŭs*. See note
63, below.

Cēcrŏ'pĭās ĭnnā'tŭs ă'pēs ă'mŏr ūr'gĕt hăbēn'dī. Virg.
Ǣnē'ās cēl'sā ĭn pūp'pĭ jām cēr'tŭs ĕūn'dī. Ibid.

Gĕrūn'dĭă ĭn *-dŏ* ĕăn'dĕm cŭm āblātī'vīs; ĕt gĕrūn'dĭă ĭn
-dŭm cŭm āccūsātī'vīs, cōnstrūctĭŏ'nĕm ōb'tĭnĕnt ;⁶² ŭt,

Scrĭbēn'dī ră'tĭŏ̄ cōnjūnc'tă cŭm lŏquēn'dŏ *ēst.* Quint.
——*Ă'lĭtūr vĭ'tĭŭm vīvĭt'quĕ* tĕgēn'dŏ. Virg.
Lŏ'cŭs ăd ăgēn'dŭm *āmplĭs'sĭmŭs.* Cic.

Cŭm sĭgnĭfĭcā'tŭr " *Nĕcĕs'sĭtās,*" pōnūn'tŭr gĕrūn'dĭă ĭn
*-dŭm*⁶³ cĭ'trā præpŏsĭtĭŏ'nĕm, ăd'dĭtŏ vēr'bŏ *ēst :* ŭt,

Ōrān'dum ēst, ŭt sīt mēns sā'na ĭn cōr'pŏrĕ sā'nō. Juv.
Vĭgĭlān'dŭm ēst ĕ'ī, quī cŭ'pĭt vĭn'cĕrĕ. •

Vĕrtūn'tŭr ĕ'tĭăm gĕrūn'dĭă ĭn nō'mĭnă ădjĕctī'vă :⁶⁴ ŭt,

Ă̄d ăccūsān'dōs hŏ'mĭnēs *dŭ'cī præ'mĭŏ, prŏx'ĭmŭm lătrō'-
cĭnĭŏ̄ ēst.*

II. SUPINA.

2. *Supines.*

Sŭpī'nŭm ĭn *-ŭm*⁶⁵ āctī'vē sĭgnĭ'fĭcăt, ĕt sĕ'quĭtŭr vēr'bŭm,
aŭt pārtĭcĭ'pĭŭm, sĭgnĭ'fĭcāns mō'tŭm ăd lŏ'cŭm : ŭt,

---

⁶² The gérund in *-dŏ* has sómetimes, though more rárely, the con-
strúction of the dátive case :—as, u'tĭlĕ sĕrēn'dŏ, *úseful to sówing ;*
ăp'tŭs hăbēn'dŏ, *fit to háving,* pār sōlvēn'dō, *équal to páying,* that is,
sólvent.

⁶³ A more vile érror than this was néver coúntenanced. To me,
indeéd, it is, (I conféss) mátter of the greátest astónishment, that híth-
erto évery wríter on Látin Grámmar (as far, at leást, as I am awáre)
should have uniformly fállen ínto the same mistáke and have tácitly sub-
scríbed to the same blúnder.—This " *suppósed Gérund*" is the nóminative
case, síngular, neúter génder, of the fúture párticiple pássive, with the
verb *ēst* assúmed impérsonally. When the sense is not impérsonal, the
verb *ēst* is sómetimes suppréssed : as, lĕvān'dŭm frōn'dĕ nĕ'mŭs, *the grove
must be disbúrdened of its fóliage* or *leáfy boughs.*

⁶⁴ This holds good ónly in verbs which góvern an accúsative case : to
which may be ádded, *fŭn'gŏr, frŭ'ŏr,* and *pŏ'tĭor,*—which had oríginally
an accúsative áfter them.

⁶⁵ The súpine in *-ŭm* is véry élegantly put áfter the verb ĕ'ŏ, *I go,*
vĕ'nĭŏ, *I come,* and mīt'tŏ, *I send :*—but insteád of the súpine, which is
góverned by the prepósition ăd understoód, the póets sómetimes use the
infínitive : as, ĕ'ŏ vĭdĕ'rĕ, *I am góing to see.* On the óther hand, the
súpine in *-ŭm* is occásionally emplóyed áfter óther verbs than those of
mótion :—as, dō fĭ'lĭăm nūp'tŭm, *I give my dáughter to márry.* The
súpine in *ū* does not fóllow all ádjectives, but ónly those sígnifying quálity,
form, and óthers of símilar meáning, such as eásy, dífficult, agreéable,
disagreéable, wórthy, unwórthy, &c. It is also úsed áfter the súbstantives
fās and nĕ'fās.

Spĕctā'tūm vĕ'nĭŭnt, *vĕ'nŭnt spĕctēn'tŭr ŭt ĭp'sæ.* Ovid.
Mī'lĭtēs sŭnt mīs'sī spĕcŭlā'tūm ār'cĕm.

SŬPĪ'NŬM ĭn -*ū* pāssī'vē sīgnĭ'fĭcăt, ĕt sĕ'quĭtŭr nō'mĭnă
ādjĕctī'vă : ŭt,

Quŏd fāc'tū fœ'dŭm ēst, ĭ'dĕm ēst ĕt dīc'tū tūr'pĕ.

DE TEMPORE ET LOCO.
Nouns of Time and Place.

I. TEMPUS.
1. *Time.*

Quæ sīgnĭ'fĭcănt " pār'tĕm tēm'pŏrĭs," ĭn āblātī'vō frĕ-
quēn'tĭŭs pōnŭn'tŭr : ŭt,

Nē'mŏ mōrtā'lĭŭm ōm'nĭbŭs hō'rīs să'pĭt. Plin.

Quæ aū'tĕm " dūrātĭŏ'nĕm tēm'pŏrĭs" sīgnĭ'fĭcănt, ĭn āccū-
sātī'vō fĕ'rĕ pōnŭn'tŭr : ŭt,

Hīc jăm tēr cēn'tŭm tō'tōs rēgnā'bĭtŭr ān'nōs. Virg.
Dī'cĭmŭs ĕ'tĭăm :—

Ĭn paŭ'cĭs dĭē'bŭs.
Dē dĭ'ē.
Dē nōc'tĕ.
Prōmīt'tŏ ĭn dĭ'ēm.
Cōm'mŏdŏ ĭn mēn'sĕm.
Ān'nōs ăd quīnquāgĭn'tă nā'tŭs.
Pĕr trēs ān'nōs stŭ'dŭĭ.
Pŭ'ĕr ĭd ætā'tĭs.
Nōn plŭs trī'dŭŭm, aŭt trī'dŭō.
Tēr'tĭō (*vĕl* ăd tēr'tĭŭm) călēn'dās *vĕl* călēndā'rŭm.

II. SPATIUM LOCI.
2. *Distance of Place.*

Spă'tĭŭm lŏ'cī ĭn accūsātī'vō pŏ'nĭtŭr, ĭntēr'dŭm ĕt ĭn āb-
lātī'vō : ŭt,

Jăm mīl'lĕ pās'sŭs prōcēs'sĕrām.
Ăb'ēst ăb ūr'bĕ quīngēn'tīs mīl'lĭbŭs pās'sŭŭm.
Ĭ'tĕm : *Ăb'ēst bī'dŭī ;—*

[Ŭ'bĭ ĭntēllĭ'gĭtŭr spă'tĭŭm *vĕl* spă'tĭō, ĭtĭ'nĕrĕ *vĕl* ī'tĕr.

III. NOMINA LOCORUM.

3. *The Names of Pláces.*

Ŏm'nĕ vēr'bŭm ādmīt'tĭt gĕnĭtī'vŭm ŏp'pĭdī nŏ'mĭnĭs, ĭn quō fīt āc'tĭŏ, mŏ'dŏ prī'mæ[66] vĕl sĕcūn'dæ dēclīnātĭŏ'nĭs, ĕt sĭngŭlā'rĭs nŭ'mĕrī, sĭt : ŭt,

 Quid Rŏ'mæ *fă cĭăm? Mĕntī'rī nĕ'scĭŏ.*—Juv.

Hī gĕnĭtī'vī, *hŭ'mī, dŏ'mī, mīlĭ'tĭæ, bĕl'lī,* prŏprĭŏ'rŭm sĕquūn'tŭr fōr'măm : ŭt,

 Pār'vī sūnt fŏ'rīs ār'mă, nĭ'sī ēst cōnsĭ'lĭŭm dŏ'mī.
 ———— *Ū'nā sēm'pĕr* mīlĭ'tĭæ ĕt dŏ'mī
Fŭ'ĭmŭs. Ter.

Vē'rŭm sī ŏp'pĭdī nŏ'mĕn plūrā'lĭs dūntāx'ăt nŭ'mĕrī, aūt tēr'tĭæ dēclīnātĭŏ'nĭs fŭ'ĕrĭt, ĭn āblātī'vŏ, pŏ'nĭtŭr : ŭt,

 Cōl'chŭs ăn Āssў'rĭŭs ; Thē'bīs nūtrī'tŭs, ăn Ār'gīs ? Hor.
 Rŏ'mæ *Tĭ'bŭr ă'mēm ; vēntō'sŭs,* Tī'bŭrĕ *Rŏ'măm.* Ibid.

Vēr'bīs sĭgnĭfĭcān'tĭbŭs mŏ'tŭm ăd lŏ'cŭm[67] fĕ'rĕ ād'dĭtŭr nŏ'mĕn lŏ'cī ĭn āccūsātī'vŏ sĭ'nĕ præpŏsĭtĭŏ'nĕ : ŭt,

 Cōncēs'sī Cāntăbrĭ'gĭăm *ăd căpĭēn'dŭm īngĕ'nĭī cūl'tŭm.*

Ăd hūnc mŏ'dŭm ū'tĭmŭr *dŏ'mŭs* ĕt *rūs* : ŭt,

 Ī'tĕ dŏ'mŭm, *să'tŭræ, vĕ'nĭt Hēs'pĕrŭs, ī'tĕ, căpĕl'læ.*
 Ē'gŏ rūs *ī'bŏ.*

---

[66] Towns in -*ē* of the first declénsion have úsually *ĭn ūr'bĕ* set befóre them : as, ĭn ūr'bĕ Mĭtўlē'nēs, *in the cíty of Mitylénē.* Sómetimes, too, a prepŏsition is put befóre the name of a town, as ĭn Rŏ'mā, *in Rome,* ăd vĕl ă'pŭd Rŏ'măm, *beside* or *near Rome.* Both these expréssions, howéver, are dífferent in meáning from *Rŏ'mæ,* which sígnifies "*at Rome.*" The names of cóuntries and íslands are óftentimes (espécially by the póets) úsed like the names of towns, as Cў'prī, *at Cýprus ;* but this is by ellípsis of the words " ĭn rĕgĭŏ'nĕ *vĕl* ĭn īn'sŭlā, *in the district* or *ísland.*

[67] Not ónly the names of towns, but (by poétic lícence) those of nátions and cóuntries, and sómetimes éven cómmon nouns, are úsed in the accúsative case withoút a prepósition, áfter verbs sígnifying "*mótion to* or *tówards :*" as, ī'bĭmŭs Āf'rŏs, *we shall go to the Áfricans ;* spē-lūn'căm căn'dĕm dĕvĕ'nĭŭnt, *they come to the same grot.* The póets álso occásionally emplóy the dátive for the accúsative : as, ĭt clāmŏr cœ'lō, *the clámour goes to heáven,* meáning, *the vociferátions rise to the skies.* When mótion through a *Place* is sígnified, the prepósition *pĕr* is nécessary :—as, ĭ'tĕr fē'cĭt pĕr Lŏndĭ'nŭm ĕt Cān'tĭŭm, *he made a joúrney through Lóndon and Kent.*

Vĕr'bīs sĭgnĭfĭcǎn'tĭbŭs mō'tŭm ā lŏ'cō[68] fĕ'rĕ ǎd'dĭtŭr nō'měn lŏ'cī ĭn ăblātī'vō sĭ'nĕ prǣpŏsĭtĭŏ'nĕ : ŭt,

Nĭ'sĭ ăn'tĕ Rŏ'mā *prŏfēc'tŭs ēs'sēs, nūnc ĕ'ăm rĕlĭn'quĕrēs.*

VERBA IMPERSONALIA.

Verbs Impérsonal.

Vēr bă Ĭmpērsōnā'lĭă nōmĭnātī'vŭm nōn hǎ'bēnt ēnūn-cĭā'tŭm : ŭt,

Jŭ'văt ī'rĕ sŭb ŭm'brās.

Hǣc īmpērsōnā'lĭă, *in'tĕrēst* ĕt *rĕ'fērt* quĭbŭs'lĭbĕt gĕnĭtī'-vīs jūngŭn'tŭr :—prǣ'tĕr hōs ăblātī'vōs fēmĭnī'nōs,—*mĕ'ā, tŭ'ā, sŭ'ā, nōs'trā, vēs'trā,* ĕt *cŭ'jā* :[69] ŭt,

Ĭn'tĕrēst mǎgĭstrā'tŭs *tŭĕ'rī* bŏ'nōs, *ănĭmādvĕr'tĕrĕ in mă'lōs.*
Tŭ'ā rĕ'fērt *tēĭp'sŭm nōs'sĕ.*

Āddūn'tŭr ĕt hī gĕnĭtī'vī, *tān'tī, quān'tī, mǎg'nī, pār'vī, quāntĭcūn'quĕ, tāntī'dĕm* : ŭt,

Tān'tī rĕ'fērt *hŏnēs'tǎ ǎ'gĕrĕ.*

Dătī'vŭm pōs'tŭlānt īmpērsōnā'lĭă ăcquīsītī'vē pŏ'sĭtă ; quǣ aū'tĕm trānsĭtī'vē pōnūn'tŭr, ăccūsātī'vŭm : ŭt,

Ā Dĕ'ō nō'bīs bĕ'nĕfīt.
Mē jŭ'văt[70] *ī'rĕ pĕr ăl'tŭm.*

---

[68] Although the póets, véry fréquently, put the names of cóuntries, próvinces, íslands, and séveral óther pláces which do not come próperly únder the denominátion of cíties or towns, in the áblative case withóut a preposítion, áfter verbs of "*mótion from*," as Sĭcĭ'lĭā dīscēs'sĭt, *he depárted from Sícily,* yet, in prose, this constrúction is séldom, or néver, admítted ; some preposítion, as, *ā, ăb, ē, ēx, dē,* béing cómmonly set befóre the noun : as, ēx Hībēr'nĭā rĕvēr'sŭs ēst, *he retúrned from* or *out of I'reland.*

[69] Mány grammárians (among óthers Válpy) consíder these prónouns to be the accúsative case plúral neúter génder, góverned by *in'tĕr* or *ăd* understóod.

[70] These four, jŭ'văt, *it delíghts,* dĕ'cĕt, *it befíts,* dēlēc'tăt, *it delíghts,* and ŏpŏr'tĕt, *it behóves,* are génerally fóllowed by an accúsative of the pérson and an ínfinitive : and here it may be obsérved, that the ínfinitive áfter ŏpŏr'tĕt is élegantly chánged ínto a subjúnctive, with the omíssion both of the pérson and of *ŭt :*—as, ŏpŏr'tĕt făcĭās, *it behóves that you do it,* for ŏpŏr'tĕt tē fă'cĕrĕ, *it behóves you to do it.*

Hīs vē'rō, *ăt'tĭnĕt*, *pēr'tĭnĕt*, *spēc'tăt*, prŏ'prĭē ăd'dĭtŭr præpŏsĭ'tĭŏ *ăd:* ŭt,

> *Mē vīs dī'cĕrĕ quŏd* ād *te* ăt'tĭnĕt? Ter.
> Spēc'tăt ăd ōm'nēs bĕ'nĕ vī'vĕrĕ.

Hīs ĭmpērsōnā'lĭbŭs sūbjĭ'cĭtŭr āccūsātī'vŭs cŭm gĕnĭtī'vō,[71] *pæ'nĭtĕt, tæ'dĕt, mĭ'sĕrĕt, mĭsĕrē'cĭt, pŭ'dĕt, pĭ'gĕt :* ŭt,

> *Sī ăd cēntē'sĭmŭm rīxĭs'sĕt ān'nŭm, sĕnēctū'tĭs ĕ'ŭm*
> *sŭ'æ nōn pænĭtē'rĕt.* Cic.
> *Mĭ'sĕrĕt mē tŭ'ī.*

Vēr'bŭm ĭmpērsōnā'lĕ pāssī'væ vō'cĭs prō sīn'gŭlīs pērsō'nīs ŭtrĭūs'quĕ nŭ'mĕrī ēlĕgān'tĕr āc'cĭpī pŏ'tēst: ŭt,

> *Stā'tŭr ;* ĭd ēst, stō, stās, stŭt, stā'mŭs, stā'tĭs, stānt, vĭdē'-
> lĭcĕt ēx vī ādjūnc'tī cā'sŭs: ŭt, *stā'tŭr ā mē :* ĭd ēst, stō:
> stā'tŭr ăb ĭl'līs ;* ĭd ēst, stānt.

PARTICIPIORUM CONSTRUCTIO.

The Constrúction of Párticiples.

Pārtĭcĭ'pĭă rĕ'gŭnt cā'sŭs vērbō'rŭm ā quī'bŭs dērīvān'tŭr : ŭt,

> ———*Dŭ'plĭcēs* tēn'dēns ād sī'dĕră pāl'mās,
> *Tā'lĭă vō'cĕ rĕ'fĕrt.* Virg.

Pārtĭcĭ'pĭīs pāssī'væ vō'cĭs ād'dĭtŭr īntēr'dŭm dătī'vŭs, præsēr'tĭm sī ēx'ĕŭnt ĭn *-dŭs :* ŭt,

> *Māg'nŭs cī'vĭs ŏ'bĭt, ĕt fōrmīdā'tŭs Ŏthō'nī.*
> ——— *Rēs'tāt Chrĕ'mēs,*
> qui mĭ'hi̧ ēxōrān'dŭs ēst. Ter.

Pārtĭcĭ'pĭă, cŭm fī'ŭnt nŏ'mĭnă,[72] gĕnĭtī'vŭm ēx'ĭgŭnt : ŭt,

> *Ă'lĭē'nī āp'pĕtēns, sŭ'ī prŏfū'sŭs.* Sall.

Ēxō'sŭs pĕrō'sŭs, pērtæ'sŭs, āctī'vē sīgnĭfĭcān'tĭă, āccūsā-
tī'vŭm ēx'ĭgŭnt : ŭt,

---

[71] This génitive is sómetimes túrned ínto an infínitive mood of kíndred signĭficátion : as, pœ'nĭtĕt mē pēccā'tī, *it repénts me of my offénce,* pœ'-nĭtĕt mē pēccás'sĕ, *it répents me to have offénded,* that is, *to have offénded repénts me.*

[72] A párticiple is said to becóme a noun, when it is entírely divésted of the idéa of time, or is cápable of compárison : thus, in the phrase, pă'tĭēns frī'gŭs, *súffering cold,* pă'tĭēns is a párticiple ; but in the phrase, pă'tĭēns frī'gŏrĭs, *pátient of cold,* pă'tĭēns is a participĭal or vérbal ád-jective.

Ā́strŏ'nŏmŭs ēxō'sŭs ăd ū'năm mŭlĭ'ĕrēs.
Ī́mmūn'dăm sēgnĭ'tĭēm pĕrō'sæ.
Pērtǽ'sŭs ĭgnā'vĭăm *sŭ'ăm.* Suet.

Ēxō'sŭs, ĕt *pĕrō'sŭs,* pāssī'vē sīgnĭfĭcān'tĭă, cŭm dătī'vō lĕgūn'tŭr ; ŭt,

Ēxō'sŭs Dĕ'ō *ĕt* sānc'tīs.
Gĕrmā'nī Rōmā'nīs pĕrō'sī *sŭnt.*

Nā'tŭs, prōgnā'tŭs, sǎ'tŭs, crē'tŭs, crĕā'tŭs, ōr'tŭs, ē'dĭtŭs, ăblātī'vŭm ēx'ĭgūnt ; ĕt sæ'pĕ cŭm præpŏsĭtĭō'nĕ : ŭt,

Bŏ'nă bŏ'nīs prōgnā'tă părēn'tĭbŭs.
Sǎ'tĕ sān'gŭĭnĕ *Dĭ'vūm !* Virg.
Quō sān'gŭĭnĕ crē'tŭs ! Ibid.
Vĕ'nŭs, ōr'tă mǎ'rī, *mǎ'rĕ* prǎ'stăt cŭn'tī. Ovid.
Tēr'rā ē'dĭtŭs.
Ēdĭtă dē *mǎg'nō* flŭ'mĭnĕ *nŷm'phă fŭ'ī.*

ADVERBIORUM CONSTRUCTIO.
The Constrúction of Ádverbs.

Ēn ĕt *ēc'cĕ,* dēmōnstrān'dī ādvēr'bĭă, nōmĭnātī'vō frĕquēn'tĭŭs jūngūn'tŭr, āccūsātī'vō rā'rĭŭs : ŭt,

Ēn Prĭ'ămŭs. Virg.
Ēccĕ tĭ'bĭ stǎ'tŭs *nŏs'tĕr.* Cic.
—————— Ēn *quǎ'tŭŏr* ā'rās ;
Ēc'cĕ dŭ'ās tĭ'bĭ *Dăph'nī ; dŭŏ'que* āltā'rĭă *Phæ'bō.*

Ēn ĕt *ēc'cĕ* ēxprŏbrān'dī, sŏ'lī āccūsātī'vō jūngūn'tŭr ; ŭt,

Ēn ă'nĭmŭm *ĕt* mēn'tĕm.
Ēc'cĕ *au'tĕm* āl'tĕrŭm.

Quǣ'DĂM ādvēr'bĭă lŏ'cī, tēm'pŏrĭs, ĕt quāntĭtā'tĭs, gĕnĭtī'vŭm ādmĭt'tūnt.

1. Lŏ'cī ; ŭt, *ŭ'bĭ, ŭ'bĭnăm,* nūs'quăm, *ĕ'ō,* lōn'gē, *quō, ŭbĭ'vīs, hūc'cĭnĕ, &c. :* ŭt,

Ŭ'bĭ gēn'tĭŭm ?
Nūs'quăm lŏ'cī ĭnvĕnī'tŭr.
Ē'ō īmpŭdēn'tĭæ *vēn'tŭm ēst.*
Quō tērrā'rŭm *ăb'ĭĭt ?*

2. Tēm'pŏrĭs ; ŭt, *nūnc, tūnc, tŭm, īntĕr'rĕā,* prĭ'dĭē, pōs-trĭ'dĭē, *&c. :* ŭt,

Nǐhǐl tūnc tēm'pŏrǐs *ām'plǐŭs quăm flē'rĕ pŏ'tĕrām.*
Prī'dĭē *ē'jŭs* dĭē'ī *pŭg'năm ǐnǐē'rŭnt.*
Prī'dĭē călēndā'rŭm,—*vĕl călēn'dās.*

3. Quāntĭtā'tĭs ; *ut, pă'rŭm, să'tĭs, ăbūn'dē, &c. : ut,*

Să'tĭs ēlŏquēn'tǐæ, săpǐēn'tǐæ pă'rŭm. Sall.
Ăbūn'dē fābŭlā'rŭm audī'vǐmŭs.

Quǣ'dăm cā'sūs ādmīt'tŭnt nŏ'mǐnŭm[73] ūn'dĕ dēdūc'tā sūnt : *ut,*

Sǐ'bǐ ǐnūtǐ'lǐtĕr vī'vǐt.
Prŏx'ǐmē Hǐspā'nǐăm Mau'rǐ sūnt. Sall.
Mĕ'lǐŭs vĕl ŏp'tǐmē ōm'nǐŭm. Cic.
Ăm'plǐŭs ŏpǐnǐŏ'nĕ mŏrābā'tŭr. Sall.

Ādvēr'bĭx dīvērsǐtā'tǐs, *ă'lǐtĕr, sĕ'cŭs ; ĕt ǐl'lă dŭ'ŏ, ăn'tĕ, pōst,* āblātī'vō nōn rā'rō jūngūn'tŭr : *ut,*

Mūl'tō ă'lǐtĕr.
Pau'lō sĕ'cŭs.
Mūl'tō ăn'tĕ.
Pau'lō pōst.
Lōn'gō pōst tēm'pŏrĕ vē'nǐt. Virg.

Ǐn'stār ĕt ēr'gō ādvērbǐā'lǐtĕr sūm'ptă gĕnǐtī'vŭm pōst sē hă'bēnt : *ut,*

Ǐn'stār mōn'tǐs ĕ'quŭm, dīvī'nā Păl'lădǐs ār'tĕ,
Ædǐ'fǐcānt. Virg.
Dōnā'rī vǐrtū'tǐs ēr'gō. Cic.

CONJUNCTIONUM CONSTRUCTIO.

The Constrúction of Conjúnctions.

Cōnjūnctǐŏ'nēs cōpŭlātī'væ, ĕt dǐsjūnctī'væ, sǐ'mǐlēs cā'sūs, mŏ'dōs, ĕt tēm'pŏră, cōnjūn'gūnt ; *ut,*

Sŏ'crătēs dŏ'cŭit Xĕnŏphōn'tĕm ĕt Plătō'nĕm.
Rĕc'tō stăt cōr'pŏrĕ, dēspǐcǐt'quĕ tēr'rās.
Nĕc scrī'bǐt, nĕc lĕ'gǐt.

Nǐ'sǐ vă'rǐæ cōnstrūctǐŏ'nǐs rā'tǐŏ ă'lǐŭd pōs'căt : *ut,*

---

[73] And ádverbs of the compárative degreé have óptionally the con-júnction *quăm* áfter them, or an áblative (if the sense will admit) with the omíssion of *quăm :* thus, ăl'tǐŭs quăm sŏ'lǐtŭm *vĕl* ăl'tǐŭs sŏ'lǐtŏ, *more lóftily than úsual.*

Ē mī lī′brŭm cēntūs′sī ĕt plū′rīs.

Viǎ′ī Rŏ′mæ ĕt Vĕnĕ′tĭīs.

Nī′sĭ mē lāctās′sēs *ămān′tĕm,* ĕt *fūl′sā* spē prōdū′cĕrēs.

Quǎm sæ′pĕ īntēllī′gĭtŭr pōst *ām′plĭŭs, plūs,* ĕt *mĭ′nŭs* : ŭt,

Ām′plĭŭs *sūnt* sēx mēn′sēs. Cic.

Paū′lō plūs trēcēn′tā vĕhī′cŭlā *sūnt āmīs′să.* Liv.

Nūn′quăm nīx mĭ′nŭs quǎ′tŭŏr pĕ′dēs *āl′tă jă′cŭit.*

<div style="text-align:center">

Quǐ′bŭs vērbō′rŭm mŏ′dīs quǣ′dăm cōn′grŭŭnt ādvēr′bǐă
ĕt cōnjūnctĭōnēs.

</div>

Nē, *ăn, nŭm,* dŭbĭtātĭ′vē, aūt īndēfīnī′tē, pŏ′sĭtă sūbjūnc-
tī′vō jūngūn′tŭr : ŭt,

Nī′hĭl rē′fĕrt fēcĕrīs′nĕ ăn pērsuā′sĕrĭs.

Vī′sĕ, nŭm rĕdī′ĕrĭt.

Dŭm, prō *dŭm′mŏdŏ* ĕt *quōūs′quĕ,* sūbjūnctī′vŭm pōstŭ′-
lăt:⁷⁴ ŭt,

Dŭm prō′sīm *tĭ′bĭ.*

Tēr′tĭă dŭm *rēgnān′tĕm* vī′dĕrĭt *ǣs′tās.*

Quī, caū′săm sīgnĭ′fĭcāns, sūbjūnctī′vŭm ēx′ĭgĭt : ŭt,

Stūl′tŭs ĕs quī *huĭc* crē′dās.

Ŭt, prō *pōst′quăm, sī′cŭt,* ĕt *quŏ′mŏdŏ,* īndĭcātī′vō jūn′gĭtŭr :
—cŭm aū′tĕm *quān′quăm, ūt′pŏtĕ,* vĕl *fĭnā′lĕm* caū′săm⁷⁵
dē′nŏtăt, sūbjūnctī′vō : ŭt,

---

⁷⁴ *Dŭm,* whenever it sígnifies "*whilst* or *until,*" is joíned to the indi-
cative mood : in like mánner *cŭm,* when it sígnifies "*when,*" and *dŏ′nĕc*
in the sense of "*so long,*" are fóllowed by the indícative :—but when
cŭm is úsed for "*since,*" and *dŏ′nĕc* for "*until,*" the subjúnctive mood
is nécessary. Lĭ′cĕt, *although,* ŭ′tĭnăm, *I wish,* dŭm′mŏdŏ, *provided-
that,* and a few óthers of like impórt, have móre cómmonly the subjúnc-
tive mood áfter them. *Nē,* the ádverb of forbídding, takes éither the
impérative or subjúnctive mood ; but nē, *lest,* takes the subjúnctive ónly :
thus, nē tĭ′mē *vĕl* nē tĭ′mĕās, *do not fear ;* că′vĕ nē fă′cĭās, *take care
lest thou do,* that is, *take care thou do not :* but there is óften an ellípsis
of the word *nē.* And here it should be nóticed, that áfter verbs ot
feáring, *nē* álways means "*lest,*" and implíes a pártial want of negátion,
whilst *ŭt, that,* has an acceptátion the véry revérse :—thus, tĭ′mĕŏ nē
fă′cĭăt, *I fear lest he do it,* that is, *I am afraíd he will do it :* tĭ′mĕŏ ŭt
fă′cĭăt, *I fear that he may do it,* that is, *I am afraíd that he will not
do it.*

⁷⁵ The conjúnction *ŭt,* when connécted with a contíngent verb, is

Ūt sŭ′mŭs *in* Pōn′tō, tēr *frī′gŏrĕ* cōn′stĭtĭt Īs′tĕr. Ovid.
Ŭt *tū′tĕ* ēs, *ī′tă* ōm′nēs cēn′sēs ēs′sĕ.
Ŭt ōm′nĭă cōntĭn′gānt, *quæ vŏ′lŏ, lĕvā′rī nōn pōs′sŭm.*
Nōn ēst tī′bī fīdēn′dŭm, ŭt *quī tŏ′tĭēs* fĕfĕl′lĕrīs.
Te ō′rō Dā′ve, ŭt rĕ′dĕăt *jam in vī′ăm.* Ter.

Ōm′nēs dē′nĭquĕ vō′cēs īndēfīnī′tē[76] pŏ′sĭtæ, quā′lēs sūnt
quĭs, quan′tŭs, quŏ′tŭs, &c. sŭbjūnctī′vŭm pōs′tŭlānt : ŭt,

Cuī scrī′bām *vī′dĕŏ.* Cic.

——————— Quan′tŭs
Īn clȳ′pĕum āssūr′gāt ; quō *tūr′bĭnĕ* tōr′quĕāt *hăs′tăm.*

─────────

ŏften omitted áfter vŏ′lŏ, *I wish,* ŏpōr′tĕt, *it behóves,* fĕr, *do thou,* nĕ-
cēs′sĕ ēst, *it is réquisite,* and a few óthers : as, făc cŏ′gĭtēs, *do think,*
for făc ŭt cŏ′gĭtēs.

[76] By "*words put indéfinitely*" we are to understánd "*words em-
plóyed in an unrestrícted, doúbtful, or undefíned sense,*" particularly
Interrógatives, whéther indéed, they be *Nouns* or *Prónouns* or *Ad′verbs*
or *Conjúnctions.* But the same words, when emplóyed in a *restrícted* or
pósitive sense, will have the indicative mood. And here it may be
remárked that the conjúnctions, aū′tĕm, *but,* vĕ′rō, *but,* ĕ′nĭm, *for,* quŏ′-
quĕ, *álso,* and the ádverb quī′dĕm, *indéed,* cánnot stand first in a
séntence : and that ĕ′tĕnĭm, *for,* sĕd, *but,* ēr′gō, *thérefore,* ī′gĭtŭr, *for
this or that réason,* ī′tăquĕ, *thérefore,* and séveral óthers, are sómetimes
the first word, and sómetimes the sécond or third. There are few points
in Látin more dífficult than the próper use of conjúnctions : the fól-
lowing rules it is hóped will be found úseful.

1. Ŭt, quō, lī′cĕt, ŭ′tĭnăm, and dūm′mŏdŏ álmost álways have a sub-
júnctive mood ; as, Āvā′rō quĭd mă′lī ōp′tēs nī′sī ŭt vī′vāt dī′ū ? Jŭ′vā
mē quō ĭd fī′āt făcī′lĭŭs. Dī′căm ĕ′quĭdĕm lī′cĕt ār′mă mī′hī mōrtēm′quĕ
mĭnē′tŭr. Īmmōrtā′lĭā nē spē′rēs mŏ′nĕt ān′nŭs. Ŭ′tĭnăm lībĕrō′rŭm
nōstrŏ′rŭm mō′rēs nōn īp′sī pērdĕrē′mŭs. Ōm′nĭă hŏnēs′tă nēg′lĭgŭnt
dūm′mŏdŏ pŏtēn′tĭăm cōnsĕquān′tŭr.

2. Ēt′sī, tămĕt′sī, quan′quăm, in the beginning of a séntence, require
the indicative : as, Ēt′sī vĕ′rĕŏr jŭ′dĭcēs. Tămĕt′sī vīcĭs′sĕ dē′bĕŏ.
Quān′quăm āctĭŏ′nĕm nōn dēsīdĕrā′băm.

3. Ētĭăm′sī and quăm′vīs have génerally a subjúnctive, though sóme-
times an indicative : as, Ētĭăm′sī măx′ĭmă sīnt. Quăm′vīs Ēlȳ′sĭōs
mīrē′tŭr Græ′cĭă căm′pōs. Ĭs′tă vĕ′rĭtăs ĕtĭăm′sī jŭcūn′dă nōn ēst.

4. Ŭt for quăm′vīs admíts ónly a subjúnctive : as, Ŭt dē′sĭnt vī′rēs
tă′mĕn ēst laūdăn′dă vŏlūn′tăs.

5. Quŏ′nĭăm, quăn′dŏ, quāndŏ′quĭdĕm have génerally an indicative :
as, Quŏ′nĭăm nōn pŏ′tēst fī′ĕrī quŏd vīs. Quāndō ĕ′gŏ tŭ′ŭm nōn cŭ′rō.
Quāndŏ′quĭdĕm ĭn mōl′lī cōnsĕ′dĭmŭs hēr′bā.

6. Quīp′pĕ háving the méaning of năm requires the indicative : **as,**
Quīp′pĕ vĕ′tŏr fā′tīs.

7. Ŭt′pŏtĕ, and quīp′pĕ úsed for ŭt′pŏtĕ, if fóllowed by quī, have gé-
nerally the subjúnctive, rárely the indicative ; if fóllowed by cŭm, have
ónly the subjúnctive : as, Ŭt′pŏtĕ quī ĭn cēl′lăm aū′rŭm cōntŭ′lĕrĭt. Nōn
ĭgnŏ′răt vŏlŭptā′tĕm Ēpĭcū′rŭs ŭt′pŏtĕ quī tēstĭfĭcē′tŭr. Ŭt′pŏtĕ quī

PRÆPOSITIONUM CONSTRUCTIO.

The Constrúction of Prepositions.

Præpŏsĭ'tĭŏ, sŭbaūdī'tă, ĭntĕr'dŭm fă'cĭt ŭt āddā'tŭr āblā-
tī'vŭs : ŭt,

> *Hă'bĕŏ tē* lŏ'cō *păren'tis :*
> [ĭd ēst, *in* lŏ'cō.]

Præpŏsĭ'tĭŏ, ĭn cōmpŏsĭtĭŏ'nĕ, eŭn'dĕm nōnnūn'quăm cā'sŭm
rĕ'gĭt, quĕm ĕt ex'trā cōmpŏsĭtĭŏ'nĕm rĕgē'băt :[77] ŭt,

> Dētrū'dŭnt *nā'vēs* scŏ'pŭlō.   Virg.
> Prætĕr'rĕŏ tē *insălūtā'tŭm.*

Vēr'bă cōmpŏ'sĭtă cŭm *ā, ăb, ăd, cōn, dē, ē, ex, ĭn,* nōn-
nūn'quăm rĕ'pĕtūnt eās'dĕm præpŏsĭtĭŏ'nēs cŭm sŭ'ō cā'sū
ex'trā cōmpŏsĭtĭŏ'nĕm, ĭd'quĕ ēlĕgăn'tĕr :[78] ŭt,

> Ābstĭnŭē'rūnt ā *vī'nō.*

---

dĕpūgnā'vĭt.   Quĭp'pĕ quī ōp'tĭmōs cī'vēs jŭgŭlă'rī jūs'sĭt.   Quĭp'pĕ jūs-
tĭ'tĭă sĭ'nĕ prūdēn'tĭā să'tĭs hă'bĕăt aūctōrĭtā'tĭs.   Ŭt'pŏtĕ cŭm sĭ'nĕ
fĕ'brē lăbōrā'sĕm.

8. Quŏd and quĭ'ă, hăving a dĕfinite mĕaning, requíre the indicative,
hăving an indĕfinite mĕaning, requíre the subjúnctive : as, Bĕ'nĕ fă'cĭs
quŏd mē ădjū'vās.   Quĭ'ă accēs'sĭt pēcŭ'nĭă sŭblā'tī sūnt ă'nĭmī.   Quŏd
Nă'sīcăm dēfēndĭs'sĕt lĕ'vĭtĕr succēn'sŭĭt.   Nĕ'mŏ ĭp'săm vŏlŭptā'tĕm,
quĭ'ă vŏlŭp'tās sĭt, āspērnā'tŭr.

9. Cŭm, hăving the mĕaning of quŏ'nĭăm, requíres the subjúnctive ;
hăving the mĕaning of quŏd, gĕnerally requíres an indicative : as, Cŭm
ră'pĭant mă'lă fă'tă bŏ'nōs.   Tĭ'bĭ grā'tĭăs ă'gŏ cŭm tān'tŭm mĕ'æ lĭtĕ'ræ
pŏtŭē'rŭnt.

10. Sī, sĭn, nĭ'sī, sĭ'quĭdĕm sómetimes requíre the subjúnctive, sóme-
times the indicative : as, Sī ĭl'lŭm rĕlīn'quŏ ē'jŭs vī'tæ tĭ'mĕō.   Mĭ'rŭm
nī dŏ'mī ēst.   Nĭ'sī mē ōm'nĭă fāl'lănt.   Sĭ'quĭdĕm quæ nūncĭăn tŭr vē'ră
sūnt.   Sī ĭd scīs'sĕm nūn'quăm hūc rĕtŭlĭs'sĕm pĕ'dĕm.   Sĭn ĭd pă'rŭm
prōcē'dăt.   Nĭ nōs'sĕm caū'săm crē'dĕrĕm hūnc lŏ'quī vē'rŭm.   Nĕc vĕ'nĭ
nĭ'sī fă'tă lŏ'cŭm dĕdĭs'sēnt.   Ō mŏ'rĕm præclā'rŭm sĭ'quĭdĕm tĕnērē'mŭs.

Sī hăving the mĕaning of quăm'vīs gĕnerally requíres the subjúnctive :
as, Nōn sī mē ŏb'sĕcrĕt.   Yet it sómetimes has the indicative : as, Vĕ'rŭm,
sī cōgnā'tă ēst măx'ĭmē.

11. Dŭm hăving the mĕaning of dŭm'mŏdŏ, and quĭn hăving the
mĕaning of quŏd nōn, requíre the subjúnctive : as, Ŏ'dērĭnt dŭm mĕ'-
tŭănt.   Nōn quĭn ĭp'sĕ dissēn'tĭăm.

[77] A preposítion in compositíon séldom góverns a case unléss the verb
and preposítion can be disjoíned withoút détriment to the sense :—thus,
of the two exámples gíven in the text, the one may be resólved into
trū'dŭnt nā'vēs dē scŏ'pŭlō; and the óther into *ĕ'ō prætĕr tē insă-
lūtā'tŭm.*

[78] It is óftentimes more élegant, and sómetimes more expréssive, to

Ĭn, prō ēr'gā, cōn'trā, ăd, ĕt sū'prā,[79] ăccūsātī'vŭm ēx'ĭgĭt; ŭt,

> Ăc'cĭpĭt ĭn Tcŭ'crōs ă'nĭmŭm, mēntēm'quĕ bĕnīg'năm.
> Ĭn cōm'mŏdă pūb'lĭcă pēc'cēm. Hor.
> Ĭn rēg'nŭm quæ'rĭtŭr hǣ'rēs.
> Rĕ'gēs ĭn ĭp'sōs impĕ'rĭum ēst Jŏ'vĭs. Hor.

Sŭb, cŭm ăd tēm'pŭs rĕfēr'tŭr, ăccūsātī'vō fĕ'rĕ jūn'gĭtŭr: ŭt,

> Sŭb ĭ'dĕm tēm'pŭs: Liv.

[ĭd ēst, cīr'că vĕl pĕr ĭ'dĕm tēm'pŭs.]

Sū'pĕr, prō ŭl'trā, ăccūsātī'vō; prō dē, ăblātī'vō ăppŏ'nĭtŭr: ŭt,

> ———— Sū'pĕr ēt Gărămān'tăs ĕt Ĭn'dōs.
> Prō'fĕrĕt impĕ'rĭŭm.———Virg.
> Mūl'tă sū'pĕr Prĭ'āmō rŏ'gĭtāns, sū'pĕr Hēc'tŏrĕ mūl'tă.

Tĕ'nŭs ăblātī'vō ĕt sīngŭlā'rī, ĕt plūrā'lī, jūn'gĭtŭr: ŭt,

> Pū'bĕ tĕ'nŭs.
> Pēctŏ'rĭbŭs tĕ'nŭs.

Ăt gĕnĭtī'vō tān'tŭm plūrā'lī:—ĕt sēm'pĕr cā'sŭm sŭ'ŭm sĕ'quĭtŭr: ŭt,

> Crū'rŭm tĕ'nŭs.

INTERJECTIONUM CONSTRUCTIO.
The Constrúction of Interjéctions.

Ĭntērjēctĭŏ'nēs nōn rā'rō sĭ'nĕ cā'sū pōnūn'tŭr; ŭt,

> Spēm grĕ'gĭs, āh! sĭ'līce ĭn nū'dā cōnnĭx'ă rĕlĭ'quĭt.
> Quæ, mă'lŭm, dēmēn'tĭă !

Ō, ēxclāmān'tĭs, nōmĭnātĭ'vō, ăccūsātī'vō, ĕt vŏcātĭ'vō, jūn'gĭtŭr: ŭt,

---

use a verb compoúnded with one of these prepositíons, than to use the símple verb, in the véry same sense :—thus, to say, nĭ'hĭl ēxī'băt ēx ŏ'rĕ, *nothing went out from his mouth*, is more élegant and more expréssive than to say, nĭ'hĭl ī'băt ēx ŏ'rĕ, *nothing went out of his mouth:* in like mánner, the phrase injĭ'cĕrĕ mă'nŭs ĭn ă'lĭquĕm, *to throw on hands upón ány one*, is more élegant than the phrase jă'cĕrĕ mă'nŭs ĭn ă'lĭquĕm, *to throw hands upón ány one.*

[79] To these four might be ádded pĕr : as, in the phrase, ĭn hŏ'rās, *through* or *into hours*, that is, *hoúrly* or *évery hour :*—so, líkewise, ĭn dī'ēs sīn'gŭlōs, *through indivídual days*, that is, *dáily.* When ĭn is put for ĭn'tĕr it takes an áblative áfter it : as, ĭn ămī'cīs hăbē'rĕ, *to have amóng friends*, that is, *in the númber of one's friends.*

Ō *fēs'tūs* dī'ēs *hŏ'mĭnĭs!* Ter.

Ō *fōrtūnā'tōs nĭ'mĭŭm, sŭ'ă sĭ bŏ'nă nō'rĭnt,*
Ā̆grĭ'cŏlās!—Virg.

Ō *fōrmō'sĕ* pŭ'ĕr! *nĭ'mĭŭm nē crē'dĕ cŏlō'rī.* Ibid.

HEŪ ĕt *prŏh,* nŭnc nomĭnātī'vō, nŭnc ācċūsātī'vō, jūngŭn'
tŭr: ŭt,

Heū pī'ĕtās, heū *prīs'că* fī'dēs. Virg.
Heū stīr'pem *ĭnvī'săm.* Ibid.
Prŏh Jŭ'pĭtēr! *tū me, hŏ'mo, ă'dĭgĭs ăd ĭnsā'nĭăm.* Ter.
Prŏh *Dē'úm āt'que hŏ'mĭnūm* fī'dēm! Ibid.

Ĭ'tĕm vŏcātī'vō: ŭt,

Prŏh *sānc'tĕ* Jŭ'pĭtĕr! Cic.

HEĪ ĕt *vāe* dătī'vō[80] jūngŭn'tŭr: ŭt,

Heī mĭ'hĭ *quŏd nŭl'lĭs ă'mŏr ēst mĕdĭcā'bĭlĭs hēr'bĭs!*
Vāe *mĭ'sĕrō* mĭ'hĭ! *quăn'tā dē spē dē'cĭdī!* Ter.

PROSODIA.

PRŎSŌ'DĬĂ ēst pārs Grāmmā'tĭcāe, quāe Quāntĭtā'tĕm Sȳllăbā'rŭm dŏ'cēt.

Dīvī'dĭtŭr Prŏsō'dĭă ĭn trēs pār'tēs, *Tŏ'nŭm, Spī'rĭtŭm,* ĕt
Tēm'pŭs.

Hōc lŏ'cō vī'sŭm ēst nŏ'bīs dē *Tēm'pŏrĕ* tān'tŭm trāctā'rĕ.

TĒM'PŬS ēst sȳl'lăbāe prōfĕrēn'dāe mēnsū'rā.

---

[80] Interjéctions being nóthing more than ejáculative párticles of *Joy,*
Surprise, Sórrow, or some óther súdden emótion of mind, they can have
néither cóncord nor góvernment: and, thérefore, the cáses wherewíth
they are jóined, or wherebý they are fóllowed, álways depénd on some
óther word, or phrase understoód. In some ínstances the ímport of an
interjéction approáches clósely to that of a verb, and in óthers to that of
a noun; hence, we may, in those ínstances, view the interjéction in the
light of a súbstitute for the verb or noun which it approáches in meáning:
thus, for exámple, in the phrase, Ō mē mĭ'sĕrŭm, *O wrétched me,* the
interjéction *O* seems to convéy the sense of sēn'tĭŏ, *I feel* or *I percéive:*
—again, in the phrase, hēm āstū'tĭās, *hah! the craft,* the interjéction
hēm is álmost synónymous with, vĭ'dĕŏr mĭ'hĭmĕt mīrā'rī, *I seem to*
mysélf to admíre:—so *heī* and *vāe* have génerally a significátion bórdering on that of mā'lŭm, *évil* or *míschief;* hence, *heī* mĭ'hĭ or *vāe*
mĭ'hĭ may be regárded as equívalent to mā'lŭm ēst mĭ'hĭ, *it is an évil* or
a calámity to me.

Tēm'pŭs brĕ'vĕ sīc nŏtā'tŭr (˘); ŭt, *dŏ'mĭnŭs*: lōn'gŭm
aū'tĕm sīc (¯); ŭt, *cōn'trā*.

Pēs dŭā'rŭm syllăbā'rŭm plūrĭūm'vĕ cōnstĭtū'tĭŏ ēst, ēx
cēr'tā Tēm'pŏrŭm ōbsērvātĭŏ'nĕ.

Spōndæ'ŭs ēst dīssyl'lăbŭs; ŭt, *vīr'tūs*.

Dāc'tylŭs ēst trīsyl'lăbŭs; ŭt, *scrī'bĕrĕ*.[1]

Scān'sĭŏ ēst lēgĭ'tĭmā vēr'sūs ĭn sĭn'gŭlōs pĕ'dēs cōmmēn-
sūrā'tĭŏ.

Scānsĭŏ'nī āc'cĭdūnt Fĭgū'ræ, *Synălæ'phă, Ēcthlīp'sĭs, Sy-
næ'rĕsĭs, Dĭæ'rĕsĭs,* ĕt *Cæsū'rā*.[2]

I. *Synălæ'phă* ēst ēlī'sĭŏ vōcā'lĭs ĭn fī'nĕ dīctĭŏ'nĭs, ān'tĕ
āl'tĕrăm ĭn ĭnĭ'tĭŏ sĕquēn'tĭs:[3] ŭt,

---

[1] Since the E'ton Grámmar treats of no more than two different sorts
of Verse, námely, *Heróïc* and *Elegíac*, it was not nécessary to méntion ány
óther feet than those of which these two sorts consist,—that is *Spóndees*
and *Dáctyles*. Of late years, howéver, Prósody and Versificátion have
desérvedly becóme óbjects of greáter atténtion in most of the Grámmar
Schools of this émpire; and, therefóre, it is réquisite to nótice a few
more (at least) of the *Métrical Feet*, and a few more Spécies of Látin
Verse; but it is (of course) ónly a few of each which we can nótice, as
our límits are so confíned. In addítion, then, to *Spóndees* and *Dáctyles*,
there are in cómmon use,

1. The *Pýrrhic*, } díssyllable feet { ˘ ˘ } } ă'pĭs, *a bee*,
2. The *Iámbus*, } as { ŏ'vēs, *sheep*,
3. The *Tróchee*, } { ˘ ˘ } cē'rā, *wax*,
4. The *A'napæst*, } trísyllable feet { ˘ ˘ ¯ } as { cĕ'cĭnī, *I sang*,
5. The *Tríbrach*, } { ˘ ˘ ˘ } fĭ'dĭcĕn, *a hárper*.

Besídes the *ánapæst* and the *tríbrach*, there are five óther trísyllable
feet; námely, the *amphímacer* or *crétic* [¯ ˘ ¯], the *molóssus* [¯ ¯ ¯], the
ámphibrach [˘ ¯ ˘], the *bacchíus* [˘ ¯ ¯], and the *antibacchíus* [¯ ¯ ˘].
The feet of four sýllables are véry númerous:—but we shall contént
oursélves here with the fóllowing four:

1. The *Choriámbus*, ¯ ˘ ˘ ¯ } } prætĕ'rĕā, *moreóver*,
2. The *Proceleusmátic*, ˘ ˘ ˘ ˘ } thus { cĕlĕ'rĭtĕr, *swíftly*,
3. The *Iónic à mājó're*, ¯ ¯ ˘ ˘ } { cōntēn'dĭtĕ, *strive ye*.
4. The *Iónic à mĭnó're*, ˘ ˘ ¯ ¯ } } mĕdĭtā'rī, *to méditate*.

[2] In addítion to these five Fígures of Prósody, suffíce it, in this place,
to give three more,—námely, *Sýstolĕ, Diástolĕ,* and *Synapheía*. In the
Appéndix to this Work most of the Fígures belónging to Prósody, in
cómmon with Etymólogy and Sýntax, will be (bríefly) enúmerated—
únder those respéctive heads. By *Sýstolĕ* a long sýllable is shórtened:
by *Diástolĕ*, cálled álso *Ec'tasis*, a short sýllable is léngthened: and, by
Synapheía, verses of some particular kinds (as. for exámple, *anapæstics*,)
are línked togéther withoút regárd to the métrical pause which marks the
terminátion of a verse in géneral.

[3] A fínal vówel or díphthong is not (stríctly speáking) elíded *in tóto*
by the Fígure SYNALŒ'PHA, but véry much curtaíled,—and álmost cut

Sē′ră nĭ′mis vī′tᵃ ēst crās′tĭnă, vī′ve hŏ′dĭē. Mart.
[Prō *vī′tă, vī′vĕ.*]

Ăt *heū* ĕt *Ō* nūn′quăm īntērcĭpĭŭn′tŭr.[4]

II. Ēcthlīp′sĭs ēst, quŏ′tĭēs *m* cŭm sŭ′ā vōcā′lĭ[5] pĕrĭ′mĭtŭr, prōx′ĭmā dīctĭŏ′nĕ ā vōcā′lĭ ēxōr′sā : ŭt,

Mōn′strum hōrrēn′dum, īnfōr′me, *īn′gēns, cuī lū′mĕn
ădēm′ptŭm.* Virg.

[Prō *mōn′strŭm hōrrēn′dŭm, īnfōr′mĕ.*]

III. SўNÆ′RĔSĬS ēst dŭā′rŭm sўllăbā′rŭm[6] ĭn ū′năm cōn-
trāc′tĭŏ : ŭt,

Seū lēn′tō fŭ′ĕrĭnt ālveā′rĭă vī′mĭnĕ tēx′tă. Virg.
[Quă′sĭ scrīp′tŭm ēs′sĕt *ālvā′rĭă.*]

---

off : still, howéver, a shádow or faint sound of the vówel or díphthong remains :—thus, *tŏ′gă ĕt* would in póetry be pronoúnced *tŏ′ga ĕt*, and not *tójet !* I speak of módern pronunciátion ; for the Látins soúnded *g* hard befóre évery vówel.

Sómetimes the fígure *Synalépha* is (inténtionally) neglécted by the Látin póets in imitátion of the Greeks, who, fond of the vówel sounds, véry fréquently considered the omíssion of this fígure to be a great em-béllishment to their póetry : sómetimes, líkewise, in imitátion of the práctice of the same péople, a long vówel, or a díphthong, at the end of a word, is shórtened in Látin, insteád of béing elíded, befóre an inítial vówel or díphthong : thus, in the 437 verse of the first Book of the Geórgics [Glaū′cō, ĕt Pănŏpē′æ, ĕt Īnŏ′ō Mĕlĭcĕr′tæ] the ō in Glaū′cō is neíther elíded nor made short befóre the inítial vówel which fóllows, whilst the díphthong (æ) at the end of Pănŏpē′æ, is shórtened but not cut óff.—A judícious negléct, or ónly pártial admíssion, of this fígure has cértainly a beaútiful efféct. But here we must obsérve, that in Látin póetry a short vówel is véry rárely exémpted from *synalépha.* At the end of a verse, *synalépha* néver takes place unléss the last sýl lable of the verse be hypérmeter or óver meásure.

[4] And símilarly the five interjéctions *āh, vǣ, vāh, heī, prŏh,* are séldom or néver either elíded or shórtened. But *O* is, sómetimes, made short befóre an inítial vówel or díphthong.

[5] In the eárlier Látin póets, the fígure Ecthlípsis was sómetimes neglécted : few exámples howéver of this negléct are to be found in the wrítings of the Augústan age,—and, áfter that périod, none. Vírgil fúrnishes not a síngle ínstance, neíther does O′vid : and Hórace has ónly one. At the end of a verse Echthlípsis néver takes place befóre a vówel or díphthong begínning the next line, unléss the fínal syllable be hypérmeter : yet in *Anapéstics,* and *Iónics à minóre,* wherein the fínal sýllable is afféct ed by the fígure *Synaphéia,* care must be táken that no verse (of exáctly its próper númber of sýllables) end in *m* when the next verse begíns with a vówel or a díphthong.

[6] By *Synǽresis* two sýllables are redúced to one in the pronun-ciátion, withoút the disappeárance of ány létter in the wríting :—thus,

IV. Dĭɛ̆́rĕsĭs ĕst, ŭ'bĭ ēx ū'nā sȳl'lābā dīssēc'tā fī'ŭnt dŭ'ɛ̆: ŭt,

Dēbŭ̆ĕrānt fū'sōs ēvŏlŭĭs'sĕ su̇'ōs. Ovid.

[*Ēvŏlŭĭs'sĕ prō ĕ̄vŏlvĭs'sĕ.*]

V. Cɛsū'rʌ ĕst, cŭm pōst pĕ'dĕm⁷ ābsŏlū'tŭm, sȳl'lābā brĕ'vĭs ĭn fī'nĕ dictĭŏ'nĭs ēxtĕn'dĭtŭr : ŭt,

Pēctŏ'rĭbūs ĭn'hĭāns, spĭrān'tĭă cōn'sŭlĭt ēₓ'tă. Virg.

DE GENERIBUS VERSUUM.⁸

Vēr'sŭs Hērŏ̄'ĭcŭs, quī Hēxʌ́'mĕtĕr⁹ ĕ'tĭăm dĭ'cĭtŭr, cōn'stăt ēx sēx pĕ'dĭbŭs : quīn'tŭs lŏ'cŭs dāc'tȳlŭm, sēx'tŭs

---

grăvĕ̆'ŏlēns, *rank-smélling,* or sĕmĭă'nĭmĭs, *half dead,* are by this figure óften pronoúnced as though wrítten.—*gră'vŏlēns, sēmă'nĭmĭs.* Some prosódians refér these to *Synalǽpha,* and perháps jústly. When two sýllables are drawn ínto one, éither by the únion of two vówels fórming a proper díphthong, as in dēīn'dĕ̆, *áfterwards,* when pronoúnced *deīn'dĕ̆,* or by the disappeárance of one of two short vówels to form a long vówel, as in cŏ̄'āgŏ, *I drive togéther,* redúced to cŏ̄'gŏ̄, the Figure has the name of *Crásis* instéad of Synɛ̄'resis. In mány ínstances, either the one, or the óther, of these two may be úsed with álmost équal própriety :—thus, for exámple, we may write éither dĭī or dĭ, dĭīs or dĭs, deēst or dēst, as mónosyllables ; and, in like mánner, éither, ĭī'dĕm or ĭ'dĕm, ĭīs'dĕm or ĭs'dĕm, dĕĕ'rŏ̆ or dĕ̆'rŏ̆, dĕĕ'rĭt or dĕ̆'rĭt, as díssyllables : and so forth. But sómetimes it is nécessary to retáin both vówels in the cháracter of an impróper díphthong.

⁷ The defínition of *Cæsúra,* here gíven, is cértainly véry vague, and incorréct. *Cæsúra* sígnifies "*a cútting off,*" and is the name applíed to ány fínal sýllable that remaíns áfter a pérfect foot in póetry,—withoút réference to the quántity of the sýllable so remaíning. On évery cæsúral sýllable there is nécessarily, in scánning *Heróïc* and *Elegíac* Vérses, a greáter stress of voice laid, than there would be upón the same sýllable, if it did not begín a foot. This stress, or (as it is térmed) *métrical íctus,* togéther with the intervérbal pause which fóllows, the póets considered a suffícient plea in some ínstances for the exténsion of a short quántity in the cæsúral sýllable. An unelíded long vówel or díphthong, in the cæsúra áfter the fourth foot of an hexámeter, particularly in próper names, has a most pleásing efféct befóre an inítial vówel or díphthong,— províded (ónly) that vérses of this descríption are not too fréquently repeáted.

⁸ A síngle line in póetry is cálled a verse, and consísts of two or more feet, éither pérfect or incompléte, which feet or parts of a foot must in reáding the verse be dŭ̆ly atténded to, that the hármony be neíther destróyed nor léssened.

Vérses sómetimes take their name from the feet which móstly predómínate in them ; as the *Dáctylic, Iámbic, Trochá'ic, Anapǽstic, Chori-ámbic, &c. :* and sómetimes álso from the númber of feet, or the númber of meásures, in them ; as, *Dímeter, Trímeter, Tetrámeter, Pentámeter,*

spŏndǣ'ŭm pĕcŭlĭā'rĭtĕr sī'bĭ vīn'dĭcăt; rĕ'lĭquī hūnc, vĕl
īl'lŭm, prō'ŭt vŏ'lŭmŭs : ŭt,

<div style="text-align:center">

1   2   3   4   5   6

Tī'tўrĕ | *tū pǎ'tŭ*|*lǣ rĕ'cŭ*|*bāns sūb* | *tēg'mĭnĕ* | *fā'gī.*

</div>

Rĕpĕrī'tŭr ălĭquān'dŏ spŏndǣ'ŭs ĕ'tĭăm ĭn quīn'tō lŏ'cō :[10]
ŭt,

<div style="text-align:center">

1   2   3   4   5   6

Cā'ră Dĕ|*ŭm sŏ'bŏ*|*lēs, māg'*|*nŭm Jŏ'vĭs* | *ĭncrē*|*mēn'tŭm.*

</div>

Ūl'tĭmă cūjūscūn'quĕ vēr'sŭs sўl'lăbă hăbē'tŭr cŏmmū'nĭs.[11]

Hexámeter, &c. Not unfréquently, too, a verse bórrows its appellátion
from the name of its invéntor, as the *Alcáïc,* the *Sápphic,* the *Anacre-
óntic;* else from the súbject which it célebrates, as the *Heróïc* or
Elegíac.

A verse wánting one sýllable, at the end, to compléte the meásure is
cálled *Cataléctic:* a verse defícient by two sýllables at the end, *Brachy-
cat}aléctic:* a verse wánting one sýllable at the begínning, *Acéphalous :*
a verse háving neíther deficiency nor redúndancy, *Acataléctic:* and a
verse háving a redúndant sýllable or a redúndant foot at the end, *Hyper-
cataléctic* or *Hypérmeter.*

9 The *Heróïc* (or *Dáctylic Hexámeter*) Verse consists of six feet ;
whereóf the fifth is génerally a dáctyle, and the sixth a spóndee :—the
óther feet, that is, the first, sécond, third, and fourth, may be either
spóndees, or dáctyles, at pleásure. In Dáctylic Hexámeter vérses the
feet ought to run ínto one anóther ; for when the words and the feet end
togéther throughoút a verse, there is no hármony whatéver. If áfter
the first, and álso the sécond, and (in like mánner) the third foot. or
áfter a majórity of these three, a sýllable remaín, the rhythm is, by far,
more agreéable than when there is an ábsence of one or more of these
cæsúral sýllables.

10 A spóndee séldom cónstitutes the fifth foot of an heróic verse excépt
in sólemn, or majéstic, or moúrnful descríptions. Vérses, which have
a spóndee in the fifth place, are cálled *Spondáïc;* but of these the too
fréquent recúrrence is the fárthest from an órnament to póetry,—
whereás a spare and a judícious use of them is one of its greátest
beaúties.

11 The sense of these words is in some degreé ambíguous :—for, it is
assúredly úntrue that the last sýllable of évery verse is cómmon, and
yet it is true that, in mány kinds of verse, the last sýllable may be either
long, or short, at pleásure, withoút much ínjury in the one ínstance, or
advántage in the óther, to the rhythm. For exámple, the last foot of
évery heróic verse ought to be a spóndee ; but a tróchee may be sub-
stituted for a spóndee, becaúse the métrical pause at the end of the line
cómpensates, in some meásure, for the shórtness of the last sýllable : in
like mánner a pyrrhic is unobjéctionable in lieu of an iámbus in the last
foot of ány iámbic verse. Again, évery sápphic verse should términate
with a tróchee, but, instéad of a tróchee, a spóndee may be úsed withoút
détriment to the rhythm.

Vēr'sŭs Ĕlĕgī'ăcŭs, quī ĕt Pēntă'mĕtrī[12] nŏ'mĕn hă'bĕt,
ē dŭ'plĭcī cōn'stăt pēnthēmī'mĕrī ; quā'rŭm prī'ŏr dŭ'ōs pĕ'dēs,
dāctў'lĭcōs, spōndī'ăcōs, vĕl āltĕrŭ'trōs cōmprĕhēn'dĭt, cŭm
sўl'lăbā lōngā ; āl'tĕră, ĕ'tĭăm, dŭ'ōs pĕ'dēs, sĕd ōmnī'nō dāc-
tў'lĭcōs cŭm sўl'lăbā ĭ'tĕm lōn'gā : ŭt,

$$
\overset{1}{Rēs} \overset{}{ēst} \mid \overset{2}{sōllĭ'cĭ}\overset{C}{|tī} \mid \overset{3}{plē'nă} \overset{}{tĭ} \mid \overset{4}{mō'rĭs} \overset{}{ă} \mid \overset{C}{mŏr.}^{13} \text{ Ovid.}
$$

[12] The *Elegíac* or *(Dáctylic Pentámeter) Verse* consists (as its name indicates) of five feet, of which the first two may be either *dáctyles* or *spóndees*, fóllowed by a *long sýllable*, which must close a word, divíding the verse ínto équal pórtions or halves ; then come *two dáctyles*, and agáin a *sýllable*, which with the cæsúral sýllable befóre méntioned cónstitutes an intercépted *spóndee*. The áncients were divíded in their opínion respécting the true scánsion of this verse,—some of them máking the *third foot a spóndee*, and the *last two feet, ánapæsts*. Whichéver be the mode of scánning adópted, the constrúction of the verse is the same. Instéad of a sýllable long by úsage or by posítion, we sómetimes find a sýllable léngthened by cæsúra in the míddle of a Pentámeter, but this is álways a blémish :—a mónosyllable, howéver, éither long in itsélf, else réndered long by posítion, is unobjéctionable in the conclúsion of the first hémistich. An elegíac verse is génerally precéded by, and coúpled with, an hexámeter ; and should términate with a *díssyllable*, and a *full stop :* a trísyllable is admíssible, but a mónosyllable must be rejécted in the conclúsion of a Pentámeter, unless it occásions the elísion of the final sýllable of a díssyllable. A word of four sýllables is not an unharmónicus énding, though inférior in cádence to a díssyllable. The feet of an elegíac verse ought to run ínto one anóther like those of heróics.

[13] In addítion to the observátions which we have alreády made on *Heróic* and *Elegíac* Verse, we shall (bríefly) nótice a few of the fóllowing : *Iámbic, Trocháïc, Anapǽstic, Iónic,* and the more cómmon sorts of *Lýric Verse.*

1. *Iámbics.*

An Iámbic Verse, when pure, consists of iámbuses ónly, two feet álways cónstituting a meásure. The conclúding sýllable of évery meásure (the last perháps excépted) recéives on it an émphasis or a *métrical ictus,*—and ought thérefore to be éither an accénted sýllable, else a final sýllable. Iámbic verso is found of várious lengths, from the *tetrámeter* down to the *dímeter cataléctic,* cálled álso *Anacreóntic :* but the more cómmon lengths are the *dímeter* or *trímeter acataléctic.* Instéad of an iámbus in the odd pláces, a spóndee was at first admítted ; and, áfterwards, an ánapæst or a dáctyle : and in all the éven pláces (excépt the last) a tríbrach óften occúrs for an iámbus. The cómic póets, howéver, and Phǽdrus, admit all these feet indiscríminately ínto évery place excépt the last, and moreóver ány feet isóchronal with these : nor do they rejéct the amphímacer, the ámphibrach, and some óthers.

2. *Trocháïcs.*

As an *iámbus* is the véry revérse of a *tróchee,* so Trocháïc Vérses are the véry revérse of Iámbic Vérses : for, if the first half foot of a pure

PRIMARUM AC MEDIARUM SYLLABARUM QUANTITAS.

I. Vōcā'lĭs ān'tĕ dŭ'ās cōnsŏnān'tĕs aūt dŭ'plĭcĕm ĭn ĕā'dĕm dictĭŏ'nĕ, ŭbī'quĕ pŏsĭtĭŏ'nĕ lōn'gă ēst: ŭt, vēn'trŭs, āx'ĭs pā'trĭ zŏ̄, cŭ'jŭs. [See note 5, page 2, above.]

iámbic verse be táken from the begínning, and pláced at the end, the Iámbic is convérted ínto a Trochǎíc. Or, in óther words, a Trochǎíc Verse, when pure, has évery foot a tróchee: impúre or míxed Trochǎícs admít spóndees, dáctyles, tríbrachs, and perháps ánapæsts (though more rárely) in all the éven pláces.

3. *Anapǽstics.*

An *Anapǽstic* Verse is éither *pure*, or *impúre;* that is, it consísts sólely of *ánapæsts*, or is made up in whole or in part of óther feet. As in *Iámbic* and *Trochǎíc* Vérses, so in *Anapǽstics*, two feet cónstitute a méasure: but here évery méasure ought (if póssible) to términate togéther with a word, so that the vérses may at pléasure be wrítten of ány length from the monómeter úpwards, withoút the divísion of a word. Anapǽstic dímeters are (as the name impórts) vérses of two méasures each ; but they véry rárely occúr pure, spóndees béing admíssible ínto évery place, and dáctyles ínto the first foot (sómetimes, though séldom, into the sécond) of évery méasure. Hence it óften háppens, that, in anapǽstic vérses, not one foot of the verse is an ánapæst. The final sýllable of each acataléctic verse must have respéct to the inítial sýllable of the next line, as the vérses are línked togéther by the figure cálled *Synaphéia.* An *Anapǽstic Dímeter Cataléctic* is fréquently subjoíned to a sýstem of *Anapǽstics*, by way of conclúsion,—or else of témporary relíef to the ear ; and admíts a spóndee ínto the first and álso sécond foot, but has génerally the third foot pure, with a cæsúral sýllable óver.

4. *Iónics.*

An *Iónic* Verse *à májŏ'rĕ* consísts whólly (when pure) of *májor iónic* feet : and, in like mánner, an *Iónic* Verse *à mĭnŏ'rĕ* consísts entírely (when pure) of *mínor iónic* feet. The more úsual length of the first spécies is three méasures and a half, each foot coúnting for a méasure. A doúble tróchee is admíssible ínto the sécond and third pláces, and sómetimes ínto the first. Moreóver, a long sýllable may be resólved ínto two short sýllables in ány one of the méasures. The *Iónic à mĭnŏ'rĕ* is perháps never found impúre, and consísts génerally of four méasures, such, that withoút éither a divísion of ány word, or a cláshing of ány sýllables, the versə may be shórtened to a monómeter, or exténded *ad libitum.*

5. *Lýrics.*

Lýric Vérses are those which were sung to the músic of the lyre, and occúr of várious lengths and constrúction, béing sómetimes pórtions of one or more of the spécies alreády enúmerated, and sómetimes a particular arrángement of feet accórding to the fáncy of the compóser. Here we shall nótice ónly the fóllowing few.

I. *The Sápphic*, which consísts of a tróchee, a spóndee, a dáctyle,

II. Quŏd sī cōn'sŏnāns prĭŏ'rĕm dīctĭŏ'nĕm clau'dăt, sĕquĕn'tĕ ĭ'tĕm ā cōnsŏnān'tĕ īnchŏān'tĕ, vŏcā'lĭs prǣcē'dēns ē'tĭăm pŏsĭtĭŏ'nĕ lōn'gă ē'rĭt ; ŭt,

Mā'jŏr sūm quăm cuī pōs'sīt fōrtū'nā nŏcē'rĕ.

[Sȳl'lăbǣ -*jŏr, sŭm, quăm,* ĕt *sīt* pŏsĭtĭŏ'nĕ lōn'gǣ sūnt.]

III. Ăt, sī prĭŏr dīc'tĭŏ ĭn vŏcā'lĕm brĕ'vĕm ēx'ĕăt, sĕ-

and two tróchees : in all, eléven sýllables. With the fifth half foot a word must términate, ótherwise the verse is faúlty. A Sápphic Stánza génerally contaíns three sápphic vérses fóllowed by an *Adónic*, that is, a dáctyle, and a spóndee or tróchee.

II. *The Phaleúcian* or *Hendecasýllabus*, which is (líkewise) a verse of five feet, and, as its name impríses (in all) eléven sýllables. The first foot is a spóndee, sómetimes, but véry rárely, an iámbus, or a tróchee : the sécond, a dáctyle,—for which a spóndee may occásionally be súbstituted : and the remaíning three feet are tróchees.

III. *The Alcáic májor*, which is a verse of four feet, with a long cǽsúral sýllable áfter the sécond foot, which must álways be an iámbus : the first foot may be eíther an iámbus, or a spóndee ; and the last two feet are dáctyles.

IV. *The Alcáic mínor*, which consísts of two dáctyles fóllowed by two tróchees. The *Cármen Horatiánum* (so cálled áfter Hórace who emplóyed it in a great mány of his Odes) has two *májor Alcáics* for the first two vérses of the stánza, and an *Alcáic mínor* álways for the fourth.

V. *The Asclépiad* or *Choriámbic Dímeter Intérposite*, which is made up of two choriámbuses interpósed betweén a spóndee and an iámbus or pýrrhic. Each choriámbus should términate with the terminátion of a word :—unléss the first choriámbus (at least) términate in this way, the verse is faúlty.

VI. *The Archilóchian Iámbic Dímeter Hypérmeter*, which contaíns four feet and a half : these are sómetimes (though rárely) all iámbuses: more cómmonly the first and third feet are spóndees. This verse cónstitutes the third of the stánza cálled *Cármen Horatiánum*.

VII. *The Archilóchian Trocháic Heptámeter*, which álways consísts of the first four feet of a dáctylic hexámeter, fóllowed by three tróchees.

VIII. *The Choriámbic Trímeter Intérposite*, which is made up of three choriámbuses interpósed betweén a spóndee and an iámbus or pýrrhic,—with the same restríction as the *Asclépiad*.

IX. *The Glycónic*, which consísts of a spóndee and two dáctyles.

X. *The Pherecrátic*, which álso contaíns three feet, námely a dáctyle betweén two spóndees.

XI. *The Dáctylic Tetrámeter à pōstĕrĭŏ'rĕ*, which consísts of the last four feet of a dáctylic hexámeter.

XII. *The Dáctylic Trímeter Cataléctic*, which consísts of two dáctyles and a cǽsúral sýllable.—This verse is most cómmonly subjoíned to a dáctylic hexámeter.

XIII. *The Scazóntic*, which díffers from a trímeter iámbic verse simply in that it has a spóndee in the last place, and an iámbus in the fifth.

quēn'tĕ ā dŭā'bŭs cōnsŏnān'tĭbŭs īncĭpĭĕn'tĕ,—īntēr'dŭm, sĕd ră'rĭŭs,—prōdŭ'cĭtŭr : ŭt,

Ōccūl'tā[14] spŏ'lĭă. Juv.

IV. Vōcā'lĭs brĕ'vĭs ān'tĕ mū'tăm, sĕquēn'tĕ lĭ'quĭdā, cōm-mū'nĭs rēd'dĭtŭr :—ŭt, pă'trĭs, vŏlŭ'crĭs. Lōn'gă, vē'rō, nōn mūtā'tŭr :—ŭt, ără'trŭm, sĭmŭlā'crŭm.

VŌCA'LĬS āntĕ āl'tĕrăm ĭn ĕā'dĕm dīctĭŏ'nĕ ŭbĭ'quĕ brĕ'-vĭs ēst : ŭt, Dĕ'ŭs, mĕ'ŭs, tŭ'ŭs, pĭ'ŭs.

1. Ēxcĭ'pĭās gĕnĭtī'vōs ĭn -īŭs, sĕcūn'dăm prŏnŏ'mĭnĭs fōr'măm hăbĕn'tēs : ŭt, ūnī'ŭs, īllī'ŭs, &c. ŭ'bĭ i cōmmū'nĭs rĕpĕrī'tŭr : lī'cĕt ĭn āltĕ'rĭŭs sēm'pĕr sĭt brĕ'vĭs, ĭn ălī'ŭs sēm'pĕr lōn'gă.

2. Ēxcĭpĭĕn'dī sūnt, ĕ'tĭăm, gĕnĭtī'vī ĕt dătī'vī quīn'tæ dēclīnātĭŏ'nĭs, ŭ'bĭ e īn'tĕr gĕ'mĭnŭm i lōn'gă fīt :—ŭt, făcĭē'ī, ălĭŏ'quī nōn ; ŭt, rē'ī, spĕ'ī, fĭ'dĕī.

Fĭ- ĕ'tĭăm ĭn fĭŏ lōn'gă ēst, nĭ'sĭ sĕquūntŭr e ĕt r sĭ'mŭl ; ŭt, fī'ĕrĕm, fī'ĕrī :[15] vĕ'lŭt,

Ōm'nĭă jām fī'ūnt, fī'ĕrī quæ pōs'sĕ nĕgā'băm. Ovid.

Dĭ'ŭs prī'măm sȳl'lăbăm hă'bĕt lōn'găm ; Dĭă'nă cōm-mū'nĕm.

O'HE, īntērjēc'tĭŏ, prĭŏ'rĕm sȳl'lăbăm cōmmū'nĕm hă'bĕt.[16]

Vōcā'lĭs ān'tĕ āl'tĕrăm ĭn Græ'cĭs dīctĭŏ'nĭbŭs sŭbīn'dĕ lōn'gă fīt :[17] ŭt,

Dī'cĭ'tĕ, Pĭē'rĭdĕs.
Rēs'pĭcĕ Lāēr'tēn.

Ĕt ĭn pōssēssī'vĭs Græ'cĭs : ŭt,

---

[14] This exámple is by no means proof that a short vówel is éver léngthened by position befóre two cónsonants begínning the next word : yet might séveral exámples corróborative of such fact be quóted from the póets. It is to be remémbered, howéver, that a mute and liquid begín-ning ány word can, in nówise, léngthen a precéding short vówel :—and hence it fóllows, that the first cónsonant must necéssarily be the létter *s*.

[15] In Pláutus and in Térence the first sýllable of *fĭ'ĕrī* and of *fĭ'ĕret* is repéatedly found long.

[16] And in like mánner the first sýllable of ĕ'heū, *alas !* and of ĭ'ō, *hurráh !* are cómmon. To which may be ádded the próper name I'ō, *daúghter of I'nachus.*

[17] In véry mány Greek words, but espécially próper names, a vówel is long though immédiately fóllowed by a vówel : and in the Iónic díalect the pénult of the *génitive* and *accúsative* cáses of nouns in -*eūs* is long, althóugh short in the cómmon díalect.

Ænē´ĭă *nū´trix.*

Rhŏdŏpē´ĭŭs *Ŏr´pheŭs.*

Ŏm´nĭs dĭphthŏn´gŭs ă´pŭd Lătī´nōs lōn´gă ĕst : ŭt, *aū´rŭm,*
neū´tĕr, *mū´sæ :* nĭ´sĭ *præ* sĕquĕn´tĕ vōcā´lĭ : ŭt, *præī´rĕ,*
præŭs´tŭs, præăm´plŭs.[18]

Dērīvātī´vă ĕăn´dēm, fĕ´rĕ, cŭm prīmĭtī´vĭs quăntĭtā´tĕm
sōrtĭŭn´tŭr :—ŭt, *ămā´tŏr, ămī´cŭs, ămā´bĭlĭs,* prī´mă brĕ´vī
ăb ă´mŏ.

Ĕxcĭpĭŭn´tŭr tă´mĕn paū´că, quæ, ā brĕ´vĭbŭs dēdū´ctă, prī´-
măm sȳl´lăbăm prōdū´cŭnt : ŭt,

cō´mŏ cō´mĭs, ā cŏ´mă,	mō´bĭlĭs, ā mŏ´vĕŏ,
fō´mĕs, ĕt fōmēn´tŭm ā fŏ´vĕŏ,	nō´nŭs, ā nŏ´vĕm,
hūmā´nŭs, ăb hŏ´mŏ,	rēx rē´gĭs, rēgī´nă, ā rĕ´gŏ,
jūcŭn´dŭs, ā jŭ´vŏ,	sē´dēs, ā sĕ´dĕŏ,
jūmēn´tŭm, ā jŭ´vŏ,	tē´gŭlă, ā tĕ´gŏ,
jū´nĭŏr, ā jŭ´vĕnĭs,	trā´gŭlă, ā tră´hŏ,
lātēr´nă, ā lă´tĕŏ,	vō´mĕr, ā vŏ´mŏ,
lēx lē´gĭs, ā lĕ´gŏ,	vōx vō´cĭs, ā vŏ´cŏ.

Ĕt cōn´trā sūnt, quæ, ā lōn´gīs dēdū´ctă, prī´măm cōrrĭ´-
pĭŭnt : ŭt,

ărē´nă, ărĭs´tă, ărŭn´dŏ, ăb	frā´gŏr, frā´gĭlĭs, ā frān´gŏ,
ā´rĕŏ,	gĕ´nŭĭ, ā gĭg´nŏ,
ārŭs´pēx, ăb ā´ră,	lūcēr´nă, ā lū´cĕŏ,
dĭ´cāx, ā dī´cŏ,[19]	nă´tŏ nă´tās, ā nā´tū,
dĭ´tĭŏ, ā dī´tĭs,	nŏ´tŏ nŏ´tās, ā nō´tū,
dĭsēr´tŭs, ā dĭs´sĕrŏ,	pŏ´sŭĭ, ā pō´nŏ,
dūx dŭ´cĭs, ā dŭ´cŏ,	pŏ´tŭĭ, ā pōs´sŭm,
fĭ´dēs, ā fī´dŏ,	sŏ´pŏr, ā sō´pĭŏ.[20]

Ĕt ă´lĭă nōnnūl´lă ĕx ŭtrŏ´quĕ gĕ´nĕrĕ, quæ rĕlĭnquŭn´tŭr
stŭdĭŏ´sīs ĭn´tĕr lĕgĕn´dŭm ŏbsĕrvān´dă.

Cōmpŏ´sĭtă sĭmplĭ´cĭŭm quăntĭtā´tĕm sĕquŭn´tŭr :—ŭt, ā
lĕ´gŏ, lĕ´gĭs, pēr´lĕgŏ ; lē´gŏ, lē´gās, āllē´gŏ : ā pŏ´tēns, ĭm´pŏ-
tēns ; ā sō´lŏr, cōnsō´lŏr.

---

[18] Except álso the díphthong *æ* in Mæō´tĭs, *Mæótic* or *Sarmátian,*
which both O´vid and Séneca make short : but most óthers, long.

[19] So in like mánner mălĕ´dĭcŭs, *slánderous,* and mány óther words of
the same kind and derivátion, have the pénult short.

[20] And símilarly vă´dŭm, *a ford,* from vā´dŏ, *I go :* and ăm´bĭtŭs, *a*
círcuit, from ămbĭ´tŭm, *to encómpass.*

Ĕxcĭpĭŭn'tŭr tă'mĕn hæc brĕ'vĭă ā lŏn'gĭs ēnā'tă : dē'jĕrŏ,
pē'jĕrŏ, ā jū'rŏ; ĭn'nŭbă, prō'nŭbă, ā nū'lŏ.

☞ Ŏm'nĕ Prætĕ'rĭtŭm dĭssȳl'lăbŭm prĭŏ'rĕm hă'bĕt
lŏn'găm : ŭt, lē'gī, ē'mī, mō'vī.

1. Ĕxcĭ'pĭās tă'mĕn, bĭ'bī, dĕ'dī, scĭ'dī, stĕ'tī, stĭ'tī, tŭ'lī, ĕt
fĭ'dī ā fīn'dŏ.

2. Prī'măm Prætĕ'rĭtī gĕmīnān'tĭă—prī'măm brĕ'vĕm hă'-
bĕnt :—ŭt, cĕ'cĭdī ā că'dŏ; cĕcĭ'dī ā cæ'dŏ; dĭ'dicī, fĕfĕl'lī,
mŏmŏr'dī, pĕpĕn'dī, pŭ'pŭgī, tĕꞁĕn'dī, tĕ'tĭgī, tŏtŏn'dī, tŭ'tŭdī.

☞ Sŭpī'nŭm dĭssȳl'lăbŭm prĭŏ'rĕm hă'bĕt lŏn'găm : ŭt,
vī'sŭm, lā'tŭm, lō'tŭm, mō'tŭm.

Ĕx'cĭpĕ, dă'tŭm, ĭ'tŭm, lĭ'tŭm, quĭ'tŭm, ră'tŭm, rŭ'tŭm,
să'tŭm, sĭ'tŭm, stĭ'tŭm;[21] ĕt cĭ'tŭm ā cĭ'ĕŏ cĭ'ēs :—năm cī'tŭm
ā cĭ'ŏ cīs quār'tæ, prĭŏ'rĕm hă'bĕt lŏn'găm

ULTIMARUM SYLLABARUM QUANTITAS.

I. *A* Fīnī'tă prōdūcŭn'tŭr : ŭt, ă'mā, cōn'trā, ēr'gā.

1. Ĕxcĭ'pĭās pŭ'tă, ĭ'tă, quĭ'ă, pŏs'tĕă, ē'jă,[22] ĭ'tĕm ōm'nēs
că'sūs ĭn "-a," cūjŭscŭn'quĕ fŭ'ĕrĭnt gĕ'nĕrĭs, nŭ'mĕrī, aut
dēclīnātĭŏ'nĭs : præ'tĕr vŏcātĭ'vōs ā Græ'cīs ĭn -ās : ŭt, Ō
Ænē'ā, Ō Thŏ'mā : ĕt ăblātī'vŭm prī'mæ dēclīnātĭŏ'nĭs ; ŭt,
mū'sā.

2. Nŭmĕrā'lĭă ĭn "*ginta*" fīnā'lĕm hă'bĕnt cōmmū'nĕm,
sĕd frĕquĕn'tĭŭs lŏn'găm : ŭt, trīgĭn'tă.

II. In *b, d, t,* dēsĭnēn'tĭă, brĕ'vĭă sūnt : ŭt, ăb, ăd, că'pŭt.[23]

III. In *c* dēsĭnĕn'tĭă prōdūcŭn'tŭr : ŭt, āc, sīc, ĕt hīc ăd-
vēr'bĭŭm.

Sĕd dŭ'ŏ ĭn *c* cōrrĭpĭŭn'tŭr : nĕc ĕt dŏ'nĕc.

Trĭ'ă sūnt cōmmū'nĭă ; făc, prōnŏ'mĕn hīc, ĕt neu'trŭm
ē'jŭs hŏc, mŏ'dŏ nōn sĭt ăblātī'vī că'sūs.

---

[21] Though the pénult of *stă'tŭm* is short, yet the first sýllable of the
fúture párticiple *stātū'rŭs* is long.

[22] In mány schools an objéctionable práctice prevaíls, in respéct of the
pronunciátion of fínal *a* :—I mean, the indiscríminate útterance of it to
rhyme with *day.* As no pérson of ány taste éver says *Jamaícay* or
Américay, so ought no pérson to say *Mū'sāy,* when he means *Mū'să.*
Fínal *a* when short, should álways rhyme with the fínal sýllable of the
Én'glish próper names *Mártha* and *María :* fínal *a,* when long, may
rhyme (accórding to the Én'glish sound of the vówels) with *day.*

[23] Of course when a díphthong precédes ány of these mutes, as in haúd,
not, or in aút, or, the sýllable is long by the Rule, " *Om'nis diphthóngus
ápud Latínos lónga est :*" and when a cónsonant precédes,—the vówel
befóre the two cónsonants is long by *position.*

IV. *E* fīnī'tă brĕ'vĭă sūnt : ŭt, *mă'rĕ, pē'nĕ, lĕ'gĕ, scrĭ'bĕ.*

1. Ĕxcĭpĭĕn'dæ sūnt ōm'nēs vō'cēs quīn'tæ īnflēxĭŏ'nĭs ĭn -*e* :—ŭt, *fĭ'dē, dĭē* ;[24] ū'nā cŭm pārtĭ'cŭlĭs ĭn'dĕ ēnā'tīs. ŭt, *hŏ'dĭē, quŏtĭ'dĭē, prĭ'dĭē, pōstrĭ'dĭē* :—Ĭ'tĕm *quā'rē, quādē'rē, ĕā'rē,* ĕt sī'quā sūnt sĭmĭ'lĭă.

2. Ĕt sĕcūn'dæ Ĭ'tĕm pērsō'næ sīngŭlā'rēs sĕcūn'dæ cōnjŭgā-tĭŏ'nĭs : ŭt, *dŏ'cē, mŏ'vē.*[25]

Prōdūcūn'tŭr ĕ'tĭăm mŏnŏsyl'lăbă ĭn *e* :—ŭt, *mē, tē, sē* : præ'tĕr, -*quĕ, -nĕ, -vĕ,*[26] cōnjūnctĭŏ'nēs ēnclĭ'tĭcās.[27]

Quīn ĕt ādvēr'bĭă ĭn -*e*, ăb ādjēctī'vīs sĕcūn'dæ dēclīnā-tĭŏ'nĭs dēdūc'tă, *e* lōn'gŭm hă'bēnt :—ŭt, *pŭl'chrē, dŏc'tē, vāl'dē* prō *vă'lĭdē.*[28]

Quĭ'bŭs āccē'dūnt *fēr'mē, fĕ'rē*[29] :—bĕ'nĕ tă'mĕn ĕt *mă'lĕ* cōrrĭpĭŭn'tŭr ōmnĭ'nō.[30]

Pōstrē'mō, quæ ā Græ'cīs pĕr *η (ē'tă)* scrībūn'tŭr, nātū'-rā prōdūcūn'tŭr, cūjūscūn'quĕ fŭ'ĕrīnt cā'sūs, gĕ'nĕrĭs, aūt nŭ'mĕrī :—ŭt, *Lē'thē, Ānchī'sē, cē'tē, Tēm'pē.*

V. *I* fīnī'tă lōn'gă sūnt : ŭt, *dŏ'mĭnī, măgĭs'trī, ămā'rī.* Præ'tĕr, *mĭ'hĭ, tĭ'bĭ, sĭ'bĭ, ŭ'bĭ, ĭ'bĭ,* quæ sūnt commū'nĭă.[31].

Nĭ'sĭ vē'rō ĕt *quă'sĭ* cōrrĭpĭŭn'tŭr.

Cū'jŭs ĕ'tĭăm sōr'tĭs sūnt dătĭ'vī ĕt vŏcātī'vī Græcō'rŭm, quō'rŭm gĕnĭtī'vŭs, sīngŭlā'rĭs, ĭn -*os* brĕ'vĕ[32] ĕx'ĭt :—ŭt,

---

[24] The fínal sýllable of *fă'mĕ, by* or *with húnger,* is long ; this noun béing of the fífth declénsion in the áblative case,—though of the third declénsion in all the óther cáses.

[25] But *că'vĕ, bewáre, vă'lĕ, farewéll,* vĭ'dĕ, *see,* săl'vĕ, *hail,* and rē-spōn'dĕ, *replý,* have the fínal *e* cómmon.

[26] These three monosyllábic párticles are álways adjúnctive, and can néver (with corréctness) be úsed as séparate and distínct words.

[27] With these may be conjóined all syllábic párticles in *e* occásionally found at the end of cértain words ; such as -*ptĕ, -cĕ, -tĕ, -dĕ* :—thus, mĕăp'tĕ, hĭc'cĕ, tū'tĕ, quām'dĕ.

[28] But ádverbs in *e* derívded from ádjectives of the third declénsion have the fínal sýllable short ; as, fă'cĭlĕ, *éasily.* To which add ĭmpū'nĕ, *with impúnity,* a word of doúbtful derivátion : and hĕ'rĕ, *yésterday.*

[29] Líkewise *ŏ'hē* : the fínal sýllable, howéver, of *fĕ'rē* is, sómetimes, found short ; as is álso that of tĕ'mĕrĕ, *ráshly.*

[30] To which add sŭpēr'nĕ, *úpwardly,* and īnfēr'nĕ, *dównwardly.*

[31] Líkewise the conjúnction *ŭ'tĭ* ; and *cŭ'ĭ,* whenéver it occúrs as a díssyllable—which howéver is séldom. Neúters in *i* have the last sýllable short : as gūm'mĭ, *gum* or *gums.*

[32] Excépt, howéver, fínal *i* in the vócative case, síngular, of Greek nouns fórming their génitive in -*ĕn'tŏs* : as, Sĭ'mŏī, Pŷ'rŏī.

dătī'vī, *Mĭnō'ĭdĭ, Pā'l'lădĭ, Phȳl'lĭdĭ;* vŏcătī'vī, *Ā'lĕx'ĭ, Ămā-rȳl'lĭ, Dăph'nĭ.*[32]

VI. *L* fīnī'tă cŏrrĭpĭŭn'tŭr: ŭt, *ă'nĭmăl, Ăn'nĭbăl, mĕ'., pŭ'gĭl, cōn'sŭl.*

Præ'tĕr *nīl* (cōntrăc'tŭm ā *nĭ'hĭl*), *săl* ĕt *sōl.*

Ĕt Hēbræ'ă (quæ'dăm) ĭn -*ēl*: ŭt, *Mĭ'chāēl, Gă'brĭēl, Ră'phāēl, Dă'nĭēl.*

VII. *N* fīnī'tă prōdūcŭn'tŭr: ŭt, *Pă'ān, Hȳ'mēn, quīn, Xĕ'nŏphōn, nōn, dæ'mōn.*

Ĕx'cĭpĕ, *fōr'săn, fōr'sĭtăn, ăn, tă'mĕn, ā'ĭ'tămĕn, vērŭn-tămĕn,* ĕt *ĭn.*

Ăccē'dŭnt hīs ĕt vŏ'cēs ĭl'læ, quæ ăpŏ'cŏpēn pătĭŭn'tŭr: ŭt, *mĕ'n? vĭdĕ'n? aŭdĭ'n?* Ĕ'tĭăm *ēx'ĭn, sŭb'ĭn, dē'ĭn, prŏ'ĭn, &c.*

In -*an* quŏ'quĕ ā nōmĭnātī'vīs ĭn -*ă:* ŭt, nōmĭnātī'vō, *Iphĭ-gĕnī'ă, Ægĭ'nă;* accūsātī'vō, *Iphĭgĕnī'ăn, Ægĭ'năn.*

Năm ĭn -*an* ā nōmĭnātī'vīs ĭn -*ās* prōdūcŭn'tŭr:—ŭt, nō-mĭnātī'vō, *Ænē'ās, Mār'sȳās;*——accūsātī'vō, *Ænē'ān, Mār'sȳān.*

Nŏ'mĭnă ĭ'tĕm ĭn -*ĕn,*[34] quŏ'rŭm gĕnĭtī'vŭs -*ĭnĭs* cōrrēp'tŭm hă'bĕt: ŭt, *cār'mĕn, crī'mĕn, pēc'tĕn, tībĭ'cĕn, -ĭnĭs.*

Quæ'dăm ĕ'tĭăm ĭn -*ĭn* pĕr *i,* ŭt, *Ālĕx'ĭn:*[35] ĕt ĭn -*yn* pĕr *y,* ŭt *I'tȳn.*

Græ'că ĕ'tĭăm ĭn -*ŏn* pĕr *o* pār'vŭm, cūjūscŭn'quĕ fŭ'ĕrĭnt cā'sūs:—ŭt, nōmĭnātī'vō, *I'lĭŏn, Pē'lĭŏn;* accūsātī'vō, *Caŭ-căsŏn, Pȳ'lŏn.*

VIII. *O* fīnī'tă cŏmmū'nĭă sūnt: ŭt, *dĭ'cŏ, vĭr'gŏ, pōr'rŏ.*[36] Sīc *dŏcēn'dŏ, lĕgēn'dŏ,* ĕt ă'lĭă gĕrŭn'dĭă ĭn -*dŏ.*

Sĕd ŏblī'quī cā'sūs ĭn *o* sēm'pĕr prōdūcŭn'tŭr: ŭt, dătī'vō, *dŏ'mĭnō, sĕr'vō;* āblātī'vō, *tēm'plō, dăm'nō.*

Ĕt ădvĕr'bĭă ăb ădjēctī'vīs dērīvā'tă; *tān'tō, quān'tō,*

---

[33] This Rule of course inclúdes all dátive and áblative cáses plúral in -*sĭ* : as, *hērŏ'ĭsĭ, chĕ'lȳsĭ, schĕ'măsĭ.*

[34] Greek accúsatives in -*en* from nouns in -*ē* or in -*ēs* are long : as, *Pēnĕ'lŏpēn, Anchī'sēn, Dēmŏs'thĕnēn.*

[35] And Greek dátive or áblative cáses plúral in -*sĭn ;*—as, *Trŏ'ăsĭn, Drȳ'ăsĭn, chă'rĭsĭn, ĕ'thĕsĭn.*

[36] Although, in the ténses of verbs, fínal *o* be cómmon, yet by the best wríters it was óftener úsed long, than short :—except the fínal *o* of *vŏ'lŏ, I will,* pŭ'tŏ, *I think* or *I suppóse,* scī'ŏ, *I know,* and nĕ'scĭŏ, *I know not,* which ís séldom found long ; and to which perhaps might be ádded the fínal *o* of ĕ'rŏ, *I shall be,* and of ĕs'tŏ, *be it.* The fínal *o* of cĕ'dŏ, *tell me,* is álways short ; but let no one confoúnd *cĕ'dŏ* with *cē'dŏ, I yield.*

lĭquĭdō, făl'sō, prī'mō, mănĭfēs'tō, &c.   Præ'tĕr *sē'dŭlŏ, mū'tŭŏ, crē'brŏ,*[37] quæ sūnt cōmmū'nĭă.

Cæ'tĕrŭm *mŏ'dŏ* ĕt *quō'mŏdŏ*[38] sēm'pĕr cōrrĭpĭŭn'tŭr.

Cī'tŏ quŏ'quĕ, ŭt ĕt *ām'bŏ, dŭ'ŏ, ĕ'gŏ,* āt'quĕ *hŏ'mŏ,* vīx lĕgŭn'tŭr prōdūc'tă.[39]

Mŏnŏsȳl'lăbă tă'mĕn ĭn o prōdūcŭn'tŭr: ŭt, *dō, stō.*

Ĭ'tĕm Græ'că pēr ω *(ōmē'gă)* cūjŭs'mŏdī fŭ'ĕrĭnt cā'sūs: ŭt, nōmĭnātī'vō, *Săp'phō, Dī'dō ;*—gĕnĭtī'vō, *Āndrŏ'gĕō ;* āc- cūsātī'vō, *Ā'thō :* sīc ĕt *ēr'gō* prō caŭ'să.

IX. *R* fīnī'tă cōrrĭpĭŭn'tŭr: ŭt, *Cæ'săr, pĕr, vĭr, ŭxŏr, tŭr'tŭr.*

Prōdūcŭn'tŭr aū'tĕm, *făr, lār, vēr, fūr, cūr : pār* quŏ'quĕ, cŭm cōmpŏ'sĭtīs: ŭt, *cŏm'pār, ĭm'pār, dīs'păr.*[40]

Græ'că ĕ'tĭăm ĭn *-ēr,* quæ ĭl'līs ĭn *-ηρ* dē'sĭnŭnt: ŭt, *ā'ēr, crā'tēr, chărāc'tēr, æ'thēr, sō'tēr :*—præ'tĕr *pă'tĕr,* ĕt *mā'tĕr,* quæ ă'pŭd Lătī'nōs ŭl'tĭmăm brĕ'vĕm hă'bĕnt.

X. *S* fīnī'tă pă'rēs cŭm nŭ'mĕrō vōcā'lĭŭm hă'bĕnt tĕr- mĭnātĭŏ'nēs: nēm'pĕ, *-as, -es, -is, -os, -us, -ys.*

1. *AS* fīnī'tă prōdūcŭn'tŭr: ŭt, *ă'mās, Mū'sās, mājēs'tās, bŏ'nĭtās.*

Præ'tĕr Græ'că quŏ'rŭm gĕnĭtī'vŭs sĭngŭlā'rĭs ĭn *-dŏs* ēx'ĭt : ŭt, *Ār'căs, Păl'lăs ;* gĕnĭtī'vō, *Ār'cădŏs, Păl'lădŏs.*[41]

Ĕt, præ'tĕr āccūsātī'vōs (plūrā'lēs) nō'mĭnŭm crēscēn'tĭŭm : —ŭt, *hē'rōs, hērō'ŏs, Phȳl'lĭs, Phȳl'lĭdŏs,*—āccūsātī'vō plū- rā'lī, *hērō'ăs, Phȳl'lĭdăs.*

11. *ES* fīnī'tă lōn'gă sŭnt :—ŭt, *Ānchī'sēs, sē'dēs, dŏ'cēs, pă'trēs.*

1. Ēxcĭpĭŭn'tŭr nō'mĭnă ĭn *-ĕs* tĕr'tĭæ ĭnflēxĭŏ'nĭs,—quæ pēnŭl'tĭmăm gĕnĭtī'vī crēscēn'tĭs cōrrĭ'pĭŭnt: ŭt, *mī'lĕs, sĕ'gĕs,*

---

[37] In like mánner *pōstrē'mŏ, ultimately* or *lástly,* and *sē'rŏ, late,* have the fínal o cómmon : as has álso the conjúnction *vĕ'rŏ, but.*

[38] With the óther cómpounds of *mŏ'dŏ:* as *pōst'mŏdŏ, dŭm'mŏdŏ, quōdăm'mŏdŏ :* álso, *ĭm'mŏ, yea* or *nay.*

[39] Of these, the last four have the fínal o cómmon,—and per- háps óftener short than long :—yet séveral ínstances might be quóted, particularly of *ăm'bŏ* and *dŭ'ŏ,* in the neúter as well as the másculine génder, with the fínal o long. On the óther hand, with *cī'tŏ* may be jóined, *ĭl'lĭcŏ, yónder, prŏfēc'tŏ, in fact, dē'nŭŏ, anéw,* as háving the last sýllable séldom or néver long.

[40] The fínal sýllable of ány cómpound of *pār* is cómmon : though, perháps, preférably long.

[41] And Greek nouns in *-as* forming their génitive in *-ătŏs* or *-ătĭs :*— as *ă'năs, a duck* or *drake ;* bū'cĕrăs, *fénugreek.*

dī′vĕs. Sĕd *ā′rĭes, ă′bĭes, pă′rĭes, Cĕ′rēs,* ĕt *pēs* ū′nă cŭm cōmpŏ′sĭtĭs, ŭt, *bĭ′pĕs, trĭ′pēs,* lŏn′gă sūnt.

2. *ĒS,* quŏ′quĕ, ā *sŭm,* ū′nă cŭm cōmpŏ′sĭtĭs cōrrĭ′pĭtŭr : ŭt, *pŏ′tĕs, ăd′ĕs, prŏ′dĕs, ŏb′ĕs :—*quī′bŭs *pĕ′nĕs* ādjŭn′gī pŏ′tēst.

3. Ĭ′tĕm, neū′tră,—ĕt nōmĭnātī′vī plūrā′lēs Graecŏ′rŭm : ŭt, *hĭppŏ′mănĕs, căcŏē′thĕs, Cў̆clō′pĕs, Nā′ĭădĕs.*

III. *IS* fīnī′tă brĕ′vĭă sūnt :—ŭt, *Pā′ris, pā′nĭs, trĭs′tĭs, hĭ′lărĭs.*

1. Ēx′cĭpĕ ōblī′quŏs cā′sūs plūrā′lēs ĭn -*is*,[42] quī prōdūcŭn′tŭr :—ŭt, *mū′sĭs* ā *mū′să ; mēn′sĭs* ā *mēn′să ; dŏ′mĭnīs ; tēm′plīs ;* ĕt *quīs* prō *quī′bŭs.*

2. Ĭ′tĕm, prōdūcĕn′tĭă pēnŭl′tĭmăm gĕnĭtī′vī crēscĕn′tĭs : ŭt, *Săm′nĭs, Să′lămĭs ;* gĕnĭtī′vō, *Sămnī′tĭs, Sălămī′nĭs.*

3. Ăd′dĕ hūc quae ĭn -*is* cōntrāc′tă ēx -*eis* dĕ′sĭnŭnt, sī′vĕ Grae′că,—sī′vĕ Lătī′nă ; cūjŭscūn′quĕ fū′ĕrĭnt nŭ′mĕrī aūt cā′sūs : ŭt, *Sī′mŏĭs, Pў̆′rŏĭs, pār′tĭs, ōm′nĭs,—*ē *Sī′mŏeĭs, Pў̆′rŏeĭs, pār′teĭs, ōm′neĭs.*

4. Ēt mŏnŏsў̆l′lăbă ĭ′tĕm ōm′nĭă ; ŭt, *vīs*,[43] *līs :—*prae′tĕr *ĭs* ĕt *quīs* nōmĭnātī′vōs ; ĕt *bīs.*[44]

5. Ĭs′tīs āccē′dŭnt sĕcūn′dae pērsŏ′nae sĭngŭlā′rēs vērbō′rŭm ĭn -*is,* quŏ′rŭm sĕcūn′dae pērsŏ′nae plūrā′lēs dĕ′sĭnŭnt ĭn -*ī′tĭs,* pēnŭl′tĭmā prōdūc′tă ; ū′nă cŭm fŭtū′rīs ōptātī′vī ĭn -*ris :—* ŭt, *aū′dĭs, vĕ′līs, dĕ′dĕrīs :* plūrā′lĭtĕr *aūdī′tĭs, vĕlī′tĭs, dĕ′dĕrī′tĭs.*

IV. *OS* fīnī′tă prōdūcŭn′tŭr :—ŭt, *hŏ′nōs, nĕ′pōs, dŏ′mĭnōs, sēr′vōs.*

Prae′tĕr *cōm′pŏs, ĭm′pŏs,* ĕt *ŏs ŏs′sĭs.*

Ēt Grae′că pĕr *o* pār′vŭm : ŭt, *Dē′lŏs, Chă′ŏs, Pāl′lădŏs, Phў̆l′lĭdŏs.*

v. *US* fīnī′tă cōrrĭpĭŭn′tŭr :—ŭt, *fă′mŭlŭs, rĕ′gĭŭs, tēm′pŭs, ămă′mŭs.*

Ēxcĭpĭŭn′tŭr prōdūcĕn′tĭă pēnŭl′tĭmăm gĕnĭtī′vī[45] crēscĕn′tĭs : ŭt, *să′lūs, tēl′lūs ;* gĕnĭtī′vō, *sălū′tĭs, tēllū′rĭs.*

---

[42] And all ádverbs derived from those cáses : as, ĭmprī′mĭs, *chiéfly* or *in the first place ;* grā′tīs, *freely :—*álso fŏ′rīs, *abroad.*

[43] And their cómpounds : as, quăm′vīs, *although,* ŭtĕr′vīs, *which of the two you like.*

[44] To which may be ádded the ádverb or prepositíon cĭs, *on this síde.*

[45] The word pă′lūs, *a marsh* or *pool,* incréases long in the génitive case, and has the fínal sýllable long in the nóminative and vócative cases síngular. In Hórace's Art of Póetry we find pă′lŭs with the last sýllable short, a noun of the sécond or fourth declénsion like lă′cŭs, *a lake.*

Lŏn'gæ sūnt, ĕ'tĭăm, ōm'nēs vō'cēs quār'tæ ĭnflēxĭō'nĭs ĭn -us,—præ'tĕr nōmĭnātī'vŭm ĕt vŏcātī'vŭm sĭngŭlā'rēs : ŭt, gĕnĭtī'vō sĭngŭlā'rī, ma'nūs ; nōmĭnātī'vō, āccūsatī'vō, vŏcātī'vō plūrā'lī, ma'nūs.

Hīs āccē'dūnt ĕ'tĭăm mŏnŏsȳl'lăbă : ŭt, crūs, thūs, mūs, sūs.

Ĕt Græ'că ĭ'tĕm per -ovs (-ous) dīphthŏn'gŭm, cūjūscŭn'quĕ fŭ'ĕrĭnt cā'sŭs : ŭt, nōmĭnātī'vō, Pān'thūs, Mĕlăm'pūs ; gĕnĭtī'vō, Săp'phūs, Clī'ūs.

Āt'quĕ pĭ'īs cūnc'tīs vĕnĕrān'dūm nō'mĕn Ĭē'sūs.

VI. YS fīnī'tă brĕ'vĭă sūnt : ŭt, Tē'thȳs, Ĭ'tȳs, chlă'mȳs.

Ēx'cĭpĕ cā'sŭs plūrā'lēs ĭn -ȳs cōntrāc'tōs ĕx -ȳĕs vĕl -ȳăs : ŭt, Ĕrĭn'nȳs prō Ĕrĭn'nȳĕs vĕl Ĕrĭn'nȳăs.[46]

XI. Pōstrē'mō, u fīnī'tă prōdūcūn'tŭr ōm'nĭă : ŭt, ma'nū, gĕ'nū, ăma'tū, dĭ'ū.[47]

---

[46] Nouns álso in -ys incréasing long in the génitive have the syllable long : as, Trā'chȳs, Trachínia, a small coúntry and town of Phthiótis.

[47] The old ádverb nē'nŭ for nōn, not, and the old preposítion ĭn'dŭ for in, which occúr in most of the eárlier aúthors, have the fínal u short. To which may be ádded últimate sýllables in - ŭs, with the s elíded ; as, plĕ'nŭ, full, for plĕ'nŭs : of this last sort of elísion, mány ínstances occúr in the póets príor to the Aŭgústan age, and in some éven of that éra.

END OF PROSODY.

PROPRIA QUÆ MARIBUS;

OR THE

RULES FOR THE GENDERS OF NOUNS
CONSTRUED.

The words in the paréntheses are understoód, and, in constrúing, ought to be supplíed.

Própria (nómina) *próper names* quæ *which* tribuúntur *are assigned* máribus *to males or the male kind,* dícas *you may call* máscula *másculine;* ut *as* sunt *are* (nómina) Divó-rum *the names of the heáthen Gods,* Mars (génitive Mártis), *the God of war;* Bácchus (génitive Bácchi), *the God of wine,* Apóllo (génitive, Apóllinis), *the God of wísdom;* (nó-mina) virórum *the names of men;* ut *as,* Cáto (génitive Catónis), *a nóble Róman,* Virgílius (génitive, Virgílii, vócative, Virgĭ'li), *the póet Vírgil:* (nómina) fluviórum *the names of rivers;* ut *as* Tíbris (génitive, Tíbridis, accúsative, Tíbrim, vócative Tíbrĭ), *the Tíber;* Oróntes (génitive, Oróntis), *a river by Ántioch:* (nómina) ménsium *the names of months;* ut *as,* Octóber (génitive, Octóbris, áblative, Octóbri), *the month of Octóber:* (nómina) ventórum *the names of winds;* ut *as,* Libs (génitive, Líbis), *the south-west wind,* Nótus (génitive, Nóti), *the south wind,* Aúster (génitive, Aústri), *the south wind.*

Própria nómina *próper names* referéntia *denóting* fœmíneum séxum *the fémale sex* tribuúntur *are given* fœmíneo géneri *to the fémirine génder;* síve *whéther* sunt *they are* (nómina) Deárum *the names of Góddesses;* ut *as,* Júno (génitive, Junónis), *Júpiter's wife,* Vénus (génitive Véneris), *the Góddess of beaúty:* muliébria (nómina) *fémale names, or the names of wómen;* ut *as,* Ánna (génitive, Ánnæ), *Ánn;* Philótis (génitive Philótidis), *Philóte:* (nómina) úrbium *the names of cíties;* ut *as,* Élis (génitive, Élidis), *a cíty of Pelo-ponnésus,* O'pus génitive, Opúntis), *a cíty of Lócris:* (nómina) regiónum *the names of coúntries;* ut *as,* Grǽcia (génitive, Grǽciæ), *Greece,* Pérsis (génitive, Pérsidis), *Pérsia:* ítèm

likewise nómen *the name* ínsulæ *of an island ;* ceù *as,* Créta *(génitive,* Crétæ), *the island of Crete,* Británnia *(génitive,* Británniæ), *Britain,* Cýprus *(génitive,* Cýpri), *Cýprus.*

Támèn *but* quǽdam (nómina) *cértain names* úrbium *of cities* sunt *are* excipiénda *to be excépted ;* ut *as,* ísta máscu-lina (nómina) *these másculine nouns ;* Súlmo *(génitive,* Sul-mónis), *a town in I'taly,* Ágragas *(génitive,* Agragántis), *a town in Sicily :* quǽdam neutrália (nómina) *some neúter nouns ;* ut as, Árgos *(génitive* Árgeos vèl Árgi), *a city in Peloponnésus ;* Tíbur *(génitive,* Tíburis), *a city in I'taly ;* Prænéste *(génitive,* Prænéstis, *áblative,* Prænéste), *a city of I'taly ;* et *álso* Ánxur *(génitive,* Ánxuris), *a city of I'taly,* quod *which* dat *gives* utrúmque génus *either génder of the two, that is, both the másculine and neúter génder.*

Appellatíva (nómina) *appéllative or cómmon names* ár-borum *of trees* érunt *will be* muliébria *féminine :* ut *as,* álnus *(génitive,* álni), *an álder-tree,* cupréssus *(génitive,* cupréssi), *a cýpress-tree,* cédrus *(génitive,* cédri), *a cédar-tree.*

Spínus *(génitive,* spíni), *a sloe-tree or a black-thorn* (est) mas *is másculine,* oleáster *(génitive,* oleástri), *a wild ólive-tree* (est) mas *is másculine.*

(Hæc nómina) sunt *these nouns are* et *álso* neútra *of the neúter génder,* síler *(génitive,* síleris), *an ósier, or a withy-tree,* súber *(génitive,* súberis), *a cork-tree,* thus *(génitive,* thúris), *a fránkincense-tree,* róbur *(génitive,* róboris), *an oak,* átquè *and* ácer *(génitive,* áceris), *a máple-tree.*

Étiam *álso* (nómina) vólucrum *the names of birds ;* ceù *as,* pásser *(génitive,* pásseris), *a sparrow,* hirúndo *(génitive,* hirún-dinis), *a swallow :* (nómina) ferárum *the names of wild beasts ;* ut *as,* tígris *(génitive,* tígridis vèl tígris), *a tiger,* vúlpes *(génitive,* vúlpis), *a fox :* et *and* (nómina) píscium *the names of fishes ;* ut *as,* óstrea, *(génitive,* óstreæ), *an oýster,* cétus *(génitive,* céti), *a whale,* sunt *are* dícta *cálled* (nómina) epicǽna *nouns épicene,* quíbus (nomínibus) *to which nouns* vox ípsa *the termi-nátion itsélf* féret *will bring* áptum génus *the right génder.*

Áttamèn *but* (id est) notándum *it is to be obsérved* ex cúnctis (nomínibus) *of all the names* súprà *abóve méntioned,* átquè *and* réliquis (nomínibus) *of nouns that remain, or of those that fóllow,* ómne (nómen) *that évery noun* quod *which* éxit in -um *ends in -um,* seù *whéther* (sit) Grǽcum (nómen) *it be a Greek noun,* sive *or* Latínum (nómen) *a Látin noun,*

ésse *is* neútrum génus *of the* neúter génder: sic *álso* nómen *a noun* invariábile *undeclined.*

Nómen *a noun* non créscens *not increásing* genitívo (cásu) *in the génitive case*: ceù *as*, cáro cárnis *flesh*, cápra cápræ *a she-goat*, núbes núbis *a cloud*, est *is* muliébre génus *of the féminine génder.*

Múlta nómina *mány nouns* virórum *of men, that is, denóting the óffices of men* in -ă, *énding in -ă*, dicúntur *are cálled* máscula *másculine*: ut *as*, scríba (*génitive*, scríbæ), *a scribe*, ássecla (*génitive*, ásseclæ), *a page*, scúrra (*génitive* scúrræ), *a buffóon*, et *and* rábula (*génitive*, rábulæ), *a péttifogger*, líxa (*génitive*, líxæ), *a sútler*, lanísta (*génitive*, lanístæ), *a máster of gladiátors.*

Quot (nómina) *as many nouns as* príma declinátio *the first declénsion* Græcórum *of the Greeks* fúndit *pours out, or makes to end* in -ās, et *and* in -ēs; et *and* quot (Latína nómina) *as mány Látin nouns are derived* ab íllis *from them* per -ă *énding in -ă*, (sunt) máscula *are másculine*; ut *as*, sátrapas sátrapa (*génitive*, sátrapæ), *a Pérsian nóble-man;* athlétes athléta (*génitive*, athlétæ), *a wréstler.*

I'tem *álso* (hæc nómina) legúntur *these nouns are read* máscula *of the másculine génder*, vérres (*génitive*, vérris), *a boar-pig*, natális (*génitive*, natális), *one's birth-day*, aquális (*génitive*, aquális), *a éwer.*

(Nómina) náta *nouns descénded or compóunded* ab ásse *of the word "AS" a Róman coin or pound*, ut *as*, centússis (*génitive*, centússis), *a húndred pence or pounds-weight*: conjúnge (his) *join únto these* liénis (*génitive*, liénis), *the spleen*, et *and* órbis (*génitive*, órbis), *ány round thing*, cállis, (*génitive*, cállis), *a path*, caúlis (*génitive*, caúlis), *a stalk*, fóllis (*génitive*, fóllis), *béllows*, cóllis (*génitive*, cóllis), *a hill*, ménsis (*génitive*, ménsis), *a month*, et *and* énsis (*génitive*, énsis), *a sword*, fústis (*génitive*, fústis), *a club*, fúnis, (*génitive*, fúnis), *a rope*, cénchris (*génitive*, cénchris), *a kind of sérpent*, pánis (*génitive*, pánis), *bread*, crínis (*génitive*, crínis), *hair*, et *and* ígnis (*génitive*, ígnis), *fire*, cássis (*génitive*, cássis), *a toil or net*, fáscis (*génitive*, fáscis), *a fággot*, tórris (*génitive*, tórris), *a fire-brand*, séntis (*génitive*, séntis), *a thorn*, píscis (*génitive*, píscis), *a fish*, et *and* únguis (*génitive*, únguis), *a nail of the hand or foot*, et *álso* vérmis (*génitive*, vérmis), *a worm*, véctis (*génitive*, véctis), *a léver*, póstis (*gé-*

nitive, póstis), *a door-post ;* et *álso* áxis *(génitive,* áxis), *an áxle-tree* sociétur *may be joined.*

(Nómina finíta) in -ĕr *nouns énding in* -ĕr, ceù *as,* vénter *(génitive,* véntris), *the belly ;* (nómina finíta) in -ŏs vèl -ŭs, *nouns énding in* -ŏs *or in* -ŭs ; ut *as,* lógos *(génitive,* lógi), *a word,* ánnus *(génitive,* ánni), *a year,* (sunt) máscula *are másculine.*

At *but* (hæc nómina) sunt *these nouns are* fœmínei géneris *of the féminine génder,* máter *(génitive,* mátris), *a móther,* húmus *(génitive,* húmi), *the ground,* dómus *(génitive,* dómûs vèl dómi), *a house,* álvus *(génitive,* álvi), *a paunch,* et *and* cólus *(génitive,* cóli vèl cólûs), *a distaff or whorl,* et *álso* ficus *(genitive,* ficûs), *quártæ (declinatiónis) ficus of the fourth declénsion* pro *for* frúctu *the fruit, that is, a fig,* átquè *and* ácus *(génitive* ácûs), *a needle,* pórticus *(génitive,* pórticûs), *a pórch,* átquè *and* tríbus *(génitive,* tríbûs), *a tribe,* sócrus *(génitive,* sócrûs), *a móther-in-law,* núrus *(génitive,* núrûs), *a daúghter-in-law,* et *and* mánus *(génitive,* mánûs), *a hand,* ídus *(génitive,* íduum), *the ides of a month ;* hùc *to these* ánus *(génitive,* ánûs), *an old wóman* est addénda *is to be ádded,* hùc *to these* mýstica vánnus *the mýstical fan* Iácchi *of Bácchus.*

Júngas *you may (álso) join* his *to these* Gréca (nomina) *Greek nouns* verténtia *changing* -ŏs in -ŭs, -ŏs *into* -ŭs ; papýrus *(génitive,* papýri vèl pápyri), *páper,* antídotus *(génitive,* antídoti), *an ántidote or prevéntive,* cóstus *(génitive,* cósti), *the herb zédoary,* diphthóngus *(génitive,* diphthóngi), *a diphthong,* býssus *(génitive,* býssi), *fine flax,* abýssus *(génitive,* abýssi), *an abýss or a bóttomless pit,* crystállus *(génitive,* crystálli), *crystal,* sýnodus *(génitive,* sýnodi), *an assémbly,* sapphírus *(génitive,* sapphíri), *a sápphire stone,* erémus *(génitive,* erémi), *a désert,* et *and* Árctus *(génitive,* Árcti), *a set of stars cálled the Bear,* cum *with* múltis áliis (nomínibus) *mány óther nouns,* quæ *which* nùnc *at this time* perscríbere *to write at large* est lóngum *is tédious.*

Nómen *a noun* (finítum) in -ĕ *ending in* -ĕ, si *if* gígnit -ĭs *it begéts or makes* -is *in the génitive case,* (est) neútrum *is neúter,* ut *as,* máre *(génitive,* máris), *the sea,* réte *(génitive,* rétis), *a net ;* et *and* ádde *add* quot (nómina) *howéver mány or whatéver nouns* légas *you read* (finíta) in -ŏn *énding in* -ŏn, fléxa per -ī *inflécted by* -ī, *that is, máking* -ī *in the gé-*

nitive case, ut *as*, bárbiton (*génitive*, bárbiti), *a harp or lute.*

Hippómanes (*génitive*, hippómanis), *a ráging húmour in mares* est *is* neútrum génus *of the neúter génder*, et *and* ca-cöéthes (*génitive*, cacöéthis), *an évil hábit or cústom* (est) neútrum *is néuter*, et *álso* vírus (*génitive*, víri), *poison*, pélagus (*génitive*, pélagi), *the sea:* vúlgus (*génitive*, vúlgi), *the cómmon péople* módò *sómetimes* (est) neútrum *is neúter*, módò *sómetimes* mas *is másculine.*

(Hæc nómina) sunt *these nouns are* incérti géneris *of the doúbtful génder*, tálpa (*génitive*, tálpæ), *a mole*, et *and* dáma (*génitive*, dámæ), *a deer*, canális (*génitive*, canális), *a chánnel*, et *and* cýtisus (*génitive*, cýtisi), *hádder*, bálanus (*génitive*, bálani), *the fruit of the palm-tree*, clúnis (*génitive*, clúnis), *a búttock*, fínis (*génitive*, fínis), *an end, or a límit*, pénus (*génitive*, péni vèl pénûs*), *all kinds of provision*, ámnis (*génitive*, ámnis), *a river*, pámpinus (*génitive*, pámpini), *a vine leaf*, et *and* córbis (*génitive*, córbis), *a básket*, línter (*génitive*, líntris), *a bark*, tórquis (*génitive*, tórquis), *a chain*, spécus (*génitive*, spécûs rárìus spéci), *a cave*, ánguis (*génitive*, ánguis), *a snake*, fícus dans fíci *ficus gíving fíci, that is, making fíci in the génitive case*, pro mórbo *for a diséase*, átquè *and* phasélus (*génitive*, phaséli), *a pínnace*, lécythus (*génitive*, lécythi), *an oil cruse*, àc *and* átomus (*génitive*, átomi), *an átom*, gróssus (*génitive*, gróssi), *a green fig*, phárus (*génitive*, phári), *a watch-tówer*, et *and* paradísus (*génitive*, paradísi), *páradise.*

(Nómen) compósitum *a noun compoúnded* à vérbo *of a verb* dans -ă *gíving -ă, that is, énding in -ă*, est *is* commúne duórum (génerum) *the cómmon of two génders:* Grajúgena (*génitive*, Grajúgenæ), *a Grécian-born* à *from* gígno *I begét*, agrícola (*génitive*, agrícolæ), *a fármer* à *from* cólo *I till*, ádvena (*génitive*, ádvenæ), *a stránger* à *from* vénio *I come*, mónstrant *show* id *that.*

Ádde *add* sénex (*génitive*, sénis *and* sómetimes sénicis), *an old man or wóman*, auríga (*génitive*, aurígæ), *a chario-teér*, et *and* vérna (*génitive*, vérnæ), *a slave by birth*, sodális (*génitive*, sodális), *a compánion*, vátes (*génitive*, vátis), *a próphet or bard*, extórris (*génitive*, extórris), *a bánished man or wóman*, patruélis (*génitive*, patruélis), *a coúsin-gérman*, átquè *and* perduéllis (*génitive*, perduéllis), *an ópen énemy in*

war, affínis (*génitive*, affínis), *one allied by márriage*, júvenis (*génitive*, júvenis), *a young pérson*, téstis (*génitive*, téstis), *a witness*, cívis (*génitive*, cívis), *a cítizen*, cánis (*génitive*, cánis, *génitive plúral*, cánum), *a dog or bitch*, hóstis (*génitive*, hóstis), *an énemy*.

NÓMEN *a noun* est *is* muliébre génus *of the féminine génder* si *if* penúltima sýllaba *the last sýllable éxcept one* genitívi (*cásûs*) *of the génitive case* crescéntis *incréasing* sónat *sounds* acúta *sharp, that is, if it be accénted :* vélùt *as* hæc (nómina) *these nouns* píetas pietátis *piety*, vírtus virtútis *vírtue* món- strant *show*.

Quǽdam nómina *cértain nouns* monosýllaba *of ónly one sýllable* dicúntur *are cálled* máscula *másculine :* sal (*génitive*, sális), *salt*, sol (*génitive*, sólis), *the sun*, rēn (*génitive*, rénis), *a kídney*, et *and* splēn (*génitive*, splénis), *the spleen*, Cār (*génitive*, Cáris), *a Cárian*, Sēr (*génitive*, Séris, *accúsative*, Séra), *a Chínese*, vĭr (*génitive*, víri), *a man or húsband*, vās vádis *a súrety*, ās (*génitive*, ássis), *a pound weight*, mās (*gé- nitive*, máris), *the male kind*, bēs (*génitive*, béssis), *eight oúnces*, Crēs (*génitive*, Crétis), *a Crétan or man of Crete*, præs (*génitive*, prǽdis), *a súrety for móney*, et *and* pēs (*géni- tive*, pédis), *the foot*, glīs *a dórmouse* hábens *háving* glíris genitívo *gliris in the génitive case*, mōs (*génitive*, móris), *a mánner*, flōs (*génitive*, flóris), *a flówer*, rōs, (*génitive*, róris), *dew*, et *álso* Trōs (*génitive*, Tróïs), *a Trójan or man of Troy*, mūs (*génitive*, múris), *a mouse*, dens (*génitive*, déntis), *a tooth*, mons (*génitive*, móntis), *a móuntain*, pons (*génitive*, póntis), *a brídge*, et *and* símùl *álso* fons (*génitive*, fóntis), *a fóuntain*, seps (*génitive*, sépis), pro serpénte *seps for a sér- pent, líkewise, an eft*, et *and* gryps (*génitive*, grýphis), *a gríffin*, Thrax (*génitive*, Thrácis), *a Thrácian*, rex (*génitive*, régis), *a king*, grex (*génitive*, grégis), *a flock*, et *and* Phryx (*génitive*, Phrýgis), *a Phrýgian*.

Étiàm *álso* polysýllaba *nouns of more than one sýllable* (finíta) in -n *énding in -n* sunt *are* máscula *másculine ;* ut *as*, Acárnan (*génitive*, Acarnánis), *an Acarnánian, that is, a man of Acarnánia*, líchēn (*génitive*, lichénis), *a tétter or ríngworm, álso, the herb cálled líver-wort*, et *and* délphīn (*génitive*, delphínis), *a dólphin :* et *álso* (nómina finíta) in -o *nouns énding in -o* signántia *signifying* córpus *bódy or bódily súbstance ;* ut *as*, léo (*génitive*, leónis), *a lion*, curcúlio

(génitive, curculiónis), *the weásand or gúllet:* sîc *álso* sénio
(génitive, seniónis), *the number six*, térnio *(génitive*, terniónis),
the number three, sérmo *(génitive*, sermónis), *a discoúrse.*

(Nómina finíta) in -ēr, -ŏr, et -ōs, *nouns ending in -ēr, -ŏr,*
and -ōs, (sunt) máscula *are másculine;* ceù *as*, crátēr, *(gé-*
nitive, cratéris), *a bowl*, cónditŏr *(génitive*, conditóris), *a*
builder, hérōs *(génitive*, heróïs), *a héro:* his (nomínibus) *to*
these (nouns) conjúnge *conjóin* tórrens *(génitive*, torréntis),
a tórrent, or, land flood, néfrens *(génitive*, nefréntis), *a young*
pig, óriens *(génitive*, oriéntis), *the east*, átquè *and* clíens *(gé-*
nitive, cliéntis), *a client*, átquè *and* bídens instruméntum *the*
word "bídens" *an instrument or fork with two prongs*, cum
plúribus (nomínibus) *with mány nouns* (finíta), in -dens
ending in -dens: ádde *add (to these)* gígas *(génitive*, gigántis),
a giant, élephas *(génitive*, elephántis), *an élephant*, ádamas
(génitive, adamántis), *a díamond*, átquè *and* Gáramas *(gé-*
nitive, Garamántis), *a Garamántian, or, a man of Líbya*,
átquè *and* tápes *(génitive*, tapétis), *tápestry*, átquè *and* lébes
(génitive, lebétis), *a cáuldron*, sîc so et *álso* mágnes *(génitive*,
magnétis), *a mágnet or a lóadstone*, átquè *and* únum nómen
one noun quíntæ (declinatiónis) *of the fifth declénsion*, merí-
dies *(génitive*, meridiéï), *noon or mid-day:* et *álso* (nómina)
quæ *the nouns which* componúntur *are compoúnded* ab *of* ásse
a pound weight, ut *as*, dódrans *(génitive*, dodrántis), *nine*
oúnces, sémis *(génitive*, semíssis), *half a pound.*

(Hæc) máscula (nómina) *these másculine nouns* jungántur
may be joined, Sámnīs *(génitive*, Samnítis), *a Sámnite*, hý-
drops *(génitive*, hydrópis), *the drópsy*, et *and* thórax *(génitive*,
thorácis), *the breast or chest:* júngas *you may join* quóquè
álso (hæc) máscula (nómina) *these másculines*, vérvex *(géni-*
tive, vervécis), *a wéther sheep*, phénix *(génitive*, phœnícis),
a phénix, et *and* bómbyx *(génitive*, bombýcis), *pro for* ver-
mículo *a silk-worm:* Áttamèn *yet* ex his (nomínibus) *of these*
(nouns) sýrēn *(génitive*, syrénis), *a mérmaid*, nécnon *álso*
sóror *(génitive*, soróris), *a síster*, úxor *(génitive*, uxóris), *a*
wife, sunt *are* muliébre génus *of the féminine génder.*

Et *álso* hæc nómina *these nouns* monosýllaba *of one sýllable*
sunt *are* neutrália *neúter:* mel *(génitive*, méllis), *hóney*, fel
(génitive, féllis), *gall*, lac *(génitive*, láctis), *milk*, far *(génitive*,
fárris), *bread-corn*, vēr *(génitive*, véris), *the spring*, æs *(géni-*
tive, éris), *brass*, cor *(génitive*, córdis), *the heart*, vās vásis

a véssel, ōs óssis *a bone*, et *and* ōs óris *the mouth*, rūs (*génitive*, rúris), *the country*, thūs (*génitive*, thúris), *fránkincense*, jūs, (*génitive*, júris), *right*, *álso* grúel *or broth*, crūs (*génitive*, crúris), *the leg*, pūs (*génitive*, púris), *corrúption*.

Et *álso* polysýllaba (nómina) *nouns of séveral sýllables*, *that is*, *of more than of one sýllable* (finíta) in ăl *énding in -ăl*, átquè *and* in -ăr *énding in -ăr :* ut *as*, cápităl (*génitive*, capitális), *a priest's veil*, láqueăr (*génitive*, laqueáris), *a roof or céiling :* álec (*génitive*, alécis), *a sharp pickle* (est) neútrum *is neúter*,—álex (*génitive*, alécis), *a hérring* (est) muliébre (génus) *is of the féminine génder.*

(Hæc nómina) sunt *these* (*names or*) *nouns are* dúbii géneris *of doúbtful génder ;* scrobs (*génitive*, scróbis), *a ditch*, sérpens (*génitive*, serpéntis), *a sérpent*, búbo (*génitive*, bubónis), *an owl*, rúdens (*génitive*, rudéntis), *a cáble*, grus (*génitive*, grūïs), *a crane*, pérdix (*génitive*, perdícis), *a pártridge*, lynx (*génitive*, lýncis), *a lynx or an ounce, a sort of spótted wolf*, límax (*génitive*, limácis), *a snail*, stirps (*génitive*, stírpis), *the word stirps* pro trúnco *for the trúnk or bódy of a tree* et *and* calx pédis *the heel of the foot.*

Ádde *add* díes (*génitive*, diéï), *a day*, tántùm *ónly* ésto *let it be* mas *másculine* secúndo número *in the sécond or plúral númber.*

(Hæc nómina) sunt *these nouns are* commúne (génus) *of the cómmon génder :* párens (*génitive*, paréntis), *a párent, fáther or mother,* átquè *and* aúctor (*génitive*, auctóris), *an aúthor*, ínfans (*génitive*, infántis), *a babe, or an ínfant*, adoléscens (*génitive*, adolescéntis), *a young man or wóman*, dux (*génitive*, dúcis), *a leáder*, íllex (*génitive*, illégis), *an oútlaw*, héres (*génitive*, hærédis), *an heir*, éxlex (*génitive*, exlégis), *an oútlaw.*

(Nómina) creáta *nouns compoúnded* à frónte *of* frons *the fórehead ;* ut *as*, bífrons (*génitive*, bifróntis), *one with two fáces*, cústos (*génitive*, custódis), *a keeper*, bōs (*génitive*, bóvis, *génitive plural*, bóum, *dátive plúral*, bóbus vèl búbus), *an ox, a bull or cow*, fūr (*génitive*, fúris), *a thief*, sūs (*génitive*, súïs), *a swine*, átquè *and* sacérdos (*génitive*, sacerdótis), *a priest or príestess.*

NÓMEN *a noun* est *is* mas *másculine*, si *if* penúltima *the last sýllable excépt one* genitívi (cásûs) *of the génitive case*, crescéntis *incréasing* sit *be* grávis *flat :* ut *as* sánguis *blood* genitívo (cásu) *in the génitive case* sánguĭnis.

Hyperdissýllabon (nómen) *let a noun of more than two syllables* (finítum) in -do *términating in -do*, quod (nómen) *which noun* dat *gives or makes* -dǐnis *the ending -dǐnis* in genitívo (cásu) *in the génitive case*, átquè *and* (hyperdissýllabon nómen finítum) in -go *any hyperdissýllable noun énding in -go*, quod (dat) *which gives or makes* -gǐnis *the termination -ginis in the génitive case* sit *be* fœmínei géneris *of the féminine génder :*—dulcédo *sweétness* fáciens *máking* dulcédinis, mónstrat *demónstrates or shows* id *that* tíbi *to you*, átquè *and* compágo (*génitive*, compáginis), *a joint or joining* (mónstrat) id *shows* (*to you*) *that or the same thing.*

Ádjice *add* vírgo (*génitive*, vírginis), *a vírgin or maíden*, grándo (*génitive*, grándinis), *hail*, fídes (*génitive*, fidĕï), *faith*, cómpĕs (*génitive*, cómpedis), *a fétter*, tégĕs (*génitive*, tégetis), *a mat*, et *and* ségĕs (*génitive*, ségetis), *corn-land*, árbŏr vèl árbōs (*génitive*, árboris), *a tree*, átquè *and* hýems (*génitive*, hýemis), *winter :* sîc *so* chlámys (*génitive*, chlámydis), *a cloak or mántle*, et *and* síndon (*génitive*, síndonis), *fine línen*, Górgon (*génitive*, Górgonis, *accúsative*, Górgona), *Medusa's head*, ícon (*génitive*, íconis, *accúsative*, ícona), *an image*, et *and* Amázon (*génitive*, Amázonis, *accúsative*, Amázona), *an Ámazon.*

Grǽcula (nómina) *Greek nouns* finíta *énding* in -ăs vèl in -ĭs *in -ăs or in -ĭs*, ut *as*, lámpăs (*génitive*, lámpadis), *a lamp*, iáspĭs (*génitive*, iáspidis), *a jásper*, cássis, (*génitive*, cássidis), *a hélmet*, cúspis (*génitive*, cúspidis), *the point of a weápon :* ítem *álso* múlier (*génitive*, mulíĕris), *a woman*, et *and* pécus *cáttle* dans *giving or máking* pécudis (genitívo cásu) *pécudis in the génitive case.*

Ádde *add* his (nomínibus) *únto these* (*nouns*) fórfex (*génitive*, fórficis), *a pair of shears or scíssars*, péllex (*génitive*, péllicis), *a hárlot*, cárex (*génitive*, cáricis), *sedge*, átquè *and* símùl *álso* supéllex (*génitive*, supelléctilis), *household-fúrniture*, appéndix (*génitive*, appéndicis), *an appéndage*, hýstrix (*génitive*, hýstricis), *a pórcupine*, coxéndix (*génitive*, coxéndicis), *the hip*, átquè *and* fílix (*génitive*, fílicis), *fern.*

Nómen *a noun* (finítum) in -ă *énding in -ă*, signans *signifying* rem *a thing* non animátam *not ánimate, that is, a thing withoút life*, est *is* neutrále génus *of the neúter génder ;* ut *as*, probléma (*génitive*, problématis), *a próblem or a quéstion propósed :* (nómina et finíta in) -ĕn *nouns álso énding in -ĕn ;*

E

ut *as*, ómen (*génitive*, óminis), *a tóken of good or bad luck:*
(nómina finíta in) ăr *nouns énding in ăr;* ut as, júbar (*géni-
tive*, júbaris), *a súnbeam;* (nómen) dans -ŭr, *a noun giving
-ŭr, that is, énding in -ŭr;* ut as, jécur (*génitive*, jécoris *vel*
jecínoris), *the líver;* (nómina in) -ŭs, *nouns in -ŭs;* ut as,
ónus (*génitive*, óneris), *a búrden:* (nómina finíta in) -pŭt
nouns énding in -pŭt; ut *as*, ócciput (*génitive*, occípitis), *the
hínder part of the head.*

Áttamen *but* ex his (nomínibus) *of these* (*nouns*) pécten
(*génitive*, péctinis), *a comb,* fúrfur (*génitive*, fúrfuris), *bran,*
sunt *are* máscula *másculine.*

(Hæc nómina) sunt *these nouns are* neútra *of the neúter
génder,* cadáver (*génitive*, cadáveris), *a cárcase,* vérber (*géni-
tive*, vérberis), *a stripe,* íter (*génitive*, itíneris), *a joúrney,*
súber (*génitive*, súberis), *a cork,* túber (*génitive*, túberis),
pro *for* fúngo *a múshroom,* et *and* úber (*génitive*, úberis),
a dug or teat, gíngiber (*génitive*, gingíberis), *gínger,* et *and*
láser (*génitive*, láseris), *the herb bénjamine,* cícer (*génitive*,
cíceris), *a vetch,* et *and* píper (*génitive*, píperis), *pépper,* átquè
and papáver (*génitive*, papáveris), *a póppy,* et *also* síser (*gé-
nitive*, síseris), *a pársnep.*

Áddas *you may add* his (nomínibus) *únto these* (*nouns*)
neútra *the neúters* æquor (*génitive*, æquoris), *a lével súrface
or a plane superfícies,* mármor (*génitive*, mármoris), *márble,*
átquè *and* ádor (*génitive*, ádoris *vel* adóris), *fine wheat,* átquè
and pécus *cáttle* quándò *when* fácit *it makes* pécoris in geni-
tívo (cásu), *pécoris in the génitive case.*

(Hæc nómina) sunt *these nouns are* dúbii géneris *of the
doúbtful génder,* cárdo (*génitive*, cárdinis), *a hinge,* márgo
(*génitive*, márginis), *the márgin, brink, or brim of a thing,*
cínis (*génitive*, cíneris), *áshes or cínders,* óbex (*génitive*,
óbicis), *a bolt,* fórceps (*génitive*, fórcipis), *a pair of tongs,*
púmex (*génitive*, púmicis), *a púmice-stone,* ímbrex (*génitive*,
ímbricis), *a gútter-tile,* córtex (*génitive*, córticis), *the rind or
bark of a tree or shrub,* púlvis (*génitive*, púlveris), *dust,*
átquè *and* ádeps (*génitive*, ádipis), *fat.*

Adde *add* cúlex (*génitive*, cúlicis), *a gnat,* nátrix (*génitive*,
nátricis), *a wáter-sérpent,* et *and* ónyx (*génitive*, ónychis),
an ónyx, a sort of précious stone, cum próle *with its óffspring
or cómpounds,* átquè *and* sílex, (*génitive*, sílicis), *a flint,*
quámvis *although* úsus *use* vult *wishes or will have* hæc

(nómina) these nouns méliùs *ráther* dícier *to be cálled* máscula
másculine.

Is'ta (nómina) *these nouns* sunt *are* commúnis géneris *of
the cómmon génder, that is, are indifferently másculine or
féminine;* vígil *(génitive,* vígilis*), a séntinel,* púgil *(génitive,*
púgilis*), a bóxer, or chámpion,* éxul *(génitive,* éxulis*), a
bánished man or wóman,* præsul *(génitive,* præsulis*), a prélate,*
hómo *(génitive,* hóminis*), a man or wóman,* némo *(génitive,*
néminis*), nóbody,* mártyr *(génitive,* mártyris*), a mártyr,*
Lígur *(génitive,* Líguris*), a Ligúrian,* aúgur, *(génitive,* aú-
guris*), a divíner by birds, or a sóothsayer,* et *and* Árcas *(gé-
nitive,* Árcădis vèl Árcădos*), an Arcádian,* antístĕs *(génitive,*
antístitis*), a chief priest or priéstess,* mílĕs *(génitive,* mílitis*),
a sóldier,* pédes *(génitive,* péditis*), a fóotman or foot-wóman,*
intérprĕs *(génitive,* intérpretis*), an intérpreter,* cómĕs *(géni-
tive,* cómitis*), a cómpanion on a jóurney,* hóspĕs *(génitive,*
hóspitis*), a host or lándlord, álso, a guest:* sîc *so* álĕs *(géni-
tive,* álitis*), ány great bird,* præsĕs *(génitive,* præsidis*), a
président,* prínceps *(génitive,* príncipis*), a prince or príncess,*
aúceps *(génitive,* aúcupis*), a fówler,* équĕs *(génitive,* équitis*),
a hórseman or horse-wóman,* óbsĕs *(génitive,* óbsidis*), a
hóstage:* átque *and* múlta ália nómina *many óther nouns*
quæ *which* creántur *are fórmed or deríved* à vérbis *from
verbs:* ut *as* cónjux *(génitive,* cónjugis*), a húsband or wife,*
júdex, *(génitive,* júdicis*), a judge,* víndex *(génitive,* víndicis*),
an avénger,* ópifex, *(génitive,* opíficis*), a wórkman,* et *and*
arúspex *(génitive,* arúspicis*), a divíner by the éntrails at
sácrifice.*

Adjectíva *adjectives* habéntia *háving* duntáxat *only* únam
vócem *one terminátion,* ut, *as,* félix *(génitive,* felícis*), háppy,*
aúdax *(génitive,* audácis*), bold,* rétinent *keep* ómne génus
évery génder sub únâ (vóce) *under that one énding;* si *if*
cádant *they fall* sub *under* géminâ vóce *a dóuble terminátion,*
vélùt *as* ómnis *all* et *and* ómne *all,* príor vox *the fórmer word
(of the two)* est *is* commúne (génus) duórum (génerum) *the
cómmon of two génders, that is, both másculine and féminine,*
áltera vox *the sécond word* (est) neútrum (génus) *is neúter;*
at *but* si *if* váriant *they váry* tres vóces *the three terminátions
or éndings;* ut *as,* sácer, sácra, sácrum, *sácred;* príma vox

K 2

the first word est *is* mas *masculine*, áltera *the sécond*, fémina *féminine*, tértia *the third*, neútrum (génus) *neúter*.

Obser. 1.—At *but* sunt (nómina) *there are some nouns* quæ *which* vocáres *you would call* substantíva *súbstantives* própè *in a mánner* fléxu *by their declíning :* támen *yet* (sunt) repérta *they are found* (ésse) *to be* adjectíva *ádjectives* natúrá *by náture* átque *and* úsu *by use.* Tália *such* sunt *are* paúper (*génitive*, paúperis), *poor*, púber (*génitive*, púberis), *ripe of age*, cum *with* dégener (*génitive*, degéneris), *degénerate*, úber (*génitive*, úberis), *fruítful*, et *and* díves (*génitive*, dívitis), *rich*, lócuples (*génitive*, locuplétis), *wéalthy*, sóspes (*génitive*, sóspitis), *safe*, cómes (*génitive*, cómitis), *accómpanying or atténding*, átque *and* supérstes (*génitive*, supérstitis), *surviving :* cum *with* paúcis áliis (nomínibus) *a few óthers* (*nouns*), quæ *which* jústa léctio *due reáding* docébit *will teach.*

Obser. 2.—Hæc (adjectíva) *these ádjectives* gaúdent *like* adscíscere *to take* síbi *únto themsélves* quémdam próprium fléxum *a cértain pecúliar infléxion or mánner of declíning*, campéster *chámpaign*, vólucer *swift*, céleber *fámous*, céler *speedy*, átque *and* salúber *whólesome ;* júnge *join* pedéster, *belónging únto a fóotman*, equéster *belónging to a hórseman*, et *and* ácer *sharp ;* júnge *join* palúster *márshy*, àc *and* álacer *cheérful*, silvéster *wóody :*

At *but* tu *you* variábis *shall váry or declíne* hæc (adjectíva) *these ádjectives* sìc *thus :* hic céler, *in the másculine*, hæc céleris, *in the féminine*, hoc célere neútro (génere) *hoc célere in the neúter génder ;* aùt *or* áliter *ótherwise* sìc *thus ;* hic átque hæc céleris *for the másculine and féminine*, rúrsum *again* hoc célere est *hoc célere is* neútrum (génus) tíbi *the neúter génder for you.*

NOUNS HETEROCLITE, OR IRREGULAR,

CONSTRUED.

(Nómina) quæ *those nouns which* váriant *change* génus *their génder* aùt *or* fléxum *their declénsion*, (et) quæcúmque (nómina) *and whatsoéver nouns* novato rítu *by or áfter a new mánner* defíciunt *fall short* vèl *or* súperant *exceéd in declíning*, súnto *let them be* (cálled) heteróclita *héteroclites, or nouns irrégular.*

Cérnis *you perceive or see* hæc (nómina) *these nouns* vari-
ántia *várying* pártim *in part* génus *their génder,* àc *and*
fléxum *their declíning :* Pérgamus (*génitive,* Pérgami), *the*
cíty of Pérgamus gígnit *makes* Pérgama *the cítadel of Troy* in
plúráli número *in the plúral númber.*

Príor númerus *the fórmer or síngular númber* dat *gives* his
(nomínibus) *únto these nouns* neútrum génus *the neúter génder,*
álter (númerus) *the óther, or plúral númber,* utrúmque *both*
the másculine and neúter ; rástrum (*génitive,* rástri), *a rake,*
or hárrow, cum *with* fréno (*nóminative,* frénum), *the bit of a*
brídle, fílum (*génitive,* fíli), *a thread,* átquè símùl *and álso*
capístrum (*génitive,* capístri), *a hálter :* ítèm *álso* Árgŏs (*gé-*
nitive, Árgĕŏs vèl Argi), *Árgos, a town in Greece,* et *and*
cǽlum (*génitive,* cǽli), *heáven,* sunt *are* neútra *neúter* síngula
síngulars, that is, in the síngular númber, sèd *but* aúdi *hear*
or obsérve, vocitábis *you shall say* duntáxat *ónly* cǽlōs, et
and Árgōs (*in the plúral númber*) máscula *másculine :* sèd
but fréna *neúter,* et *and* frénōs *másculine,* quo pácto *on which*
condítion, or áfter which mánner (Latíni) fórmant *they* (*the*
Látins) *form* et *álso* cǽtera *the rest, that is, of the nouns abóve*
méntioned, námely, rástrum, fílum, *and* capístrum.

Plurális númerus *the plúral númber* sólet *is wont* áddere *to*
add his (nomínibus) *to these nouns* utrúmque génus *either*
génder of the two, that is, both génders, the másculine and
neúter ; síbilus (*génitive,* síbili), *a híssing,* átquè *and* jócus
(*génitive,* jóci), *sport,* lócus (*génitive,* lóci), *a place.—*Júngas
you may join his (nomínibus) *únto these* (*nouns*) quóquè *álso*
plúrima (nómina) *véry mány or mány more* (*nouns*).

Propágo (nóminum) *the stock* (*of nouns*) quæ *which* sé-
quitur *fóllows* est *is* mánca *deféctive* cásu *in case* vèl *or* nú-
mero *in númber.*

(Nómina) quæ *nouns which* váriant *váry* núllum cásum *no*
case ; ut *as,* fās *divíne law,* nîl *nóthing,* níhil *nóthing,* ínstăr
resémbling in size or appeárance : et *and* múlta (nómina)
mány nouns (finíta) *in* -ū *énding in ū,* símùl *álso in* -i *énding*
in ĭ : ut *as,* sunt *are* hæc *these* átquè *both* córnu *a horn,* átquè
and génu *the knee ;* sìc *so* gúmmĭ *gum,* frúgĭ *thrifty ;* sìc *so*
Témpē *a pléasant vale in Théssaly,* tot *so mány,* quot, *how*
mány, et *and* ómnes números *all númbers, that is, nouns of*
númber à tríbus *from three* ad céntum *to a húndred,* vocábis
you shall call aptóta *áptotes.*

Átquè *and* nomen *a noun* cui vox *to which the vócable or díction* cádit úna *falls one or single, that is, which hath ónly one case* est *is* cálled monoptóton *a monóptote ;* ceù *as,* nóctu *by night,* nátu *by birth,* jússu *by órder,* injússu *withoút órder,* simùl *álso* ástu *by craft,* prómptu *in reádiness,* permíssu *with permíssion or leave:* légimus *we have read* ástus plúráli (número) *ástus in the plúral númber :* légimus, *we have read* inficias *a deníal,* sèd *but* éa vox *that case* sóla alóne *est* repérta *is found.*

(Nómina) sunt *those nouns are* (cálled) diptóta *díptotes,* quíbus *to which* dúplex flexúra *a doúble fléxure or twófold declíning* remánsit *has remaíned, that is, nouns which have ónly two cáses :* ut *as,* fors *chance* dábit *will give or make* fórte *by chance,* séxto (cásu) *in the sixth or áblative case,* quóquè *álso* spóntis *of choice* spónte *by choice :* et *and* júgeris *of an ácre* dat *gives or makes* júgere *by an ácre,* séxto (cásu) *in the sixth or áblatíve case,* aútèm *and* vérberis *of a stripe* vérbere *by a stripe,* quóquè *álso* suppétiæ *aid* dant *gives or makes* suppétias *aid or súccour,* quárto (cásu) *in the fourth, or the accúsative case ;* tantúndem *just so much* dat *makes* tantídem *of just so much,* et *and* simùl *álso* ímpetis *of an attáck* dat *makes* ímpete *by an attáck,* (ablatívo cásu) *in the áblative case ;* sìc *so* repetundárum *of illégal exáctions* repetúndis *by illégal exáctions.* Vérberis *of a stripe,* cum *with* júgere *by an ácre* sérvant *keep* quátùor cásus *four cáses* in áltero número *in the óther or plúral númber.*

(Nómina) vocántur *nouns are cálled or námed* triptóta *tríptotes* quíbus *in which* infléctis *you declíne* tres cásus *three cases :* sìc *so* est *it is* nóstræ ópis *of or in our pówer,* légis *you read or meet with* fer ópem *bring assístance,* átquè *and* dígnus *wórthy* ópe *of aid or help ;* flécte *decline* préci *to práyer,* átquè *and* précem *práyer,* et *and* blándus pétit *he complaisánt courts, that is, complaisántly woos* amícam *his místress* préce *with entreáty or entreáties :—*àt *but* frúgis *of fruit* cáret *wants* tántùm *ónly* récto (cásu) *the straight case or the nóminative,* et *and* álso ditiónis *of rulc :* vox *the word* vis *force* est *is* íntegra *entire,* nísì *unless* fórtè *perháps* datívus (cásus) *the dátive case* désit *be wánting :* Júngas *you may join* his (nomínibus) *to these (nouns)* vícis *of a turn,* átquè *and* vícem *a turn,* et *and* více *by a turn :* quóquè *álso* plus *more* hábet *hath* plúris *of more,* et *and* plus *more,* quárto

(cásu) *in the fourth, or accúsative case :* álter númerus *the óther or* plúral *número*) dátur *is given* ómnibus his (nomínibus) *to all these nouns.*

Nótes *you may note (or obsérve)* cúncta própria (nómina) *all próper names,* quíbus *to which* est *there is* natúra *a nátture, that is, which have a náture, or an ímport,* coércens *restraíning them* nè fúerint *lest they be, that is, from béing* plúrima *many or* plúrals *; et and* múlta ália (nómina) *many óther nouns* occúrrent tíbi *will meet you* legénti *reáding, that is, will fall in your way in reáding,* ráro séldom excedéntia *exceéding* prímum númerum *the first, or síngular númber.*

(Hæc) máscula (nómina) *these másculines* sunt *are* conténta *contént with or confíned to* secúndo número *the sécond or* plúral *número* tántùm ónly : mánes (*génitive,* mánium), *the spírits of the depárted, or ghosts,* majóres (*génitive,* majórum), *áncestors,* cancélli (*génitive,* cancellórum), *láttices,* líberi (*génitive,* liberórum), *children, et and* ántes (*génitive,* ántium), *the fore ranks of vines,* léndes (*génitive,* léndium), *nits,* èt *and* lémures (*génitive,* lémurum), *spéctres,* símùl *álso* fásti (*génitive,* fastórum), *régisters or ánnals,* átquè *and* minóres (*génitive,* minórum), *yóungers or postérity,* natáles (*génitive,* natálium), cùm *when* assignant *it assígns or signifies* génus *extráction, or kíndred ;* ádde *add* penátes (*génitive,* penátum), *hóusehold gods, et and* lóca (*génitive,* locórum), *pláces, that is, the names of pláces* plúráli (número) *in or of the plúral númber,* quáles *such as,* átquè *both* Gábii (*génitive,* Gabiórum), *a city in I'taly,* átquè *and* Lócri (*génitive,* Locrórum), *the Lócrians or inhábitants of Lócris,* et *and* quæcúnque (nómina) *whatéver nouns* símilis ratiónis *of like sort or kind* légas *you may read* pásssìm *here and there, that is, in áuthors.*

Hæc (nómina) *these nouns* sunt *are* fœmínei géneris *of the féminine génder,* átquè *and* secúndi númeri *of the plúral númber :* exúviæ (*génitive,* exuviárum), *cast gárments or ány thing stript off from the bódy,* pháleræ (*génitive,* phalerárum), *horse-tráppings,* átquè *and* grátes (*génitive, deféctive*), *thanks,* manúbiæ (*génitive,* manubiárum), *the spoils of war, et and* ídus (*génitive,* íduum), *the ides of a month,* ántiæ (*génitive,* antiárum), *a fórelock, et and* indúciæ (*génitive,* induciárum), *a truce ;* símul *álso* átquè *both* insídiæ (*génitive,* insidiárum), *an ámbush,* átquè *and* mínæ (*génitive,* minárum), *threats,*

excúbiæ *(génitive,* excubiárum), *watch by day or night,* nónæ *(génitive,* nonárum), *the nones of a month,* núgæ *(génitive,* nugárum), *trífles,* átquè *and* trícæ *(génitive,* tricárum), *toys,* caléndæ *(génitive,* calendárum), *the cálends of a month,* quisquíliæ *(génitive,* quisquiliárum), *the sweepings or réfuse of ány thing,* thérmæ *(génitive,* thermárum), *a hot-bath,* cúnæ *(génitive,* cunárum), *a crádle,* díræ *(génitive,* dirárum), *cúrses,* átquè *and* exéquiæ *(génitive,* exequiárum), *fúneral rites,* fériæ *(génitive,* feriárum), *hólidays,* et *and* inferiæ *(génitive,* inferiárum), *sácrifices perfórmed to the dead;* sic *so* átquè *both* primítiæ *(génitive,* primitiárum), *the first fruits of the year,* átquè *and* plágæ *(génitive,* plagárum), *signántes signifying* rétia *(génitive,* rétium), *nets,* et *and* válvæ *(génitive,* valvárum), *fólding-doors,* átquè *and* divítiæ *(génitive,* divitiárum), *riches,* ítèm *also* núptiæ *(génitive,* nuptiárum), *núptials or a márriage,* et *and* láctes *(génitive,* láctium), *the small guts:*—Thébæ *(génitive,* Thebárum), *Thebes,* et *and* Athénæ *(génitive,* Athenárum), *Áthens,* addántur *may be ádded:* quod génus *of which sort* invénias *you may find* et *álso* plúra nómina *more names* locórum *of pláces.*

Hæc neútra (nómina) *these neúter nouns* plurália *of the plúral númber* legúntur *are read* ráriùs *séldom* prímo (número) *in the first, or síngular númber;* mœnia *(génitive,* mœnium), *the walls of a city,* cum *with* tésquis *(the áblative of* tésqua, tesquórum), *rough and désert pláces,* præcórdia *(génitive,* præcordiórum), *the parts aboút the heart, álso, the mídriff or díaphragm,* lústra *(génitive,* lustrórum), *the dens* ferárum *of wild beasts,* árma *(génitive,* armórum), *arms of war,* mapália *(génitive,* mapálium), *Numídian cóttages;* sic *so* bellária *(génitive,* bellariórum), *júnkets;* múnia *(génitive,* muniórum), *an óffice of trust or charge,* cástra *(génitive,* castrórum), *a camp:* fúnus *(génitive,* fúneris), *a fúneral* pétit *requíres* jústa *(génitive,* justórum), *due rites or solémnities,* et *and* vírgo *(génitive,* vírginis), *a vírgin* pétit *requíres* sponsália *(génitive,* sponsaliórum), *espoúsals:* disértus (hómo) *an éloquent man* ámat *loves* róstra *(génitive,* rostrórum), *the púlpit,* átquè *and* púeri *(génitive,* puerórum), *children* géstant *cárry* crepúndia *(génitive,* crepundiórum), *ráttles,* átquè *and* infántes *(génitive,* infántum), *babes or ínfants* cólunt *use* cunábula *(génitive,* cunabulórum), *crádles, that is, lie in crádles:* aúgur *(génitive,* aúguris), *a soóthsayer,* consúlit *consults* éxta

(génitive, extórum) *the éntrails,* et *and* absólvens *finishing his sácrifice* súperis (diis) *to the supérnal gods, that is, to the gods abóve* recántat *chants óver* effáta *(génitive,* effatórum), *their decreés :*—fésta *(génitive,* festórum), *the feasts* deûm *(for* deórum) *of the gods,* ceù *as* Bacchanália *(génitive,* Bacchanáliûm *vèl* Bacchanaliórum), *feasts dédicated to Bácchus,* póterunt *will be áble, that is, will be próper* júngi *to be joíned.* Quod si *and if* léges *you shall read* plúra (nómina) *more nouns or names of the same sort, or description,* lícet (ut) repónas *it is gránted (that) you place them, that is, you may place them* quóquè *álso* hâc clásse *in this rank or class.*

Hæc (nómina) *these nouns* sunt *are* símùl *at one and the same time* et *both* quárti *of the fourth* átquè *and* secúndi fléxûs *of the sécond declénsion :* énìm *for* laúrus *a báy-tree* fácit *makes* genitívo (cásu) *in the génitive case,* laúri *of a báy-tree* et *and* laúrûs *of a báy-tree ;* sîc *so do* quércus *an oak,* pínus, *a píne-tree,* fícus *the word fícus* pro *for* frúctu *the fruit, that is, a fig,* àc *and* (pro) árbore *for the tree as well, that is, a fig-tree :*—sîc *álso* cólus *(génitive,* cóli *vèl* cólûs), *a dístaff,* átquè *and* pénus *(génitive,* péni *vèl* pénûs), *all kinds of víctuals or provísions,* córnus *(génitive,* córni *vèl* córnûs), *quandò* when habétur árbor *it is had or réckoned a tree, that is, when it sígnifies the tree,* námely, *the córnel or wild chérry-tree ;* sîc *so* lácus *(génitive,* láci *vèl* lácûs), *a lake,* átquè *and* dómus *(génitive,* dómi *vèl* dómûs), *a house ;* lícèt *although* hæc (nómina) *these nouns* nèc recúrrant *neíther recúr, that is, are not found* ubíquè *in évery ínstance, or at all times.*

Léges *you will read* quóquè *álso* plúra (nómina) *more nouns* his *than these,* quæ *which* relínquas *you may leave* júre *of right* príscis *to the áncients, that is, which you may well enoúgh leave to the áncients.*

AS IN PRÆSENTI,

OR,

THE RULES FOR VERBS

CONSTRUED.

As in præsénti (témpore) *the terminátion -ās in the sécond pérson singular of the présent tense of a verb* fórmat *forms* perféctum (témpus) in -ā'vī *the préter-pérfect tense in -ávi:* ut *as,* no nās *I swim,* návi; vócito vócitās *I call óften,* vocitávi. Déme *take awáy or excépt* lávo *I wash,* lávi; júvo *I help,* júvi; átquè *and* néxo *I knit,* néxŭi; et *and* séco *I cut,* quod (fácit) *which makes* sécŭi; néco *I kill,* quod (fácit) *which makes* nécŭi; vérbum *the verb* míco *I glítter,* quod (fácit) *which makes* mícŭi; plíco *I fold,* quod (fácit) *which makes* plícŭi; fríco *I rub,* quod *which* dat *gives or makes* frícŭi: sîc *so* dómo *I tame,* quod *which* (fácit) *makes* dómŭi; tóno *I thúnder,* quod (fácit) *which makes* tónŭi; vérbum *the verb* sóno *I sound,* quod (fácit) *which makes* sónŭi *in the préterite tense;* crépo *I crack,* quod (dat) *which gives* crépŭi; véto *I forbid,* quod *which* dat *gives or makes* vétŭi; átquè *and* cúbo *I lie alóng,* cúbŭi: hæc (vérba) *these verbs* rárò formántur *are rárely or séldom fórmed* in -ávi. Do dās *I give* vult *will* formáre *form* rítè *by cústom,* dĕ'di; sto stās *I stand,* stĕ'ti.

Es in præsénti *the terminátion -ēs in the sécond pérson singular of the présent tense of a verb* fórmat *forms* perféctum *the preterpérfect tense* dans -ŭī *(by) giving -ui;* ut *as* nígreo nígres *I grow black,* nígrŭi: éxcipe *excépt* júbeo *I bid,* jússi: sórbeo *I sup up* hábet *has* sórbŭi, quóquè *álso* sórpsi; múlceo *I stroke gently,* múlsi: lúceo *I shine* vult *will have* lúxi; sédeo *I sit,* sédi; átquè *and* vídeo *I see* vult *will have* vídi; sèd *but* prándeo *I dine* (fácit) prándi *makes prándi;* strídeo *I screak,* strídi; suádeo *I advíse,* suási; rídeo *I laugh,* rísi, et *and* árdeo *I am on fire* hábet *hath* ársi.

Príma sýllaba *the first or leáding sýllable* his quátuor

(vérbis) *in these four verbs* ínfrà *belów or* *following* geminátur *is doúbled:* námquè *for* péndeo *I hang* *down* vult *will have* pĕpéndi ; átquè *and* mórdeo *I bite*, mŏmórdi ; spóndeo *I betróthe* vult *will* habére *have* spŏpóndi ; átquè *and* tóndeo *I clip or shear*, tŏtóndi.

Si *if* l vèl r *the létter l or r* stet *stand* ánte *befóre* -gĕŏ, -gĕŏ *the terminátion -geo* vértitur *is chánged* in -si *into -si*: ut *as* úrgeo *I urge*, úrsi: múlgeo *I milk* dat *gives or makes* múlsi, quóquè *álso* múlxi ; frígeo *I am cold*, fríxi ; lúgeo *I mourn*, lúxi ; et *and* aúgeo *I increase or augment* hábet *has* aúxi.

Fléo flēs *I weep* dat *makes* flévi ; léo lēs *I anoint*, lévi ; átquè *and* (vérbum) índè nátum *a verb thence originating, that is, its cómpound* déleo *I wipe out*, delévi ; pléo plēs, *I fill*, plévi ; néo *I spin*, névi.

Mánsi formátur *the preterpérfect tense mánsi is fórmed* à *from* máneo *I tárry;* tórqueo *I twist* vult *will have* tórsi ; háereo *I stick*, háesi.

Veo *the terminátion -veo* fit *is made* -vi: ut *as*, férveo *I am hot*, férvi ; níveo *I wink or béckon*, et *and* (vérbum) sátum *a verb sprung* índè *from thence, that is, its cómpound* con- níveo *I wink* póscit *requíres* -nívi et *and* -níxi ; cíeo *I stir up*, cívi ; átquè *and* víeo *I bind*, viévi.

Ter'tia (conjugátio) *the third conjugátion* formábit *will form* prætéritum (témpus) *the preterpérfect tense* ut *as* mani- féstum *is mánifest or shown* hîc *here.*

Bo *the terminátion -bo* fit *is made* -bi: ut *as* lámbo *I lick*, lámbi: éxcipe *excépt* scríbo *I write*, scrípsi ; et *and* núbo *I marry*, núpsi: antíquum (vérbum) *the áncient or old verb* cúmbo *I lie down* dat *gives or makes* cúbui.

Co *the énding or terminátion -co* fit *is made* -ci: ut *as* vínco *I cónquer or overcóme*, víci: párco *I spare* vult *will have* pepérci et *and* párci: díco *I say*, díxi ; quóquè *álso* dúco *I lead*, dúxi.

Do *the terminátion -do* fit *is made* -di: ut *as* mándo *I eat*, mándi : sèd *but* scíndo *I cut or slash* dat *gives or makes* scĭ́di ; fíndo *I cleave*, fĭ́di ; fúndo *I pour out*, fū́di ; átquè *and* túndo *I pound*, tútŭdi ; péndo *I weigh*, pĕpéndi ; téndo *I bend*, tĕ- téndi ; átquè *and* júnge *join* cádo *I fall*, quod *which* fórmat *forms* cécidi ; cédo *the verb cédo* pro *for* vérbero *I beat,* cécidi ; cédo *the verb cédo* pro *for* discédere *to depárt*, sívè *or* dáre lócum *to give place*, céssi : vádo *I go*, rádo *I shave*,

lǽdo *l hurt*, lúdo *I play*, dívido *I divíde*, trudo *I thrust*, claúdo *I shut*, plaúdo *I clap hands*, ródo *I gnaw*, ex -do *from -do*, sémper *álways* fáciunt -sī *make -si*.

Go *the terminátion -go* fit *is made* -xi ; ut *as* júngo *I join*, júnxi : sèd *but* r *the létter* r ánte *befóre* -go vult *will have* -si ; ut *as* spárgo *I sprinkle*, spársi : légo *I read* fácit *makes* légi ; et *and* ágo *I act*, égi : tángo *I touch* dat *gives or makes* tétigi ; púngo *I prick*, púnxi : átquè *and* púpugi : frángo *I break* dat *gives* frégi ; págo, *the verb págo for* pacíscor *I cóvenant* vult *will have* pépigi ; étiàm *álso* pángo *I fásten*, pégi, sèd *but* úsus *use or cústom* máluit *had ráther* (*form*) pánxi.

Ho *the terminátion -ho* fit *is made* -xi : ceù *as*, tráho *I draw*, tráxi, dócet *shows ;* et *and* vého *I cárry*, véxi.

Lo *the terminátion -lo* fit *is made* -ui : ceù *as* cólo *I till*, cólui :—éxcipe *excépt* psállo *I play on an instrument* cum p *with the létter p*, et *and* sállo *I seáson with salt*, síne p *withóut the létter p*, nàm *for* utrúmque (*vérbum*) *eíther of the two* fórmat tíbi *forms to you* -li, *that is, both of those verbs make* -li *in the preterpérfect tense :* véllo *I pluck* dat *gives* vélli, quóquè *álso* vúlsi : fállo, *I decéive*, fefélli ; céllo *the verb céllo* pro *for* frángo *I break*, céculi ; átquè *and* péllo *I drive awáy*, pépuli.

Mo *the terminátion -mo* fit *is made* -ui ; ceù *as*, vómo *I rómit*, vómui : sèd *but* émo *I buy* fácit *makes* émi : cómo *I deck the hair* pétit *requíres* cómpsi ; prómo *I draw out*, prómpsi : ádjice *add* démo *I take awáy*, quod *which* fórmat *forms* démpsi *in the préterite ;* súmo *I take*, súmpsi ; prémo *I press*, préssi.

No *the terminátion -no* fit *is made* -vi : ceù *as*, síno *I súffer or permít*, sívi :—éxcipe *excépt* témno *I contémn*, témpsi : stérno *I strew*, dat *gíves* strávi ; spérno *I despíse*, sprévi ; líno *I smear óver*, lévi, intérdùm *sómetimes* líni et *and* lívi ; quóquè *álso* cérno *I discérn*, crévi ; gígno *I begét*, póno *I put*, cáno *I sing*, dant *make* génui, pósui, cécini.

Po *the terminátion -po* fit *is made* -psi : ut *as* scálpo *I scratch*, scálpsi :—éxcipe *excépt* rúmpo *I break*, rúpi ; et *and* strépo *I screak*, quod *which* fórmat *forms* strépui ; crépo *I crack*, quod *which* dat *gives* crépui.

Quo *the terminátion -quo* fit *is made* -qui : ut *as* línquo *I leave*, líqui :—démito *take awáy or excépt* cóquo *I cook or dress meat*, cóxi.

Ro *the termination -ro* fit *is made* -vi : ceù *as* séro, pro *for* plánto *I plant* et *and* sémino *I sow*, sévi ; quod (vérbum) *which* (*verb*) signans *signifying* órdino *I set in order* dábit *will give* (*or make*) sémpèr *always* méliùs *rather* sérui ; vérro *I brush* vult *will have* vérri, et *and* vérsi ; úro *I burn*, ússi ; géro *I bear*, géssi ; quéro *I seek*, quæsívi ; téro *I beat or bruise*, trívi ; cúrro *I run*, cucúrri.

So *the termination -so* formábit *will form* -sívi, velutì *as* arcésso *I send for*, incésso *I attáck*, átquè *and* lacésso *I provóke* próbant *prove:* sèd *but* tólle *take away* (*or excépt*) capésso *I take in hand*, quod *which* fácit *makes* capéssi, átquè *and* capessívi ; átquè (tólle) *and* (*excépt*) facésso *I despátch*, facéssi ; et *álso* víso *I go to see*, vísi : sèd *but* pínso *I pound or grind* habébit *will have* pínsui.

Sco *the termination -sco* fit *is made* vi : ut *as* pásco *I feed cáttle*, pávi : pósco *I demánd or require* vult *will have* popósci ; dísco *I learn* vult *wishes* fórmare *to form, that is, forms* dídici : quinísco *I nod the head*, quéxi.

To *the énding or termination -to* fit *is made* -ti : ut *as* vérto *I turn*, vérti : sèd *but* actívum (vérbum) *let the áctive verb* sísto, pro *for* fácio stáre *I make to stand*, notétur *be marked*, nàm *for* dat *it gives* júre *by right* stíti : mítto *I send* dat *gives* mísi ; péto *I ask* vult *will* formáre *form* petívi ; stérto *I snore*, hábet *has* stértui ; méto *I mow*, méssui.

Ex'i *the termination -éxi in the préterite* fit *is made* ab *from* -écto : ut *as* flécto *I bend*, fléxi :—nécto *I knit* dat *gives* néxui, átquè *and* hábet *has* (*álso*) néxi ; étiàm *likewise* pécto *I comb* dat *gives or makes* péxui : hábet *it hath* quóquè *álso* péxi.

Vo *the énding or termination -vo* fit *is made* -vi : ut *as* vólvo *I roll*, vólvi : éxcipe *excépt* vívo *I live*, víxi.

Xo *the énding or termination -xo* fit *is made* -ui : ut *as* téxo *I weave*, quod *which* habébit *will have* téxui, *I wove, or have woven* mónstrat *shows*.

Cio *the termination -cio* fit *is made* -ci : ut *as* fácio *I do or make*, féci ; quóquè *álso* jácio *I cast or throw*, jéci ; antíquum (vérbum) *the old verb* lácio *I allure*, léxi ; quóquè *álso* spécio *I behóld*, spéxi.

Dio *the termination -dio* fit *is made* -di : ut *as* fódio, *I dig*, fódi *I dug, or have dug*.

Gio *the termination -gio* (fit *is made*) -gi : ceù *as* fúgio, *I flee* (fúgi *I fled, or have fled*).

Pio *the terminátion -pio* fit *is made* -pi : ut *as* cápio *I take,* cépi : éxcipe *except* cúpio *I cóvet or desíre,* (cu)pívi ; et *and* rápio *I snatch,* rápui ; sápio *I sávour or taste,* sápui, átquè *and* sapívi.

Rio *the terminátion -rio* fit *is made* -ri : ut *as* pário *I bring forth young,* péperi.

Tio *the terminátion -tio makes* -ssi, géminans s *doúbling the letter s* : ut *as* quátio *I shake,* quássi, quod *which* víx reperítur *is scárcely found* in úsu *in use.*

Déniquè *finally* -uo *the énding or terminátion* -uo fit *is made* -ui : ut *as* státuo *I eréct,* státui : plúo *I rain* fórmat *forms* plúvi, sívè *or* plúi : sèd *but* strúo *I build or pile up* (fácit) *makes* strúxi ; flúo *I flow,* flúxi.

Quar'ta (conjugátio) *the fourth conjugátion* dat -īs *gives or makes* -is, *in the présent tense of the indicátive mood áctive,* -ívi *in the preterpérfect :*—ut *as* scío scis *I know,* scívi, mónstrat tíbi *shows to you :* excípias *you may excépt* vénio *I come* dans *gíving* véni ; et *and* véneo *I am sold,* vénii, raúcio, *I am hoarse,* raúsi : fárcio *I stuff,* fársi ; sárcio *I patch,* sársi ; sépio *I hedge,* sépsi ; séntio *I percéive,* sénsi ; fúlcio *I prop,* fúlsi : ítèm *álso* haúrio *I draw,* dat *gives* haúsi ; sáncio, *I estáblish,* sánxi ; víncio *I bind,* vínxi ; sálio, *the verb sálio,* pro *for* sálto *I leap,* sálui ; et *and* amício *I clothe,* amícui.

Sim'plex (vérbum) *any símple verb* et *and* (súum) compositívum (vérbum) *its cómpound* dat *gives or makes* ídem prætéritum (témpus) *the same preterpérfect tense :* ut *as* dócui *I taught,* edócui, *I taught pérfectly,* mónstrat *shows.* Sed *but* sýllaba *the sýllable* quam *which* símplex (vérbum) *the símple verb* sémpèr *álways* géminat *doúbles* non geminátur *is not doúbled* compósito (vérbo) *in the compoúnd verb :* prætérquàm *excépt* (in) his tríbus (vérbis) *in these three,* præcúrro *I run befóre,* excúrro *I run out,* repúngo *I prick agáin ;* átquè *and* (in vérbis) rítè creátis *in verbs ríghtly fórmed or compoúnded* à *of* do *I give,* dísco *I learn,* sto *I stand,* pósco *I requíre or demánd.*

(Vérbum) compósitum *a verb compoúnded* à *of* plíco *I fold,* cum *with* sub, vèl *or* nómine *a noun,* ut *as* ísta (vérba) *these,* súpplico *I beséech,* multíplico *I múltiply,* gaúdet *delights* formáre *to form, that is, forms* -plicávi : ápplico *I applý,* cómplico *I fold up,* réplico *I fold back, or lay ópen,* et *and* éxplico *I unfóld,* fórmant *make* quóquè *álso* -ui, *in addítion to* -ávi.

Quámvis *althoúgh* símplex (vérbum) *the símple verb* óleo *I smell* vult *will have* ólui, támèn *yet* quódvis compósitum (vérbum) *ány (that is, évery) compoúnd verb* índè *from thence or thereóf* formábit *will form* méliùs *ráther* olévi ; àt *but* rédolet *it casts a scent* séquitur *fóllows* fórmam *the form* símplicis (vérbi) *of the símple verb*, átquè *and* súbolet *it smells a líttle*.

Omnia (vérba) compósita *all the verbs compoúnded* à *of* púngo *I prick* formábunt *will form* -púnxi ; únum (hórum) *one of these*, repúngo *I prick agáin*, vult *will have* (re)púpugi átquè *and* intérdùm *sómetimes* repúnxi.

(Vérbum) nátum *ány verb compoúnded* à *of* do *I give,* quándò *when* est *it is* tértia infléxio *the third infléxion or conjugátion*, ut *as* áddo *I add*, crédo *I beliéve*, édo *I set forth*, dédo *I yield up*, réddo *I restóre*, pérdo *I lose*, ábdo *I put awáy*, vèl *or* óbdo *I set agáinst*, cóndo *I build*, índo *I put in*, trádo *I delíver*, pródo *I betráy*, véndo *I sell*, (dat) *gives or makes* -dĭdī ; àt *but* únum (vérbum ex his vérbis) *one of these*, abscóndo *I hide, makes* abscóndi. (Vérbum) nátum *ány verb sprung or derived* à *from* sto stās, *I stand*, habébit *will have* -stĭti.

Hæc simplícia vérba *these símple or prímitive verbs*, si *if* componántur *they be compoúnded*, mútant *change* prímam vocálem *the first vówel* (et *both*) præséntis (témporis) *of the présent tense*, átquè *and* prætériti (témporis) *of the preterpérfect tense*, in -e *into -e :* dámno *I condémn*, lácto *I súckle*, sácro *I dédicate*, fállo *I decéive*, árceo *I drive awáy*, trácto *I hándle*, fatíscor *I am wéary*, vétus (vérbum) *the old word* cándo *I burn*, cápto *I lie in wait*, jácto *I throw*, pátior *I súffer*, átquè *and* grádior *I step*, pártio *I divíde*, cárpo *I crop or I cull*, pátro *I achíeve or I fínish*, scándo *I climb*, spárgo *I sprínkle ;* átquè *and* pário *I prodúce young*, cújus dúo náta (vérba) *whose two compoúnds* cómperit *he knows for cértain* et *and* réperit *he finds* dant *give or make the preterpérfect tense* per -i *in -i :* sèd *but* cǽtera (vérba índè náta) *the rest* per -ui *in ui ;* vélùt *as* hæc (vérba) *these*, aperíre *to ópen*, operíre *to cóver*.

Hæc dúo compósita (vérba) *let these two cómpounds* à *of* pásco pávi *I feed cáttle*, compésco *I pásture in cómpany or togéther with*, dispésco *I drive from pásture*, noténtur *be nóted* habére *to have, that is, be obsérved as háving* tántùm *ónly* -péscui ; cǽtera *the rest*, ut *as*, epásco *I eat up*, servábunt

will keep or obsérve úsum *the cústom or úsage* símplicis (vérbi)
of the simple verb.

Hæc (vérba) *these verbs,* hábeo, *I have,* láteo *I lie hid,* sálio
I leap, státuo *I eréct,* cádo *I fall,* lédo *I hurt,* et *and* tángo
I touch, átquè *and* cáno *I sing;* sîc *so* quéro *I seek,* cédo
cecídi *I beat,* sîc *álso* égeo *I want,* téneo *I hold fast,* táceo *I
am silent,* sápio *I sávour,* átquè *and* rápio *I snatch,* si *if*
componántur *they be compóunded,* mútant *change* prímam vo-
cálem *the first vówel* in i *into* -i: ut, *as,* rápio *I snatch,* rápui ;
erípio *I take áway by force,* erípui : (verbum) nátum *a verb
sprung or deríved* à *from* cáno *I sing, that is, any compóund*
of cáno, dat *gives or makes* prætéritum *the preterpérfect tense*
per -ui *in ui,* ceù *as* cóncino *I sing in cóncert,* concínui.

Sîc *álso* displíceo *I displéase* à *of* pláceo *I please:* sèd *but*
héc dúo *these two compóund verbs,* complácceo *I please vástly,*
cum *with* perplácceo *I please véry much,* bénè sérvant *well keep,
that is, álways obsérve or fóllow* úsum *the úsage* símplicis
(vérbi) *of the símple verb.*

(Vérba) compósita *verbs compóunded, that is, the cómpounds*
à *of* vérbis *the verbs* cálco *I tread,* sálto *I leap or dance,*
mútant *change* -a per -u *the létter a into* -u; concúlco *I tread
upón,* incúlco *I tread in,* resúlto *I rebóund,* demónstrant *show*
id *that* tíbi *to you.*

(Vérba) compósita *verbs compóunded, that is, the cómpounds*
à *of* claúdo *I shut,* quátio *I shake,* lávo *I wash,* rejíciunt -a
cast áway the létter -a : occlúdo *I shut agáinst,* exclúdo *I
shut out,* à *from* claúdo *I shut,* dócet *teáches or shows* id *this:*
átquè *and* percútio *I strike,* excútio *I strike out,* à *from*
quátio *I shake:* à *from* lávo, *I wash,* (verba) náta *the verbs
deríved, that is, the cómpounds* próluo *I drench,* díluo *I wash
out* (dócent id, *teach or show it.*)

Si *if* compónas *you compóund* (hæc vérba) *these verbs,* ágo
I act, émo *I buy,* sédeo *I sit,* régo, *I rule,* frángo, *I break,*
et *and* cápio *I take,* jácio *I cast,* lácio *I allúre,* spécio *I behóld,*
prémo *I press,* pángo *I fásten,* mútant *they change* síbi *for
themsélves* prímam vocálem *the first vówel* præséntis (tém-
poris) *of the présent tense* in -i *into -i,* núnquàm *néver* præ-
tériti (témporis) *of the preterpérfect tense:* ceù *as of* frángo
I break, refríngo *I break ópen,* refrégi ; incípio *I begín,*
incépi, à *of* cápio *I take:* sèd *but* paúca (vérba) *let a few*
noténtur *be márked,* námquè *for* pérago *I fínish* séquitur

fóllows súum símplex (vérbum) *its own símple verb,* átquè *and* sátago *I am búsy:* átquè *and* dégo *I lead on or pass, or, I live,* ab *from* ágo *I act,* dat *gives* dégi : cógo *I bring togéther,* cöégi ; sîc *so* à *from* régo *I rule,* pérgo *I go fórward* (fácit) *makes* perréxi: quóquè *álso* súrgo *I rise* vult *will have* surréxi, médiâ sýllabâ *the míddle sýllable* præséntis (témporis) *of the présent tense* adémptâ *béing táken awáy.*

Ísta quátuor compósita (vérba) *these four cómpounds* a *of* pángo *I fix or fásten* rétinent -a *keep the* -a *;* depángo *I fix in the ground,* oppángo *I fásten against,* circumpángo *I fásten aboút,* átquè *and* repángo *I fásten agáin.*

Fácio *I make or do* váriat *chánges* nîl *nóthing,* nìsì *unléss* præpósito præeúnte *a prepósition góing befóre it, that is, when it is compóunded with a prepósition:* olfácio *I smell out* dócet *teáches or demónstrates* id *that,* cum *with* calfácio *I make hot,* átquè *and* inficio *I inféct.*

(Vérba) náta *verbs sprung or descénded* à *from* légo *I read, that is, the cómpounds of légo,* re, per, præ, sub, trans, a præeúnte *the prepósitions,* re, per, præ, sub, trans, ad, *góing befóre,* sérvant *keep* vocálem *the vówel* præséntis (témporis) *of the présent tense:* cǽtera (compósita vérba à légo) *the rest of the cómpounds of légo* mútant *change it, námely, the vówel* -e, in -i *ínto i;* de quíbus (compósitis vérbis) *of which* hæc (vérba quæ sequúntur) *these* tántùm *ónly,* intélligo *I understánd,* díligo *I love,* négligo *I negléct,* fáciunt *make* prætéritum (témpus) *their preterpérfect tense* léxi ; ómnia réliqua (compósita vérba à légo) *all the rest,* légi.

Nunc *now* discas *you may learn* formáre *to form* supínum *the súpine* ex prætérito (témpore) *from the preterpérfect tense.*

Bi *the terminátion* -bi súmit *takes* síbi *to itsélf* -tum : námquè *for* sîc *so* bǐbi *I drank* fit *is made* bíbitum.

Ci *the terminátion* -ci fit *is made* -ctum ; ut *as* víci *I cónquered or overcáme,* víctum, testátur *téstifies or shows,* et *and* ici *I smote* dans *máking* íctum ; féci *I made or did,* fáctum ; quóquè *álso* jéci *I threw or cast,* jáctum.

Di *the terminátion* -di fit *is made* -sum ; ut *as* vídi *I saw,* vísum : quædam (supína) *some géminant s dóuble the létter s;* ut *as* pándi *I ópened,* pássum, sédi *I sat,* séssum : ádde *add* scídi *I cut,* quod *which* dat *gives* scíssum ; átquè *and* fídi *I cleft,* físsum ; quóquè *álso* fódi *I dug,* fóssum.

Hic *here* étiàm *álso* advértas *you may mark,* quód *that*

príma sýllaba *the first sýllable*, quam *which* prætéritum (témpus) *the preterpérfect tense* vult *wishes* gemináŕi *to be doúbled, that is, will have doúbled*, non geminátur *is not doúbled* supínis *in thɜ súpines :* átquè id *and this* tŏtóndi *I clípped or shore*, dans *máking* tónsum, dócet *teáches or shows ;* átquè *and* cecídi *I beat*, quod *which* dat *gives* cǽsum ; et *and* cécidi *I fell*, quod *which* (dat *gives*) cásum ; átquè *and* tĕténdi *I bent*, quod *which* (hábet) *has* ténsum et *álso* téntum ; tútudi *I poúnded*, túnsum ; átquè *and* dédi *I gave*, quod *which* júre *by right* póscit *requíres* dátum : átquè *and* mŏmórdi *I bit* vult *will have* mórsum.

Gi *the terminátion -gi* fit *is made* -ctum ; ut *as* légi *I have read*, léctum ; pégi *I fástened* átquè *and* pépigi *I cóvenanted* dant *give or make* páctum ; frégi *I broke*, fráctum ; quóquè *álso* tétigi *I toúched*, táctum ; égi *I ácted*, áctum : púpugi *I prícked*, púnctum ; fúgi *I fled* dat *gives or makes* fúgitum.

Li *the terminátion -li* fit *is made* -sum : ut *as* sálli *the préterite of* sállo, stans *stánding* pro *for* cóndio sále *I seáson with salt*, sálsum ; pépuli *I drove awáy* dat *gives or makes* púlsum ; céculi *I broke*, cúlsum ; átquè *and* fefélli *I deceíved*, fálsum ; vélli *I plúcked* dat *gives* vúlsum ; quóquè *álso* túli *I bore* hábet *has* látum.

Mi, ni, pi, qui, *the terminátions -mi, -ni, -pi, and -qui*, fórmant *form* -tum, vélùt *as* (id est) maniféstum *is mánifest* hîc *here :* émi *I bought*, émptum ; véni *I came*, véntum ; cécini *I sang* à *from* cáno *I síng*, cántum ; cépi *I took* à *from* cápio *I take*, cáptum ; quóquè *álso* cǽₚi *I begán*, cǽptum ; rúpi *I brake or broke* à *from* rúmpo *I break*, rúptum ; quóquè *álso* líqui *I left*, líctum.

Ri *the terminátion -ri* fit *is made* -sum : ut *as* vérri *I brúshed*, vérsum :—éxcipe *excépt* péperi *I brought forth young*, pártum.

Si *the énding -si* fit *is made* -sum : ut *as* vísi *I went to see*, vísum : támèn *but* mísi *I sent* formábit *will form* míssum, s gemináto *the létter s béing doúbled :*—éxcipe *excépt* fúlsi *I própped*, fúltum ; haúsi *I drew*, haústum ; sársi *I pátched*, sártum ; quóquè *álso* fársi *I stúffed*, fártum ; ússi *I burnt*, ústum ; géssi *I cárried or bore*, géstum : tórsi *I wreáthed* requírit *requires or hath* dúo (supína) *two súpines* tórtum, et *and* tórsum ; indúlsi *I indúlged*, indúltum átquè *and* indúlsum.

Psi *the termination* -*psi* fit *is made* -tum : ut *as* scrípsi *I wrote*, scríptum ; quóquè *also* scúlpsi *I engráved*, scúlptum.

Ti *the termination* -*ti* fit *is made* -tum : námquè *for* stéti *the préterite* stéti à *from* sto *I stand*, átquè *and* stíti *the préterite* stíti à *from* sísto *I make to stand*, ámbo *both* rítè *by right* dant *give* státum : támèn *but* éxcipe *except* vérti *I túrned*, vérsum.

Vi *the termination* -*vi* fit *is made* -tum : ut *as* flávi *I blew*, flátum : éxcipe *except* pávi *I fed cáttle*, pástum : lávi *I wáshed* dat *gives* lótum, intérdùm *sómetimes* laútum, átquè *and* lavátum ; potávi *I drank* fácit *makes* pótum, intérdùm *sómetimes* et *álso* potátum : sèd *but* fávi *I fávoured* (fácit) *makes* faútum ; cávi *I bewáred or I took care*, caútum. A *from* séro sévi *I sow* rítè fórmes *you may ríghtly form* sátum : lívi *I besmeáred* átquè *and* líni *I besmeáred* dant *give* lítum ; sólvi *I loósened* à *from* sólvo *I loósen*, solútum ; vólvi *I rólled* à *from* vólvo *I roll*, volútum : singultívi *I sóbbed* vult *will have* singúltum : véneo, vénis, vénivi *I am sold*, vénum ; sepelívi *I búried*, rítè *by right*, sepúltum.

(Vérbum) quod *a verb that* dat *gives or makes* -ui dat *gives or makes* -ítum : ut *as* dómui *I támed*, dómitum : éxcipe *except* quódvis vérbum *what verb you like, that is, évery verb* in -uo *ending in* -*uo*, quía *becaúse* sémpèr formábit *it* (*námely, ány verb of that* termination) *will álways fórm* -ui in -útum -*ui into útum* ; ut *as* éxui *I put off*, exútum : déme *take awáy or except* rúi, à *from* rúo *I rush*, dans *máking* rúitum : sécui *I cut* vult *will have* séctum ; nécui *I slew*, néctum ; átquè *and* frícui *I rúbbed*, fríctum ; ítèm *álso* míscui *I mingled*, místum : átquè *and* amícui *I clóthed* dat *gives* amíctum : tórrui *I roásted* hábet *has* tóstum ; dócui *I taught*, dóctum ; átquè *and* ténui *I held*, téntum ; consúlui *I consúlted*, consúltum ; álui *I noúrished or fed*, áltum, átquè *and* álitum : sîc *so* sálui *I leáped*, sáltum ; cólui *I tílled*, quóquè *álso* occúlui *I hid*, cúltum ; pínsui *I poúnded or ground* hábet *has* pístum ; rápui *I snátched*, ráptum ; átquè *and* sérui *I have set in órder*, à *from* séro *I set in órder*, vult *will have* sértum :—sîc *so* quóquè *álso* téxui *I wove* hábet *has* téxtum.

Sèd *but* hæc (vérba) *these verbs* mútant *change* -ui in -sum -*ui into* -*sum* : nàm *for* cénseo *I judge* hábet *hath* cénsum ; céllui *I broke*, célsum : méto méssui *I reap* hábet *has* quóquè

álso méssum : ítèm *likewise* néxui, *I knitted* hábet *has* néxum, sîc *so* quóquè *álso* péxui *I cómbed*, péxum.

Xi *the terminátion* -xi fit *is made* -ctum : ut *as* vínxi *I bound*, vínctum : quínque (vérba) *five verbs* abjíciunt n *cast away the létter n ;* ut *as* fínxi *I fórmed or fáshioned* fíctum ; mínxi *I made wáter*, míctum ; ádjice *add* pínxi *I painted* dans *giving* píctum ; strínxi *I strípped or réndered bare*, stríctum ; quóquè *álso* rínxi *I grínned*, ríctum. Fléxi *I bent*, pléxi, *I twísted*, fíxi *I fástened*, dant *give or make* -xum ; et *and* flúo *I flow*, flúxum.

Quódquè compósitum supínum *évery cómpound súpine* formátur *is fórmed* ut *as* (súum) símplex (supínum) *its own símple súpine*, quámvìs *though* éadem sýllaba *the same sýllable* non stet *may not stand, that is, does not continue* sémpèr *álways* utríque (supíno) *to either súpine of the two, that is, to them both*. (Vérba) compósita *verbs compoúnded* à of túnsum *to pound, that is, the cómpounds of túnsum,* n démptâ *the létter n béing táken awáy,* (fáciunt) *make* -túsum : (vérbum compó-situm) *áiny cómpound* à *of* rúitum *to rush,* médiâ i *the míddle létter i* démptâ *béing táken awáy,* fit *is made* -rútum ; et *and* quóquè *álso* à *of* sáltum *to leap,* súltum. (Vérba) compósita *the cómpounds* à *of or from* séro *I sow* quándò *whenéver* fór-mat *it forms* sátum dant *give or make* -sĭtum.

Hæc (supína) *these súpines* cáptum *to take,* fáctum *to do,* jáctum *to cast or throw,* ráptum *to snatch,* mútant -a *per* -e *change* -a *into* -e ; et *and* cántum *to sing,* pártum *to bring forth young,* spársum *to sprínkle,* cárptum *to crop or cull,* quóquè *álso* fártum *to stuff.*

Vérbum *the verb* édo *I eat,* compósitum *compoúnded, that is, when it is compoúnded,* non fácit *makes not* -éstum, sèd *but* -ésum : únum (vérbum compósitum ab édo) *one of its cómpounds* duntáxat *ónly* cómedo *I eat up,* formábit *will form* utrúmque *either one or the óther, that is, both* -ésum *and* -éstum.

A *from* nósco *I know* (hæc) dúo (compósita vérba) *these two cómpounds* tántùm *ónly* cógnitum *to know* et *and* ágnitum *to know agáin or to recognise* habéntur *are had or are found ;* cǽtera (compósita vérba à nósco) *the rest* dant *give or make* nótum :—nóscitum *the súpine nóscitum* jàm *now* est *is* in núllo úsu *in no use, that is, such súpine is not now in use.*

VER'BA *in* -or *verbs énding in* -or admíttunt *admit or take*

prætéritum (témpus) *their preterpérfect tense* ex posterióre
supíno *from the látter (or sécond) súpine,* -u vérso *the final
-u béing túrned* per -us *into* -us, et *and* sum vèl fúi *the
auxíliary, sum or fúi,* consociáto *béing línked or joíned with
it, that is, béing ádded to the new terminátion ;* ut *as* à *from
or of* léctu *to be read* (formátur) *is fórmed* léctus sum vèl fúi
I have been read. At *but* hórum (verbórum) *of these verbs*
nùnc *sómetimes* est *there is* depónens (vérbum) *a verb depó-
nent,* nùnc *at óther times est there is* commúne (vérbum) *a
cómmon verb* notándum *to be nóted or obsérved :* nàm *for*
lábor *I glide or slíde* dat *gives* lápsus ; pátior *I súffer,* pássus,
et *and* (vérba) náta éjus *verbs sprung from it, that is, its
cómpounds,* ut *as,* compátior *I súffer togéther with,* fórmans
compássus *fórming compássus,* átquè *and* perpétior *I endúre*
(fórmans *fórming*) perpéssus : fáteor *I own or conféss* dat
gives fássus, et *and* (vérba) náta índe *ány verbs originating
from thence, that is, all its cómpounds ;* ut *as* confíteor *I
conféss or acknówledge,* fórmans *fórming* conféssus ; átquè
and diffíteor *I dený or disavów* (fórmans *fórming*) difféssus :—
grádior *I step* dat *gives or makes* gréssus, et *and* (vérba)
náta índe *ány verbs originating from thence, that is, its cóm-
pounds ;* ut *as* digrédior *I step asíde,* digréssus : júnge *join*
fatíscor *I am wéary,* féssus sum ; métior *I mete or méasure,*
ménsus sum ; et *and* útor *I use,* úsus.

Ordior *the verb órdior* pro *for* téxo *I weave* dat *gives or
makes* ordítus, pro *for* incépto *I begín,* órsus ; nítor *I strive*
(fácit *makes*) nísus, vèl *or* níxus sum ; et *and* ulcíscor *I
avénge or I revénge ,* últus : símùl *álso* iráscor *I am ángry,*
irátus ; átquè *and* réor *I think or I suppóse,* rátus sum ;
oblivíscor *I forgét,* vult *will have* oblítus sum ; frúor *I enjóy,*
óptat *wishes or chóoses* frúctus, vèl *or* frúitus : júnge *join or
add* miseréri *to have píty,* misértus.

Túor *I see,* et *and* túeor *I defénd,* non vult *wishes not,
that is, will not have* tútus, sèd *but* túitus sum : ádde *add*
locútus, à *from or of* lóquor *I speak ;* et *and* ádde *add* secútus,
à *of or from* séquor *I fóllow.*

Expérior *I try,* fácit *makes* expértus ; pacíscor *I cóvenant
or bárgain,* gaúdet *delights* formáre *to form, that is, will form*
páctus sum ; nancíscor *I get,* náctus ; apíscor *I obtaín,* quod
which est *is* vétus vérbum *an old verb,* áptus sum ; úndè *from
whence* adipíscor *I get,* adéptus.

Júnge *join or add* quéror *I complain*, quéstus ; júnge *join or add* proficíscor *I go*, proféctus ; expergíscor *I awáke*, experréctus sum ; et *and* quóquè *álso* hæc (vérba) *these verbs*, commíníscor *I devíse*, comméntus ; náscor *I am born*, nátus ; átquè *and* mórior *I die*, mórtuus ; átquè *and* órior *I rise*, quod *which* fácit *makes* prætéritum (témpus) *its preterpér-fect tense*, órtus.

Hæc (vérba) *these verbs* hábent *have* prætéritum (témpus) *a preterpérfect tense* actívæ (vócis) *of the áctive*, et *and* passívæ vócis *of the pássive voice* : cǽno *I sup*, fórmat tíbi *forms to you* cœnávi *I súpped*, et *and* cœnátus sum *I súpped ;* júro *I swear*, jurávi, et *and* jurátus ; átquè *and* póto *I drink*, potávi *I drank*, et *and* pótus ; títubo *I stúmble*, titubávi *I stúmbled*, vèl *or* titubátus.

Prándeo *I dine* dat *gives* prándi, et *and* pránsus sum, pláceo *I please*, plácui, et *and* plácitus : suésco *I accústom*, vult *will have* suévi, átquè *and* suétus.

Núbo *I márry* (hábet *has*) núpsi, átquè *and* álso núpta sum ; mércor *I desérve*, méritus sum, vèl *or* mérui : ádde *add* líbet *it pléases*, líbuit, líbitum ; et *and* ádde *add* lícet *it is allówed, or it is láwful*, quod *which* (fácit) *makes* lícuit, líci-tum ; tǽdet *it weáries*, quod *which* dat *gives or makes* tǽduit, et *and* pertǽsum : ádde *add* púdet *it ashámes or it ashámeth*, fáciens *máking* púduit, átquè *and* púditum ; átquè *and* píget *it irks or grieves*, quod *which* fórmat tíbi *forms for you* piguit *it irked*, átquè *and* pígitum, *it írked*.

Neútro-pássívum (vérbum) *a neúter-pássive verb* fórmat tíbi *forms for you* prætéritum (témpus) *its preterpérfect tense* sîc *thus, or in the mánner fóllowing ;* gaúdeo *I am glad*, gavísus sum ; fído *I trust*, físus ; et *and* aúdeo *I dare*, aúsus sum ; fío *I becóme or am made*, fáctus ; sóleo *I am wont*, sólitus sum.

(Hæc vérba) fúgiunt *these verbs flee or avóid* prætéritum (témpus) *a preterpérfect tense, that is, want the préterite :* vérgo *I verge or bend*, ámbigo *I doubt*, glísco *I spread*, fatísco *I chink*, pólleo I *am válid or pówerful*, nídeo *I shine :* ad hæc (vérba) *to these* (áddas *you may add*) inceptíva (vérba) *incéptive verbs ;* ut *as* puerásco *I verge tówards chíldhood :* — et *and* passíva (vérba) *pássive verbs*, quíbus *in which* actíva (vérba) *the áctives* caruêre *wánted, that is, of which the áctive voices want* supínis *the súpines ;* ut *as* métuor *I am dréaded*,

tímeor, *I am feáred :* (ádde *add*) ómnia meditatíva (vérba) *all méditative or desíderative verbs,* præter *excépt* partúrio *I am in lábour or childbirth,* esúrio *I am húngry;* quæ dúo (vérba) *which two verbs* sérvant *keep* prætéritum (témpus) *the preter-pérfect tense.*

Hæc vérba *these vèrbs* ráro *séldom* aut *or* núnquàm *néver* rctinébunt *will retaín or keep, that is, will have* supínum *a súpine;* lámbo *I lick,* míco mícui *I glítter,* rúdo *I bray,* scábo *I claw,* párco pĕpérci *I spare,* dispésco *I drive from pásture,* pósco *I requíre or I demánd,* dísco *I learn,* compésco *I restraín,* quinísco *I nod the head,* dégo *I lead on or pass,* ángo *I throttle,* súgo *I suck,* língo *I lick,* níngo *I snow,* átquè *and* sátago *I am búsy,* psállo *I play on an instrument,* vólo *I am willing,* nólo *I am unwilling,* málo *I am more willing or would ráther,* trémo *I trémble,* strídeo, strído, *I screak,* fláveo *I am yéllow,* líveo *I am black and blue,* ávet *he cóvets,* páveo *I dread,* conníveo *I connive with or wink at,* férvet *it is hot.*

(Vérbum) compósitum *a verb compoúnded* à *of* núo *I nod;* ut *as* rénuo *I refúse :* à *of* cádo *I fall ;* ut *as* áccido *I fall upón,* præter *excépt* óccido *I fall down,* quod *which* fácit *makes* occásum, átque *and* récido *I fall back,* recásum: réspuo *I refúse,* línquo, *I leave,* lúo *I pay,* métuo *I fear,* clúo *I shine or am fámous,* frígeo *I am cold,* cálveo *I am bald,* et *and* stérto *I snore,* tímeo *I fear:* sîc *so* lúceo *I shine ;* et *and* árceo *I repél or drive awáy,* cújus *whereóf (or of which verb)* compósita (vérba) *the cómpounds* hábent *have* -ércitum :—sîc *so* (vérba) náta *verbs sprung or derived* à *from* grúo *I cry like a crane,* ut *as,* íngruo *I inváde :* et *and* quæcúmque neútra (vérba) *whatsoéver neúters* secúndæ (conjugatiónis) *of the sécond conjugátion* formántur *are fórmed* in -ui : excípias *you may excépt* óleo *I smell,* dóleo *I am in pain or I grieve,* pláceo *I please,* átquè, *and* tácco *I am silent,* párco *I obéy ;* ítem *álso* cáreo *I want,* nóceo *I hurt,* jácco *I lie exténded,* átquè *and* láteo *I am hid or concealed,* et *also* váleo *I am well or in health,* cáleo *I am hot :* námquè *for* hæc (vérba) *these verbs* gaúdent *delíght* supíno *in a súpine, that is, these verbs have one súpine.*

SYNTAXIS,

or,

THE RULES OF GRAMMAR

CONSTRUED.

PERSONÁLE vérbum *a personal verb or a verb personal,*
that is, a verb which has different persons concórdat *agreés*
cum *with* nominatívo (cásu) *its nominative case* número *in*
number et *and* persónâ *in person*: ut *as*, vía *the way* ad *to*
bónos móres *good manners* est *is* núnquàm séra *never (too) late.*

Nominatívus (cásus) *the nominative case* pronóminum *of*
pronouns ráró exprímitur *is seldom expressed* nísì *unless*
grátiâ *for the sake* distinctiónis *of distinction*, aùt *or* émphasis
of energy of expression: ut *as*, vos *ye* damnâstis *(for* dam-
navístis) *have condémned (me)*; quásì *as though* dícat *he*
should say, némo prætéreà *no one else.* Tu *thou* es *art* pa-
trónus *our patron*, tu *thou* párens *our father*, (*literally*, *pa-*
rent,) si *if* tu *thou* déseris *forsáke us* periïmus (*for* perívimus)
we perish (*literally*, *we have perished*), or *are undóne ;*
quásì *as though* dícat *he should say*, tu *thou* es patrónus *art*
our pátron præcípuè *chiefly or in an espécial mánner*, et *and*
præ *before* áliis (*all*) *óthers.* (Ílle) fértur *he is repórted* de-
signâsse (*for* designavísse) *to have committed* (*literally*, *to*
have plótted or márked out) atrócia flagítia *atrócious víllanies,*
that is, hórrid crímes.

Aliquándò *sómetimes* orátio *a séntence* est *is* nominatívus
(cásus) *the nóminative case* vérbo *to a verb*: ut, *as* dìdicísse
to have learnt ingénuas ártes *the ingénuous arts, that is, the*
liberal sciences fidélitèr *faithfully or thóroughly* emóllit *sóftens*
much móres *the mánners,* nèc *nor* sínit (éos) *súffers them* ésse
to be féros *brútal or rude.*

Aliquándò *sómetimes* advérbium *an ádverb* cum *with* geni-

tìvo (cásu) *a génitive case* (est nominatívus cásus vérbo *is the
nóminative to a vérb) :*—ut *as*, pártìm virórum *part of the
men* cecidérunt *fell, that is, were killed or slain* in béllo *in war
or the war*.

VÉRBA *verbs* infinitívi módi *of the infinitive mood* fre-
quénter *frequently or óftentimes* státuunt *set* ánte se *befóre
them* accusatívum (cásum) *an accúsative case* pro *for or in-
steád of* nominatívo (cásu) *a nóminative*, conjunctióne *the con-
júnction* quòd *that* vèl or ut *to the end that* omíssâ *béing
omitted or left out :* ut *as*, gaúdeo *I rejóice or I am glad* te
that thou rediísse (*for* redivísse) *have retúrned, that is, art re-
túrned* incólumem *safe*.

Vérbum *a verb* pósitum *pláced* inter *betweén* dúos nomina-
tívos (cásus) *two nóminative cáses* diversórum numerórum *of
dífferent númbers* pótest *can or may* concordáre *agreé* cum *with*
alterútro (illórum) *éither one of them :* ut *as*, íræ *the quárrels
(literally, ángers)* amántium *of lóvers (literally, of pérsons
lóving)* est *is* integrátio *the renéwal* amóris *of love*. Péctus
(*her*) *breast* quóquè *álso* fíunt *becómes* róbora *oak (liter-
ally, oaks)*.

Nómen *a noun* multitúdinis *of múltitude* singuláre *síngular,
that is, ány colléctive noun of the singular númber*, júngitur *is
joíned* quandóque *sómetimes* pluráli vérbo *to a plúral verb :*
ut *as*, pars *part (of them)* abiêre (*for* abivêre) *have gone, that
is, are gone awáy*. Utérque *each or both of the two* deludún-
tur *are delúded or beguíled* dólis *with tricks, that is, are gúlled
by decéptions*.

Impersonália (vérba) *impérsonal verbs* non hábent *have not*
nominatívum (cásum) *ány nóminative* enunciátum *expréssed
(in Látin) :*—ut, *as*, tǽdet me *it wearies me, that is, I am
weáry or tíred* vítæ *of life*. Est *it is* pertǽsum *altogéther
weárisome, that is, I am quite tíred or síck* conjúgii *of wédlock*.

ADJECTÍVA *ádjectives*, particípia *párticiples*, et *and* pronó-
mina *prónouns* concórdant *agreé* cum substantívo *with their
súbstantive*, génere *in génder*, número *in númber*, et *and* cásu
in case :—ut *as*, rára ávis *a scarce or an uncómmon bird* in
térris *in the lands, that is, in the world*, átquè *and* simíllima
very (*much*) *like únto* nígro cýcno *a black swan*.

Aliquándò *sómetimes* orátio *a séntence* súpplet *súpplies* lócum
the place substantívi *of a súbstantive*, adjectívo *the ádjective*
pósito *being put* in neútro génere *in the neúter génder :*—ut *as*,

audíto *it béing heard, or it háving been heard*, régem *that the king* profícisci *was set out* Dorobérniam *for Dóver*.

RELATÍVUM *the rélative* concórdat *agreés* cum *with* antecedénte *its antecédent*, génere *in génder*, número *in númber*, et *and* persónâ *in pérson:*—ut *as*, quis *who* est *is* bónus vir *a good man?* (Vir) qui *the man who* sérvat *keeps* consúlta *the decreés* pátrum *of the fáthers or sénators*, (vir) qui *the man who* (sérvat) *keeps* léges *the laws* átquè *and* júra *the órdinances or rites*.

Aliquándò *sómetimes* orátio *a séntence* pónitur *is put* pro *for* antecedénte *the antecédent:*—ut *as*, véni *I came* ad éam *to her* in témpore *in time or in seáson*, quod (negótium) *which* est *is* prímum (negótium) *the first or main thing* ómnium rérum *of all things, that is, the chief búsiness or concérn of all*.

Relatívum *a rélative* collocátum *pláced* ínter *betweén* dúo substantíva *two súbstantives* diversórum génerum *of dífferent génders* et *and* (diversórum) numerórum *(of dífferent) númbers* concórdat *agreés* intérdùm *at times* cum *with* posterióre (substantívo) *the látter (súbstantive):*—ut *as*, hómines *men* tuéntur *regárd* íllum glóbum *that globe* quæ *which* dícitur *is cálled* térra *the earth*.

Aliquándò *sómetimes* relatívum *the rélative* concórdat *agreés* cum *with* primitívo (nómine) *the primitive noun*, quod *which* subaúditur *is understoód* in possessívo (nómine) *in the posséssive:*—ut *as*, ómnes (hómines) *all men* (cœpérunt) dícere *begán to say* ómnia bóna (vérba) *all good or hópeful words*, et *and* laudáre *to praise or to extól* méas fortúnas *my lúcky stars or good fórtune* qui habérem *who had* gnátum *a son* prǽditum *endúed* táli ingénio *with such a disposítion*.

Si *if* nominatívus (cásus) *a nóminative case* interpónátur *be put betweén* relatívo *the rélative* et *and* vérbo *the verb*, relatívum *the rélative* régitur *is góverned* à *by* vérbo *the verb*, aút *or* ab áliâ dictióne *by some óther word* quæ *which* locátur *is pláced* in oratióne *in the séntence*, cum vérbo *with the verb:*—ut *as*, grátia *fávour* ábest *is wánting, thát is, thanks are lost* ab offício *in a kíndness* quod *which* móra *báckwardness* tárdat *retárds,—that is, which tárdiness or deláy keeps back*. Cújus númen *whose divínity or divine will and présence* adóro *I adóre*.

Quúm *when* dúo substantíva *two súbstantives* divérsæ signi-

ficatiónis *of a different significátion* concúrrunt *meet togéther,*
postérius (substantívum) *the látter (súbstantive)* pónitur *is
put* in genitívo (cásu) *in the génitive case :* ut *as,* ámor *the
love or the liking* númmi *of móney* créscit *incréases* quántùm
as much as pecúnia ípsa *the móney itsélf* créscit *incréases.*

Hic genitívus (cásus) *this génitive case* aliquándò *at times*
vértitur *is chánged* in datívum (cásum) *into the dátive :*—ut
as (ílle) est *he is* páter *a fáther* úrbi *to the city,* átquè *and*
marítus *a húsband* úrbi *to the city ; that is, he is the fáther
and húsband of the city.*

Adjectívum *an ádjective* in neútro génere *in or of the neúter
génder* pósitum *put* sine substantívo *withoút a súbstantive,*
póstulat *requíres* aliquándò *sómetimes* genitívum (cásum) *a
génitive case :*—ut *as,* paúlulum pecúniæ *véry líttle of móney,
that is, véry líttle móney.*

Intérdùm *sómetimes* genitívus (cásus) *the génitive case*
pónitur tántùm *is set alóne,* prióre substantívo *the fórmer
súbstantive of the two* subaudíto *béing understoód* per ellípsin
by the figure ellípsis : ut *as,* úbi *when* véneris *you shall have
come, that is, when you are come* ad Diánæ *to Diána's* íto
turn ad déxtram (mánum) *to the right hand :* subaúdi *under-
stánd* témplum *témple ; that is, when you cóme to the témple
of Diána, turn to the right.*

Dúo substantíva *two súbstantives* ejúsdem réi *of the same
thing, that is, respécting the same affáir,* ponúntur *are put or
pláced* in eódem cásu *in the same case :*—ut *as,* ópes ríches,
irritaménta* malórum *the incéntives of évils or of vice,* effodiúntur
are dug out (of the earth).

Laus *praise,* vitupérium *dispraise,* vèl *or* quálitas *the
quálity* réi *of a thing,* pónitur *is put* in ablatívo (cásu) *in the
áblative case,* étiam *also* genitívo (cásu) *in the génitive case :*
—ut *as,* púer *a boy* ingénui vúltûs *of an ingénuous coúnte-
nance or áspect,* átquè *and* ingénui pudóris *of an ingénuous
báshfulness or módesty.* Vir *a man* núllâ fíde *of no fidélity
or intégrity, that is, a man of no hónesty or príncíple.*

O'pus *need or needfulness* et *and* úsus *use or occásion* éxi-
gunt *require* ablatívum (cásum) *an áblative case :*—ut *as,*
ópus est nóbis *there is need to us, that is, we have need* túâ
auctoritáte *of your authority.* Non accépit *he received not,
that is, he would not receive* pecúniam *móney* ab iis *from them,*
quâ (pecúniâ) *of which, (námely, móney,)* ésset *there could be*

L 2

or there was níhil úsûs *nóthing of occásion, that is, no need*
síbi únto him : *in óther words, of which he had no need, or
for which he had no occásion.*

Aútèm *but* ópus *the word* ópus vidétur *seems* quandóquè
sómetimes póni *to be put* adjectívè *adjectively* pro *for* necessá-
rius *nécessary* :—ut *as,* dux *a leáder* et *and* aúctor *an advíser*
est *is* ópus *nécessary* nóbis *for us.*

Adjectíva *ádjectives* quæ *which* signíficant *signify* dēsidé-
rium *desire,* nótitiam *knówledge,* mĕmóriam *mémory,* tĭmórem
fear, átquè *and* contrária *things cóntrary, that is, the cóntra-
ries or ópposites* iis *to these,* éxigunt *require* genitívum (cásum)
a génitive case : ut *as,* natúra *the náture* hóminum *of men,
that is, of mánkind,* est *is* ávida *fond* nŏvitátis *of nóvelty.*
Mens *a mind* præscia *préscient or foreknówing* futúri *of the
future or of that which is to come.* Esto *be thou* mémor
míndful brévis ǽvi *of the short age, that is, of the shórtness of
life.* Ímmemor *unmíndful* benefícii *of a kíndness.* Imperítus
rérum *unskílled of things, that is, unacquáinted with the world.*
Rúdis bélli *rude or aúkward of war, that is, ígnorant of wár-
fare.* Tímidus deórum *féarful of the gods.* Impávidus súi
féarless of himsélf. Cum plúrimis áliis (adjectívis) *with mány
óther ádjectives* quæ *which* dénŏtant *denóte or decláre* affec-
tiónem *afféction or pássion* ánimi *of mind.*

Verbália adjectíva *vérbal ádjectives, that is, ádjectives
deríved from verbs,* in -ax énding in -ax, étiàm *likewise* éxi-
gunt *require* genitívum (cásum) *a génitive case :*—ut *as,*
aúdax ingénii *bold of dispósition, that is, bold by náture*
Témpus *time* édax *consúmptive* rérum *of things ; meáning,
time is the éater or consúmer of all things.*

Partitíva nómina *pártitive nouns,* numerália (nómina)
númerals or nouns of númber, comparatíva (nómina) *com-
páratives or nouns of the compárative degreé,* et *and* super-
latíva (nómina) *supérlatives,* et *álso* quǽdam adjectíva *cértain
ádjectives* pósita *put* partitívè *pártitively* éxigunt *require*
genitívum (cásum) *a génitive case* à quo (genitívo cásu) *from
which génitive (that is, from the noun which they requíre to
be in the génitive case)* et mutuántur *they álso bórrow* génus
their own génder.—ut *as,* áccipe *take* útrum hórum *which of
these two* mávis *you would ráther.* Rómulus fúit *Rómulus
was* prímus (rex) *the first* Romanórum régum *of the Róman
kings.* Déxtra (mánus) *the right* est *is* fórtior (mánus) *the*

strónger mánuum *of the hands.* Médius (dígitus) *the míddle finger* est *is* longíssimus (dígitus) *the lóngest* digitórum *of the fingers.* Sáncte (déus) deórum *O hóly of gods, that is, O sácred déity,* séquimur te *we follow thee.*

Aútem *but* (hæc nómina) usurpántur *they are usúrped or úsed* et *álso* cum *with* his præpositiónibus *these prepositions* à, ab, de, è, ex, ínter, ánte :—ut *as,* tértius *the third* ab Ænéâ *from Ænéas.* Sólus *the ónly one* de súperis *of the gods abóve.* Álter *one* è vóbis *of you (two)* es *art* déus *a god.* Prímus *the first* ínter *amóng* ómnes *all.* Prímus *the first* ánte ómnes *befóre all.*

Secúndus *the ádjective secúndus (signifýing, sécond or inférior to)* aliquándò *sómetimes* éxigit *requíres* datívum (cásum) *a dátive case :—*ut *as,* haùd secúndus *not inférior or sécond* úlli *to any one* véterum *of the áncients* virtúte *in válour.*

Interrogatívum *an interrógative* et *and* redditívum éjus *its rédditive or respóndent, that is, the word that ánswers to it* érunt *will be, that is, must be* ejúsdem cásûs *of the same case* et *and* (ejúsdem) témporis (*of the same*) *tense,* nísi *unléss or excépt* vóces *words* váriæ constructiónis *of a dífferent constrúction* adhibeántur *be adhíbited or made use of :—*ut *as,* quárum rérum *of what things* est *is there* núlla satíetas *no satíety or fúlness ?* Dīvĭtĭárum *of ríches.* Ně *whéther* accúsas *do you accúse (me)* fúrti *of theft,* àn *or* homicídii *of hómicide or múrder ?* Utróque *of both, námely, of theft and of múrder.*

Adjectíva *ádjectives* quibus *by which* cómmodum *advántage,* incómmodum *disadvantage,* similitúdo *líkeness,* dissimilitúdo *únlikeness,* volúptas *pleásure,* submíssio *submíssion,* aùt *or* relátio *relátion* ad áliquid (negótium) *to ány thing* significátur *is signified,* póstulant *require* datívum (cásum) *a dátive case :* ut *as,* si *if* fácis *you do (or take care)* ut *that* sit *he be* idóneus *sérviceable* pátriæ *to his cóuntry,* útilis *úseful* ágris *únto the lands.* Túrba *a crowd, or múltitude,* grávis *troublesome* páci *to the peace,* átquè *and* inimíca *hóstile or avérse* plácidæ quiéti *to plácid ease, that is, to unrúffled tranquíllity or quíetness.* Símilis *like* pátri *his fáther.* Cólor *the cólour* qui *which* érat *was* álbus *white* est *is* nùnc *now* contrárius *cóntrary or revérse* álbo *to white.* Jucúndus *pleásant or delightful* amícis *to his friends.* Súpplex *súppliant or submíssive* ómnibus (homínibus) *to all.* Pöéta *a póet* est *is* finítimus *véry near akín* oratóri *to an órator.*

Hùc *hither* referúntur *are referred* nómina *nouns* compósita *compounded* ex præpositióne con (pro cum) *of the preposition con (for* cum):—ut *as,* contubernális *a cómrade or one of the same class,* commílito *a féllow-sóldier,* consérvus, *a fellow-sérvant,* cognátus *a kínsman by birth.*

Quǽdam (adjectíva) *some* ex his (adjectívis) *of these,* quæ *which* significant *signify* similitúdinem *likeness,* jungúntur *are joined* étiam *also* genitívo (cásui) *to a génitive case:* ut *as,* (hómo) quem *he whom* métuis *you fear* érat *was* par *the módel or ímage* hújus *of this man, that is, he was like this man in size and appeárance.* Es *you are* símilis *the like* dómini *of your máster, that is, you resémble your máster.*

Commúnis *cómmon,* aliénus *strange or fóreign,* immúnis, *free,* junguntur *are joined* genitívo (cásui) *to a génitive case,* datívo (cásui) *to a dátive;* et *also* ablatívo (cásui) *to an áblative* cum *with* præpositióne *a preposítion:* ut *as,* est *it is* commúne *a cómmon próperty* ómnium animántium *of all líving creátures, that is, it is cómmon to all ánimals.* Mors *death* est *is* commúnis *cómmon* ómnibus (animálibus) *to all.* Hoc (negótium) *this* est *is* commúne *cómmon* míhi *to me* cum te *with thee, that is, cómmon to you and me.* Non aliéna *not unfít for* consílii *the desígn.* Aliénus ambitióni (*a man*) *strange to ambition, that is, an énemy or a stránger to ambition.* Non aliénus *not avérse a from* stúdiis *the stúdies, that is, to the stúdies* Scǽvolæ *of Scǽvola.* Dábitur *it shall be given or gránted* vóbis *to you* ésse *to be* immúnibus *free* hújus máli *of this míschief, that is, exémpt from this calámity.* Caprifícus *the wild fig-tree* est *is* immúnis *free* ómnibus *to all.* (Nos) súmus *we are* immúnes *free* ab íllis mális *from those évils.*

Nátus *born,* cómmodus *convénient,* incómmodus *inconvénient,* útilis *úseful,* inútilis *úseless or unsérviceable,* véhemens *eárnest,* áptus *fit,* cum *with* múltis áliis (adjectívis) *mány óther ádjectives,* junguntur *are joined* intérdùm sómetimes étiam *likewise* accusatívo (cásui) *to an accúsative case* cum *with* præpositióne *a preposítion:*—ut *as,* nátus *born* ad glóriam *to or for glóry.* Útilis *úseful or prófitable* ad éam rem *to that affáir or púrpose.*

Verbália (adjectíva) *vérbal ádjectives, or ádjectives derived from verbs* (finíta) in -bílis *énding in -bilis* accépta *táken* passívè *pássively,* et *also* participiália (adjectíva) *participial*

ádjectives (finíta) in -dus *énding in -dus*, póstulant *require* datívum (cásum) *a dátive case :*—ut *as*, íners lúcus *a slúggish or a heávy grove, that is, a thick grove* penetrábilis *pénetrable* núlli ástro *to no star, that is, not pénetrable by the rays of ány of the heávenly bódies.* O Júli, *O Július,* memoránde míhi *wórthy únto me to be méntioned, that is, wórthy or desérving of méntion by me* post *áfter* núllos sodáles *none (of my) compánions or acquáintances.*

Mensúra *the meásure* magnitúdinis *of mágnitude or of quántity* subjícitur *is subjoíned to or is put áfter* adjectívis *ádjectives* in accusatívo (cásu) *in the accúsative case,* ablatívo (cásu) *in the áblative case,* et *and* genitívo (cásu) *in the génitive case :*—ut *as*, túrris *a tówer* álta *high* céntum pédes *a húndred feet, meáning, a tówer one húndred feet high.* Fons *a fóuntain or well* látus *wide* tríbus pédibus *three feet,* áltus *deep* trigínta (pédibus) *thirty feet, meaning, a spring three feet wide and thírty feet deep.* Área *a floor* láta *broad* dénûm (*for* denórum) pédum *ten feet, or a floor ten feet broad.*

Accusatívus (cásus) *an accúsative case* aliquándo *sómetimes* subjícitur *is subjoíned to or put áfter* adjectívis *ádjectives* et *and* particípiis *párticiples,* úbi *where* præpósitio secúndum *the preposítion secúndum* vidétur *seems* subintélligi *to be understoód :*—ut *as*, símilis *like* Déo · *to a god* ōs *as to his coúntenance or vísage* átquè *and* húmeros *as to his shoúlders, that is, in his cárriage of himsélf, and in his size.* Demíssus *cast down* vúltum *as to his look.*

Adjectíva *ádjectives* quæ *which* pértinent *pertaín or reláte* ad cópiam *to plénty* vèl *or* (ad) egestátem *to want,* éxigunt *require* intérdùm *sómetimes* ablatívum (cásum) *an áblative case,* intérdùm *sómetimes* genitívum (cásum) *a génitive case :* —ut *as*, dívès *rich* équûm (*for* equórum) *of hórses, or, in hórses,* dívès *rich* pictâï véstis *of pictured vésture, that is, in embroídered ráiment,*—et *and* aúri *of gold.* Ámor *love* est *is* fæcundíssimus *véry fécund or abúndant* et *both* mélle *with or of hóney* et *and* félle *with or of gall.* Éxpers fraúdis *void of deceít.* Beátus *háppy or aboúnding* grátiâ *in fávour.*

Adjectíva *ádjectives,* et *and* substantíva *súbstantives,* régunt *góvern* ablatívum (cásum) *an áblative case* significántem *signifying* caúsam *the cause,* et *and* fórmam *the form,* vèl *or* módum *the mánner* réi *of a thing :*—ut *as*, pállidus *pale* írâ *with ánger.* Grammáticus *a grammárian* nómine *in name.*

re *in reálity* bárbarus *a barbárian.* Cǽsar Trojánus *Cǽsar a Trójan* orígine *ly descént.*

Dígnus *wórthy,* indígnus *unwórthy,* prǽditus *endúed,* cáptus *táken or disábled,* conténtus *contént,* extórris *bánished,* frétus *relýing upón,* líber *free,* cum *with,* adjectívis *ádjectives* signi- ficántibus *signifying* prétium *price* éxigunt *requíre* ablatívum (cásum) *an áblative case :*—ut *as,* es *thou art* dígnus *wórthy* ódio *of hátred.* (Égo) qui habérem *I who had* gnátum *a son* prǽditum *endúed* táli ingénio *with such a disposítion.* Tálpæ *the moles* cápti óculis *táken in their eyes, that is, the blind moles* fodêre *have dug or éxcavated* cubília *their beds or holes.* Ábi *go your way* conténtus *contént* tuá sórte *with your lot.* Ánimus *a mind* líber *free* terróre *from fear.* Non venále *not púrchaseable, that is, not to be púrchased* gémmis *with gems or jéwels,* nèc nor aúro *with gold.*

Nonnúlla (adjectíva) *some or a few* hórum (adjectivórum) *of these* admíttunt *admít* intérdum *sómetimes* genitívum (cásum) *a génitive case :*—ut *as,* indígnus *unwórthy* magnó- rum avórum *of his great áncestors.* Cármina *vérses* digna *wórthy* Déæ *of a Góddess.* Extórris *bánished* régni *of the kíngdom, that is, bánished the kíngdom or from the realm.*

Comparatíva *compáratives,* cum *when* exponántur *they can be expoúnded or explained* per *by (the conjúnction)* quám *than,* admíttunt *admít, or receíve áfter them,* ablatívum (cásum) *an áblative case :*—ut *as,* argéntum *sílver* est *is* vílius *more vile, or, of less válue,* aúro *than gold,* aúrum *gold* (est vílius, *is of less válue*) virtútibus *than heróic quálities or vírtue :* id est *that is,* quàm *than* aúrum *gold,* quàm *than* virtútes *heróic quálities or vírtue.*

Tánto *by so much,* quánto *by how much,* hôc *by this,* éo *by that,* et *and* quo *by which or by what,* cum *with* quibúsdam áliis (ablatívis) *some óthers,* quæ *which* signíficant *signify* mensúram *the meásure* excéssûs *of excéss, or, of exceéding ;* ítèm *álso* ætáte *by age,* et *and* nátu *by birth,* jungúntur *are joíned* sǽpè *óftentimes* comparatívis *únto compáratives* et *and* superlatívis *to supérlatives :*—ut *as,* tánto *by so much,* (sum) péssimus pöéta *(am I) the worst póet* ómnium (pöetárum) *of all,* quánto *by how much* tu *thou* (es) óptimus patrónus *(art) the best pátron* ómnium (patronórum) *of all.* Quo plus *by what much (or how much) the more* hábent *they have,* éo plus *by that much (or by so much) the more* cúpiunt *do they cóvet*

or desíre. Májor *the greáter* ætáte *by age, that is, the élder,* et *and* máximus *the greátest* (ætáte) *by age, that is, the éldest.* Májor *greáter* nátu *by birth, that is, ólder ;* et *and* máximus *greátest* (nátu) *by birth, or óldest.*

Méi *of me,* túi *of thee or you,* súi *of himsélf, hersélf, of itsélf, or themsélves,* nóstri *of us,* véstri *of you,* (némpè *námely,*) genitívi (cásus) *the génitive cáses* primitivórum (nóminum) *of the prímitive nouns,* ponúntur *are put or úsed* cùm *when* persóna *a pérson* significátur *is signified :*—ut *as,* lánguet *she lánguishes* desidério túi *with desíre of thee, that is, for want of thee.* Cára pígnora *dear plédges* súi *of himsélf.* Cǽcus ámor *the blind love* súi *of self, that is, the blind love of one's self.* Imágo nóstrî *the pícture of us, that is, of our pérson.*

Méus *mine,* túus *thine,* súus *his own, her own, its own, or their own,* nóster *ours,* véster *yours,* ponúntur *are úsed* cúm *when* áctio *áction,* vél *or* posséssio *the posséssion* réi *of a thing* significátur *is signified :*—ut *as,* fávet *she fávours* túo desidério *your wish or desíre.* Nóstra imágo *our pícture :* id est, *that is,* (imágo) quam (imáginem) *the pícture which* nos *we* possidémus *posséss.*

Hæc possessíva (pronómina, quæ sequúntur) *these posséssive prónouns,* méus *mine,* túus *thine,* súus *his own, her own, its own, or their own,* nóster *ours,* et *and* véster *yours,* recípiunt *receíve or take* post se *áfter them* hos genitívos (cásus) *these génitive cáses ;* ipsíus *of himsélf, of hersélf, or of itsélf,* solíus *of him, her, or it alóne,* uníus *of one,* duórum *of two,* tríum *of three, &c.* ómnium *of all,* plúrium *of more,* paucórum *of few,* cujúsque *of évery one,* et *and álso* genitívos (cásus) *the génitive cáses* participiórum *of párticiples,* qui *which* referúntur *are reférred* ad primitívum (nómen) *to the prímitive word* subauditum *understoód :* ut *as,* díxi *I said or affírmed* rempúblicam *that the state or cómmonwealth* ésse sálvam *was safe, that is, was sáved or presérved* méâ uníus óperâ *by my síngle sérvice* (*literally, by my dóing of one or alóne*). Méum solíus peccátum *my offénce alóne* (*literally, mine offénce of* (me) *ónly, or, the offénce of me indivídually,*) non pótest *cánnot* córrigi *be aménded.* Cùm *when, or wheréas* némo *nobody* légat *reads* méa scrípta timéntis *the wrítings of me feáring* (*literally, my wrítings of* (me) *feáring*) recitáre *to recíte or reheárse them* vúlgò *públicly or in públic.* Céperis

you may have táken or fórmed conjectúram *a conjécture,*
that is, you may guess de túo stúdio ipsíus *from your stúdy of*
(you) yoursélf, that is, by your own indivídual stúdy. Præ-
stántior *more éxcellent* in súâ laúde cujúsque *in his own praise*
(that) of each : fréely, each in his own skill. Nóstrâ memóriâ
ómnium *in our mémory (that) of us all, that is, in the mémory*
or recolléction of us all. Respóndet *he ánswers* véstris laúdi-
bus paucórum *to the praíses of you few: literally, to your*
praíses (béing those) of (you) few.

Súi *of himsélf, of hersélf, of itsélf, of themsélves,* et *and*
súus *his own, her own, its own, or their own,* sunt *are* recí-
proca *recíprocals,* hoc est *that is,* reflectúntur *they are reflécted,*
or have relátion, sémpèr *álways* ad id *to that* quod *which* præ-
céssit *went befóre* præcípuum *chief or the most to be nóted* in
senténtiâ *in the séntence :*—ut *as,* Pétrus *Péter* admirátur
admíres se *himsélf* nímiùm *too much.* Párcit *he spares* súis
erróribus *his (own) érrors.* Pétrus *Péter* rógat magnóperè
begs eárnestly ne déseras se *that you desért him not, or, that*
you do not forsáke him.

Hæc *(tría)* demonstratíva *(pronómina) these (three) demón-*
strative prónouns, hic *this,* íste *that,* ílle *he, or that,* distin-
guúntur *are distínguished* sîc *thus ;* hic *this* demónstrat *shows*
or points to próximum *the neárest (pérson or thing)* míhi *to*
me ; íste *that (* demónstrat *shows or points to)* éum *him* qui
who est *is* ápud te *by you ;* ílle *he, or. that (* demónstrat *points*
to) éum *him* qui *who* est *is* remótus *remóte or distant* ab
utróque *from both of us.*

Cúm *when* hic *this,* et *and* ílle *he or that,* referúntur *are*
reférred ad dúo antepósita *to two things, or pérsons, set or*
góing befóre, hic *this* refértur *is reférred* plerúmquè *génerally*
ad postérius *to the látter,* ílle *he, or that,* ad príus *to the*
fórmer : ut *as,* quocúnquè *which way soéver* aspícias *you look*
est *there is* níhil *nóthing* nísi *unless or excépt* póntus *sea* et
and áër *air :* hic *this or the látter* túmidus *túmid or swóllen*
núbibus *with clouds,* ílle *that or the fórmer* mínax *threátening*
flúctibus *with bíllows or waves.*

Substantíva vérba *súbstantive verbs ;* ut *as,* sum *I am,* fórem
I might or would be, fío *I am made, or I becóme,* exísto *I do*
exíst ; passíva vérba *pássive verbs* vocándi *of cálling ;* ut *as,*
nóminor *I am námed,* appéllor *I am cálled,* dícor *I am said,*
vócor *I am cálled,* núncupor *I am námed ;* et *and* *(vérba)*

simília *similars, that is, óthers like* íis *to those ;* ut *as,* vídeor *I am seen, or, I seem,* hábeor *I am accoúnted,* existimor *I am thought,* hábent *have* eósdem cásus *the same cáses* utrínque *on both sides of them :* ut *as,* Déus *God* est *is* súmmum bónum *the chief good.* Perpusílli *véry dimínutive (or líttle) pérsons* vócantur *are cálled* náni *dwarfs.* Fídes *faith* habétur *is réckoned* fundaméntum *the foundátion* nóstræ religiónis *of our religion.* Natúra *náture* dédit *hath gránted* ómnibus (*homínibus*) *to all* ésse *to be* beátis *háppy.*

Ítem *likewise* ómnia vérba *all verbs* férè *álmost or in a mánner* admíttunt *admit* post se *áfter them* adjectívum *an ádjective,* quod (adjectívum) *which* concórdat *agrees* cum *with* nominatívo cásu vérbi *the nóminative case of or to the verb,* génere *in génder,* et *and* número *in númber :* ut *as,* píi (*hómines*) *píous pérsons* órant *pray* táciti *sílent, that is, tácitly or in sílence.* Málus pástor *a bad shépherd* dórmit *sleeps* supínus *supine, or, supínely, that is, with his face úpwards.*

Sum *I am,* póstulat *requíres* genitívum (cásum) *a génitive case* quótiès *as often as* signíficat *it signifíes* possessiónem *posséssion,* officium *dúty,* signum *sign,* aút *or* id *that* quod *which* pértinet *pertaíns or has respéct* ad quámpiam rem *to ány thing whatéver :* ut *as,* pécus *the cáttle* est *is* Melibǿei *Melibǿus's.* Est *it is* adolescéntis *the dúty of a young man* reveréri *to réverence* majóres nátu *his élders, or, his greáters by birth : in this séntence the word* officium *dúty is omítted by the figure ellípsis.*

Hi nominatívi (cásus) *these nóminative cáses* excipiúntur *are excépted :* méum *mine,* túum *thine,* súum *his, hers, its or theirs,* nóstrum *our,* véstrum *your,* humánum *húman,* belluínum *brútal or wild-beast-like,* et *and* simília (adjectíva) *símilar ádjectives, or the like :* ut *as,* non est méum *it is not mine, or it becómes not me,* dícere *to speak* cóntra *agaínst* auctoritátem *the authórity* senátûs *of the sénate.* Est *it is* humánum *a húman thíng or a húman fraílty* irásci *to be ángry.*

Vérba *verbs* accusándi *of accúsing,* damnándi *of condémning,* monéndi *of wárning,* absolvéndi *of acquítting,* et *and* simília (vérba) *símilar verbs, or the like of those,* póstulant *require* genitívum (cásum) *a génitive case,* qui (genitívus cásus) *which* signíficat *signifíes* crimen *the offénce or charge :* —ut *as,* opórtet *it behóveth, or it is fit,* éum *that he* qui *who*

incúsat *accúses* álterum (hóminem) *anóther man* próbri *of dishónesty*, intuéri *look into* se ípsum *himsélf*, (Ille) condémnat *he condémns* súum géneıum *his own son-in-law* sceleris *of wíckedness*. Admonéto (tu) íllum *remind him* pristinæ fortúnæ *of his fórmer fórtune or condítion*. Est absolútus *he was absólved or is acquítted* fúrti *of theft*.

Hic genitívus (cásus) *this génitive* vértitur *ıs túrned or chánged* aliquándò *sómetimes* in ablatívum (cásum) *into an áblative*, vèl *either* cum *with* præpositióne *a prepositíon*, vèl *or* síne *without* præpositióne *a prepositíon :—*ut *as*, putávi *I thought* te *that you* ésse admonéndum *ought to be put in mind* de eâ re *of that mátter*. Si *if* es *you are* iníquus júdex *an iníquitous or a pártial judge* in me *tówards me*, égo *I* condemnábo *will condémn* te *you* eódem crímine *of the same crime or offénce*.

Utérque *both*, núllus *none*, álter *the óther*, neúter *neither of the two*, álius *anóther*, ámbo *both*, et *and* superlatívus grádus *the supérlative degreé* jungúntur *are joíned* vérbis *to verbs* id génus (*of*) *that kind*, non nísì *not unléss, that is, ónly* in ablatívo (cásu) *in the áblative case* ut *as*, accúsas (éum) *do you accúse (him)* fúrti *of theft*, àn *or* stúpri *of dıshónesty?* Utróque (*of both*) vèl *or* de utróque *of both (those crimes)*: ambóbus *of them both* vè *or* de ambóbus *of them both :* neútro *of neither of the two* vèl *or* de neútro *of neither of the two*. Accusáris *you are accúsed* de plúrimis (crimínibus) *of véry mány things* símùl *at once*.

Sátago *I am búsy abóut a thing*, miséreor *I commíserate*, et *and* miserésco *I píty*, póstulant *requíre* genitívum (cásum) *a génitive case:* ut *as*, is he sátagit *is búsy or has his hands full* suárum rérum *of his own concérns or búsiness*. O'ro *I pray you* miseróre *píty* tantórum labórum *so great distrésses ;* miserére *have píty on* ánimæ *a soul* feréntis *súffering* non dígna *things not wórthy, that is, unmérited or undesérved afflíctions*. Et *and* miserésce *píty* túi géneris *your own spécies or fámily*.

Reminíscor *I remémber*, oblivíscor *I forgét*, mémini *I remémber*, recórdor *I call to mind*, admíttunt *admít* genitívum (cásum) *a génitive case*, aùt *or* accusatívum (cásum) *an accúsative case :—*ut *as*, reminíscitur *he remémbers* dátæ fídeı *his gíven faith, that is, his plédged troth, or prómise*. Est *it is* próprium *a thing próper, that is, the próperty* stultítiæ *of fólly* cérnere *to discérn* vítia aliórum (hóminum) *the faults of*

óthers, oblivísci *to forgét* suórum (vitiórum) *its own*. Fáciam *I will make or cause (you)* ut memíneris *that you remémber, that is, to remémber* hújus lóci *this place* sémpèr *álways*. Juvábit *it will be a pléasure* ólìm *hereáfter* meminísse *to recáll to mind* hæc *these things*. Recórdor *I do remémber* hújus méríti *this fávour* in me *tówards me*. Si *if* recórdor *I recolléct* rítè *rightly* audíta *the things heard, that is, the words which I heard*.

Pótior *I gain or enjóy* júngitur *is joíned* aùt *either* genitívo (cásui) *to a génitive case*, aùt or ablatívo (cásui) *to an áblative case:* ut *as*, Románi *the Rómans* sunt potíti *gaíned* signórum *the bánners or stándards* et *and* armórum *the arms or wéapons of war*. Tróës *the Trójans* egréssi *béing lánded or debárked* potiúntur *enjóy* optátâ arénâ *the wíshed-for sand or shore*.

O'mnia vérba *all verbs* régunt *góvern* datívum (cásum) *a dátive case* éjus réi *of that thing*, cui *to or for which* áliquid *ány thing* acquíritur *is gótten* aùt *or* adímitur *is táken awáy:*—ut *as*, nèc séritur *it is neíther béing sown*, nèc *nor* métitur *is it béing mown, that is, there is neíther sówing nor mówing*, míhi *for me* ístìc *there, or in that mátter*. Quis cásus *what áccident* adémìt te *hath táken thee awáy* míhi *to me, that is, from me?*

VÉRBA *verbs* várii géneris *of várious kind or sorts* appéndent *belóng* huic régulæ *to this rule*.

Imprímìs *fóremost or in the first place* vérba *verbs* significántia *signifying* cómmodum *advántage* aùt *or* incómmodum *disadvantage* régunt *góvern* datívum (cásum) *a dátive case:*—ut *as*, non pótes *you cánnot* commodáre *accómmodate or serve* nèc *nor* incommodáre *incómmode or dísserve* míhi *me*.

Ex his (vérbis) *of these*, júvo, *I help*, lǽdo *I hurt*, delécto *I delight*, et *and* quædam ália (vérba) *some few óther verbs* éxigunt *requíre* accusatívum (cásum) *an accúsative case:*—ut *as* quíes *rest* júvat *delights* féssum (hóminem) *a wéary pérson* plúrimum *véry much*.

Vérba *verbs* comparándi *of compáring* régunt *góvern* datívum (cásum) *a dátive case:*—ut *as*, sìc *thus* solébam *was I accústomed or wont* compónere *to compáre* mágna (negótia) *great things* párvis (negótiis) *to small things*.

Vérò *but* intérdùm *sómetimes* (hæc vérba régunt) *they góvern* ablatívum (cásum) *an áblative case* cum præpositióne "cum" *with the preposítion "cum"* intérdùm *sómetimes* accusatívum (cásum) *an accúsative case* cum *with* præposi-

tiónibus "ad" et "ínter" *the prepositions* "ad" *and* "inter:"
—ut *as*, cómparo *I* compáre Virgílium *Virgil* cum *with*
Homéro *Hómer.* Si *if* (is) comparátur *he is compáred* ad
éum *to him* est níhil *he is nóthing.* Hæc (negótia) *these
things* non sunt *are not* conferénda *wórthy of béing compáred,
that is, are not fit to be compáred* ínter se *betweén themsélves
or one with anóther.*

Vérba *verbs* dándi *of gíving* et *and* reddéndi *of restóring*
régunt *góvern* datívum (cásum) *a dátive case :*—ut *as*, for-
túna *fórtune* dat *gives* nimìs *too much* múltis (homínibus) *to
mány,* sátis *enóugh* núlli *to no one.* Est *he is* ingrátus (hómo)
an ungráteful pérson, qui *who* non repónit *does not retúrn*
grátiam *acknówledgment, that is, thanks* (cuíquam) merénti
béne *to ány one desérving well (of him) that is, to his benefáctor.*

Vérba *verbs* promitténdi *of prómising* ac *and* solvéndi *of
páying,* régunt *góvern* datívum (cásum) *a dátive case :*—ut
as, (negótia) quæ *the things which* promítto *I prómise* tíbi *to
you,* ac *and* recípio *engáge* ésse observatúrum *to be obsérving
of, that is, to obsérve* sanctíssimè *most religiously or scrúpu-
lously.* Numerávit *he counted or paid* mihi *to me* aliénum
æs *the debt, literally the strange brass or móney.*

Vérba *verbs* imperándi *of commánding* et *and* nuntiándi
of reláting or of télling régunt *góvern* datívum (cásum) *a
dátive case :*—ut *as,* pecúnia *móney* collécta *colléctecd, that is,
amássed or hoárded up* ímperat *commánds* aùt *or* sérvit *serves*
cuíque *évery man.* Sæpè *óften* vidéto *see, or take care,* quid
dícas *what thou say* de quóque víro *of évery man, that is, of
ány one,* et *and* cui *to whom* (dícas id, *thou say it*).

Excipe *excépt* régo *I rule,* gubérno *I góvern,* quæ (dúo
vérba) *which (two) verbs* hábent *have* accusatívum (cásum)
an accúsative case ; tempero *I rule* et *and* móderor *I mánage,*
quæ (dúo vérba) *which two verbs* nùnc *sómetimes* hábent *have*
datívum (cásum) *a dátive case,* nùnc *sómetimes* accusatívum
(cásum) *an accúsative :*—ut *as,* Lúna *the moon* régit *rules or
régulates* ménses *the months.* Déus ípse *God himsélf* gubér-
nat *góverns* órbem *the world.* Ípse *he* témperat síbi *témpers
or commánds himsélf, that is, he has the command of himsélf.*
Sol *the sun* témperat *témpers or sways* ómnia *all things* lúce
by or with his light. Hic *this man* moderátur *mánages* équos
his hórses, qui *who* non moderábitur *will not mánage, or,
master* íræ *his ánger or pássion.*

Vérba *verbs* fidéndi *of confiding or trústing* regunt *góvern* datívum (cásum) *a dátive case:*—ut *as,* décet *it is becóming or próper* commíttere *to commít* nîl *nóthing* nísì *unléss or excépt* léne *that which is soft or of a mitigating quálity* vácuis vénis *to the émpty veins.*

Vérba *verbs* obsequéndi *of complýing with* et *and* repugnándi *of oppósing,* régunt *góvern* datívum (cásum) *a dátive case:*—ut *as,* píus fílius *a dútiful son* sémpèr *álways* obtémperat *obéys* pátri *his fáther.* Fortúna *fórtune* repúgnat oppóses ignávis précibus *slúggish práyers, that is, the práyers of the slúggish or slóthful.*

Vérba *verbs* minándi *of threátening,* et *and* irascéndi *of béing ángry,* régunt *góvern* datívum (cásum) *a dátive. case:* —ut *as,* est minitátus *he threátened* mórtem *death* utríque *to both of them.* Níhil est *there is nóthing, that is, no reáson* quod *that (or why)* succénseam *I should be ángry* adolescénti *with the young man.*

Sum *I am* cum *with* (súis) compósitis (vérbis) *its cómpounds,* préter *excépt* póssum *I am áble,* régit *góverns* datívum (cásum) *a dátive case:*—ut *as,* píus rex *a pious king* est *is* ornaméntum *an órnament* reipúblicæ *to the state.* Nèc óbest *it neither hurts* nèc pródest *nor prófits* míhi *me.*

Vérba *verbs* compósita *compoúnded* cum *with* his advérbiis *these ádverbs* béne *well* sátìs *enoúgh,* málè *ill; et *and* cum *with* his præpositiónibus *these prepositions,* præ, ad, con, sub, ánte, post, ob, in, ínter; férmè *for the most part* régunt góvern datívum (cásum) *a dátive case:*—ut *as,* Díi *may the Gods* benefáciant *do good* tíbi *únto thee, that is, may they bless thee.* Égo *I* prælúxi *have outshóne* méis majóribus *mu áncestors* virtúte *in vírtue, or válour.* (Hómo) qui *(a pérson)* who intempestívè *out of seáson* adlúscrit *jóked on him* occupáto *occupied or when he was búsy.* Hoc *this* condúcit *condúces or is condúcive, that is, redoúnds* túæ laúdi *to your praise.* Convíxit *he lived* nóbis *with us.* Súbolet uxóri *it sávours a little to my wife, that is, she begins to smell out,* jàm alreády (id) quod *that which* égo máchinor *I am contríving, that is, she has some just suspícions respécting my plans.* Antéfero *I prefér* iniquíssimam pácem *the most unéqual or dishónourable peace* justíssimo béllo *to or befóre the most just war.* Postpóno *I postpóne* pecúniam *móney* fámæ *to reputátion, that is, I válue móney less than I válue reputátion.* Quóniam *becaúse*

éa *she* pótest *can* obtrúdi *be thrust* némini *upón nóbody*, ítur *it is come, that is, they come* ad me *tɔ me.* Perículum *dánger* impéndet *hangs óver* ómnibus *all.* Non sólùm *not ónly* intérfuit *was he présent* his rébus *at these things*, sèd *but* étiàm *álso* præfuit *he was forémost or chief in them.*

Non paúca (vérba) *not a few* ex his (vérbis) *of these verbs* aliquótiès *sómetimes* mútant *change* datívum (cásum) *the dátive* in álium cásum *into anóther case:*—ut *as*, álius *one* præstat *excéeds or excéls* álium *anóther* ingénio *in tálent or abílity.*

Est *there is*, pro *for* hábeo *I have*, régit *góverns* datívum (cásum) *a dátive case:*—ut *as*, námquè *for* est míhi *there is to me* páter *a fáther* dómi *at home, that is, I have a fáther at home*, est *there is*, injústa novérca *an iníquitous* (or) *a sevére stép-mother, that is, I have a sevére stép-mother.*

Súppetit *it suffíceth* est *is* símile *like* huic (vérbo) *to this verb* (námely, sum, or ráther est): ut *as*, énim *for* non est *he is not* paúper *poor* cui *to whom* úsus rérum *the use of things* súppetit *is sufficient, that is, who has a sufficiency of the nécessaries of life.*

Sum *I am* cum *with* múltis áliis (vérbis) *mány óther verbs* admíttit *admíts* géminum datívum (cásum) *a doúble dátive case:* ut *as*, máre *the sea* est *is* exítio *a destrúction* ávidis naútis *to greédy máriners, that is, the destrúction of avarícious sailors.* Spéras *do you expéct* (id) fóre *that (that) should be* laúdi *a crédit* tíbi *to yoursélf* quod *which* vértis *you impúte* vítio *as a fault* míhi *to me?*

Est úbi *there is where, that is, sómetimes* hic datívus (cásus) *this dátive case*, tíbi *to thee*, aùt or síbi *to himsélf, hersélf, itsélf, or themsélves*, aùt or étiàm *álso* míhi *to me* addítur *is ádded* caúsâ *for the sake* elegántiæ *of élegance in expréssion:* —ut *as*, júgulo *I stab* hunc (hóminem) *this man* súo gládio *with his own sword* síbi *to himsélf, that is, with his véry own sword.*

Transitíva vérba *tránsitive verbs* cujuscúnque géneris *of what kind soéver*, sívè *whéther* actívi (géneris) *of the áctive (kind)* sívè or deponéntis (géneris) *depónent*, sívè or commúnis (géneris) *cómmon*, éxigunt *require* accusatívum (cásum) *an accúsative case:*—ut *as*, fúgito *avoíd* percontatórem *an inquísitive pérson*, nàm *for* ídem *the same* est *is* gárrulus *a blab.* Áper *the wild-boar* depopulátur *lays waste* ágros *the*

fields. Imprimìs *in the first place* veneráre Déos *vénerate the Gods, that is, addréss yoursélf to the Gods wórshipfully.*

Neútra vérba *neúter verbs* hábent *have or take* accusatívum (cásum) *an accúsative case* cognátæ significatiónis *of a kíndred or like significátion :* ut *as,* sérvit *he serves* dúram servitútem *a hard sérvitude.*

Sunt *there are* (nonnúlla vérba) *some few verbs* quæ *which* hábent *have* accusatívum (cásum) *an accúsative case* figurátè *figuratively or by a figure :*—ut *as,* nèc *nor* vox *does (your) voice* sónat *sound* hóminem *man, that is, like the voice of a húman creáture :* O Déa *O a Góddess !* cértè *cértainly or withóut doubt.*

Vérba *verbs* rogándi *of ásking,* docéndi *of teáching,* vestiéndi *of clóthing,* celándi *of concéaling,* férè *cómmonly* régunt *góvern* dúplicem accusatívum (cásum) *a double accúsative, that is, two accúsative cáses :* ut *as,* tu módò *do ónly you* pósce *cráve* véniam *párdon* Déos *of the Gods.* Dedocébo *I will untéach* te *you* ístos móres *those mánners.* Est ridículum (negótium) *it is ridículous or a jest* te *for you* admonére me *to remind me* ìstùc *of that.* Índuit se *he clad himsélf, that is, he put on* cálceos *the shoes* quos (cálceos) *which* exúerat *he had put off* priùs *befóre.* Consueféci *I have accústomed* fílium *my son,* nè célet *that he concéal not* éa *those things* me *from me.*

Vérba *verbs* hujúsmodi *of this sort* hábent *have* post se *áfter them* accusatívum (cásum) *an accúsative case* étiàm *álso* in passívâ vóce *in the pássive voice :*—ut *as,* pósceris *you are demánded or ásked for, that is you are required to sácrifice* éxta *the éntrails* bóvis *of a heífer.*

Appellatíva nómina *appéllative nouns* férè *cómmonly* addúntur *are ádded* cum *with* præpositióne *a prepositión* vérbis *to verbs* quæ (vérba) *which* dénòtant *denóte* mótum *mótion :*—ut *as,* íbant *they went* ad témplum *to the témple* Pálladis *of Pállas.*

Quódvis vérbum *ány verb you like, that is, évery verb* admíttit *admits* ablatívum (cásum) *an áblative case* significántem *signifying* instruméntum *the ínstrument,* aùt or caúsam *the cause,* aùt or módum *the mánner* actiónis *of an áction :* ut *as,* hi (mílites) *these soldiers* cértant endeávour *endeávour* deféndere (se) *to defénd themsélves* jáculis *with darts,* illi *those,* sáxis *with stones.* Excánduit veheméntèr *he túrned excéssively pale* írâ *with*

ánger. Perégit rem *he perfórmed the mátter* mirâ celeritáte *with wónderful despátch.*

Nómen *a noun* prétii *of price* subjícitur *is subjóined to or put áfter* quibúsdam vérbis *some verbs* in ablatívo cásu *in the áblative case:*—ut *as,* non émerim *I would not púrchase it* terúncio *at a fárthing,* seù *or* vitiósâ núce *a rótten nut.* Ea victória *that víctory* stétit *stood or cost* Pœnis *the Carthagí-nians* sánguine *the blood* multórum (hóminum) *of mány men, that is, much blood,* àc *and* vulnéribus (*mány*) *wounds.*

Víli *at a low rate,* paúlo *for líttle,* mínimo *for véry líttle,* mágno *for much,* nímio *for too much,* plúrimo *for véry much,* dimídio *for half,* dúplo *for twice as much,* ponúntur *are put* sǽpè óften *per se by themsélves,* vóce *the word* prétio (*price*) subaudítâ *béing understoód:*—ut *as,* tríticum *wheat* vénit *is sold* víli *at a low rate.*

Hi genitívi (cásus) *these génitive cáses* pósiti *put* síne sub-stantívis *withoút súbstantives* excipiúntur *are excépted:* tánti *for so much,* quánti *for how much,* plúris *for more,* minóris *for less,* tantídem *for just so much,* quantívis *for as much as you like,* quantílibet *for as much as you please,* quanticúnque *for how much soéver:* ut *as,* éris *you will be* tánti *of so much* válue* áliis *to óthers* quánti *as fúeris* you shall have been or are* tíbi *to yoursélf.*

Flócci *of a lock of wool,* naúci *of a nut-shell,* níhili *of nóthing,* píli *of a hair,* ássis *of a pénny,* te-rúncii *of a fárthing,* addúntur *are ádded,* peculiáriter *pecúli-arly or véry próperly* vérbis *to verbs* æstimándi *of esteéming:* ut *as,* égo péndo íllum *I válue him* flócci *a straw,* nèc fácio *nor do I regárd him* húius *this* (viz. *a snap of the fínger and thumb*) qui *who* éstimat me *esteéms me* píli (*not*) *a hair.*

Vérba *verbs* abundándi *of aboúnding,* impléndi *of fílling,* onerándi *of loáding,* et *and* (vérba) divérsa his (vérbis) *verbs dífferent to* (or *from*) *these, that is, their cóntraries,* jungúntur *are jóined* ablatívo (cásui) *to an áblative case:*—ut *as,* Ánti-pho, *O Ántipho,* abúndas *you aboúnd* amóre *with love, that is, in that which you like.* Sýlla explévit *Sýlla fílled* ómnes súos (mílites) *all his sóldiers or his ármy* divítiis *with ríches.* Quíbus mendáciis *with what lies* levíssimi hómines *have the vaínest pérsons* onerárunt (*for* oneravérunt) te *loáded you!* Éxpedi *clear* te yoursélf* hôc crímine *of this charge.*

Ex quíbus (vérbis) *of which* (vérbs) quǽdam (vérba) *some*

verbs nonnúnquam *occásionally* régunt *góvern* genitívum (cá-sum) *a génitive case:*—ut *as,* impléntur *they are filled* véteris Bácchi *of old Bácchus, that is, with old wine,* átquè *and* pínguis ferínæ (cárnis) *fat wild flesh or vénison.* Quási *as though* tu indígeas *you have need* pátris hújus (hóminis) *of this man's fáther.*

Fúngor *I dischárge,* frúor, *I enjóy,* útor, *I use,* véscor, *I live upón,* dígnor *I deem mysélf wórthy,* múto, *I change or bárter,* commúnico *I commúnicate,* supersédeo *I pass by,* jun-gúntur *are joined* ablatívo (cásui) *to an áblative case:*—ut *as,* (ílle) qui *he who* vólet *shall desíre* adipísci *to obtaín* véram glóriam *true glóry* fungátur *should dischárge* offíciis *the duties* justítiæ *of jústice, that is, let the man who desíres, dischárge—.* Est *it is* óptimum (negótium) *an éxcellent thing* frúi *to enjóy or to prófit* by aliénâ insániâ *álien insánity or fólly, that is, by the mádness of óthers.* Júvat *it prófits or is of sérvice* si *if* utáre *you can use or emplóy* bóno ánimo *a good coúrage, that is, can keep up an undaúnted resolútion* in málâ re *in an unlúcky affaír, or, unprósperous evént.* Véscor *I eat* cár-nibus *fléshes, that is, bútchers' meat.* Équidèm *trúly* haùd dígnor me *I deem not mysélf wórthy* táli honóre *of such hónour.* Díruit *he pulls down,* ædíficat *he builds up,* mútat *he chánges or álters* quadráta *square things* rotúndis *for round.* Communicábo te *I will commúnicate you* meâ ménsâ *with my táble, that is, I will give you accéss to my táble, or I will confér with you at my táble.* Est supersedéndum *it is to be supérséded or let pass,* multitúdine *from a múltitude* verbórum *of words, that is, we must forbeár sáying mány words or much.*

Méreor *I desérve,* cum advérbiis *with the ádverbs* béne *well,* málè *ill,* mélius, *bétter,* péjùs *worse,* óptimè *véry well,* péssimè *véry ill,* júngitur *is joined* ablatívo (cásui) *to an áblative case* cum *with* præpositióne de *the preposítion* de: ut *as,* núnquàm est méritus *he néver desérved* béne *well* de me *of me.*

Quædam vérba *cértain verbs* accipiéndi *of recéiving,* dis-tándi *of distancing, or, of béing distant,* et *and* auferéndi *of táking awáy,* aliquándò *sómetimes* jungúntur *are joined* datívo (cásui) *to a dátive case:*—ut *as,* celáta vírtus *concéaled vírtue* distat *differs* paúlum *little* sepúltæ inértiæ *from búried ídleness, or, from lífeless sloth.* Éripe te móræ *snatch thysélf awáy to deláy, that is, throw off tárdiness or deláy.*

Ablatívus (cásus) *an áblative case* súmptus *táken* absolútè *absolutely* ádditur *is added or subjoined* quibúslibet vérbis *to ány verbs you like :*—ut *as,* Chrístus *Christ* est nátus *was born* Augústo imperánte *Augústus reígning, that is, when Augústus was émperor,* (est) crucifíxus *he was crúcified* Tibério imperánte, *Tibérius reígning,—that is, when Tibérius was Róman émperor.* Me dúce *I béing your guide* éris *you will be* tútus *safe.*

Ablatívus (cásus) *an áblative case* pártis (córporis vèl ánimi) *of the part (of bódy or mind)* afféctæ *afféctèd,* et *and* poétice *poétically, or by the póets,* accusatívus (cásus) *an accúsative* ádditur *is áddèd* quibúsdam vérbis *to some verbs :* ut *as,* ægrótat *he is ill* ánimo *in mind* mágis *more* quàm *than* córpore *in bódy.* Cándet *he is whíte* déntes *as to his teeth, that is, his teeth are white.* Rúbet *he is red* capíllos *as to his hairs, that is, his hair is red.*

Quédam (vérba ex his vérbis) *some of these verbs* usurpántur *are usúrped, or úsed,* étiàm *álso* cum genitívo (cásu) *with a génitive case :* ut *as,* fácis *you do, or act,* absúrde *absúrdly* qui *who* ángas *torméntest* te *thysélf* ánimi *of or in mind.*

Ablatívus (cásus) *an áblative case* agéntis *of the dóer* ádditur *is áddèd* passívis (vérbis) *to pássive verbs,* sèd *but* præpositióne *with the preposítion* à *from* vèl *or* ab *by* antecedénte *góing befóre ;* ut *as,* laudátur *he is praised* ab his *by these,* culpátur *he is blámed* ab íllis *by those.* Honésta (negótia) *hónest things or hónourable óbjects* non occúlta (negótia) *not hídden or únderhand things* quærúntur *are sought or aímed at* bónis víris *by good men.*

Céteri cásus *the óther cáses* mánent *remaín or contínue,* in passívis (vérbis) *in pássive verbs,* qui (cásus) *which cáses* fuérunt *were or belónged* (iis) *to them* activórum (verbórum) *of (or as) áctives :* ut *as,* accusáris *you are accúsed* fúrti *of theft* à me *by me.* Habéberis *you will be had* ludíbrio *for a laúghing-stock, that is, you will be made a laúghing-stock.* Dedocéberis *you will be untaúght* ístos móres *those mánners* à me *by me.* Priváberis *you will be deprived* magistrátu *of your mágistracy or óffice.*

Vápulo *I am beáten,* véneo *I am sold,* líceo *I am prízed,* éxulo *I am bánished,* fío *I am made, or, I becóme,* neútro-passíva (vérba) *neúter-pássives* hábent *have* passívam **con-**

or excites Cecrópias ápes *the Áttic bees.* Æneas *(fáther)*
Ænéas in célsâ púppi *on his lófty stern, that is, on board his*
státely ship, jàm cértus eúndi *alreády sure of (or detérmined*
upón) góing.

Gerúndia in -do *gérunds in -do* óbtinent *obtaín (or have)*
eándem constructiónem *the same constrúction* cum *with* abla-
tívis (cásibus) *áblative cáses ;* et *and álso* gerúndia in -dum
gérunds in -dum cum *with* accusatívis (cásibus) *accúsative*
cáses :—ut *as,* rátio *the mánner or means* scribéndi *of writing*
est *is* conjúncta *conjoíned or connécted* cum loquéndo *with*
speáking, or, with óratory. Vítium *diseáse* álitur *is fed or*
núrtured átquè *and* vívit *lives* tegéndo *by béing cóvered or*
concéaled. Lócus *a place* amplíssimus *most ámple* ad agén-
dum *for pleáding, that is, véry mágnificent and hónourable*
to plead in.

Cùm *when* necéssitas *necéssity* significátur *is signified,* ge-
rúndia in -dum *gérunds énding in -dum* ponúntur *are put or*
úsed cítra præpositiónem *this side of a preposítion, that is,*
withoút a preposítion, vérbo " est" *the verb " est"* áddito *béing*
ádded :—ut *as,* est orándum *it is to be práyed, that is, we must*
pray ut sit *that there be or that we may have* sána mens *a*
sound mind in sáno córpore *in a sound bódy.* Est vigilándum
éi *it must be wátched by him, that is, he must watch* qui *who*
cúpit *desíres* víncere *to cónquer.*

Gerúndia *gérunds* étiàm *álso* vertúntur *are chánged* in
adjectíva nómina *into ádjective nouns :*— ut *as,* dúci *to be led*
or indúced prémio *by rewárd or a bribe* ad accusándos hómi-
nes *to accúse men* est *is* próximum *next* akin latrocínio *to*
róbbery.

Supínum in -um *the súpine in -um* signíficat *signifies* actíve
áctively, et *and* séquitur *fóllows* vérbum *a verb* aùt *or* parti-
cípium *a párticiple* signíficans *signifying* mótum *mótion* ad
lócum *to a place :*—ut *as,* véniunt *they come* spectátum *to see,*
véniunt *they come* ut *to the end that* ípsæ *they themsélves* spec-
téntur *may be seen.* Mílites *sóldiers* sunt míssi *were sent*
speculátum *to view* árcem *the cítadel.*

Supínum in -u *the súpine in u* signíficat *signifies* passívè
pássively, et *and* séquitur *fóllows* adjectíva nómina *ádjective*
nouns :—ut *as,* (id) quod *that which* est *is* fédum *foul or*
fílthy fáctu *to be done,* ï'dem *the same* est *is* et *álso* túrpe *base*
or shámeful díctu *to be spóken.*

(Nómina) quæ *nouns which* signíficant *signify* pártem *a pórtion or part* témporis *of time* ponúntur *are put* frequéntius *óftener, that is, more cómmonly* in ablatívo (cásu) *in the áblative case :*—ut *as,* némo mortálium *nóbody of mórtals, that is, no mórtal man* sápit *is wise* ómnibus hóris *at all hours or times.*

Aútem *but* (nómina) quæ *nouns which* signíficant *signify* duratiónem *any contínuance, or durátion* témporis *of time,* ponúntur *are put* férè cómmonly *in* accusatívo (cásu) *in the accúsative case :*—ut *as,* hîc *here* jàm *now or from this time* regnábitur *it shall be swáyed, that is, kings shall reign* tèr céntum *three húndred* tótos ánnos *whole years, or, full three húndred years.*

Dícimus étiàm *we say álso :* In paúcis diébus *in a few days, meáning, within the périod of a few days.* De díe *by day.* De nócte *by night.* Promítto *I prómise* in díem *into or for a day.* Cómmodo *I accómmodate or I lend* in ménsem *for a month.* Nátus ad quinquagínta ánnos *born to fífty years, that is, fífty years old.* Stúdui *I stúdied* per tres ánnos *for three years.* Púer *a boy or child* id ætátis *that of age, meáning, of that age.* Non plus *not more than, or, not above* tríduum *the space of three days,* aùt or tríduo *the space of three days.* Tértio (díe) *on the third* vèl *or* ad tértium (díem) *at the third* (ánte) caléndas *befóre the cálends* vèl *or* calendárum *of the cálends of the month.*

Spátium *distance* lóci *of place* pónitur *is put* in accusatívo (cásu) *in the accúsative case,* et *and* interdùm *sómetimes* in ablatívo (cásu) *in the áblative :*—ut *as,* jàm *now* procésseram *I had advánced* mílle pássus *a thóusand steps or a mile.* Ábest *he is distant* quingéntis míllibus pássuum *five húndred thóusand of steps or five húndred miles* ab úrbe *from the cíty.* Ítem *álso,* ábest *he is distant* bídui *two days' jóurney :* úbi *where* spátium *the space* vèl *or* spátio *by the space,* itínere *by a jóurney,* vèl *or* íter *a jóurney,* intellígitur *is understoód.*

Ómne vérbum *évery verb* admíttit *admíts* genitívum (cásum) *a génitive case* nóminis *of the name* óppidi *of a cíty or town* in quo (óppido) *in which* áctio fit *an áction is done, that is, in which aught takes place ;* módò *províded ónly* sit *it be* prímæ (declinatiónis) *of the first* vèl *or* secúndæ declinatiónis *of the sécond declénsion,* et *and* singuláris númeri *of the síngular númber :* ut *as,* quid *what* fáciam *should I do* Rómæ *at*

Rome? Néscio *I know not* mentíri *(how) to lie, that is, I cánnot útter fálsehoods.*

Hi genitívi (cásus) *these génitive cáses,* húmi *upón the ground,* dómi *at home,* milítiæ *in wárfare or abroád,* bélli *of or in war,* sequúntur *fóllow* fórmam *the constrúction* propriórum (nóminum) *of próper names;*—ut *as,* árma *arms* sunt *are* párvi *of líttle worth* fóris *abroád,* nisì *unléss* est *there is* consílium *counsel or wísdom* dómi *at home.* Fúimus *we were* sémpèr *álways* únà togéthèr milítiæ *abroád or in war,* et *and* dómi *at home.*

Vérùm *but* si *if* nómen *the name* óppidi *of a cíty or town,* fúerit *be (literally, may or shall have been)* plurális númeri *of the plúral númber* duntáxàt *ónly,* aùt *or* tértiæ declinatiónis *of the third declénsion,* pónitur *it is put* in ablatívo (cásu) *in the áblative case:*—ut *as,* Cólchus *a Cólchian,* àn *or* Assýrius *an Assýrian;* nutrítus *brought up* Thébis *at Thébes,* àn *or* Árgis *at Árgos.* Ventósus *being wind-like, that is, fickle or incónstant as the wind,* Rómæ *at Rome* ámem *I (can) like* Tíbur *the cíty Tíbur,* Tíbure *at Tíbur* (ámem) Rómam *I (can) like Rome.*

Nómen *the name* lóci *of a place* férè *cómmonly* áddítur *is ádded to, or, put áfter* vérbis *verbs* significántibus *signifying* mótum *mótion* ad lócum *to a place,* in accusatívo (cásu) *in the accúsative case* síne præpositióne *withoút a preposition:*—ut *as,* concéssi *I went* Cantabrígiam *to Cámbridge* ad capiéndum *to take* cúltum *cúlture or cultivátion* ingénii *of génius, that is, to get leárning.*

Ad hunc módum *to (or áfter) this mánner* útimur *we use* dómus *a house,* et *and* rus *the coúntry:*—ut *as,* capéllæ *ye líttle she-goats* sáturæ *béing full* íte dómum *go home,* Hésperus *the E'vening star* vénit *comes, that is, the évening appróaches,* íte *be gone.* Égo íbo *I will go* rus *ínto the coúntry.*

Nómen *the name* lóci *of a place* férè *cómmonly* áddítur *is ádded to, or, put áfter* vérbis *verbs* significántibus *signifying* mótum *mótion* à lóco *from a place* in ablatívo (cásu) *in the áblative case,* síne præpositióne *withoút a preposition:*—ut *as,* nisì *unléss* ésses proféctus *you had gone, that is, if you had not gone* Rómà *from Rome* ántè *befóre,* relínqueres *you would leave* éam *it* nùnc *now.*

Impersonália vérba *impérsonal vérbs* non hábent *have not* nominatívum (cásum) *a nóminative case* enunciátum *expréssed*

(in Látin) :—ut *as*, júvat *it is pleásant* íre *to go* sub úmbras *únder the shádows, or ínto the shade.*

Hæc impersonália (vérba) *these impérsonals*, ínterest *it ínterests*, et *and* réfert *it concérns*, jungúntur *are jóined* quibúslibet genitívis (cásibus) *únto ány génitive cáses you like*, præter *excépt or with the excéption of* hos fœmínínos ablatívos (cásus) *these féminine áblative cáses*, meâ *with mine ;* túâ *with thine ;* súâ, *with his, hers, its, theirs ;* nóstrâ, *with ours ;* véstrâ, *with yours ;* et *and* cújâ, *with whose ?*—ut *as*, ínterest *it ínterests or concérns* magistrátûs *a mágistrate, that is, it is his dúty*, tuéri *to defénd* bónos (hómines) *the good*, animadvértere *to animadvért* in málos (hómines) *upón the bad, that is, to púnish the bad.* Réfert túâ *it concérns your búsiness, that is, you*, nôsse *(for* novísse*) to know* te ípsum *yoursélf.*

Et *álso* hi genitívi (cásus) *these génitive cáses* addúntur *are ádded*, tánti *of so much*, quánti *of how much*, mágni *of a great deal*, párvi *of little*, quanticúnquè *of how much soéver*, tantídem *of just so much :* ut *as*, réfert tánti *it reláies of so much, that is, of such concérn is it* ágere *to do* honésta *hónest things, that is, to act hónestly.*

Impersonália (vérba) *impérsonal verbs* pósita *put* acquisitívè *acquísitively* póstulant *demánd or requíre* datívum (cásum) *a dátive case* :—aútem *but* (éa vérba) quæ *those verbs which* ponúntur *are put* transitívè *tránsitively*, (póstulant *requíre*) accusatívum (cásum) *an accúsative case :* ut *as*, bénefit *it bénefits* nóbis *us, that is, we enjóy bléssings* à Déo, *from God.* Júvat *it delíghts* me *me* íre *to go* per áltum *óver the deep, that is, to trável by sea.*

Véro *but* præpositio ad *the preposítion ad* própriè ádditur *is próperly or pecúliarly ádded* his (vérbis) *únto these verbs*, áttinet *it belóngs*, pértinet *it pertáins*, spéctat *it concérns :* ut *as*, vis *would you have* me me dícere *to speak* (id) quod *(that) which* áttinet *belóngs* ad te *to you ?* Spéctat *it looks* ad ómnes (hómines) *to all men, that is, it concérns all* vívere *to live* bénè *well or ríghteously.*

Accusatívus (cásus) *an accúsative case* cum *with* genitívo (cásu) *a génitive*, subjícitur *is subjóined to or put áfter* his impersonálibus (vérbis) *these impérsonal verbs*, pǽnitet *it repénts*, tǽdet *it weáries*, míseret, *it pítieth*, miseréscit, *it commíserates*, púdet *it shames*, píget *it irks or grieves :*—ut *as*, si *if* vixísset *he had líved* ad centésimum ánnum *to (his) hún-*

dredih year, non pœnitéret *it would not repént, that is, it would not have repénted* éum *him* súæ senectútis *of his old age*. Míseret me *it píties me* túi *of thee, that is, I píty thee*.

Impersonále vérbum *an impérsonal verb* passívæ vócis *of the pássive voice* pótest *can or may* áccipi *be táken* pro *for* síngulis persónis *the séveral pérsons respéctively, that is, for each pérson* utriúsque númeri *of both númbers* elegántèr *élegantly, or with élegance :* —ut *as*, státur *it is stood* (à me *by me*), id est, *that is*, sto *I stand*, (à te *by thee, that is*), stas *thou stándest*, (ab íllo *by him, that is*), stat *he stands*, (à nóbis, *by us, that is*), stámus *we stand*, (à vóbis *by you, that is*), státis *you stand*, (ab íllis *by them, that is*), stant *they stand :* vidélicèt *you may see, or námely*, ex vi *by vírtue* cásûs *of a case* adjúncti *ádded to it :* ut *as*, státur *it is stood* à me *by me*, id est *that is*, sto *I do stand :* státur *it is stood* ab íllis *by them*, id est *that is*, stant *they do stand*.

Participía *the párticiples of verbs* régunt *góvern* cásus *the cáses* verbórum *of the verbs* à quíbus (vérbis) *from which* derivántur *they are dedúced or dérived :*—ut *as*, téndens *strétching forth or spréading out* dúplices pálmas *dóuble ópen-hands or both his palms or hands* ad sídera *to the stars, or tówards héaven*, réfert *he útters* vóce *with voice, that is, lóudly* tália (vérba) *such words as these*.

Datívus (cásus) *a dátive case* intérdùm *sómetimes* ádditur *is ádded* participíis *to párticiples* passívæ vócis *of the pássive voice*,—præsértim *espécially* si *if* éxeunt in -dus *they end in -dus :* ut *as*, mágnus cívis *a great or míghty cítizen or súbject* óbiit (*for* obívit) *died*, et *and* formidátus (one) *féared* Othóni *to O'tho, that is, a pérson dréaded by O'tho*. Chrémes réstat *Chrémes remains*, qui *who* est is exorándus *to be beséeched* míhi *to me, that is, to be yet prevéiled upón by me*.

Participía *párticiples*, cùm *when* fiunt *they are made or becóme* (adjectíva) nómina *ádjective nouns* éxigunt *require* genitívum (cásum) *a génitive case :* ut *as*, áppetens *gréedy* aliéni (negótii) *of anóther man's próperty*,—profúsus *lávish* súi (negótii) *of his own*.

Exósus *háting*, perósus *útterly háting*, pertǽsus *wéary of*, significántia *signifying* actívè *áctively*, éxigunt *require* accusatívum (cásum) *an accúsative case :* ut *as*, astrónomus *an astrónomer* exósus *háting* mulíeres *wómen* ad únam (mulíe-rem) *to one, that is, in géneral.* Perósæ *útterly háting* im-

múndam segnítiem *filthy sloth or idleness.* Pertésus *quite weáry or tíred of* súam ignáviam *his own slúggishness.*

Exósus *detésted,* et *and* perósus *háted to death,* significántia *signifying* passívè *pássively,* legúntur *are read* cum *with* datívo (cásu) *a dátive case:* ut *as,* exósus *detésted or greátly háted* Déo *of God,* et *and* sánctis *the saints.* Germáni *the Gérmans* sunt *are* perósi *mórtally ódious* Románis *to the Rómans, that is, are mórtally háted by the Rómans.*

Nátus *born,* prognátus *prócreated,* sátus *sprung,* crétus *descénded,* creátus *begótten or prodúced,* órtus *rísen,* éditus *brought forth,* éxigunt *requíre* ablatívum (cásum) *an áblative case;* et *and* sǽpè *óftentimes* cum *with* præpositióne *a preposítion:* ut *as,* bóna (fémina) *a vírtuous lády* prognáta *born* bónis paréntibus *of vírtuous párents.* Sáte *O thou who art sprung* sánguine *from the blood* Dívûm *(for* Divórum*) of the Gods!* Quo sánguine *from what blood* crétus *descénded!* Vénus órta *Vénus sprung* mári *from the sea* prǽstat *secúres* máre *the sea* eúnti *to the pérson góing, that is, to the pássenger.* Éditus *sprung* térrâ *from the earth.* Fúi *I was* nýmpha *a nymph* édita *descénded* de mágno flúmine *from a great ríver.*

EN *lo or behóld* et *and* éccè *look or see,* advérbia *adverbs* demonstrándi *of shówing,* jungúntur *are jóined* frequéntiùs *more fréquently, that is, most cómmonly* nominatívo (cásui) *to a nóminative case:* accusatívo (cásui) *to an accúsative,* ráriùs *séldomer, that is, less fréquently:* ut *as,* èn *see* Príamus *Príam.* Ec'cè tíbi *behóld for thee* nóster státus *our state or condítion.* En *lo* quátuor áras *four áltars:* éccè *see there* dúas (áras) *two* tíbi *for thee,* Dáphni *O Dáphnis,* átquè *and* dúo altária *two sacríficial hearths* Phǽbo *for Phǽbus or Apóllo.*

En *lo or behóld,* et *and* éccè *look at or see,* (advérbia) exprobrándi *ádverbs of upbráiding,* jungúntur *are jóined* accusatívo (cásui) *to an accúsative case ónly:*—ut *as,* èn ánimum et méntem *see a mind and a disposítion.* Aútèm *but* éccè álterum *see the óther (here).*

QUÆDAM advérbia *cértain ádverbs* lóci *of place,* témporis *of time,* et *and* quantitátis *of quántity,* admíttunt *admít* genitívum (cásum) *a génitive case.*

1. Lóci *of place:* ut *as,* úbì *where,* úbìnàm *where,* nusquàm *no where* éò *thíther,* lóngè *far,* quò *whíther,* úbìvìs *ány where,*

húccinè *what hither, &c.*—ut *as*, úbì géntium *where of nátions or in the world?* Invenítur *he is found* núsquàm lóci *no where of place, that is, no where.* Est véntum *it is come, that is, men are now arrived* eò impudéntiæ *at that (degreé) of impudence.* Quò terrárum *to what part of lands or of the globe or earth* ábîit *(for abívit) is he gone?*

2. Témporis *of time :* ut *as*, nùnc *now*, tùnc *then*, tùm *then*, intéreà *in the mean time*, prídiè *the day befóre*, postrídiè, *the day áfter, &c. :* ut *as*, póteram *I could do* níhil *nóthing* ámplìùs *more* tùnc témporis *then of time, that is, at that time* quàm *than* flére *weep.* Iniérunt *(for invérunt) they éntered or begán* púgnam *the fight or báttle* prídiè *the day befóre* éjus diéi *that day.* Prídiè *the day befóre* calendárum *the cálends of the month*, vèl *or* caléndas *the cálends of the month.*

3. Quantitátis *of quántity :* ut *as*, párùm *but líttle*, sátis *enoúgh*, abúndè *abúndantly, &c.*—ut *as*, sátis eloquéntiæ *enoúgh of éloquence*, párum sapiéntiæ *líttle enoúgh of wísdom.* Audívimus *we have heard* abúndè fabulárum *abúndantly of tales, that is, a world of fábles.*

QUÆDAM (advérbia) *some ádverbs* admíttunt *admít* cásus *the cáses* nóminum *of the nouns* úndè *whence or from which* sunt dedúcta *they are dedúced, or were derived :*—ut *as*, vívit *he lives* inutíliter *úselessly or unprófitably* síbi *to himsélf.* Maúri *the Moors* sunt *are* próximè Hispániam *next to Spain.* Mélìùs *bétter*, vèl *or* óptimè *the best* ómnium *of all.* Morabátur *he staid or tárried* ámplìùs opinióne *more than opinion, that is, lónger than was expécted.*

(Hæc) advérbia *these ádverbs* diversitátis *of divérsity*, áliter *ótherwise*, sécùs *ótherwise ;* et *and* illa dúo (advérbia) *these two*, ántè *befóre*, pòst *áfter*, non ráró jungúntur *are not séldom joined, that is, are óften joined* ablatívo (cásui) *to an áblative :*—ut *as*, múltò áliter *much ótherwise.* Paúlò sécùs *little ótherwise.* Múltò ántè *much befóre.* Paúlò pòst *a little áfter.* Vènit *she came* lóngo témpore pòst *a long time áfter.*

Ínstar *like, or équal to,* et *and* érgô *becaúse or for the sake of* súmpta *béing assúmed or táken* adverbiáliter *advérbially, that is, as ádverbs*, hábent *have* genitívum (cásum) *a génitive case* post se *áfter them :* ut *as*, ædíficant *they build* équum *a horse* divínâ árte *by the divíne art or aid* Pálladis *of Pállas, or Minérva*, ínstar móntis *as big as a moúntain.* Donári *to be gífted or rewárded* érgô *for the sake of* virtútis *vírtue.*

CONJUNCTIÓNES *conjúnctions* copulatívæ *cópulative* et **and** disjunctívæ *disjúnctive* conjúngunt *join togéther, that is, connéct* símiles cásus *like cáses,* (símiles) módos (*like*) *moods,* et, *and* (simília) témpora (*like*) *ténses :*—ut *as,* Sócrates dócuit, *Sócratës taught* Xenophóntem *Xénophon* et *and* Platónem *Pláto.* Stat *he stands* récto córpore *with eréct bódy, that is, with his bódy eréct or úpright,* átquè *and* déspicit *looks down upón* térras *the lands or earth.* Nèc scríbit *he néither writes* nèc légit *nor reads.*

Nìsi *unléss* rátio *the reáson or the adóption* váriæ construc-tiónis *of a dífferent constrúction* póscat *require* áliud *anóther thing, that is, that it should be ótherwise :*—ut *as,* émi *I bought* líbrum *a book* centússi *for a húndred pence* et *and* plúris *more.* Víxi *I lived* Rómæ *at Rome* et *and* Venétiis *at Vénice.* Nìsi *unléss* lactásses (*for* lactavísses) me *you had súckled or fed me up* amántem *lóving or béing in love,* et *and* prodúceres *were dráwing me on, that is, had drawn* (or *continued to draw*) me *on* fálsâ spe *with false hope.*

Quàm *the conjúnction* "quàm" *than,* sæpè *oftentimes* intel-lígitur *is understoód* post *áfter* (hæc advérbia *these ádverbs*) ámpliùs *more,* plus *more* et *and* mínùs *less :* ut *as,* sunt *there are* ámpliùs *more, that is, it is more* sex ménses (*than*) *six months.* Paúlò plùs *sómewhat more* trecénta vehícula (*than*) *three húndred cárriages* sunt amíssa *were lost.* Nix *the snow* núnqùam *néver* jácuit *lay* álta *deep* mínùs *less* quátuor pédes (*than*) *four feet.*

QUÍBUS módis *únto what moods* verbórum *of verbs* quædam advérbia *cértain ádverbs* et *and* conjunctiónès *conjúnc-tions* cóngruant *correspónd.*

Nè, àn, nùm *whéther or not,* pósita *béing put or úsed* dubi-tatívè *doúbtfully,* aùt or indefinítè *indéfinitely,* jungúntur *are joined* subjunctívo (módo) *únto a subjúnctive mood :* ut *as,* réfert níhil *it mátters nóthing, or, it makes no dífference* fece-rísne *whéther you did it* àn or persuáseris *persuáded* (*to it*). Víse *go see* nùm *whéther or not* redíerit (*for* redíverit) *he be retúrned.*

Dùm *whilst* pro *for* dúmmodò *so that,* et *and* quoúsquè *until,* póstulat *claims or demánds* subjunctívum (módum) *a subjúnctive mood :*—ut *as,* dùm *so that* prósim *I may prófit* tíbi *you.* Dùm *until* tértia æstas *the third súmmer* víderit *shall have seen or behéld* (íllum) regnántem *him réigning.*

Qui *who* signíficans *signifying* caúsam *the cause*, éxigit *requíres* subjunctívum (módum) *a subjúnctive mood :* ut *as*, es *you are* stúltus *a fool* qui crédas *who can beliéve*, *that is, for beliéving* huic (hómini) *this féllow*.

Ut *that* pro *for* póstquam *áfter that, or, since that*, sícùt *as*, et *and* quómodò *how*, júngitur *is joined* indicatívo (módo) *to an indicative mood :* aútèm *but* cùm *when* dénŏtat *it implies or signifies* quánquàm *although*, útpotè *for as much as*, vèl *or* finálem caúsam *the final cause*, (júngitur *it is joined*) subjunctívo (módo) *to a subjúnctive mood :* ut *as*, ut *since that* súmus *we are* in Pónto *in Póntus*, Íster *the Dánube* cónstitit frígore *has stood with cold, that is, has been frózen* tèr *three times*. Ut *as* túte *you yoursélf* es *are*, ità *so* cénses *you judge or think* ómnes *that all* ésse *are*. Ut *although* ómnia (negótia) *all things* contíngant *should fall out*, quæ (negótia) *which* vólo *I wish, or I would*, non póssum *I cánnot* leári *be eásed*. Non est fidéndum *it is not to be trústed, that is, no trust is to be given* tíbi *to you* ut qui *as one who* fefélleris *have deceíved* tótiès *so oft, that is, because you have so fréquently been found a deceíver*. Dáve *O Dávus*, óro *I intreát* te *you* ut *that*, jàm *now* rédeat *he may retúrn* in víam *into the way*.

Déniquè *lástly*, ómnes vóces *all words* pósitæ *put* indefinítè *indéfinitely*, quáles *such as* sunt (hæ vóces) *are these*, quis *who*, quántus *how great*, quótus *how many*, &c. póstulant *require* subjunctívum (módum) *the subjúnctive mood :* ut *as*, vídeo *I see* cui *to whom, or to what sort of man* scríbam *I am writing*. Quántus *how great* assúrgat *he ríses up* in clýpeum (hóstis) *against the enemy's shield :* quo túrbine *with what a whirl or force* tórqueat *he hurls* hástam *the lance !*

Præpositio *a preposition* subaudíta *understoód* intérdùm *sómetimes* fácit *makes, or caúses*, ut *that* ablatívus (cásus) *an áblative case* addátur *be ádded :* ut *as* hábeo *I have (or I esteém)* te *you* lóco *in the place* paréntis *of a párent*, id est, *that is*, in lóco.

Præpositio *a preposition* in compositióne *in compositíon* nonnúnquam *sómetimes* régit *góverns* eúndem cásum *the same case* quem (cásum) *which* regébat *it góverned* et álso *also* éxtra compositiónem *out of composition :* ut *as*, detrúdunt *they thrust off* náves *the ships or véssels* scópulo *from the rock*. Prætéreo *I pass by* te *you* insalutátum *unsalúted, that is, I pass you without salúting you.*

Vérba *verbs* compósita *compoúnded* cum *with* (præpositiónibus *the prepositions*) à, ab, ad, con, de, è, ex, in, nonnúnquàm *sómetimes* répetunt *repeát* eásdem præpositiónes *the same prepositions* cum súo cásu *with their case, that is, with the case which they góvern*, éxtra compositiónem *out of composition,*—átquè *and* id *that or this* elegántèr *élegantly :*—ut *as,* abstinuérunt *they abstaíned* à víno *from wine.*

In *the preposition " in,"* pro *for* érga *tówards,* cóntra *agaínst,* ad *to,* et *and* súpra *abóve,* éxigit *requíres* accusatívum (cásum) *an accúsative case :*—ut *as,* áccipit *she recéives or admíts* ánimum *a féeling* átquè *and* méntem *a mind* benígnam *kind, that is, she concéives or entertaíns kíndly thoughts and* inclinátions in Teúcros *tówards the Trójans.* Péccem *I should offénd* in pública cómmoda *against the públic advántage, or good.* Héres *an heir* quéritur *is sought* in régnum *for the kíngdom.* Impérium *the góvernment or pówer* Jóvis *of Júpiter* est *is* in réges ípsos *óver kings themsélves.*

Sub *the preposition " sub" únder,* cùm *when* refértur *it has relátion or relátes* ad témpus *to time,* férè *cómmonly* júngitur *is joíned* accusatívo (cásui) *to an accúsative case :* ut *as,* sub ídem témpus *about the same time,* id est *that is,* círca abóut vèl *or* per *throughoút* ídem témpus.

Súper *the preposition " súper" óver,* prò *for* última *beyónd,* appónitur *is put* accusatívo (cásui) *to an accúsative case ;* pro *for* de *of or concérning* (appónitur *is put*) ablatívo (cásui) *to an áblative :*—ut *as,* próferet *he will exténd* impérium *the émpire (or kíngdom)* et *both* súper Garamántas *beyónd the Garamátians or Áfricans* et *and* Índos *the In'dians.* Rógitans *inquíring and inquíring óver agáin* múlta *mány things (or much),* súper Príamo *concérning Príam,* múlta *mány things (or much)* súper Héctore *abóut or concérning Héctor.*

Ténus *as far as* júngitur *is joíned* ablatívo (cásui) *to an áblative case* et *both* singulári (número) *in the síngular* et *and* pluráli (número) *plúral númber :*—ut *as,* ténus púbe *as high as the waist or groin.* Ténus pectóribus *up to the breasts.*

At *but* genitívo (cásui) *to a génitive case* pluráli (número) *in the plúral númber* tántùm alóne : *et* and *sémpèr* séquitur *it álways fóllows* súum cásum *its case :*—ut *as,* crúrum ténus *as high as the legs.*

Interjectiónes *interjéctions* ponúntur *are put, that is, are* úsed, non rárò *not séldom, in óther words, are fréquently

emplóyed **síne cásu** *without a case :*—ut *as,* conníxa *háving yeáned,* relíquit *she abándoned or left* spem grégis *the hope of the flock,* ah *alás!* in núdâ sílice *upón the bare flint, that is, on the hard and náked rock.* Quæ deméntia *what mádness* (*is this*) málum (*with*) *a míschief!*

O! exclamántis *the interjéction " O!" of a pérson exclaíming,* júngitur *is joíned* nominatívo (cásui) *to a nóminative case,* accusatívo (cásui) *to an accúsative,* et *and* vocatívo (cásui) *to a vócative :*—ut *as,* O féstus díes *O! the jóyful day* hóminis *of* (*mórtal*) *man!* O nímiùm fortunátos agrícolas *O! too fórtunate húsbandmen,* si *if* nôrint (*for* nóverint) *they knew* súa bóna *their own háppiness!* O formóse púer *O! beaútiful boy,* nè créde *trust not* nímiùm *too much* colóri *to cólour, or compléxion; that is, to your beaúty.*

Heù *ah!* et *and* proh *wo!* or *alás!* jungúntur *are joíned* nùnc *now or sómetimes* nominatívo (cásui) *to a nóminative case,* nùnc *now or at óther times* accusatívo (cásui) *to an accúsative :*—ut *as,* heù píetas *ah! his píety!* Heù prísca fídes *ah! the áncient intégrity!* Heù invísam stírpem *ah! the ódious stock or race!* Proh! Júpiter *O! Júpiter,* tu *thou,* hómo *man,* ádigis me *drívest me* ad insániam *to mádness.* Proh fídem *alas! the faith or help* Déûm (*for* Deórum) *of Gods* átquè *and* hóminum *of men!* Ítem *likewise* vocatívo (cásui) *to a vócative case* ·—ut *as,* Proh! sáncte Júpiter *O! sácred Jove.*

Heì *wo!* et *and* væ *alás!* jungúntur *are joíned* datívo (cásui) *to a dátive case :*—ut *as,* heì míhi *wo! me* quòd *that* amor *love* est *is* medicábilis *cúrable* núllis hérbis *by no herbs or médicaments.* Væ *alás!* mísero míhi *wrétched me, that is, O alás! wrétched man that I am,* de quántâ spe *from how great hope* décidi *have I fállen,—that is, from what high hopes am I fállen!*

PROSODY CONSTRUED.

Prosódia *prósody* est *is* (éa) *pars that part* grammáticæ *of grámmar,* quæ *which* dócet *teáches* quantitátem *the quántity or true time* syllabárum *of sýllubles.*

Prosódia *prósody* (vúlgò) divíditur *is* (*cómmonly*) *divíded* in

tres pártes *into three parts*, tónum *the tone*, spíritum *the breathing*, et *and* témpus *the time*.

Hoc lóco *in this place* est vísum nóbis *it is seen to us, that is, it is thought próper by us*, tractáre *to treat* tántùm *only* de témpore *of time or quántity*.

Témpus *time* est *is* mensúra *the meásure or durátion* proferéndæ sýllabæ *of úttering or pronoúncing a sýllable*.

Bréve témpus *a short quántity or time* notátur *is márked or distínguished* sîc *thus* (̆):—ut *as*, (grátiâ exémpli, *for the sake of exámple*), Dŏ̆mĭnŭs *the Lord* :—aútèm *but* lóngum (témpus) *a long quántity* (notátur *is márked*) sîc *thus or áfter this fáshion* (̄) :—ut *as*, cōn'trā *against*.

Pes *a foot* est *is* constitútio *the plácing togéther* duárum syllabárum *of two sýllables* vèl *or* plúrium (syllabárum) *of more (than two)* ex *from* (or *accórding to*) cértâ observatióne *the cértain observátion (or obsérvance)* témporum *of the times or meásures of the sýllables*.

Spondǽus *a spóndee* est *is* dissýllabus (pes) *a díssyllable foot, that is, a foot consísting of two sýllables:* ut *as*, vīr'-tūs *virtue*.

Dáctylus *a dáctyle* est *is* trisýllabus (pes) *a trisýllable foot,—that is, a métrical foot consísting of three sýllables:* ut *as*, scrĭ'-bĕ-rĕ *to write*.

Scánsio *scánsion or scánning* est *is* legítima commensurátio *the legítimate commensurátion (or, the meásuring accórding to Rule)* vérsûs *of a verse* in síngulos pédes *into its séveral feet, that is, the divíding it corréctly into the métrical feet whereóf it is fórmed*.

Scansióni *to scánsion, or the scánning of a verse*, áccidunt *there háppen or belóng* figúræ *the fígures* (appellátæ *cálled*) Synalépha, Ecthlípsis, Synǽresis, Diǽresis, et *and* Cæsúra.

Synalépha *the fígure Synalépha* est *is* elísio *the elísion or stríking out* vocális *of a vówel* in fíne *in or at the end* dictiónis *of a word* ánte álteram (vocálem) *befóre anóther (vówel)* in inítio *in the begínning* sequéntis (dictiónis) *of the fóllowing word* :—ut *as*, crástina víta *to-mórrow's life* est *is* nímis séra *too late*, víve *live*, hódiè *to-day*. *In this verse*, pro *for* vĭ'tă, vĭ'vĕ, *we pronoúnce or say* vĭt' *and* vĭ'v'.

At *but* heù ! *alás !* et *and* O ! *the interjéction* O ! núnquàm intercipiúntur *are néver intercépted, or struck out ; that is, are néver elíded by synalépha*.

M 3

Ecthlípsis *the figure Ecthlípsis* est *is* quótiès *as óften as* m *the létter* m perímitur *is cut off* cum *with* súâ vocáli *its vówel,* próximâ dictióne *the next word* exórsâ *begínning* à vocáli *with a vówel:* ut *as,* mónstrum *a mónster* horréndum *hórrible,* infórme *úgly,* íngens *huge or* of *vast bulk,* cúi *to whom* lúmen *the light* (est) adémptum *has been táken awáy, that is, a hórrid, úgly, big mónster, depríved of his sight. In this verse* pro *for* mónstrum horréndum, infórme, *we pronoúnce* mónstr' mhorrénd' minfórm'.

Synǽresis *the figure Synǽresis* est *is* contráctio *the contráction* duárum syllabárum *of two sýllables* in únam (sýllabam) *into one :*—ut *as,* seù *or whéther* alveária *the bee-hives* fúerint téxta *may have been wóven* lénto vímine *of límber ósier.* *Here the word* alveária *is pronoúnced* quásì *as though* esset scríptum *it were wrítten* alvária.

Diǽresis *the figure Diǽresis* est *is* ùbì *when* ex únâ sýllabâ *of one sýllable* disséctâ *divíded* dúæ (sýllabæ) *two sýllables* fíunt *are made:*—ut *as,* debúerant *they ought* (*literally, had ówed*) evoluísse *to have unwoúnd* súos fúsos *their spindles.* Evoluísse, pro *for* evolvísse.

Cæsúra *the figure Cæsúra* est *is* cùm *when* post *áfter* absolútum pédem *an ábsolute or a pérfect foot* brévis sýllaba *a short sýllable* exténditur *is exténded or made long* in fíne dictiónis *in or at the end of a word :*—ut *as,* ínhians *intént upón* pectóribus *the víscera, or ínner parts,* cónsulit *she consúlts* spirántia éxta *the reéking or pánting éntrails.*

Heróïcus vérsus *an heróïc verse,* qui (vérsus) *which* dícitur étiam *is cálled álso* Hexámeter (*by the name of*) *Hexámeter* cónstat *consists* ex sex pédibus *of six feet :*—quíntus lócus *the fifth place* (*of the verse*) peculiáritèr *pecúliarly* (*or, in a spécial mánner*) víndicat síbi *árrogates or claims to itsélf* dáctylum *a dáctyle,*—séxtus (lócus) *the sixth* (*place requíres*) spondéum *a spóndee ;* réliqui, (lóci) *the óther pláces* (hábent) *have this foot* vèl íllum *or that* (*either a dáctyle or a spóndee*) próut *accórding as* vólumus *we will or like :* ut *as,* Títyre *O Títyrus,* tu *thou,* récubans *reclíning* sub tégmine *únder the cóver* pátulæ fági *of a wide-spreáding beéch-tree.*

Spondǽus *a spóndee* étiam *álso* aliquándò *sómetimes* reperítur *is found* in quínto lóco *in the fifth place :*—ut *as,* cára sóboles (thou) *dear óffspring* Déûm (*for* Deórum) *of the*

Gods, mágnum increméntum *great increment, that is, illústrious prógeny* Jóvis *of Júpiter.*

Última sýllaba *the last sýllable* cujuscúnque vérsûs *of évery verse* habétur *is accóunted* commúnis *cómmon, that is, may be either a long or a short sýllable at pleásure.*

Elegíacus vérsus *an elegíac verse,* qui (vérsus) *which* et *álso* hábet *has* nómen *the name* Pentámetri *of Pentámeter,* cónstat *consists* è dúplici penthemímeri *of a dóuble penthémimer, that is, of two penthémimers,* quárum (penthemímerum) *whereóf or of which* prior (penthemímeris) *the fórmer or first of the two* compreheéndit *contains* dúos pédes *two feet,* dactýlicos *dactýlic, that is, dáctyles,* spondíacos *spondáic or spóndees,—* vèl *or* alterútros *either the one or the óther of those;* cum *with* lóngâ sýllabâ *a long sýllable:—*áltera (penthemímeris) *the other penthémimer* (compreheéndit) étiàm *contains álso* dúos pédes *two feet,* sèd *but* omnínò dactýlicos *whólly dactýlic, that is, álways dáctyles,* ítem *likewise* cum *with* lóngâ sýllabâ *a long sýllable:—*ut *as,* ámor *love* est *is* res *a thing* pléna *full* sollíciti timóris *of ánxious fear.*

<center>THE QUANTITY OF FIRST AND MIDDLE SYLLABLES.</center>

I. Vocális *a vówel* ánte *befóre* dúas consonántes *two cónsonants,* aùt *or* dúplicem (consonántem) *a dóuble cónsonant,* in eâdem dictióne *in the same word,* est *is* ubíquè *éverywhere* lónga *long* positióne *by position:* ut *as,* (*in the words*) vēn'tus *the wind,* ax'is *an áxle-tree,* patrĭ'zo *I act like my father,* cū'jus *of whom or of what.*

II. Quòd si *but if* cónsonans *a cónsonant* claúdat *términate or close* priórem dictiónem *the fórmer word* (*that is, the first word of the two*), sequénte (dictióne) *the fóllowing word* ítem *álso* inchoánte *beginning* à consonánte *by or with a cónsonant,* vocális *the vówel* præcédens *góing befóre* étiàm *álso* érit *will be* lónga *long* positióne *by position:—*ut *as,* sum *I am* májor *gréater* quàm *than* cúi *whom, that is, one whom* fortúna *fórtune* póssit *is áble* nocére *to hurt.* Sýllabæ *the sýllables* -jor, -sum, quàm, et *and* -sit, sunt lóngæ *are (here) long* positióne *by position.*

III. At si *but if* prior díctio *the first word of the two* éxeat *términate* in brévem vocálem *in a short vówel,* sequénte (dictióne) *the fóllowing word* incipiénte *beginning* à duábus consonántibus *by or with two cónsonants,* intérdum *sómetimes*

prodúcitur *it is made long, that is, the final létter is léngth-
ened,* sèd *but* ráriùs *séldomer,* meáning, *not óften :*—ut *as,*
occúltā spóliă *the sécret spoils : here the final* " a" *of* " occúl-
tā" *is léngthened befóre inítial* " sp-" *either by this Rule or
by Cæsúra.*

IV. Brévis vocális *a short vówel* ánte mútam (líteram)
befóre a mute, líquidâ (líterâ) sequénte *a líquid fóllowing,*
rédditur *is réndered* commúnis *cómmon :*—ut *as (in the words)*
pátris *of a fáther,* vólucris (vèl volúcris) *of a bird.* Vérò *but*
lónga (vocális) *a long vówel* non mutátur *is not áltered or
chánged :*—ut *as (in the words)* arátrum *a plough,* simulá-
crum *an ímage.*

VOCÁLIS *a vówel* ánte álteram (vocálem) *befóre anóther
vówel* in éâdem dictióne *in the same word* est *is* ubíquè *évery-
where* brévis *short :*—ut *as (in the words)* De͝us *God,* me͝us
mine, tu͝us *thine,* pi͝us *gódly or afféctionate.*

Excípias *you may or must excépt* genitívos (cásus) *génitive
cáses* (finítos) in -ius *énding in -ius,* habéntes *háving* secún-
dam fórmam *the sécond form or declénsion* pronóminis *of a
prónoun :*—ut *as,* únius vèl uníus *of one,* íllius vèl illíus *of
him, her, it or that, &c. ;* úbi *where or in which* i *the vówel*
" i" reperítur *is found* commúnis *cómmon ;* lícet *althoúgh* in
altérius *in the word* "altérius" *of anóther,* sit *it be* sémpèr
álways brévis *short :* in alíus *in the génitive* " alíus" *of an-
óther,* (sit) sémpèr *it be álways* lónga *long.*

Étiàm *likewise* genitívi (cásus) *the génitive* et *and* datívi
(cásus) *dative cáses* quíntæ declinatiónis *of the fifth declénsion*
sunt *are* excipiéndi *to be excepted,* úbi *where, or in which* e
the vówel " e" ínter *betwixt or betweén* géminum i *double* " i"
that is, precéded and fóllowed by the létter " i," fit *is made*
lónga *long ;* ut *as (in the word)* faciéi *of a face :*—alióquì non
ótherwise not ; ut *as (in the words)* réi *of a thing,* spéi *of
hope,* fídei *of faith.*

Etiàm *álso* fi- *the sýllable fi-* in fío *in the verb* "fío" *I am
made or I becóme,* est lónga *is long ;* nísì *unless* e et r *the
létters e and r* sequúntur *fóllow* símùl *togéther :* ut *as (in the
two words)* fi͝erem *I might becóme,* fi͝eri *to be made or done :*
—vélùt *thus,* jàm *now* ómnia (negótia) *all things* fiunt *are
done* quæ (negótia) *which* negábam *I denied* pósse *were áble*
fíeri *to be done, that is, which I assérted could not be done.*

Díus *gódlike or héavenly* hábet *has* prímam sýllabam *the*

first syllable lóngam *long:*—Diána *the próper name Diána* (hábet prímam sýllabam) commúnem *has the first syllable cómmon.*

Interjéctio óhe *the interjéction "óhe"* hábet *has* priórem sýllabam) *the príor syllable, that is, the first syllable of the two* commúnem *cómmon.*

Vocális *a vówel* ánte álteram (vocálem) *befóre anóther vówel* in Grǽcis dictiónibus *in Greek words* subíndè *now and then* fit *is made* lónga *long;* ut *as,* dícite Pïérides *say, O ye Múses.* Réspice Laérten *regárd Läértës.*

Et *and* in Grǽcis possessívis (nomínibus) *in Greek posséssives:* ut *as,* Ænḗïa nútrix *the Ænéan nurse, that is, Ænéas's nurse.* Rhodopḗïus Or'pheus, *Rhodopéan Or'pheus, that is, Or'pheus of Rhódopë.*

Om'nis diphthóngus *évery díphthong* est *is* lónga *long* ápud Latínos *amóng or with the Látins:*—ut *as,* aū'rum *gold,* neū'ter *neither,* músæ *of or to a song:* nĭsì *unless or excépt* præ *the preposition "præ,"* vocáli sequénte *a vówel fóllowing, that is, when a vówel fóllows:* ut *as,* prǣïre *to go befóre,* prǣústus *burnt at one end,* prǣámplus *véry large.*

Derivatíva (vocábula) *derivative words* ferè *in géneral, or cómmonly,* sortiúntur *are allótted or assigned* eándem quantitátem *the same quántity* cum *with* primitívis (vocábulis) *their prímitives, that is, with the words from which they are deríved:*—ut *as,* ămátor *a lóver,* ămícus *a friend,* ămábilis *ámiable;* prímâ (sýllabâ existénte) brévi *the first syllable béing short,*—ab ă'mŏ (*becaúse deríved) from (the verb)* "ă'mŏ" *I love.*

Támen *howéver* paúca (vérbula) *a few words* excipiúntur *are excépted,* quæ (vérbula) *which* dedúcta *béing deríved* à brévibus (sýllabis) *from short syllables* prodúcunt *exténd or léngthen* prímam sýllabam *the first syllable:*—ut *as,* cŏ'mŏ cŏ'nis *I comb or adórn the hair,* à cŏ'mă (*deríved) from* "cŏ'mă" *the hair;* fŏ'mĕs *fúel,* et *and* fōmēn'tŭm *an assuáging pláster,* à *from* fŏ'vĕŏ *I chérish;* hūmā'nŭs *húman, or humáne,* ab hŏ'mŏ *from* "hŏ'mŏ" *a man (or wóman):* jūcūn'dŭs *pléasant,* à *from* jŭ'vŏ *I delíght;* jūmēn'tŭm *a beast of búrden,* à *from* jŭ'vŏ *I help;* jŭ'nĭŏr *yoúnger,* à *from* jŭ'vĕnĭs *young,*—*unléss this last be rightly a contráction for* jŭvĕ'nĭŏr; lātēr'nă *a lántern,* à *from* lă'tĕŏ *I lie hid;* lēx lē'gĭs *a law,* à *from* lē'gŏ *I read;* mŏ'bĭlĭs *móveable* à *from* mŏ'vĕŏ *I move;* nŏ'nŭs *the ninth* à *from* nŏ'vĕm *nine;* rēx rē'gĭs *a king,*

rēgī′nă *a queen*, à *from* rĕ′gŏ *I rule :* sē′dēs *a seat*, à *from*
sĕ′dĕŏ *I sit ;* tē′gŭlă *a tile*, à *from* tĕ′gŏ *I cóver ;* trā′gŭlă *a
jávelin, álso a drag-net,* à *from* trā′hŏ *I drag or draw ;* vŏ′-
mĕr *a plough-share*, à *from* vŏ′mŏ *I throw out or cast up ;*
vōx vō′cĭs *a voice*, à *from* vŏ′cŏ *I call.*

Et *and* cóntrà *upón the óther hand* sunt (dícta) *there are
words,* quæ (dícta) *which* (étsì) dedúcta (althoúgh) *deríved* à
lóngis (sýllabis) *from long sýllables, that is, from prímitives
with or of long quántity (yet)* corrípiunt *shórten* prímam (sýl-
labam) *the first sýllable :* ut *as,* ărĕ′nă *sand,* ărīs′tă *the beard
of corn,* ărŭn′dŏ *a reed,* ab *from* ā′rĕŏ *I am dry or párched ;*
ărūs′pēx *a soóthsayer, or divíner,* ab *from* ā′ră *an áltar ;*
dĭ′cāx *a jéster,* à *from* dĭ′cŏ *I speak or say ;* dĭ′tĭŏ *pówer,* à
from dĭ′tĭs *ópulent, or rich ;* dĭsēr′tŭs *éloquent,* à *from* dĭs′-
sĕrŏ *I dispúte ;* dūx dŭ′cĭs *a leáder,* à *from* dŭ′cŏ *I lead ;*
fĭ′dēs *faith,* à *from* fī′ŏ *I am made or I becóme :* frā′gŏr *a
rústling noise or crash,* frā′gĭlĭs *frail,* à *from* frān′gŏ *I break ;*
gĕ′nŭī *I begát,* à *from* gĭg′nŏ *I begét ;* lŭcĕr′nă *a cándle,* à
from lŭ′cĕŏ *I shine ;* nă′tŏ nă′tās *I shoot out,* à *from* nā′tū *to
be grown or to be sprung up ;* nŏ′tŏ nŏ′tās *I mark,* à *from*
nŏ′tū *to be known ;* pŏ′sŭī *I have put,* à *from* pŏ′nŏ *I put ;*
pŏ′tŭī *I have been áble,* à *from* pōs′sŭm *I am áble ;* sŏ′pŏr
sound sleep, à *from* sō′pĭŏ *I lull to sleep.*

Et *and* nonnúlla ália (dícta) *some few óther words* ex utró-
que génere *of either sort or kind,* quæ (dícta) *which* relin-
quúntur *are left* observánda *to be obsérved* studiósis *by the
stúdious* ínter legéndum *in (their) réading.*

Compósita (vérba) *cómpound words* sequúntur *fóllow* quan-
titátem *the quántity (long or short),* simplícium (verbórum)
of their símple words : ut *as,* à *from* lĕ′gŏ lĕ′gĭs *I read* (vénit
comes) pĕr′lĕgŏ *I read through ;* (à *from*) lĕ′gŏ lĕ′gās *I send
as an ambássador* (vénit *comes*) āllĕ′gŏ *I allége, or I accúse
by méssengers ;* à *from* pŏ′tēns *pówerful,* īm′pŏtēns *weak ;* à
from sō′lŏr *I sólace or cheer,* cōnsō′lŏr *I cómfort.*

Támĕn *yet or howéver* hæc (paúca) brévia (vérbula) *these
(few) short words, that is, these words háving short sýllables,*
(étsì) enáta (though) *deríved* à lóngis (sýllabis) *from long
sýllables,* excipiúntur *are excépted :*—dē′jĕrŏ *I swear a great
oath,* pē′jĕrŏ *I pérjure or forsweár,* à *from* jū′rŏ *I swear ;*
in′nŭbă *unmárried,* prŏ′nŭbă *a bride-maid,* à *from* nū′bŏ *I
márry or am márried.*

Om'ne prætéritum (témpus) *évery preterpérfect tense* dissýllabum *of two sýllables* hábet *has* priórem (sýllabam) *the first sýllable of the two* lóngam *long* :—ut *as,* lḕgi *I have read,* ḗmi *I have bought,* mṓvi *I have móved.*

1. Támèn *yet* excípias *you may* (*or must*) *excépt* (*the préterites*) bĭ'bi *I drank,* dĕ'di *I gave,* scī'di *I have cut,* stĕ'ti *I stood,* stī'ti *I stáyed,* tŭli *I bore or I súffered,* et *and* fī'di *I clove or cleft,* à *from* fíndo *I cleave.*

2. (Vérba) geminántia *verbs doúbling* prímam (sýllabam) *the first sýllable* prætériti (témporis) *of the preterpérfect* hábent *have* prímam (sýllabam) *the first sýllable* brévem *short ;* ut *as,* cĕ'cĭdi, *I fell or have fállen,* à *from* că'do *I fall ;* cĕcídi *I have beáten,* à *from* cǽdo *I beat ;* dĭ'dici *I have learnt,* fĕfélli *I have deceíved,* mŏmórdi *I bit or have bítten,* pĕpéndi *I weighed,* pŭ'pugi *I prícked,* tĕténdi *I strétched,* tĕ'tigi *I toúched,* tŏtóndi *I shore or I have shorn,* tŭ'tudi *I thúmped.*

Dissýllabum supínum *a dissyllable súpine, that is, ány súpine of two sýllables* hábet *has* priórem (sýllabam) *the fórmer or first sýllable* lóngam *long :* ut *as,* vī'sum *to see,* lǣ'tum *to bear or súffer,* lō'tum *to wash,* mō'tum *to move.*

Éxcipe *excépt* dă'tum *to give,* ĭ'tum *to go,* lĭ'tum *to besmeár or daub,* quĭ'tum *to be áble,* ră'tum *to suppóse,* rŭ'tum *to rush,* să'tum, *to sow,* sĭ'tum *to permít,* stă'tum *to stop,* et *and* cĭ'tum *to stir up,* à *from* cíeo cíes *I stir up ;* nàm *for* cī'tum *to make to go,* à *from* cío cis *I make to go,* quártæ (conjugatiónis) *of the fourth conjugátion,* hábet *hath* priórem (sýllabam) *the fórmer, or first, sýllable* lóngam *long.*

THE QUANTITY OF FINAL SYLLABLES.

I. A finíta ' a ' *final, that is, final sýllables in* -a producúntur *are prodúced or made long :*—ut *as,* ámā *love thou,* cóntrā *against,* érgā *tówards.*

Excípias *you may* (*or must*) *excépt,* pútā *suppóse,* ítă *éven so,* quiă *becaúse,* póstĕā *áfterwards,* éjă, *well !* Ìtèm *álso* ómnes cásus *all cáses* (finítos) in " a " *énding in* " a," cujuscúnque géneris *of whatéver génder* fúerint *they may have been, or are,* (cujuscúnque) númeri (*of whatéver*) *númber,* aùt *or* declinatiónis *declénsion ;* præter *excépt* vocatívos (cásus) vócatíve cáses à Grǽcis (dictiónibus finítis) in -ās *of Greek words énding in* -ās; ut *as,* O Ænéā *O Ænéas,* O Thómā *O Thómas* .—et *and* ablatívum (cásum) *the áblative*

case (*singular*) prímæ declinatiónis *of the first declénsion;*
ut *as,* músâ *by or with a song.*

Numerália (nómina) *númeral nouns, that is, nouns of
número* (finíta) in -gínta *énding in "gínta" hábent have*
finálem (líteram) *the fínal or last létter,* (*that is, the termina-
tional sýllable*) commúnem *cómmon,* sèd *but* frequéntiùs
óftener or more fréquently lóngam *long :*—ut *as,* trigíntă
thírty.

II. (Vérba) desinéntia *words énding* in b, d, t, *in ány of
the three mutes b, d, t,* sunt brévia *are short* (*as to the termi-
nátional or fínal sýllable*):—ut *as,* ăb *by or from,* ăd *to,*
căpŭt *the head.*

III. (Vérba) desinéntia in c *words énding in c* producún-
tur *are made long:*—ut *as,* āc *and,* sīc *so,* et *and* advérbium
the ádverb hīc *here.*

Sèd *but* dúo (vérbula finíta) in c *two* (*words énding*) *in c,*
corripiúntur *are shórtened,*—nĕc *neither,* et *and* dónĕc *until.*

Tría (vérbula) *three words* (*énding in c*) sunt commúnia
*are cómmon, that is, are éither long or short as to the quán-
tity of the sýllable thus términating, námely,* făc *do thou,* pro-
nómen "hīc" *the prónoun "hĭc,"* et *and* neútrum (génus) éjus
its neúter "hŏc," módò *províded ónly* non sit *it be not* ablatívi
cásûs *of the áblative case.*

IV. E finíta *'e' fínal, that is, words énding in -e,* sunt
brévia *are short* (*as to the last létter*):—ut *as,* márĕ *the sea,*
pénĕ *álmost,* légĕ *read thou,* scríbĕ *write.*

Ómnes vóces *all words* quíntæ inflectiónis *of the fifth de-
clénsion* (finíta) in -e *énding in -e* sunt excipiéndæ *are to be
excépted:*—ut *as,* fídē *with faith or fidélity,* (*the áblative case
of* fídes *faith*), et *and* díē *in the day-time or by day: únâ
togéther* cum *with* partículis *the pártícles (or words)* enátis
índè *deríved from it, that is, from "dĭē:"* ut *as,* hódiē *to-
day,* quotídiē *daily,* prídiē *the day befóre,* postrídiē *the day
áfter:* ítèm *also* quárē (*that is,* quâ re) *whérefore;* quadérē
(*that is,* quâ dē rē) *for what púrpose or cause;* eârē (*that is,*
ĕâ rē) *thérefore;* et *and* si quâ sunt simília (vocábula) *if
there be ány (more words) of the like sort or derivátion.*

Et ítèm *and álso* secúndæ persónæ singuláres *the sécond
pérsons síngular* secúndæ conjugatiónis *of the sécond conju-
gátion:* ut *as,* dócē *teach,* móvē *move.*

Etiàm *álso* monosýllaba (*all*) *mónosyllables* (finíta) in e

énding in " e" producúntur *are made long :*—ut *as,* mē *me,* tē *thee,* sē *himsélf, hersélf, itsélf, or themsélves ;* præter *excépt* enclíticas conjunctiónes *the enclitic or adjúnctive conjúnctions,* -quē *and* -nĕ *whether or not,* -vĕ *or.*

Quin et *morcóver, too,* advérbia *adverbs* (finíta) in -e *énding in " e,"* dedúcta *dedúced or derived* ab adjectívis *from adjectives* secúndæ declinatiónis *of the second declénsion* hábent *have* e *the létter e* lóngum *long :*—ut *as,* púlchrē *beaútifully ;* dóctē *leárnedly ;* váldē *mightily* pro *for* válidē.

Quíbus (vócibus) *to which* (advérbia) *the ádverbs* férmē *commonly,* et *and* férē *almost,* accédunt *accéde or are ádded :* támèn *yet* bénē *well,* et *and* málē *ill* omnínò corripiúntur *are altogéther or álways made short.*

Postrémò *lástly,* (vérba) quæ *words which* scribúntur *are written* à Grǽcis *by the Greeks* per η *with the létter " éta,"* *that is, long " é,"* producúntur *are léngthened* natúrâ *by nature,* cujuscúnque cásûs *of whatéver case* fúerint *they may have been, or are,* (cujuscúnque) géneris *(of whatéver génder),* aût or númeri *númber :* ut *as,* Léthē *the river Léthè, or Wáter of Oblívion;* Anchísē *with Anchíses ;* cétē *whales ;* Témpē *the vale of Témpè, a pléasant place in Théssaly.*

V. I finíta -*i final, that is, final sýllables in* i sunt lóngæ *are long :* ut *as,* dómini *lords,* magístri *másters,* amári *to be lóved.*

Práeter *excépt* míhĭ *to me,* tíbĭ *to thee,* síbĭ *to himsélf, hersélf, itsélf, or themsélves,* úbĭ *when or where,* íbĭ *there,* quæ (vérbula) *which words* sunt *are* commúnia *cómmon (as to the last sýllable).*

Vérò *but* nísĭ *unléss,* et *and* quásĭ *as if,* corripiúntur *are shórtened ; that is, they have the final " i" short.*

Cújus sórtis *of which kind* étiàm *likewise* sunt *are* datívi (cá·us) *the dátive (cáses)* et *and* vocatívi (cásus) *the vócative cáses* (singuláres *singular*) Græcórum (nóminum) *of Greek nouns ;* quórum (nóminum) *of which* genitívus (cásus) singuláris *the génitive case síngular* éxit *ends* in os bréve *in -ŏs short :*—ut *as,* (hī datívi (cásus) *these dátive cáses,* Minóidi *to Mínöis, or the daúghter of Mínos ;* Pálladi *to Pállas, that is, Minérva ;* Phýllidi *to Phýllis :* vocatívi (cásus) *these vócative cáses,* Aléxi *O Aléxis,* Amarýlli *O Amarýllis,* Dáphni *O Dáphnis.*

VI. L finíta -*l final, that is, final sýllables in* -l corripi-

úntur are *shórtened*:—ut *as*, ánĭmăl *an ánimal*, Ánnĭbăl *Hánnibal, a Carthagínian géneral*, měl *hóney*, púgĭl *a chámpion or bóxer*, cónsŭl *a cónsul.*

Práter *except* (*these three words*) nīl *nought*, contráctum *contrácted* à *of* (*or from*) níhĭl *nóthing*; săl *salt*, et *and* sōl *the sun.*

Et *and* quédam Hebréa (*nómina*) *some* (*or cértain*) *Hébrew words or names* (finíta) in -ēl *énding in -ēl*:—ut *as*, Míchaēl *the ángel Míchäel*, Gábriēl *the ángel Gábriel*, Ráphaēl *the ángel Ráphäel*, Dániēl *the próphet Dániel.*

VII. N finíta -*n fínal*, *that is, últimate sýllables in* -*n* producúntur *are léngthened:* ut *as*, Péăn *a hymn to Apóllo*, Hýmĕn *the god of wédlock*, *or, márriage*, quīn *but*, Xénophōn *a man's name*, nōn *no*, *or not*, démōn *a démon or dévil.*

Éxcipe *except* (*these words*) fórsăn *perháps*, fórsităn *perchánce*, ăn *whéther*, támĕn *yet*, áttamĕn *but yet*, verúntamĕn *nevertheléss*, et *and* in *the preposítion* " *in.*"

Et *and* his (*vócibus*) *to these* (*words*) accédunt *accéde or are ádded* illæ vóces *those words*, quæ (vóces) *which* patiúntur *súffer* apócopen *apócopè*,—*that is, loss at the end:* ut *as*, mě'n' (*for* méne?) *what me?* vidě'n' (*for* vidésne?) *do you see?* audĭ'n' (*for* audísne?) *do you hear?* Étiám *álso* éxĭn (*for* exíndè) *hénceforth*, súbĭn (*for* subíndè) *now and then*, dé'ĭn (*for* deíndè) *thereáfter*, *or*, *áfterwards*, próĭn (*for* proíndè) *thérefore.*

Quóquè in -an *álso words énding in* '-an,' à *from* nominatívis (cásibus) *nóminative cáses* (finítis) in -ă *énding in* " *a* :" ut *as*, nominatívo (cásu) *in the nóminative case*, Iphigenĭă *Iphigénia*, *a dáughter of Agamémnon*, Ægína Ǽgine, *a príncess of Bæótia*; accusatívo (cásu) *in the accúsative case*, Iphigenĭăn Ægínăn:—nàm *for* (vóces finítæ) *words in* ' *an*,' à *from* nominatívis (cásibus) *nóminative cáses* (finítis) in -ās *énding in* " *as*," producúntur *are léngthened:*—ut *as*, nominatívo (cásu) *in the nóminative case*, Ænéās *a Trójan prince of that name*, Mársyās *a Phrýgian sátyr so cálled:*— accusatívo (cásu) *in the accúsative case*, Ænéān, Mársyān.

Ítèm *álso* nómina *nouns in* -ĕn *énding in* " *ĕn*," quórum (nóminum) *whereóf* genitívus (cásus) *the génitive case* hábet *hath* -ĭnis, corréptum *shórtened*,—*that is, hath the pénult short:* —ut *as*, cármĕn *a song or póem*, crímĕn *a fáult or crime*, péctĕn *a comb*, tibícĕn *a pláyer on the flute*, (cúncta habéntia)

-ĭnis (in genitívo cásu) *háving all of them* -ĭnis *in the génitive case síngular.*

Quǽdam (nómina) *some nouns* étiàm *álso* (finíta) *in* -in *énding in* -in per -i *with an* -i, ut *as*, Aléxĭn, *Aléxis (in the objéctive case) :* et in -yn *and in* -yn per -y *with the létter* -y, ut *as*, Ítўn, *I'tys (in the objéctive case).*

Gréca (vérba) *Greek words* étiàm *álso* (finíta) *in* ‑on *énding in* -on, per *párvum* o *with líttle* o (*cálled by the Greeks* ŏmĭcrón), cujuscúnque cásûs *of whatsoéver case* fúerint *they be, literally, shall or may have been :—*ut *as*, nominatívo (cásu) *in the nóminative case (síngular)*, Ílĭŏn *the cíty Troy ;* Pélĭŏn *a hill of that name, in Théssaly :* accusatívo (cásu) *in the accúsative case*, Caúcasŏn *mount Caúcasus ;* Pýlŏn *the town Pýlos.*

VIII. O finíta -o *final, that is, final sýllables in* -o sunt commúnia *are cómmon (as to quántity) :* ut *as*, dícŏ *I say*, vírgŏ, *a vírgin*, pórrŏ *moreóver.* Sīc *so* docéndŏ *in teáching*, legéndŏ *in reáding*, et *and* ália gerúndia *other gérunds* (finíta) in -do (*énding*) *in* -do.

Sèd *but* oblíqui cásus in -o *oblíque cáses in* -o sémpèr *álways* producúntur *are léngthened ;* ut *as*, datívo (cásu) *in the dátive case*, dóminō *to a lord or máster ;* sérvō *to a slave or sérvant ;* ablatívo (cásu) *in the áblative case*, témplō *by or from a church or temple ;* dámnō *with loss.*

Et *and* advérbia *ádverbs* deriváta *derived* ab adjectívis (nomínibus) *from ádjective nouns :—*ut *as*, tántŏ *by so much*, quántŏ *by how much*, líquidŏ *cleárly*, fálsŏ *fálsely*, prímŏ *first*, maniféstŏ *mánifestly*, *&c.* prǽter *excépt* sédulŏ *díligently*, mútuŏ *mútually*, crébrŏ *fréquently*, quæ (advérbia) *which* sunt *are* commúnia *cómmon (as to the quántity of the final* -o).

Cǽterùm *but (these two)* módŏ *now or ónly, álso, próvided that*, et *and* quómodŏ *how*, sémpèr *álways* corripiúntur *are made short.*

Quóquè *likewise* cítŏ *soon*, ut et *as álso*, ámbŏ *both*, dúo *two*, égŏ *I*, átquè *and* hómŏ *a man or wóman*, vix legúntur *are scárcely éver read* prodúcta *long (as to the final sýllable).* Támèn *howéver* monosýllaba in -o *mónosyllables in* -o producúntur *are léngthened :—*ut *as*, dō *I gice*, stō *I stand.*

Ítèm *álso* Gréca (vocábula) *Greek words* per ω *with* o *long (by the Greeks cálled* ōmĕ'ga), cujúsmodi cásûs *of whatéver case* fúerint *they shall have been, or are :—*ut *as*, nominatívo

(cásu) *in the nóminative case,* Sápphō *a póetess of Lésbos,*
Dídō *a queen of Cárthage :—*genitívo (cásu) *in the génitive
case,* Andrógeō *of Andrógeus :—*accusatívo (cásu) *in the accú-
sative case,* Áthō *mount Áthos.* Et sîc *and so* likewise érgô
the word "érgô" (when put) pro *for* caúsâ *the cause or sake
of.*

IX. R finíta -*r* *final, that is, final sýllables in* r corripi-
úntur *are shórtened :* ut *as,* Cǽsăr *a títle of the Róman ém-
perors,* pĕr *by or through,* vĭr *a man,* úxŏr *a wife,* túrtŭr *a
túrtle.*

Aútem *but* (hæc vérba) producúntur *these* (words) *are made
long :—*fār *bread-corn,* Lār *a hoúsehold god,* Nār *the river
Nar, now cálled the Néra,* vēr *the spring,* fūr *a thief,* cūr
*why :—*quóquè *álso* pār *équal to or like,* cum *with* (súis) com-
pósitis *its cómpounds,—*ut *as,* cómpār *a compánion,* ímpār *un-
équal,* díspar *unlike.*

Étiàm *álso* Gréeca (vocábula) *Greek words in* -ēr *énding in
-ēr, quæ* (vocábula) *which* íllis *with or among them* (némpè
námely, Gréecis *the Greeks*), désinunt *end in* -ηρ *in long* e *before*
r :—*ut *as,* ā'ēr *the air,* crátēr *a bowl, or góblet,* charáctēr *a
mark or sign,* ǽthēr *the sky,* sótēr *a sáviour or delíverer :*
práeter *excépt* pátĕr *a fáther,* et *and* mátĕr *a móther,—*quæ
(dúo nómina) *which two nouns* ápud Latínos *with the Látins
or Rómans* hábent *have* últimam (sýllabam) *the last sýllable*
brévem *short.*

X. S finíta -*s* *final, that is, final sýllables in* -s hábent
have páres terminatiónes *the like terminátions, that is, the
same númber of éndings* cum *with* número *the númber* vocá-
lium *of the vówels :—*némpè *námely,* -as, -es, -is, -os, -us, -ys.

1. As finíta '-*as*' *final, that is, final sýllables in '-as'* pro-
ducúntur *are léngthened or made long :—*ut *as,* ámās *thou
lóvest,* Músās *the Múses,* majéstās *májesty,* bónitās *goódness.*

Práeter *excépt* (quáedam) Gréeca (vérbula *some*) *Greek
words,* quórum (verbulórum) *whereóf or of which* genitívus
(cásus) singuláris *the génitive case síngular* éxit in -dŏs *ends
in* -dŏs : ut *as,* Árcăs *an Arcádian,* Pállas Minérva ; genitívo
(cásu) *in the génitive case,* Árcadŏs *of an Arcádian,* Pálladŏs
of Minérva.

Et *likewise* práeter *excépt* accusatívos (cásus) pluráles *the
accúsative cáses plúral* nóminum *of nouns* crescéntium *in-
creásing :* ut *as,* héros heróŏs *a héro,* Phýllis Phýllidŏs *Phýllis;*

accusatívo (cásu) pluráli *in the accusatve plúral* heróãs *héroes,* Phýllidãs *Phýllisses.*

2. Es finíta *-es final, that is, final sýllables in -es* sunt lónga *are long:* ut *as,* Anchísēs *the father of Ænéas,* sédēs *a seat,* dócēs *thou teáchest,* pátrēs *fáthers.*

Nómina in *-es nouns (ending) in -es* tértiæ inflectiónis *of the third infléction or declénsion,* quæ (nómina) *which* corrípiunt *shórten* penúltimam (sýllabam) *the last sýllable save one* genitívi (cásus) *of the génitive case* crescéntis *increásing,* excipiúntur *are excépted:*—ut *as,* mílēs *a sóldier,* ségēs *stánding corn,* dívēs *rich.* Sèd *but* áriēs *a ram,* ábiēs *a fir-tree,* pariēs *a wall or partition,* Cérēs *the Góddess of corn, and of hárvests,* et *also* pēs *a foot,* unâ togéther cum *with* compósitis (vérbulis éjus) *its cómpounds:* ut *as,* bípēs *two-fóoted or háving two feet,* trípēs *three-fóoted or háving three feet,* sunt *are* lónga *long.*

Quóqùe *likewise* ēs *thou art,* à *from* sum *I am,* unâ togéther cum *with* compósitis (vérbis éjus) *its (séveral) cómpounds,* corrípitur *is shórtened:* ut *as,* pótēs *thou art áble or canst,* ádēs *thou art présent, or, be présent,* pródēs *thou prófitest,* óbēs *thou híenderest or húrtest:* quíbus (vócibus) *to which (words)* pénēs *in the pówer of,* pótest *may* adjúngi *be ádded.*

Ítem *álso* neútra (nómina) *neúter nouns, that is, words of the neúter génder,*—et *and* nominatívi (cásus) pluráles *the nóminative cáses plúral* (quorúndam) Græcórum (nóminum) *of cértain Greek nouns:*—ut *as,* hippómanẽs *a ráging húmour in mares,* cacoéthẽs *an ill hábit or a vícious cústom,* Cyclópẽs *the Cýclops, giants of Sícily,* Näïadẽs, *the Nâïds, fairies háunting rívers and fóuntains.*

3. Es finíta *-is final, that is, final sýllables in -is* sunt *are* brévia *short:* ut *as,* Párĭs *a Trójan prince,* pánĭs *bread,* trístĭs *sórrowful or sad,* hílărĭs *mérry or gay.*

Éxcipe *excépt* oblíquos cásus pluráles *oblique cáses plúral* (finítos) *in -is énding in -is,* qui (cásus) *which* producúntur *are léngthened or made long:* ut *as,* músīs *to or by songs,* à *of* músā *a song;* ménsīs *to or by tables,* à *of* ménsā *a táble;* dóminīs *to or by lords,* témplīs *to or by témples,* et *and* quîs, pro *for* quíbus, *to or by whom.*

Ítem *álso* (nómina) producéntia *nouns léngthening* penúltimam (sýllabam) *the pénult, or last sýllable save one,* genitívi (cásûs) *of the génitive case* (crescéntis) *increásing:* ut *as,*

Sámnīs *a Sámnite,* Sálamīs *an isle by Áthens;* genitívo (**cásu**) *in the génitive case,* Samnítis, Salamínis.

Ádde hùc *add híther, or, to this place, that is, to these nouns* (ómnia vérba) quæ (vérba) *all words which, that is, such words as* désinunt in -îs *end in -ís,* contrácta *contrácted* ex -eīs *from the diphthong -eīs,* sívè *whéther* Gréca (vérba) *Greek,* sívè *or* Latína (vérba) *Látin,* cujuscúnque númeri *of whatéver númber* aùt *or* cásùs *case* fúerint *they may be:*—ut *as,* Símoīs *a river by Troy,* Pýroīs *one of the hórses of the Sun,* pártīs *parts,* ómnīs *all :* è *from (the words)* Símoeīs, Pýroeīs, párteīs, ómneīs.

Et ítem *and álso* ómnia monosýllaba (vérba) *all mónosyllables;* ut *as,* vīs *strength or force,* līs *strife :*—prǽter *excépt* nominatívos (cásus) *these nóminative cáses,* īs *he,* et *and* quīs *who?* et *and* (advérbium) *the ádverb* bĭs *twice.*

Ístis (vócibus) *to these words* accédunt *accéde (or are ádded)* secúndæ persónæ singuláres *the sécond pérsons síngular* verbórum (finítæ) in '-is' *of verbs énding in '-is'* quórum (verbórum) *whereóf or of which* secúndæ (persónæ) pluráles *the sécond pérsons plúral* désinunt in -ītis *end in -ítis,* penúltimâ (sýllabâ) *the pénult or last sýllable save one* prodúctâ *béing made long :* únâ *togéther* cum *with* futúris (tempóribus) *the fúture ténses* optatívi (módi) *of the óptative or poténtial mood* (finítis) in -ris *énding in -ris :* ut *as,* audīs *thou dost hear,* velīs *thou máyest (or canst) be wílling,* déderīs *thou wilt have gíven;* plurálitèr *in the plúral númber* audī'tis, velī'tis, deder ī'tis.

4. Os finíta *-os final, that is, final sýllables in -os* producúntur *are léngthened or made long :* ut *as,* hónōs *hónour,* népōs *a grándchild,* dóminōs *lords,* sérvōs *slaves or sérvants.*

Prǽter *excépt* cómpŏs *máster of, or, a pérson who has obtained his desíre,* ímpŏs *not máster of, or, a pérson who is unáble;* et *and* ŏs *óssis a bone.*

Et *and* Gréca (vocábula) *Greek words* per párvum -o *with little o :* ut *as,* Délŏs *the isle of Délos in the Ægéan sea,* cháŏs *a confúsed mass or heap ;* Pálladŏs *of Pállas, or of Minérva ;* Phýllidŏs *of Phýllis, a wóman's name.*

5. Us finíta *"-us" final, that is, últimate sýllables in **-us*** corripiúntur *are made short :*—ut *as,* fámulŭs *a man-sérvant,* régiŭs *róyal,* témpŭs *time,* amámŭs *we love.*

(Nómina) producéntia *nouns léngthening* penúltimam (sýllabam) *the pénult, or last sýllable save one,* genitívi (cásus) *of*

the génitive case crescéntis *increásing*, excipiúntur *are ex-cépted:* ut *as*, sálūs *health*, téllūs *the earth;* genitívo (cásu) *in the génitive case*, salū'tis, tellū'ris.

Étiàm *álso* ómnes vóces *all words* quártæ inflectiónis *of the fourth infléction or declénsion* (finítæ) *in* -us *énding in -us* sunt lóngæ *are long:*—prǽter *excépt* nominatívum (cásum) *the nóminatire* et *and* vocatívum (cásum) *the vócative case* singuláres *singular* (or, *of the singular númber*):—ut *as*, genitívo (cásu) singulári *in the génitive case síngular*, mánūs *of the hand*, nominatívo, accusatívo, vocatívo (cásu) pluráli *in the nóminative, accúsatire, and vócative case plúral*, mánūs *hands*.

Étiàm *likewise* monosýllaba (vérba) *mónosyllables* accédunt *accéde or are ádded* his *to these:*—ut *as*, crūs *the leg from the knee to the áncle*, thūs *fránkincense*, mūs *a mouse*, sūs *a swine,—sow or boar*.

Et ítèm *and álso* Gráeca (vocábula) *Greek words* per diph-thóngum -ous (*énding*) *with the diphthong -ous*, cujuscúnque cásûs *of whatéver case* fúerint *they may have been or are:* ut *as*, nominatívo (cásu) *in the nóminative case*, Pánthūs, Me-lámpūs, *Próper Names of men:*—genitívo (cásu) *in the génitive case*, Sápphûs *of Sáppho*, Clíûs *of Clio, one of the Múses*.

Átquè *and* Jésūs *the Sáviour Jésus* nómen *a name* vene-rándum *to be réverenced* cúnctis piis (homínibus) *by all relí-gious or gódly pérsons*.

6. Ys finíta -ys *final, that is, last sýllables in -ys* sunt brévia *are short:* ut *as*, Téthȳs *a marine góddess of that name*, Ítȳs *a son of Téreus a king of Thrace*, chlámȳs *a cloak or mántle*. Éxcipe *except* pluráles cásus *plúral cáses* (finítos) in -ys *énding in -ys* contráctos *contrácted* ex -ȳěs vèl -ȳăs *from -ȳěs or from -ȳăs:*—ut *as*, Erínnȳs *the Fúries* pro *for* Erínnȳěs, vèl *or* Erínnȳăs.

XI. Postrémò *lástly*, - u finíta -u *final, that is, final sýl-lables in ' u ' producúntur *are made long* ómnia *all or without excéption:* ut *as*, mánū *by or with the hand, the áblative case síngular of* mánus *a hand;* génū *the knee;* amátū *to be lóved;* díū *a long while or time*.

APPENDIX.

A SÉNTENCE is éither *Simple* or *Cómpound* :—*Símple* when it consísts of no more than one súbject, and contaíns no more than one *fínite* verb ; that is, a verb in any mood excépt the *infinitive mood*,—whéther the verb be expréssed or under-stoód :—*Cómpound* when it consísts of more than one súbject, and contaíns more than one *fínite* verb.

Évery cómpound séntence is divíded ínto two or more parts (accórding to the númber of indepéndent fínite verbs in it) by one or more of the fóllowing stops :—

1. A CÓMMA [,] which is úsed at the end of évery símple súbject, in a cómpound séntence :—as, *Cícero, who stúdied díligently, hóping to becóme éminent, gaíned leárning, glóry, and rank.*

2. A SÉMICOLON [;] which is úsed in the míddle of any cómpound séntence, when half the séntence is fínished, and the remaíning half forms a cóntrast with the fórmer half :—as, *A dishónest man may take pains to screen himsélf from shame and púnishment ; but jústice will take still more pains to discóver and expóse him.*

3. A CÓLON [:] which is used when the sense is pérfect, but the séntence not énded :—as, *Dread to be known for a liar : becaúse that cháracter is detéstable, and sure to last as long as life lasts.*

4. A PÉRIOD or FULL STOP [.] which is úsed at the end of évery séntence, both símple and cómpound.

☞ The pause occásioned by a cómma is équal to the time nécessary (at the órdinary rate of reáding or speáking) to count *one.* The pause at a semicolon is twice as long as at a cómma ; that is, équal to the time necessary to count *two.* The pause at a cólon is three times as long as at a cómma ; or équal to the time nécessary to count *three.* And the pause at a périod (or a full stop), is four times as long as at a cómma ; or équal to the time nécessary to count *four.*

5. A paránthesis, ( ) which is a clause in the míddle of a séntence, such, that it may be omítted withoút détriment to the sense: thus, *Quintílian (an áccurate judge of mankínd) was pleásed with boys who wept when their school-féllows out-did them: for he knew that the sense of disgráce would make them émulous,—and that emulátion would make them schólars.*

☞ Instead of the two crótchets inclósing the words of a paránthesis, two cómmas are not unfréquently emplóyed: thus, in the precéding exámple, we might, with pérfect corréctness, write,—*Quintílian, an áccurate judge of mankínd, was pleásed, &c.*

6. An interrogátion, [?] which is a mark úsed insteád of a full stop áfter ány séntence wherebý a quéstion is ásked :— as, *Xenócratës, hólding his peace at some detrácting discoúrse, was ásked, why he did not speak ? "Becaúse," said he, "I have more than once repénted of háving spóken, but néver of háving been sílent."*

7. A sign of admirátion, [!] which is a mark that denótes wónder or some súdden emótion of mind: as, *Alás ! the cares of life ! Oh ! the émptiness of its pursúits !*

II. CAPITAL LETTERS.

1. Évery séntence ought to begín with a cápital letter ; and, in póetry, each verse may, or may not, comménce in a similar mánner.

2. All próper names, and words úsed for próper names, such, for exámple, as *Septémber, the Gráces, Tówer-hill,* should begín with a cápital.

3. Cómmon súbstantives, when emphátic, should begín with a cápital létter ; but not unléss they are emphátic.

4. All ádjectives deríved from próper names, as, *Róman, Swédish, Welsh ;* and cómmon ádjectives when applíed to pérsons of éminence, as *Almíghty* God, *Hóly* Ghost, *Róyal* Májesty, *Seréne* Híghness, are génerally made to begín with a cápital létter.

5. A quotátion or speech, introdúced in the míddle of a séntence, may begín with a cápital létter ; but when invérted cómmas are úsed, a cápital létter is séldom réquisite : as, *Zéno, heáring a young man speak more than was becóming, said, " we have two ears, and ónly one tongue, to the end that we should hear much and say little."*

N

*** As the Rómans were unacquaínted with the fígures of aríthmetic now in use amóng us, they emplóyed cértain cápital létters to denóte númbers:—as, for exámple, I for *one*, V for *five*, X for *ten*, L for *fifty*, C for *a húndred*, D for *five húndred*, and M for *a thoúsand*.

III. FIGURES OF GRAMMAR.

Any deviátion from the órdinary way of speáking, or from the órdinary form of wríting, whéther for the sake of brévity, of beaúty, or of énergy, is cálled a FÍGURE.

I. The Fígures of ETYMÓLOGY are :—

1. *Prósthesis*, which adds a létter, or sýllable, to a word at the begínning : as gnă'tă, *a daúghter*, for nă'tă ; tĕ'tŭlĭ, *I bore*, for tŭ'lĭ.

2. *Aphǽresis*, which takes awáy a létter, or sýllable, from the begínning of a word : as, 'st, *it is*, for ĕst ; 'rŭ'ĭt, *he rúshes forth*, for ĕ'rŭĭt.

3. *Epénthesis*, which insérts a létter, or a sýllable, in the míddle of a word : as, rĕp'pĕrĭt, *he found*, for rĕ'pĕrĭt ; ĭndŭpĕră'tŏr, *a commánder*, for ĭmpĕră'tŏr.

4. *Sýncopë*, which drops (or omíts) a létter, or a sýllable, in the míddle of a word : as, pŭĕr'tiă, *childhood*, for pŭĕri'tiă ; ŏb'iĭt, *he díed*, for ŏbĭ'vĭt ; dĭx'tĭ, *thou saídest*, for dĭxĭs'tĭ.

5. *Paragógë*, which adds a létter, or sýllable, to the end of a word :— as, hĕrō'ĭsĭn, *to héroes*, for hĕrō'ĭsĭ ; dĭ'cĭĕr, *to be said*, for dĭ'cī.

6. *Apócopë*, which takes awáy a létter, or sýllable, from the end of a word : as, mĕ'n'? *what me?* for mĕ'nĕ ; să'tĭn'? *enoúgh?* for sătĭs'nĕ ?

7. *Metáthesis*, which transpóses a létter in a word :—as, cŏrcŏdĭ'lŭs, *a crócodile*, for crŏcŏdĭ'lŭs ; pĭs'trĭs, *a sort of whale*, álso, *a gálley*, for prĭs'tĭs.

8. *Archäísmus*, which means an old or ántiquated mánner of wríting, or of pronoúncing : as, cūr'rŭ, *to a cháriot ;* for cūr'rŭĭ ; ŏl'lī, *they*, for il'lī.

9. *Hellenísmus*, which implíes eíther the adóption, or else the imitátion, of some Greek word : as, Hĕ'lĕnĕ, *Hélen*, for Hĕ'lĕnă : dĕl'phĭn, *a dólphin*, for dĕlphī'nŭs : tī'grĭdŏs, *of a tíger*, for tī'grĭs or tī'grĭdĭs.

II. The Fígures of SYN'TAX are clássed únder the heads of *Ellípsis, Pleonásmus, Enállagë, and Hypérbaton ;* each of which is agáin subdivíded ínto várious bránches, wheréof the fóllowing are the príncipal.

I. ELLIPSIS.

ELLÍPSIS is the omíssion of some word, or words, nécessary to compléte the sense :—as, e'gŏmĕt cŏntĭ'nŭŏ mē'cŭm, *fórthwith I mysélf with mysélf*, understánd cōgĭtă'rĕ ĭncĭpĭē'bām, *begán to cógitate* or *to think*. Quĭd mŭl'tă ? *Why mány things or words?* Understánd dī'cām, *need I say*, Vēn'tŭm e'răt ăd Vēs'tæ, *it was* or *it had been come to Vésta's*—understánd æ'dĕm vĕl tēm'plŭm, *fane* or *témple*.

II. PLEONASMUS.

PLEONAS'MUS is the use of sómething supérfluous in a séntence :—as, Rō'mă ĕst mĕ'ă pă'trĭă ĕt nă'tălĕ sŏ'lŭm, *Rome is my coúntry and nátive soil.*

III. Enallage.

Enal'lage is a change of génder, númber, case, mood, tense, or pérson : as, Rōmā'nŭs vĭc'tŏr ĕ'răt, *the Róman was cónqueror,* for Rōmā'nī vĭctō'rēs ĕ'rănt, *the Rómans were cônquerors.*

IV. Hyperbaton.

Hypérbaton is a deviátion from the cómmon práctice in the arrángement of words in a séntence, as respécts either the nátural órder of evénts, or the estáblished mode of speáking and of writing : as, vă'lĕt ăt'quĕ vī'vĭt, *he is well and lives,* instead of vī'vĭt ăt'quĕ vă'lĕt.

III. The Fígures of Prósody are, *Synalǽpha, Ecthlípsis, Synǽresis, Diǽresis, Sýstolĕ, Diástolĕ, Synaphéia,* and *Cæsúra :*—the whole of which have been nóticed above, únder the head of Prósody.

IV. Figures of Rhetoric.

The art of speáking and of writing with *propríety* is térmed Gram'mar ; whilst the art of speáking and of writing with *élegance* is námed Rhétoric.

The chief *Fígures* of Rhétoric, or *Tropes,* as they are génerally cálled, are the fóllowing :—

1. *Metáphora,* or the applicátion of some bórrowed áttribute or quálity, to expréss more beáutifully, or more fórcibly, some círcumstance or appeárance : as, gĕ'mīnī, dŭ'ŏ fūl'mĭnă bĕl'lī, Scīpĭ'ădæ, clā'dēs Lĭ'bўæ, *the twin-like Scípios* (líterally, *sons of Scípio*), *two thúnderbolts of war, hávoc to Líbya ;* with allúsion to *Públius Cornélius Scípio Africánus májor,* and *Públius Cornélius Scípio Æmiliánus Africánus mínor :*—or, vī'tĭŏ mŏ'rĭēns sī'tĭt ā'ĕrĭs hĕr'bă, *by fault of the air the dýing hérbage thirsts,* meáning, that, *ówing to the drought the grass is in lack of moisture to fúrther its growth, and enáble it to regaín and maintaín its vérdure.*

2. *Metonýmia,* or the súbstituting for a pérson or a thing some signíficant círcumstance reláting either to the one or the óther : as, éxpectā'tĕ cĭcā'dās, *wait for the balm-críckets,* meáning æstā'tĕm, ĭn quā strī'dĕnt cĭcā'dæ, *súmmer, whereín the grásshoppers or balm-críckets chirp :* Vĭrgĭ'lĭŭs lĕ'gĭtŭr, *Vírgil is read,* for cār'mĭnă ā Vĭrgĭ'lĭŏ cŏmpŏ'sĭtă lĕgŭn'tŭr, *the póems compósed by Vírgil are read.*

3. *Synécdochĕ,* or the pútting the whole for a part, or a part for the whole ; as, trĭgĭn'tă mĭ'nās prŏ că'pĭtĕ tŭ'ŏ dĕ'dī, *I gave thírty mínæ for thy head :* Ā'rărĭm Pār'thŭs bĭ'bĕt, *the Párthian shall drink the Saône.*

4. *Irónia,* or the assúmed use of words in a sense diamétrically ópposite to their meáning : as, Ō sāl'vĕ, bŏ'nĕ vĭr, cūrās'tī prŏ'bĕ, *O God save you, good sir, you have táken care hónestly.* Here the words are at váriance with the thoughts of the speáker.

5. *Allegória,* or the méntion of sómething únder a fictítious or feigned appellátion, maintaíning throughóut the whole discoúrse a séries of métaphors bórrowed from the súbject first assúmed :—as, Ō nā'vĭs, rĕ'fĕrĕnt ĭn mā'rĕ tĕ nŏ'vī flūc'tūs, *O ship,* (meáning, *O Róman state*) *new waves will bear thee back to the sea,* that is, *new commótions will embroíl thee in civil war.*

6. *Clímax,* or a grádual adváncement in force of expréssion úntil the súbject ríses to the híghest :—as, fă'cĭnŭs ēst vīncī'rĕ cī vēm Rōmā'nŭm · scĕ'lŭs, vĕrbĕrā'rĕ ; prŏ'pĕ pārrĭcī'dĭŭm, nĕcā'rĕ ; quid dī'cām, ĭn crŭ'cĕ

tŏl'lĕrĕ ? *It is a dáring thing to bind a Róman cítizen ; an atrócity,* *infíict láshes on him ; álmost párricide, to slay him ; what can I call it uplíft him on the cross ?*

7. *Hypérbolĕ,* or the mágnifying a súbject excéssively in admirátio: or diminishing it excéssively in contémpt :—thus, sī'dĕră vēr'tĭcĕ fĕ'rĭar *I shall strike the stars with my crown :* lĕ'vĭŏr cōr'tĭcĕ, *lighter than cor*

8. *Prosopopǽia,* or the personificátion of eíther *inánimate* or *irrátiona* óbjects : as, tē'cŭm, Cătĭlī'nă, pă'trĭă sīc ă'gĭt, ĕt quŏdăm'mŏdŏ tă'cĭtĕ. lŏ'quĭtŭr ; nŭl'lŭm, jăm tŏt ăn'nōs, fă'cĭnŭs ĕx'tĭtĭt, &c., *with thee, Cát line, thy cóuntry thus impleáds, and in a mánner sílent she says ; unt now, for so mány years no víllany has exísted,* &c.

9. *Apóstrophë,* or when a speáker, transpórted with eárnestnes addrésses himsélf to ánything that presénts itsélf to his mind,—whéthe: présent or ábsent : as, Pŏlŭdō'rŭm ōbtrūn'cät, ĕt aū'rō vī pŏ'tĭtŭr. Quid nōn mōrtă'lĭă pēc'tŏră cō'gĭs, aū'rī săc'ră fă'mēs ? *He múrders Pólydore and by víolence gets posséssion of his gold. What, O cúrsed húnger o gold, fórcest thou not mórtal breasts untó ?*

THE END.

12767

grammar. New ed.